



Ezekiel

translationNotes

v6

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 6

Published: 2017-02-22

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	29
Introduction to Ezekiel	29
Ezekiel 1 General Notes	49
Ezekiel 1:1-3	50
Ezekiel 1:4-6	52
Ezekiel 1:7-9	54
Ezekiel 1:10-12	55
Ezekiel 1:13-14	57
Ezekiel 1:15-16	58
Ezekiel 1:17-18	59
Ezekiel 1:19-21	60
Ezekiel 1:22-23	62
Ezekiel 1:24-25	63
Ezekiel 1:26	65
Ezekiel 1:27-28	66
Ezekiel 2 General Notes	68
Ezekiel 2:1-3	69
Ezekiel 2:4-5	71
Ezekiel 2:6	73
Ezekiel 2:7-8	74
Ezekiel 2:9-10	75
Ezekiel 3 General Notes	76
Ezekiel 3:1-3	77
Ezekiel 3:4-7	79
Ezekiel 3:8-9	81
Ezekiel 3:10-11	83
Ezekiel 3:12-13	84
Ezekiel 3:14-15	86
Ezekiel 3:16-19	88
Ezekiel 3:20-21	90
Ezekiel 3:22-23	92
Ezekiel 3:24-25	93
Ezekiel 3:26-27	94
Ezekiel 4 General Notes	95
Ezekiel 4:1-3	96
Ezekiel 4:4-5	98
Ezekiel 4:6-8	100
Ezekiel 4:9-11	102
Ezekiel 4:12-13	103
Ezekiel 4:14-15	104

Table of Contents

Ezekiel 4:16-17	106
Ezekiel 5 General Notes	108
Ezekiel 5:1-2	109
Ezekiel 5:3-4	111
Ezekiel 5:5-6	113
Ezekiel 5:7-8	115
Ezekiel 5:9-10	116
Ezekiel 5:11-12	117
Ezekiel 5:13-14	119
Ezekiel 5:15-17	120
Ezekiel 6 General Notes	122
Ezekiel 6:1-3	123
Ezekiel 6:4-5	125
Ezekiel 6:6-7	126
Ezekiel 6:8-10	128
Ezekiel 6:11-12	130
Ezekiel 6:13-14	132
Ezekiel 7 General Notes	134
Ezekiel 7:1-2	135
Ezekiel 7:3-4	136
Ezekiel 7:5-7	138
Ezekiel 7:8-9	140
Ezekiel 7:10-11	142
Ezekiel 7:12-13	143
Ezekiel 7:14-16	145
Ezekiel 7:17-19	147
Ezekiel 7:20-22	149
Ezekiel 7:23-25	151
Ezekiel 7:26-27	153
Ezekiel 8 General Notes	155
Ezekiel 8:1-2	156
Ezekiel 8:3-4	158
Ezekiel 8:5-6	160
Ezekiel 8:7-9	162
Ezekiel 8:10-11	163
Ezekiel 8:12-13	165
Ezekiel 8:14-15	166
Ezekiel 8:16	167
Ezekiel 8:17-18	168
Ezekiel 9 General Notes	170
Ezekiel 9:1-2	171
Ezekiel 9:3-4	173
Ezekiel 9:5-6	175

Ezekiel 9:7-8	176
Ezekiel 9:9-11	178
Ezekiel 10 General Notes	180
Ezekiel 10:1-2	181
Ezekiel 10:3-5	182
Ezekiel 10:6-8	184
Ezekiel 10:9-11	185
Ezekiel 10:12-14	186
Ezekiel 10:15-17	187
Ezekiel 10:18-19	188
Ezekiel 10:20-22	189
Ezekiel 11 General Notes	190
Ezekiel 11:1	191
Ezekiel 11:2-4	192
Ezekiel 11:5-7	193
Ezekiel 11:8-10	195
Ezekiel 11:11-12	197
Ezekiel 11:13	199
Ezekiel 11:14-15	200
Ezekiel 11:16-18	202
Ezekiel 11:19-21	204
Ezekiel 11:22-23	206
Ezekiel 11:24-25	207
Ezekiel 12 General Notes	208
Ezekiel 12:1-2	209
Ezekiel 12:3	210
Ezekiel 12:4-6	211
Ezekiel 12:7	212
Ezekiel 12:8-10	213
Ezekiel 12:11-13	215
Ezekiel 12:14-16	217
Ezekiel 12:17-18	219
Ezekiel 12:19-20	220
Ezekiel 12:21-23	222
Ezekiel 12:24-25	224
Ezekiel 12:26-28	226
Ezekiel 13 General Notes	228
Ezekiel 13:1-4	229
Ezekiel 13:5-7	231
Ezekiel 13:8-9	233
Ezekiel 13:10-12	235
Ezekiel 13:13-14	237
Ezekiel 13:15-16	239

Table of Contents

Ezekiel 13:17-18	240
Ezekiel 13:19	242
Ezekiel 13:20-21	243
Ezekiel 13:22-23	245
Ezekiel 14 General Notes	247
Ezekiel 14:1-3	248
Ezekiel 14:4-5	250
Ezekiel 14:6	252
Ezekiel 14:7-8	253
Ezekiel 14:9-11	255
Ezekiel 14:12-14	257
Ezekiel 14:15-16	258
Ezekiel 14:17-18	259
Ezekiel 14:19-20	260
Ezekiel 14:21	261
Ezekiel 14:22-23	262
Ezekiel 15 General Notes	264
Ezekiel 15:1-4	265
Ezekiel 15:5-6	267
Ezekiel 15:7-8	268
Ezekiel 16 General Notes	269
Ezekiel 16:1-3	270
Ezekiel 16:4-5	272
Ezekiel 16:6-7	273
Ezekiel 16:8	274
Ezekiel 16:9-12	275
Ezekiel 16:13-14	276
Ezekiel 16:15-16	277
Ezekiel 16:17-19	279
Ezekiel 16:20-22	281
Ezekiel 16:23-24	283
Ezekiel 16:25-26	284
Ezekiel 16:27-29	285
Ezekiel 16:30-31	287
Ezekiel 16:32-34	288
Ezekiel 16:35-37	289
Ezekiel 16:38-39	291
Ezekiel 16:40-42	292
Ezekiel 16:43	293
Ezekiel 16:44-45	294
Ezekiel 16:46	295
Ezekiel 16:47-48	296
Ezekiel 16:49-50	297

Ezekiel 16:51-52	298
Ezekiel 16:53-55	299
Ezekiel 16:56-58	300
Ezekiel 16:59	302
Ezekiel 16:60-61	303
Ezekiel 16:62-63	304
Ezekiel 17 General Notes	305
Ezekiel 17:1-4	306
Ezekiel 17:5-6	308
Ezekiel 17:7-8	310
Ezekiel 17:9-10	312
Ezekiel 17:11-12	314
Ezekiel 17:13-14	315
Ezekiel 17:15-16	316
Ezekiel 17:17-18	318
Ezekiel 17:19-21	320
Ezekiel 17:22-23	322
Ezekiel 17:24	323
Ezekiel 18 General Notes	324
Ezekiel 18:1-2	325
Ezekiel 18:3-4	326
Ezekiel 18:5-6	327
Ezekiel 18:7	328
Ezekiel 18:8-9	329
Ezekiel 18:10-11	331
Ezekiel 18:12-13	332
Ezekiel 18:14-15	334
Ezekiel 18:16-17	335
Ezekiel 18:18	337
Ezekiel 18:19-20	338
Ezekiel 18:21-22	340
Ezekiel 18:23	341
Ezekiel 18:24	342
Ezekiel 18:25-26	344
Ezekiel 18:27-28	345
Ezekiel 18:29-30	346
Ezekiel 18:31-32	348
Ezekiel 19 General Notes	349
Ezekiel 19:1-4	350
Ezekiel 19:5-7	352
Ezekiel 19:8-9	354
Ezekiel 19:10-11	356
Ezekiel 19:12-13	358

Table of Contents

Ezekiel 19:14	359
Ezekiel 20 General Notes	360
Ezekiel 20:1	361
Ezekiel 20:2-3	362
Ezekiel 20:4-6	363
Ezekiel 20:7	365
Ezekiel 20:8-9	366
Ezekiel 20:10-12	368
Ezekiel 20:13-14	369
Ezekiel 20:15-17	370
Ezekiel 20:18-20	371
Ezekiel 20:21-22	373
Ezekiel 20:23-24	374
Ezekiel 20:25-26	375
Ezekiel 20:27-29	377
Ezekiel 20:30-32	379
Ezekiel 20:33-35	381
Ezekiel 20:36-38	382
Ezekiel 20:39	383
Ezekiel 20:40-41	384
Ezekiel 20:42-44	386
Ezekiel 20:45-47	388
Ezekiel 20:48-49	389
Ezekiel 21 General Notes	390
Ezekiel 21:1-3	391
Ezekiel 21:4-5	393
Ezekiel 21:6-7	395
Ezekiel 21:8-9	397
Ezekiel 21:10-11	398
Ezekiel 21:12-13	400
Ezekiel 21:14	402
Ezekiel 21:15-17	404
Ezekiel 21:18-20	406
Ezekiel 21:21-23	407
Ezekiel 21:24	409
Ezekiel 21:25-27	411
Ezekiel 21:28-29	413
Ezekiel 21:30-31	415
Ezekiel 21:32	416
Ezekiel 22 General Notes	417
Ezekiel 22:1-3	418
Ezekiel 22:4-5	420
Ezekiel 22:6-9	421

Ezekiel 22:10-12	423
Ezekiel 22:13-16	425
Ezekiel 22:17-19	427
Ezekiel 22:20-22	428
Ezekiel 22:23-25	429
Ezekiel 22:26-28	430
Ezekiel 22:29	432
Ezekiel 22:30-31	433
Ezekiel 23 General Notes	435
Ezekiel 23:1-4	436
Ezekiel 23:5-7	438
Ezekiel 23:8-10	439
Ezekiel 23:11-13	441
Ezekiel 23:14-15	442
Ezekiel 23:16-17	443
Ezekiel 23:18-19	444
Ezekiel 23:20-21	445
Ezekiel 23:22-23	446
Ezekiel 23:24-25	447
Ezekiel 23:26-27	449
Ezekiel 23:28-29	450
Ezekiel 23:30-31	451
Ezekiel 23:32	452
Ezekiel 23:33-34	454
Ezekiel 23:35	456
Ezekiel 23:36-37	457
Ezekiel 23:38-39	458
Ezekiel 23:40-41	459
Ezekiel 23:42	460
Ezekiel 23:43-45	461
Ezekiel 23:46-47	462
Ezekiel 23:48-49	463
Ezekiel 24 General Notes	464
Ezekiel 24:1-2	465
Ezekiel 24:3-5	467
Ezekiel 24:6	469
Ezekiel 24:7-8	470
Ezekiel 24:9-10	471
Ezekiel 24:11-12	472
Ezekiel 24:13	473
Ezekiel 24:14	474
Ezekiel 24:15-17	475
Ezekiel 24:18	477

Table of Contents

Ezekiel 24:19-21	478
Ezekiel 24:22-24	480
Ezekiel 24:25-27	481
Ezekiel 25 General Notes	482
Ezekiel 25:1-2	483
Ezekiel 25:3-5	484
Ezekiel 25:6-7	486
Ezekiel 25:8-11	488
Ezekiel 25:12-13	490
Ezekiel 25:14	491
Ezekiel 25:15-17	492
Ezekiel 26 General Notes	494
Ezekiel 26:1-2	495
Ezekiel 26:3-4	497
Ezekiel 26:5-6	498
Ezekiel 26:7-8	500
Ezekiel 26:9-11	502
Ezekiel 26:12-14	504
Ezekiel 26:15-16	505
Ezekiel 26:17-18	506
Ezekiel 26:19-21	508
Ezekiel 27 General Notes	510
Ezekiel 27:1-3	511
Ezekiel 27:4-5	512
Ezekiel 27:6-7	513
Ezekiel 27:8-9	514
Ezekiel 27:10-11	515
Ezekiel 27:12-13	516
Ezekiel 27:14-15	517
Ezekiel 27:16-18	518
Ezekiel 27:19-21	520
Ezekiel 27:22-23	521
Ezekiel 27:24-25	522
Ezekiel 27:26-27	523
Ezekiel 27:28-30	524
Ezekiel 27:31-33	525
Ezekiel 27:34-36	527
Ezekiel 28 General Notes	529
Ezekiel 28:1-3	530
Ezekiel 28:4-5	532
Ezekiel 28:6-7	533
Ezekiel 28:8-10	535
Ezekiel 28:11-13	537

Ezekiel 28:14-15	539
Ezekiel 28:16-17	540
Ezekiel 28:18-19	542
Ezekiel 28:20-22	544
Ezekiel 28:23-24	546
Ezekiel 28:25-26	548
Ezekiel 29 General Notes	549
Ezekiel 29:1-3	550
Ezekiel 29:4-5	552
Ezekiel 29:6-7	554
Ezekiel 29:8-10	556
Ezekiel 29:11-12	558
Ezekiel 29:13-14	559
Ezekiel 29:15-16	560
Ezekiel 29:17-18	561
Ezekiel 29:19-20	562
Ezekiel 29:21	563
Ezekiel 30 General Notes	564
Ezekiel 30:1-3	565
Ezekiel 30:4-5	567
Ezekiel 30:6-7	569
Ezekiel 30:8-9	571
Ezekiel 30:10-11	573
Ezekiel 30:12	575
Ezekiel 30:13-14	576
Ezekiel 30:15-16	578
Ezekiel 30:17-19	580
Ezekiel 30:20-21	582
Ezekiel 30:22-24	584
Ezekiel 30:25-26	586
Ezekiel 31 General Notes	587
Ezekiel 31:1-2	588
Ezekiel 31:3-4	590
Ezekiel 31:5-7	592
Ezekiel 31:8-9	594
Ezekiel 31:10-11	596
Ezekiel 31:12	598
Ezekiel 31:13-14	599
Ezekiel 31:15	601
Ezekiel 31:16	603
Ezekiel 31:17-18	605
Ezekiel 32 General Notes	607
Ezekiel 32:1-2	608

Table of Contents

Ezekiel 32:3-4	610
Ezekiel 32:5-6	612
Ezekiel 32:7-8	613
Ezekiel 32:9-10	615
Ezekiel 32:11-12	617
Ezekiel 32:13-14	619
Ezekiel 32:15-16	621
Ezekiel 32:17-18	623
Ezekiel 32:19-21	625
Ezekiel 32:22-23	627
Ezekiel 32:24-25	629
Ezekiel 32:26-27	631
Ezekiel 32:28-29	633
Ezekiel 32:30	634
Ezekiel 32:31-32	635
Ezekiel 33 General Notes	637
Ezekiel 33:1-4	638
Ezekiel 33:5-6	640
Ezekiel 33:7-9	641
Ezekiel 33:10-11	643
Ezekiel 33:12-13	645
Ezekiel 33:14-16	647
Ezekiel 33:17-20	649
Ezekiel 33:21-22	651
Ezekiel 33:23-24	653
Ezekiel 33:25-26	654
Ezekiel 33:27-29	656
Ezekiel 33:30-31	658
Ezekiel 33:32-33	660
Ezekiel 34 General Notes	661
Ezekiel 34:1-3	662
Ezekiel 34:4-6	664
Ezekiel 34:7-8	666
Ezekiel 34:9-10	667
Ezekiel 34:11-13	668
Ezekiel 34:14-16	670
Ezekiel 34:17-19	672
Ezekiel 34:20-21	674
Ezekiel 34:22-24	675
Ezekiel 34:25-27	677
Ezekiel 34:28-29	679
Ezekiel 34:30-31	680
Ezekiel 35 General Notes	681

Ezekiel 35:1-3	682
Ezekiel 35:4-6	684
Ezekiel 35:7-9	686
Ezekiel 35:10-11	688
Ezekiel 35:12-13	690
Ezekiel 35:14-15	691
Ezekiel 36 General Notes	693
Ezekiel 36:1-3	694
Ezekiel 36:4-6	696
Ezekiel 36:7	698
Ezekiel 36:8-9	699
Ezekiel 36:10-12	700
Ezekiel 36:13-15	702
Ezekiel 36:16-18	704
Ezekiel 36:19-21	706
Ezekiel 36:22-23	708
Ezekiel 36:24-25	709
Ezekiel 36:26-28	710
Ezekiel 36:29-31	712
Ezekiel 36:32-34	714
Ezekiel 36:35-36	716
Ezekiel 36:37-38	717
Ezekiel 37 General Notes	718
Ezekiel 37:1-3	719
Ezekiel 37:4-6	721
Ezekiel 37:7-8	723
Ezekiel 37:9-10	724
Ezekiel 37:11-12	725
Ezekiel 37:13-14	726
Ezekiel 37:15-17	727
Ezekiel 37:18-20	729
Ezekiel 37:21-23	731
Ezekiel 37:24-25	733
Ezekiel 37:26-28	735
Ezekiel 38 General Notes	737
Ezekiel 38:1-3	738
Ezekiel 38:4-6	740
Ezekiel 38:7-9	742
Ezekiel 38:10-12	744
Ezekiel 38:13	746
Ezekiel 38:14-16	747
Ezekiel 38:17-18	748
Ezekiel 38:19-20	749

Table of Contents

Ezekiel 38:21-23	750
Ezekiel 39 General Notes	752
Ezekiel 39:1-3	753
Ezekiel 39:4-6	754
Ezekiel 39:7-8	755
Ezekiel 39:9-10	756
Ezekiel 39:11	757
Ezekiel 39:12-13	758
Ezekiel 39:14-16	759
Ezekiel 39:17-18	760
Ezekiel 39:19-20	762
Ezekiel 39:21-22	763
Ezekiel 39:23-24	764
Ezekiel 39:25-27	765
Ezekiel 39:28-29	767
Ezekiel 40 General Notes	768
Ezekiel 40:1-2	769
Ezekiel 40:3-4	771
Ezekiel 40:5-7	773
Ezekiel 40:8-10	775
Ezekiel 40:11-13	776
Ezekiel 40:14-16	777
Ezekiel 40:17-19	778
Ezekiel 40:20-21	779
Ezekiel 40:22-23	780
Ezekiel 40:24-25	782
Ezekiel 40:26-27	783
Ezekiel 40:28-31	784
Ezekiel 40:32-34	786
Ezekiel 40:35-37	787
Ezekiel 40:38-39	788
Ezekiel 40:40-41	789
Ezekiel 40:42-43	790
Ezekiel 40:44-45	792
Ezekiel 40:46-47	793
Ezekiel 40:48-49	794
Ezekiel 41 General Notes	796
Ezekiel 41:1-2	797
Ezekiel 41:3-4	798
Ezekiel 41:5-7	799
Ezekiel 41:8-9	800
Ezekiel 41:10-11	801
Ezekiel 41:12-14	802

Ezekiel 41:15-17	803
Ezekiel 41:18-20	804
Ezekiel 41:21-24	805
Ezekiel 41:25-26	806
Ezekiel 42 General Notes	807
Ezekiel 42:1-3	808
Ezekiel 42:4-6	809
Ezekiel 42:7-9	810
Ezekiel 42:10-12	811
Ezekiel 42:13-14	812
Ezekiel 42:15	813
Ezekiel 42:16-19	814
Ezekiel 42:20	815
Ezekiel 43 General Notes	816
Ezekiel 43:1-2	817
Ezekiel 43:3-5	818
Ezekiel 43:6-8	819
Ezekiel 43:9	821
Ezekiel 43:10-11	822
Ezekiel 43:12	823
Ezekiel 43:13-14	824
Ezekiel 43:15-17	825
Ezekiel 43:18-19	826
Ezekiel 43:20-21	828
Ezekiel 43:22-24	829
Ezekiel 43:25-27	830
Ezekiel 44 General Notes	832
Ezekiel 44:1-3	833
Ezekiel 44:4-5	834
Ezekiel 44:6-7	835
Ezekiel 44:8-9	837
Ezekiel 44:10-12	838
Ezekiel 44:13-14	840
Ezekiel 44:15-16	841
Ezekiel 44:17-18	843
Ezekiel 44:19	844
Ezekiel 44:20-22	845
Ezekiel 44:23-24	846
Ezekiel 44:25-27	847
Ezekiel 44:28-29	848
Ezekiel 44:30-31	849
Ezekiel 45 General Notes	850
Ezekiel 45:1-2	851

Table of Contents

Ezekiel 45:3-5	852
Ezekiel 45:6-7	853
Ezekiel 45:8	854
Ezekiel 45:9-12	855
Ezekiel 45:13-15	857
Ezekiel 45:16-17	859
Ezekiel 45:18-20	861
Ezekiel 45:21-22	863
Ezekiel 45:23-24	864
Ezekiel 45:25	865
Ezekiel 46 General Notes	866
Ezekiel 46:1-2	867
Ezekiel 46:3-5	869
Ezekiel 46:6-8	870
Ezekiel 46:9-10	871
Ezekiel 46:11-12	872
Ezekiel 46:13-15	873
Ezekiel 46:16-18	874
Ezekiel 46:19-20	875
Ezekiel 46:21-24	877
Ezekiel 47 General Notes	878
Ezekiel 47:1-2	879
Ezekiel 47:3-5	880
Ezekiel 47:6-8	881
Ezekiel 47:9-10	882
Ezekiel 47:11-12	883
Ezekiel 47:13-14	884
Ezekiel 47:15-17	885
Ezekiel 47:18-20	887
Ezekiel 47:21-23	889
Ezekiel 48 General Notes	890
Ezekiel 48:1-3	891
Ezekiel 48:4-7	893
Ezekiel 48:8-9	894
Ezekiel 48:10-12	895
Ezekiel 48:13-14	897
Ezekiel 48:15-16	898
Ezekiel 48:17-18	899
Ezekiel 48:19-20	900
Ezekiel 48:21-22	901
Ezekiel 48:23-26	902
Ezekiel 48:27-29	903
Ezekiel 48:30-32	905

Ezekiel 48:33-35	906
translationQuestions	907
Ezekiel 1	907
Ezekiel 2	909
Ezekiel 3	911
Ezekiel 4	914
Ezekiel 5	916
Ezekiel 6	918
Ezekiel 7	919
Ezekiel 8	921
Ezekiel 9	922
Ezekiel 10	923
Ezekiel 11	925
Ezekiel 12	927
Ezekiel 13	929
Ezekiel 14	931
Ezekiel 15	933
Ezekiel 16	934
Ezekiel 17	937
Ezekiel 18	939
Ezekiel 19	941
Ezekiel 20	943
Ezekiel 21	946
Ezekiel 22	948
Ezekiel 23	950
Ezekiel 24	953
Ezekiel 25	955
Ezekiel 26	957
Ezekiel 27	959
Ezekiel 28	961
Ezekiel 29	963
Ezekiel 30	965
Ezekiel 31	967
Ezekiel 32	969
Ezekiel 33	971
Ezekiel 34	974
Ezekiel 35	976
Ezekiel 36	978
Ezekiel 37	980
Ezekiel 38	982
Ezekiel 39	984
Ezekiel 40	986
Ezekiel 41	988

Table of Contents

Ezekiel 42	989
Ezekiel 43	990
Ezekiel 44	993
Ezekiel 45	996
Ezekiel 46	998
Ezekiel 47	1000
Ezekiel 48	1002
translationWords	1004
twelve tribes of Israel	1004
abomination, abominable	1005
Abraham, Abram	1006
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress	1007
adversary, enemy	1008
Almighty	1009
altar	1010
marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished	1011
ambassador, representative	1012
Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess	1013
Amorite	1014
angry, anger	1015
anoint, anointed	1016
appoint, appointed	1017
Arabah	1018
Arabia, Arabian	1019
Aram, Aramean, Aramaic	1020
armor	1021
arrogant	1022
Asher	1023
assembly, assemble	1024
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	1025
astray, go astray, led astray, stray	1026
atonement, atone	1027
avenge, revenge, vengeance	1028
Babylon, Babylonian	1029
barren	1030
Bashan	1031
Benjamin	1032
betray, betrayer	1033
biblical time: day	1034
biblical time: month	1035
biblical time: year	1036
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous	1037
bles, blessed, blessing	1038

blood	1040
bloodshed	1041
boast, boastful	1042
bind, bond, bound	1043
bow and arrow	1045
bread	1046
breathe, breath	1047
bribe	1049
bronze	1050
brother	1051
burnt offering, offering by fire	1052
bury, buried, burial	1053
call, calling, called, call out	1054
camel	1056
Canaan, Canaanite	1057
captive, captivity	1058
Translation Suggestions	1059
cedar	1060
Chaldea, Chaldean	1061
chariot	1062
cherubim, cherub	1063
chief	1064
children, child	1065
Christ, Messiah	1066
clan	1068
clean, cleanse	1069
comfort, comforter	1070
command, to command, commandment	1071
commander, command	1072
companion	1073
compassion, compassionate	1074
condemn, condemnation	1075
confidence, confident	1076
consecrate	1077
consume	1078
contempt, contemptible	1079
corrupt, corruption	1080
counsel, counselor, advice, advisor	1081
courtyard, court	1082
covenant	1083
cow, calf, bull, cattle	1085
create, creation, Creator	1086
creature	1087

Table of Contents

Translation Suggestions	1088
crown, to crown	1089
Cush	1090
cut off	1091
Cyprus	1092
Damascus	1093
Dan	1094
Daniel	1095
darkness	1096
David	1097
day of the Lord, day of Yahweh	1098
death, die, dead	1099
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive	1101
declare, declaration	1102
decree	1103
defile, be defiled	1104
descendant, descended from	1105
desecrate	1106
desert, wilderness	1107
desolate, desolation	1108
devastate, devastation	1109
devour	1110
discipline, self-discipline	1111
dishonor, dishonorable	1112
disperse, dispersion	1113
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer	1114
divorce	1115
donkey, mule	1116
doom	1117
doorpost	1118
dove, pigeon	1119
drink offering	1120
drunk, drunkard	1121
eagle	1122
earth, earthly	1123
Eden, garden of Eden	1124
Edom, Edomite, Idumea	1125
Egypt, Egyptian	1126
Elam	1127
elder	1128
enslave, in bondage	1129
envy, covet	1130
Ephraim	1131

everlasting, eternal, eternity	1132
evil, wicked, wickedness	1133
exalt, exaltation	1135
exile, the Exile	1136
Ezekiel	1137
face	1138
faithful, faithfulness	1140
faithless, faithlessness	1141
false god, foreign god, god, goddess	1142
false prophet	1143
famine	1144
ancestor, father, forefather	1145
favor, favorable, favoritism	1146
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh	1147
feast	1148
festival	1149
fire	1150
fir	1151
firstborn	1152
firstfruits	1153
fishermen, fishers	1154
flesh	1155
flock, herd	1156
flood	1157
fool, foolish, folly	1158
foreigner, foreign, alien	1159
forever	1160
forgive, forgiveness	1161
sexual immorality	1162
forsake, forsaken, forsook	1163
foundation, founded	1164
free, freedom, liberty	1165
freewill offering	1166
fruit, fruitful	1167
fulfill	1169
Gad	1170
gate, gate bar	1171
gift	1172
Gilead	1173
glorify	1174
glory, glorious	1175
goat, kid	1176
God	1177

Table of Contents

gold	1179
governor, govern, proconsul, government	1180
grain	1181
grain offering	1182
grape	1183
guilt, guilty	1184
guilt offering	1185
hades, sheol	1186
Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites	1187
hand, right hand, to hand over	1188
Haran	1190
hard, hardness, harden	1191
head	1192
heal, cure	1194
heart	1195
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1196
high places	1197
Hittite	1198
holy, holiness	1199
Holy One	1200
holy place, most holy place	1201
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord	1202
honey, honeycomb	1204
hoof, hoofed, hooves	1205
hope	1206
horror, horrified	1207
horse	1208
house	1209
house of God, Yahweh's house	1210
humble, humility	1211
humiliate, humiliation	1212
idol, idolatrous	1213
image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure	1214
incense	1215
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	1216
iniquity	1218
inquire	1219
integrity	1220
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel	1221
Issachar	1222
Jacob, Israel	1223
jealous, jealousy	1224
Jehoiachin	1225

Jerusalem	1226
Job	1228
Jordan River	1229
Joseph (OT)	1230
joy, joyful	1231
Judah	1232
judge, judgment	1233
just, justice, justly	1235
Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh	1236
kind, kinds	1237
kingdom	1238
kingdom of Israel	1240
Judah, kingdom of Judah	1241
king	1243
know, knowledge, make known	1244
lamb, Lamb of God	1245
lament, lamentation	1247
lamp	1248
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh	1249
Lebanon	1251
Levite, Levi	1252
life, live, living, alive	1253
light	1255
like, likeness	1256
lion	1257
livestock	1258
loins	1259
Lord	1260
Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God	1261
lots, casting lots	1262
love	1263
lowly, lowliness	1265
lust	1266
lute, lyre	1267
magic, magician	1268
majesty	1269
Manasseh	1270
meal offering, grain offering	1271
the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea	1272
Meshech	1273
mighty, might	1274
mind	1275
Moab, Moabite, Moabites	1276

Table of Contents

mock, ridicule, scoff at	1277
Mount Hermon	1278
mourn, mourning	1279
name	1280
Naphtali	1281
nation	1282
Nebuchadnezzar	1283
Negev	1284
neighbor	1285
new moon	1286
Nile River, River of Egypt	1287
Noah	1288
oak	1289
oath, swear, swear by	1290
obey, obedient, obedience	1291
oil	1292
oppress, oppression, oppressor	1293
ox, oxen	1294
palm	1295
parable	1296
peace, peaceful	1297
peace offering	1298
people group, peoples, the people, a people	1299
people of God, my people	1301
perfect	1302
perish, perishing, perishable	1303
Persia, Persians	1304
Pharaoh, king of Egypt	1305
Philistines	1306
pillar, column	1307
pit	1308
plague	1309
pledge	1310
possess, possession	1311
power, powers	1312
priest, priesthood	1313
prince, princess	1315
profane	1316
profit, profitable	1317
promise	1318
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1319
prostitute, harlot, whore	1321
proud, pride, prideful	1322

proverb	1323
province, provincial	1324
provoke	1325
punish, punishment	1326
pure, purify, purification	1328
queen	1329
quench	1330
Rabbah	1331
raise, rise, risen, arise, arose	1332
rebel, rebellious, rebellion	1334
rebuke	1335
reign	1336
reject	1337
rejoice	1338
remnant	1339
repent, repentance	1340
report	1341
reproach	1342
rest	1343
restore, restoration	1344
Reuben	1345
reveal, revelation	1346
righteous, righteousness	1347
robe	1348
rod	1349
royal	1350
ruin, ruins	1351
ruler, rulers, rule	1352
Sabbath	1353
sackcloth	1354
sacrifice, offering	1355
Salt Sea, Dead Sea	1357
Samaria, Samaritan	1358
sanctuary	1359
sandal	1360
save, safe	1361
scepter	1363
scribe, expert in the Jewish law	1364
scroll	1365
seed	1366
seize	1367
send, send out, sent	1368
servant, slave, slavery	1369

Table of Contents

serve, service	1371
set apart	1372
shame, shameful, ashamed	1373
Sheba	1374
sheep, ram, ewe	1375
shepherd, to shepherd	1376
shield	1378
Sidon, Sidonians	1379
siege, besiege	1380
sign, proof, reminder	1381
silver	1383
Simeon	1384
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1385
sin offering	1387
sister	1388
slay, slain	1389
slander, slanderer	1390
slaughter	1391
Sodom	1392
son, son of	1393
Son of Man, son of man	1395
sow, sower, plant	1396
spear	1397
spirit, spiritual	1398
splendor	1400
staff	1401
statute, statutes	1402
stone, stoning	1403
stronghold, fortress, fortified	1404
stumbling block, stone of stumbling	1405
sulfur	1406
sword	1407
Tamar	1408
Tarshish	1409
temple	1410
terror, terrify	1412
threshold	1413
throne	1414
tomb, grave, burial place	1415
tongue	1416
transgress, transgression	1417
trial	1418
tribe	1419

tribute	1420
trumpet	1421
trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1422
Tubal	1423
turn, turn away, turn back	1424
Tyre, Tyrians	1425
uncircumcised, uncircumcision	1426
unclean	1427
unfaithful, unfaithfulness	1428
unjust, unjustly, injustice	1429
unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread	1430
vain, vanity	1431
veil	1432
vine	1433
vineyard	1434
virgin	1435
vision	1436
voice	1437
vow	1438
walk	1439
waste, wasteland	1440
watchtower, tower	1441
water, waters	1442
wheat	1443
wine, wineskin, new wine	1444
wise, wisdom	1445
woe	1446
wolf, wolves, wild dogs	1447
womb	1448
word	1449
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture	1450
works, deeds, work, acts	1452
worship	1453
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	1454
wrath, fury	1455
Yahweh	1456
yoke	1458
Zadok	1459
zeal, zealous	1460
Zebulun	1461
translationAcademy	1462
First, Second or Third Person	1462
Abstract Nouns	1464

Table of Contents

Active or Passive	1467
Apostrophe	1470
Double Negatives	1472
Doublet	1475
Ellipsis	1477
Euphemism	1479
Order of Events	1481
Exclamations	1484
Exclusive “We”	1487
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1489
When Masculine Words Include Women	1491
Hendiadys	1493
Hyperbole	1495
Hypothetical Situations	1498
Idiom	1501
Inclusive “We”	1503
Irony	1505
Litotes	1508
Merism	1510
Metaphor	1512
Metonymy	1517
Nominal Adjectives	1519
Parables	1521
Parallelism	1524
Personification	1526
Pronouns	1528
Rhetorical Question	1530
Simile	1533
Synecdoche	1536
Forms of You	1538
Biblical Distance	1539
Biblical Money	1542
Biblical Volume	1544
Biblical Weight	1548
Fractions	1550
Hebrew Months	1553
How to Translate Names	1556
Numbers	1560
Ordinal Numbers	1563
Symbolic Action	1566
Translate Unknowns	1569
Verse Bridges	1572
Symbolic Prophecy	1574

Proverbs	1576
Symbolic Language	1579

translationNotes

Introduction to Ezekiel

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Ezekiel

1. The approaching destruction of Jerusalem (Chapters 1–27)
 - a) Call of Ezekiel (1:1–3:21)
 - b) Judgment against what people have done (3:22–11:25)
 - c) Prediction of Jerusalem’s fall and captivity of its people (12:1–27:7)
2. The prophecies, oracles, and laments toward neighboring nations (25:1–32:32)
3. Oracles of hope (33:1–48:35)
 - a) New covenant (33:1–22)
 - b) New life (34:1–31)
 - c) Edom the enemy, destroyed (35:1–15)
 - d) Israel restored (36:1–37:28)
 - e) Gog and Magog (38:1–39:29)
 - f) The Temple idealized and the city restored (40:1–48:35)

What is Ezekiel about?

This book contains prophecies that were given between 592 BC and 573 BC. Ezekiel tells the Jewish people in exile in Babylonia that God has punished them for their sin and unfaithfulness to him, but that he will restore Judah. God is using Babylon to punish them, but the enemy nations will be crushed in their turn. There is prophecy about the restoration and renewal of worship, the sacrificial system, and the new temple. The book of Ezekiel ends with the reallocation of the Israel’s land among all the tribes of Israel. Ezekiel concludes with the overarching principle that “Yahweh is there.”

How should the title of this book be translated?

“Ezekiel” may also be called the “The Messages from God brought by Ezekiel.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote the Book of Ezekiel?

The prophecies in the Book of Ezekiel came through Ezekiel, a prophet who lived near Babylon in the time of the exile.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What was Ezekiel's temple?

A large portion of the Book of Ezekiel gives instructions regarding the building of a new temple. However, this temple is not the same as the temple the people would build after going back to Jerusalem. Because Ezekiel's temple has never been built, some people believe that this temple is to be built in the future. Others believe that Ezekiel's temple is symbolic of the Church.

Do the sacrifices in Ezekiel follow the law of Moses?

If one was to compare some of the required sacrifices in Numbers 28 with the sacrifices in Ezekiel 46, there are some differences. These differences probably exist because Ezekiel prophesies about a new temple with a new sacrificial system.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

How do one translate Ezekiel's visions?

The book of Ezekiel has many dazzling visions and stunning images. His visions are complicated and became the foundation for many other books of Scripture that write about the events of the end of this world. His visions should be translated as they appear in the text, with attempts to explain them.

Also, there are events recorded where it is unclear if Ezekiel has traveled to particular places, or that he simply has a mental idea of the places he is describing. The meaning of the visions may be clear, but the prophet's viewpoint may be difficult to understand. Even so, his messages are about Israel's rescue in the far distant future. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

What does "and you will know that I am the Lord" mean?

This is a common phrase that in the book of Ezekiel. It is meant to assure the reader that these messages truly come from God, and that he will do what he has promised. The translator may also use the phrase "and you will understand that I am God and what I say will happen."

List of translationAcademy Topics in Ezekiel

- * [First, Second or Third Person](#) is found in: 43:25
- * [Abstract Nouns](#) is found in: 37:04, 37:07
- * [Active or Passive](#) is found in: 03:20, 06:04, 06:06, 10:12, 11:14, 14:15, 17:07, 20:02, 20:08, 20:27, 20:40, 21:08, 21:14, 21:24, 23:01, 23:46, 24:09, 25:03, 25:08, 26:05, 28:14, 29:13, 30:08, 30:10, 30:15, 31:13, 31:17, 32:03, 32:05, 32:19, 32:22, 32:28, 33:14, 33:21, 33:23, 33:32, 34:28, 35:07, 35:12, 36:04, 36:08, 36:10, 36:19, 36:32, 36:35, 37:07, 37:09, 38:07, 39:07, 39:17, 39:25, 40:01, 40:38, 40:42, 44:01, 44:13, 44:30, 45:06, 45:13

- * **Active or Passive]]** is found in: 38:19
- * **Apostrophe** is found in: 06:01, 21:15
- * **Double Negatives** is found in: 18:29
- * **Doublet** is found in: 02:04, 03:01, 03:04, 03:16, 05:15, 09:03, 14:06, 14:07, 14:22, 16:01, 16:06, 17:17, 18:12, 20:18, 23:28, 23:33, 25:14, 36:01, 36:04, 36:19, 36:32
- * **Ellipsis** is found in: 23:32, 23:38, 31:13
- * **Euphemism** is found in: 16:17, 17:19, 22:10
- * **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information** is found in: 01:10, 01:19, 03:16, 04:16, 05:11, 06:04, 07:12, 08:03, 08:07, 09:03, 09:05, 10:03, 12:19, 12:21, 14:04, 16:15, 16:32, 19:08, 20:25, 22:06, 23:11, 23:24, 23:26, 24:09, 26:01, 30:01, 31:08, 32:03, 32:17, 32:19, 32:24, 32:31, 33:21, 33:25, 34:01, 35:10, 36:10, 37:26, 38:01, 40:01, 45:06, 45:13
- * **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information]]** is found in: 07:10, 36:04
- * **When Masculine Words Include Women** is found in: 21:28, 26:19, 29:08
- * **Hendiadys** is found in: 16:30
- * **Hyperbole** is found in: 18:16, 23:20, 30:10, 35:07
- * **Idiom** is found in: 01:01, 01:19, 01:27, 03:04, 03:14, 03:16, 04:01, 06:01, 07:01, 07:14, 07:26, 08:05, 08:12, 09:07, 09:09, 11:05, 11:14, 11:19, 12:01, 12:08, 12:17, 12:21, 12:26, 13:01, 13:22, 14:01, 14:09, 14:12, 14:19, 15:01, 16:01, 16:25, 16:35, 16:47, 17:01, 17:11, 17:24, 18:01, 18:21, 18:23, 18:24, 18:27, 20:02, 20:04, 20:07, 20:23, 20:25, 20:30, 20:42, 20:45, 21:01, 21:06, 21:08, 21:10, 21:18, 21:25, 22:01, 22:17, 22:23, 23:01, 23:30, 23:32, 23:33, 24:01, 24:15, 24:19, 25:01, 26:01, 27:01, 27:14, 27:24, 28:01, 28:11, 28:20, 29:01, 29:17, 29:21, 30:01, 30:20, 31:01, 31:15, 31:16, 32:01, 32:17, 32:19, 32:26, 33:01, 33:17, 33:23, 33:25, 34:01, 34:09, 34:30, 35:01, 36:16, 36:32, 37:15, 38:01, 38:19, 39:23, 40:03, 40:28, 40:44, 43:06, 44:15, 44:30, 47:13
- * **Litotes** is found in: 12:24, 13:20, 24:25
- * **Merism** is found in: 21:04, 29:08, 30:06
- * **Metaphor** is found in: 02:04, 02:06, 03:04, 03:16, 03:20, 04:06, 04:16, 05:15, 06:08, 07:08, 07:10, 08:01, 11:02, 11:05, 12:11, 13:10, 13:13, 13:17, 14:01, 14:04, 14:07, 14:09, 14:19, 16:06, 16:15, 16:30, 16:35, 16:49, 18:16, 19:05, 19:10, 20:40, 21:15, 22:10, 22:13, 22:17, 22:20, 22:30, 23:08, 23:35, 23:48, 24:06, 24:22, 24:25, 26:01, 28:23, 29:01, 29:06, 30:01, 30:12, 32:07, 33:10, 34:01, 36:26, 38:04, 39:01, 43:06, 43:09, 44:30, 48:13
- * **Metonymy** is found in: 01:01, 01:24, 01:27, 02:04, 03:14, 03:22, 04:01, 04:16, 05:11, 05:13, 05:15, 06:01, 06:08, 06:11, 07:01, 07:03, 07:14, 07:20, 07:23, 09:09, 11:08, 11:11, 11:19, 12:01, 12:03, 12:14, 12:17, 12:19, 13:17, 16:40, 16:43, 18:01, 18:05, 18:10, 18:12, 18:16, 19:05, 19:10, 20:33, 21:15, 21:18, 22:01, 22:13, 23:08, 23:24, 23:30, 23:36, 23:42, 24:19, 25:06, 25:12, 25:15, 26:01, 26:03, 26:05, 26:07, 28:06, 30:04, 30:08, 30:17, 31:10, 31:17, 32:22, 32:24, 33:01, 33:05, 33:10, 33:27, 34:22, 35:01, 35:04, 37:15, 37:18, 38:07, 39:19, 39:21, 47:13
- * **Parables** is found in: 30:20, 31:03

- * **Parallelism** is found in: 05:07, 07:12, 11:16, 11:19, 12:14, 12:26, 13:08, 13:19, 13:22, 14:06, 16:38, 16:53, 17:05, 18:25, 20:23, 20:40, 22:04, 22:13, 22:26, 23:01, 23:11, 23:32, 24:15, 25:06, 30:22, 30:25, 36:19, 39:21
- * **Personification** is found in: 05:05, 07:05, 12:21, 17:24, 24:14, 30:17, 35:04, 36:01, 36:29
- * **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 08:05, 08:12, 08:17, 12:08, 13:05, 14:01, 15:01, 16:20, 17:09, 17:11, 17:15, 17:19, 18:01, 18:12, 18:23, 18:24, 20:04, 20:27, 20:30, 20:48, 21:10, 21:12, 22:01, 22:13, 23:36, 26:15, 27:31, 28:08, 31:01, 33:10, 33:25, 34:01, 34:17, 38:14, 38:17, 47:06
- * **Simile** is found in: 01:07, 01:13, 01:24, 07:14, 13:01, 13:20, 16:15, 32:01, 32:13
- * **Synecdoche** is found in: 03:08, 07:05, 07:08, 07:26, 12:14, 13:20, 13:22, 14:07, 14:09, 16:04, 16:43, 16:49, 16:56, 17:19, 18:31, 20:15, 22:30, 23:26, 24:01, 24:19, 24:25, 29:11, 33:07
- * **Forms of You** is found in: 35:07, 36:10, 36:13, 43:18, 45:18, 45:21, 47:21, 48:19, 48:27
- * **Biblical Distance** is found in: 40:05, 40:08, 40:11, 40:14, 40:17, 40:20, 40:24, 40:26, 40:28, 40:32, 40:35, 40:42, 40:46, 40:48, 48:30, 48:33
- * **Biblical Volume** is found in: 04:09, 45:09, 45:23
- * **Biblical Weight** is found in: 04:09, 45:09
- * **Hebrew Months** is found in: 01:01, 08:01, 20:01, 24:01, 29:01, 29:17, 30:20, 31:01, 32:01, 33:21, 40:01, 45:18, 45:21, 45:25
- * **How to Translate Names** is found in: 01:01, 03:14, 06:13, 08:10, 08:14, 23:01, 23:22, 25:08, 25:12, 25:15, 27:12, 29:13, 30:04, 30:13, 30:15, 30:17, 38:01, 38:04, 39:14, 47:15, 47:18
- * **Numbers** is found in: 39:12, 40:17
- * **Ordinal Numbers** is found in: 01:01, 08:01, 20:01, 24:01, 26:01, 29:01, 29:17, 32:01, 33:21, 39:14, 40:01, 45:18
- * **Translate Unknowns** is found in: 04:09, 04:12, 09:01, 10:09, 28:11
- * **Verse Bridges** is found in: 36:04
- * **Proverbs** is found in: 18:01

List of translationWords in Ezekiel

- * **twelve tribes of Israel** is found in: 47:21, 48:19, 48:27
- * **abomination, abominable** is found in: 06:08, 06:11, 07:03, 07:08, 07:20, 08:05, 08:07, 08:17, 09:03, 11:16, 11:19, 12:14, 14:06, 16:01, 16:20, 18:24, 20:04, 22:01, 33:27
- * **Abraham, Abram** is found in: 33:23
- * **adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress** is found in: 16:32, 16:38, 23:36, 23:43
- * **adversary, enemy** is found in: 16:27, 21:24, 30:15, 32:19, 36:01, 39:23
- * **Almighty** is found in: 01:24, 10:03

- * altar is found in: 06:04, 08:05, 08:16, 09:01, 40:46, 41:21, 43:13, 43:15, 43:20, 45:18, 47:01
- * marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished is found in: 03:14
- * ambassador, representative is found in: 17:15
- * Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess is found in: 21:18, 21:28, 25:01
- * Amorite is found in: 16:01, 16:44
- * angry, anger is found in: 07:12, 08:17, 16:25, 16:38, 16:40, 16:43, 22:20, 23:24, 25:14, 35:10, 36:04, 38:19, 43:06
- * anoint, anointed is found in: 16:09, 28:14
- * Arabah is found in: 47:06
- * Arabia, Arabian is found in: 27:19
- * Aram, Aramean, Aramaic is found in: 27:16
- * armor is found in: 38:04
- * arrogant is found in: 16:49, 28:01, 28:04, 28:16
- * Asher is found in: 48:01, 48:33
- * assembly, assemble is found in: 13:08, 17:17, 32:03, 32:22
- * Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire is found in: 16:27, 23:05, 31:03, 32:22
- * astray, go astray, led astray, stray is found in: 13:10, 48:10
- * atonement, atone is found in: 43:20, 43:25, 45:13, 45:16, 45:18
- * avenge, revenge, vengeance is found in: 24:07, 25:12, 25:14, 25:15
- * Babylon, Babylonian is found in: 12:11, 17:11, 17:15, 17:17, 17:19, 19:08, 21:18, 21:21, 23:14, 23:22, 24:01, 26:07, 29:17, 30:10, 30:22, 32:11
- * barren is found in: 14:15
- * Bashan is found in: 27:06, 39:17
- * Benjamin is found in: 48:21, 48:23, 48:30
- * betray, betrayer is found in: 17:19, 18:24, 20:27, 39:23, 39:25
- * biblical time: day is found in: 01:01, 08:01, 20:01, 24:01, 26:01, 29:01, 30:20, 31:01, 33:21, 40:01, 45:18, 45:21, 45:25
- * biblical time: month is found in: 26:01, 39:12, 39:14
- * biblical time: year is found in: 01:01, 08:01, 20:01, 24:01, 26:01, 29:01, 29:17, 30:20, 31:01, 32:01, 33:21, 40:01
- * blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous is found in: 20:27
- * bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 03:12, 34:25, 44:30

- * blood is found in: 03:16, 05:15, 07:23, 09:09, 16:06, 16:35, 18:10, 18:12, 21:32, 22:01, 23:36, 23:43, 24:06, 28:23, 32:05, 33:01, 33:05, 33:07, 33:25, 36:16, 38:21, 39:17, 43:18, 43:20, 44:06, 44:15, 45:18
- * bloodshed is found in: 14:19, 16:38
- * boast, boastful is found in: 35:12
- * bind, bond, bound is found in: 04:06, 20:36
- * bow and arrow is found in: 21:21, 39:01
- * bread is found in: 04:12, 04:16, 05:15, 12:17, 12:19, 13:19, 14:12, 16:17, 44:06
- * breathe, breath is found in: 37:04
- * bribe is found in: 16:32, 22:10
- * bronze is found in: 01:07, 09:01, 22:17, 24:11, 27:12, 40:03
- * brother is found in: 04:16, 11:14, 18:18, 33:30, 38:21, 47:13
- * burnt offering, offering by fire is found in: 40:38, 40:42, 43:18, 43:22, 43:25, 44:10, 45:13, 45:16, 45:23, 46:01, 46:13
- * bury, buried, burial is found in: 39:14
- * call, calling, called, call out is found in: 16:43, 16:60, 38:07
- * camel is found in: 25:03
- * Canaan, Canaanite is found in: 16:01, 17:01
- * captive, captivity is found in: 03:10, 03:14, 06:08, 12:11, 30:17, 33:21, 39:23, 40:01
- * cedar is found in: 17:01, 17:22, 27:04, 31:03
- * Chaldea, Chaldean is found in: 01:01, 11:24, 12:11, 16:27, 23:14, 23:22
- * chariot is found in: 23:14, 23:24, 26:07, 26:09, 39:19
- * cherubim, cherub is found in: 09:03, 10:01, 10:03, 10:06, 11:22, 28:14, 28:16, 41:18
- * chief is found in: 26:15, 27:19
- * children, child is found in: 05:09, 09:05, 16:20, 16:35, 36:10
- * clan is found in: 11:14, 20:30
- * clean, cleanse is found in: 22:23, 24:13, 43:20, 43:22, 44:23
- * comfort, comforter is found in: 14:22, 16:53, 31:16, 32:31
- * command, to command, commandment is found in: 09:09, 10:06, 12:07, 24:18, 37:07
- * commander, command is found in: 38:07
- * companion is found in: 37:15
- * compassion, compassionate is found in: 07:03, 07:08, 08:17, 09:05, 16:04, 20:15, 36:19, 39:25
- * condemn, condemnation is found in: 05:15, 23:43

- * confidence, confident is found in: 29:15
- * consecrate is found in: 43:25, 46:19, 48:10
- * consume is found in: 15:07, 19:12, 19:14, 28:18
- * contempt, contemptible is found in: 35:12
- * corrupt, corruption is found in: 20:42
- * counsel, counselor, advice, advisor is found in: 07:26
- * courtyard, court is found in: 08:07, 08:16, 09:07, 10:03, 40:17, 40:20, 40:22, 40:28, 40:44, 41:12, 42:01, 42:07, 44:17, 45:18, 46:01, 46:21
- * covenant is found in: 16:08, 16:59, 16:60, 16:62, 17:13, 17:15, 17:17, 17:19, 20:36, 30:04, 34:25, 37:26, 44:06
- * cow, calf, bull, cattle is found in: 01:07, 32:13, 38:13, 45:18, 46:06
- * create, creation, Creator is found in: 21:30, 28:11, 34:28
- * creature is found in: 01:04, 01:07, 01:13, 03:12, 10:20, 29:01, 33:27
- * crown, to crown is found in: 16:09, 21:25, 23:42
- * Cush is found in: 29:08, 30:04, 30:08, 38:04
- * cut off is found in: 14:07, 14:17, 14:19, 14:21, 16:27, 21:01, 21:04, 25:06, 31:12, 35:07, 37:11
- * Cyprus is found in: 27:06
- * Damascus is found in: 27:16, 47:15, 48:01
- * Dan is found in: 27:19, 48:01, 48:30
- * Daniel is found in: 14:12, 14:19, 28:01
- * darkness is found in: 08:12, 12:04, 12:07, 12:11, 32:07, 34:11
- * David is found in: 34:22, 37:24
- * day of the Lord, day of Yahweh is found in: 13:05
- * death, die, dead is found in: 03:16, 05:11, 09:07, 12:11, 13:19, 17:15, 18:03, 18:12, 18:16, 18:18, 18:19, 18:21, 18:23, 18:24, 18:25, 18:27, 18:31, 24:15, 24:18, 28:08, 30:10, 30:22, 31:13, 33:10, 33:12, 39:04, 44:25
- * deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive is found in: 14:09
- * declare, declaration is found in: 05:11, 05:15, 11:08, 11:19, 11:24, 12:21, 12:24, 12:26, 13:05, 13:08, 13:15, 14:09, 14:12, 14:15, 14:17, 14:19, 14:22, 15:07, 16:01, 16:08, 16:13, 16:17, 16:23, 16:30, 16:43, 16:47, 16:56, 16:62, 17:15, 17:19, 17:24, 18:03, 18:08, 18:23, 18:29, 18:31, 20:40, 20:45, 21:06, 21:15, 21:32, 22:10, 22:30, 23:33, 24:14, 25:14, 26:05, 26:12, 28:08, 29:01, 30:06, 31:17, 32:07, 32:13, 32:15, 32:19, 32:31, 33:01, 33:10, 34:07, 34:14, 34:22, 34:30, 35:04, 35:10, 36:04, 36:13, 36:32, 37:13, 38:17, 39:04, 39:09, 43:18, 44:04, 44:10, 45:09, 47:21, 48:27
- * decree is found in: 05:05, 11:11, 11:19, 18:16, 20:10, 20:13, 20:18, 20:25, 36:26, 37:24, 43:10, 44:23

- * defile, be defiled is found in: 05:11, 07:20, 09:07, 14:09, 18:05, 18:10, 18:14, 23:38, 24:19, 28:16, 28:18, 33:25, 36:16, 36:19, 37:21
- * descendant, descended from is found in: 17:13, 20:04, 23:24, 43:18
- * desecrate is found in: 16:25
- * desert, wilderness is found in: 06:13, 19:12, 20:10, 20:13, 20:18, 20:23, 20:33, 20:36, 23:42, 29:04, 34:25
- * desolate, desolation is found in: 05:13, 06:04, 06:06, 12:19, 25:03, 26:19, 29:08, 29:11, 30:12, 30:13, 33:27, 35:01, 35:04, 35:07, 35:12, 35:14, 36:01, 36:04, 36:10, 36:35, 36:37
- * devastate, devastation is found in: 23:33, 32:11
- * devour is found in: 16:20, 19:01, 19:05, 20:45, 21:28, 23:24, 34:28, 35:12, 36:13
- * discipline, self-discipline is found in: 23:48
- * dishonor, dishonorable is found in: 22:06
- * disperse, dispersion is found in: 12:14, 20:23, 29:11, 30:22, 30:25, 34:04
- * divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer is found in: 12:24, 21:21
- * divorce is found in: 44:20
- * donkey, mule is found in: 23:20, 27:14
- * doom is found in: 07:05, 30:08
- * doorpost is found in: 40:08, 40:48, 41:01, 45:18, 46:01
- * dove, pigeon is found in: 07:14
- * drink offering is found in: 20:27, 45:16
- * drunk, drunkard is found in: 23:42
- * eagle is found in: 01:10, 10:12
- * earth, earthly is found in: 27:31, 31:12, 31:15, 31:16, 31:17, 32:03
- * Eden, garden of Eden is found in: 28:11, 31:08, 31:16, 31:17, 36:35
- * Edom, Edomite, Idumea is found in: 16:56, 32:28, 35:01, 35:14, 36:04
- * Egypt, Egyptian is found in: 16:25, 17:15, 19:01, 20:04, 20:07, 20:36, 23:01, 23:08, 23:18, 23:26, 27:06, 29:01, 29:06, 29:11, 29:19, 30:04, 30:15, 31:01, 32:01, 32:11, 32:19
- * Elam is found in: 32:24
- * elder is found in: 07:26, 08:01, 08:10, 14:01, 20:01, 20:02
- * enslave, in bondage is found in: 34:25
- * envy, covet is found in: 31:08
- * Ephraim is found in: 37:15, 48:04
- * everlasting, eternal, eternity is found in: 16:60, 37:26

- * evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 03:16, 05:05, 06:08, 06:11, 07:10, 08:07, 11:02, 13:22, 14:15, 16:23, 16:43, 16:47, 16:56, 18:19, 18:21, 18:23, 18:24, 18:27, 20:42, 21:01, 21:04, 21:25, 22:06, 30:12, 31:10, 33:07, 33:12, 33:17, 34:25, 36:29, 38:10
- * exalt, exaltation is found in: 19:10, 21:25
- * exile, the Exile is found in: 01:01, 11:24, 12:03, 12:04, 12:07, 12:11, 25:03
- * Ezekiel is found in: 01:01, 24:22
- * face is found in: 03:08, 04:01, 04:06, 06:01, 07:20, 08:16, 10:09, 13:17, 14:01, 14:06, 14:07, 15:07, 20:33, 20:45, 21:01, 25:01, 28:08, 29:04, 35:01, 38:01, 39:14, 39:23, 40:28, 42:15, 44:01, 46:01, 46:19, 47:01
- * faithful, faithfulness is found in: 48:10
- * faithless, faithlessness is found in: 37:21, 43:06, 43:09
- * false god, foreign god, god, goddess is found in: 28:01
- * false prophet is found in: 21:28
- * famine is found in: 05:11, 05:15, 06:11, 07:14, 12:14, 14:12, 14:21, 36:29
- * ancestor, father, forefather is found in: 02:01, 05:09, 18:03, 18:16, 18:18, 18:19, 20:04, 20:36, 20:42, 37:24, 47:13
- * favor, favorable, favoritism is found in: 36:08
- * fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 02:06, 03:08, 07:23, 18:14, 26:15, 32:30, 34:28
- * feast is found in: 36:37, 44:23
- * festival is found in: 45:16, 45:21, 46:11
- * fir is found in: 27:04
- * fire is found in: 01:04, 01:13, 01:27, 05:03, 08:01, 10:06, 15:01, 15:07, 19:12, 20:25, 20:30, 20:45, 20:48, 22:20, 23:24, 28:18, 30:08, 30:13, 30:15, 36:04, 39:04
- * firstborn is found in: 20:25
- * firstfruits is found in: 20:40, 44:30, 48:13
- * fishermen, fishers is found in: 47:09
- * flesh is found in: 11:19, 20:48, 21:04, 32:05, 36:26, 37:04, 39:17, 40:42, 44:06, 44:08
- * flock, herd is found in: 24:03, 25:03, 34:01, 34:11, 34:17, 34:22, 36:37, 43:22, 45:13, 45:18, 46:06
- * flood is found in: 13:13
- * fool, foolish, folly is found in: 13:01
- * foreigner, foreign, alien is found in: 11:08, 14:07, 20:36, 22:06, 28:06, 31:12, 44:06, 44:08, 47:21
- * forever is found in: 37:24, 43:06
- * forgive, forgiveness is found in: 16:62

- * sexual immorality is found in: 23:43
- * forsake, forsaken, forsook is found in: 08:12, 20:08, 36:04
- * foundation, founded is found in: 13:13, 30:04
- * free, freedom, liberty is found in: 13:20, 24:13, 46:16
- * freewill offering is found in: 46:11
- * fruit, fruitful is found in: 17:07, 17:09, 19:12, 47:11
- * fulfill is found in: 44:15
- * Gad is found in: 48:27, 48:33
- * gate, gate bar is found in: 08:03, 08:05, 08:14, 09:01, 11:01, 21:15, 21:21, 26:01, 26:09, 27:01, 33:30, 38:10, 40:03, 40:05, 40:20, 40:22, 40:24, 40:26, 40:28, 42:15, 43:01, 44:01, 44:17, 45:18, 46:01, 46:19, 47:01, 48:30
- * gift is found in: 20:25, 20:30, 20:39
- * Gilead is found in: 47:18
- * glorify is found in: 28:20
- * glory, glorious is found in: 01:27, 03:12, 03:22, 08:03, 09:03, 10:03, 11:22, 31:17, 32:11, 39:12, 39:21, 43:01, 44:04
- * goat, kid is found in: 27:19, 34:17, 39:17, 43:22, 45:13, 45:23
- * God is found in: 01:01, 08:03, 09:03, 10:03, 11:02, 11:19, 11:22, 14:09, 20:07, 28:01, 28:08, 28:14, 28:16, 34:22, 36:26, 39:21, 39:28, 40:01, 43:01, 44:01
- * gold is found in: 16:17, 27:22, 28:04, 28:11, 38:13
- * governor, govern, proconsul, government is found in: 23:05, 23:22
- * grain is found in: 36:29, 46:06
- * grain offering is found in: 44:28, 45:16, 45:23, 46:03, 46:06, 46:13, 46:19
- * grape is found in: 18:01
- * guilt, guilty is found in: 22:04, 23:43, 44:13
- * guilt offering is found in: 40:38, 42:13, 44:28, 46:19
- * hades, sheol is found in: 31:15, 31:16, 31:17, 32:19, 32:26
- * Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites is found in: 47:15, 48:01
- * hand, right hand, to hand over is found in: 01:01, 03:14, 03:16, 03:20, 03:22, 06:13, 07:20, 08:01, 11:08, 13:08, 13:20, 16:09, 16:27, 16:38, 20:21, 20:33, 21:24, 21:30, 22:13, 23:08, 23:28, 23:43, 25:06, 25:12, 28:08, 30:10, 30:12, 30:22, 31:10, 33:07, 33:21, 34:09, 34:25, 35:01, 35:04, 37:01, 37:18, 38:10, 38:17, 39:21, 39:23, 40:01
- * Haran is found in: 27:22

- * **hard, hardness, harden** is found in: 02:04, 03:04
- * **head** is found in: 11:19, 16:09, 22:30
- * **heal, cure** is found in: 34:04
- * **heart** is found in: 02:04, 03:04, 06:08, 11:19, 13:22, 14:01, 14:07, 16:30, 18:31, 20:15, 21:06, 21:15, 28:01, 28:04, 28:06, 28:16, 31:10, 33:30, 36:04, 36:26, 38:10, 44:04, 44:08
- * **heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly** is found in: 01:01, 08:03, 29:04, 31:05, 31:13, 32:03, 32:07
- * **high places** is found in: 06:01, 06:06, 16:15, 16:23, 16:25, 16:30, 16:38, 20:27, 36:01
- * **Hittite** is found in: 16:01, 16:44
- * **holy, holiness** is found in: 07:23, 20:10, 20:18, 20:39, 20:40, 22:06, 28:14, 28:18, 28:20, 36:19, 37:26, 38:14, 38:21, 39:07, 39:25, 42:13, 42:20, 43:06, 43:12, 44:13, 44:19, 45:01, 45:03, 46:19, 48:10, 48:13, 48:17, 48:19
- * **Holy One** is found in: 39:07
- * **holy place, most holy place** is found in: 37:26, 41:01, 41:03, 41:15, 41:21, 44:08, 44:25, 45:03, 48:10, 48:21
- * **Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord** is found in: 01:10, 01:19, 02:01, 03:12, 03:14, 03:24, 08:03, 11:01, 11:05, 11:24, 37:01, 39:28, 43:03
- * **honey, honeycomb** is found in: 03:01, 16:13, 16:17, 20:04, 27:16
- * **hoof, hoofed, hooves** is found in: 26:09, 32:13
- * **hope** is found in: 19:05
- * **horror, horrified** is found in: 23:33
- * **horse** is found in: 17:15, 23:05, 26:07, 26:09, 27:14, 38:04, 39:19
- * **house** is found in: 02:04, 02:07, 03:01, 03:26, 04:01, 05:03, 06:11, 08:05, 08:10, 08:17, 09:07, 09:09, 10:03, 10:18, 11:14, 12:01, 12:03, 12:04, 12:08, 12:24, 12:26, 14:04, 17:01, 17:11, 18:05, 20:04, 22:17, 23:38, 24:03, 24:19, 25:03, 33:07, 33:17, 34:30, 36:10, 36:16, 37:11, 39:12, 40:03, 40:46, 41:05, 41:25, 42:15, 43:03, 44:04, 44:10, 44:30, 45:18, 47:01
- * **house of God, Yahweh's house** is found in: 08:14, 08:16, 11:01
- * **humble, humility** is found in: 21:25
- * **humiliate, humiliation** is found in: 16:53
- * **idol, idolatrous** is found in: 06:04, 07:20, 08:03, 08:05, 08:10, 14:01, 14:07, 16:35, 18:05, 18:12, 18:14, 20:07, 20:15, 20:18, 20:30, 20:39, 21:21, 22:01, 23:05, 23:30, 23:36, 30:13, 33:25, 36:16, 36:24, 37:21, 44:10
- * **image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure** is found in: 08:10, 16:20
- * **incense** is found in: 08:10, 20:27, 20:40, 23:40
- * **inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir** is found in: 33:23, 35:14, 36:10, 44:28, 45:01, 46:16, 47:13, 48:27

- * **iniquity** is found in: 04:16, 07:14, 07:17, 09:09, 11:02, 14:01, 14:07, 18:18, 18:19, 18:24, 18:25, 18:29, 21:24, 21:25, 24:22, 29:15, 36:32, 39:23, 43:10
- * **inquire** is found in: 20:01, 20:30
- * **integrity** is found in: 28:14
- * **Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel** is found in: 02:01, 03:01, 04:01, 04:12, 05:03, 06:01, 07:01, 08:03, 09:03, 10:18, 11:05, 11:08, 11:11, 11:13, 11:14, 11:16, 11:22, 12:04, 12:08, 12:19, 12:21, 12:24, 12:26, 13:01, 13:15, 14:01, 14:04, 14:07, 17:01, 17:22, 18:01, 18:03, 19:01, 19:08, 20:01, 21:25, 22:06, 24:19, 25:03, 33:07, 33:17, 33:23, 33:27, 34:01, 34:11, 34:30, 35:04, 35:10, 35:12, 36:01, 36:16, 37:11, 37:15, 38:07, 39:01, 39:12, 40:01, 43:01, 44:01, 44:06, 44:08, 44:15, 45:06, 47:13, 48:01, 48:10
- * **Issachar** is found in: 48:23, 48:33
- * **Jacob, Israel** is found in: 20:04, 28:25, 37:24, 39:25
- * **jealous, jealousy** is found in: 08:03, 08:05
- * **Jehoiachin** is found in: 01:01
- * **Jerusalem** is found in: 04:01, 04:06, 04:16, 05:05, 05:15, 08:03, 09:03, 11:05, 11:14, 12:08, 12:19, 13:15, 14:21, 14:22, 15:05, 16:01, 17:11, 17:15, 21:01, 21:18, 22:17, 23:01, 24:01, 26:01, 33:21, 36:37
- * **Job** is found in: 14:12, 14:19
- * **Jordan River** is found in: 47:18
- * **Joseph (OT)** is found in: 37:15, 47:13, 48:30
- * **joy, joyful** is found in: 07:05, 24:25, 36:04
- * **Judah** is found in: 08:17, 21:18, 25:03, 48:04, 48:21, 48:30
- * **judge, judgment** is found in: 05:15, 07:03, 07:08, 07:23, 07:26, 11:08, 11:11, 17:19, 18:16, 18:29, 20:04, 20:33, 20:36, 21:30, 22:01, 23:08, 25:08, 30:13, 30:17, 33:17, 34:17, 34:20, 35:10, 36:19, 38:21, 39:21, 44:23
- * **just, justice, justly** is found in: 18:05, 18:08, 18:19, 18:21, 18:27, 22:29, 28:20, 28:25, 33:14, 33:17, 34:14, 45:09
- * **Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh** is found in: 47:18, 48:27
- * **kind, kinds** is found in: 47:09, 47:11
- * **king** is found in: 01:01, 07:26, 17:11, 17:15, 17:17, 19:08, 21:18, 21:21, 24:01, 26:07, 27:31, 27:34, 29:01, 29:17, 30:10, 30:20, 31:01, 32:01, 32:09, 32:11, 32:28, 37:21, 43:06
- * **kingdom** is found in: 17:13, 29:13, 29:15, 37:21
- * **kingdom of Israel** is found in: 27:16
- * **Judah, kingdom of Judah** is found in: 04:06, 08:01, 09:09, 27:16, 37:15
- * **know, knowledge, make known** is found in: 02:04, 07:03, 12:14, 12:19, 13:13, 13:20, 15:07, 17:24, 20:10, 20:25, 22:01, 22:13, 23:48, 24:22, 25:03, 26:05, 29:21, 30:08, 34:25, 36:35, 37:01, 37:04, 37:13, 39:04, 39:23, 44:23

- * lamb, Lamb of God is found in: 27:19, 39:17, 46:03
- * lament, lamentation is found in: 02:09, 19:01, 19:14, 21:12, 26:17, 27:01, 27:31, 32:01, 32:15
- * lamp is found in: 32:07
- * law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh is found in: 07:26, 22:26, 44:23
- * Lebanon is found in: 17:01, 27:04, 31:03, 31:15, 31:16
- * Levite, Levi is found in: 40:46, 43:18, 44:10, 44:15, 45:03, 48:10, 48:21, 48:30
- * life, live, living, alive is found in: 01:04, 01:15, 05:11, 12:01, 13:17, 13:19, 13:20, 14:15, 14:19, 16:04, 16:06, 16:27, 16:46, 17:15, 17:17, 17:19, 18:03, 18:12, 18:16, 18:19, 18:21, 18:23, 18:24, 18:27, 18:31, 20:10, 26:17, 28:25, 29:04, 33:12, 33:27, 37:01, 37:13, 38:07, 38:10, 39:04, 43:06, 47:09
- * light is found in: 32:07
- * like, likeness is found in: 01:04, 01:27, 10:01, 31:01
- * lion is found in: 01:10, 10:12, 19:01, 19:05, 22:23, 32:01, 41:18
- * livestock is found in: 32:13
- * loins is found in: 21:06
- * Lord is found in: 18:25, 18:29, 21:08, 33:17
- * Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God is found in: 02:04, 03:10, 03:26, 04:14, 05:05, 05:07, 05:11, 06:01, 06:11, 07:01, 07:05, 08:01, 09:07, 11:05, 11:08, 11:13, 11:16, 11:19, 12:08, 12:19, 12:21, 12:24, 12:26, 13:01, 13:08, 13:13, 13:15, 13:17, 13:20, 14:04, 14:06, 14:09, 14:12, 14:15, 14:19, 14:21, 14:22, 15:05, 15:07, 16:01, 16:13, 16:17, 16:23, 16:30, 16:35, 16:43, 16:47, 16:59, 16:62, 17:01, 17:09, 17:15, 17:19, 17:22, 18:03, 18:08, 18:23, 18:29, 20:02, 20:39, 20:42, 21:06, 21:24, 22:01, 22:10, 22:17, 22:26, 22:30, 23:22, 23:28, 23:32, 23:46, 24:03, 24:09, 24:14, 24:19, 25:03, 25:12, 25:15, 26:03, 26:12, 26:15, 26:19, 27:01, 28:01, 28:11, 28:20, 28:23, 29:01, 29:08, 29:13, 30:01, 30:06, 30:13, 30:22, 31:10, 31:15, 31:17, 32:03, 32:07, 32:11, 32:13, 32:31, 33:10, 33:25, 34:01, 34:07, 34:17, 34:30, 35:01, 35:10, 35:14, 36:01, 36:13, 36:22, 36:32, 36:37, 37:01, 37:09, 37:18, 38:01, 38:10, 38:14, 38:17, 38:21, 39:01, 39:12, 39:17, 39:25, 43:18, 43:25, 44:06, 44:15, 44:25, 45:09, 45:13, 45:18, 46:01, 46:16, 47:13, 47:21, 48:27
- * lots, casting lots is found in: 24:06, 45:01, 47:21, 48:27
- * love is found in: 16:08, 16:35
- * lowly, lowliness is found in: 17:13, 21:25, 29:13
- * lust is found in: 16:25, 16:27, 16:35, 23:05, 23:30, 24:19
- * lute, lyre is found in: 26:12
- * magic, magician is found in: 13:17, 13:20
- * majesty is found in: 16:13, 17:22, 32:17
- * Manasseh is found in: 48:04
- * meal offering, grain offering is found in: 44:30

- * the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea is found in: 47:09, 47:15, 47:18, 48:01, 48:27
- * Meshech is found in: 27:12, 32:26, 38:01, 39:01
- * mighty, might is found in: 03:04, 07:23, 17:17, 20:33, 33:27
- * mind is found in: 11:05, 13:01, 13:17, 16:43, 16:60, 20:30, 40:03
- * Moab, Moabite, Moabites is found in: 25:08
- * mock, ridicule, scoff at is found in: 22:04, 36:04
- * Mount Hermon is found in: 27:04
- * mourn, mourning is found in: 31:15
- * name is found in: 20:08, 20:21, 20:27, 20:39, 20:42, 24:01, 36:19, 39:07, 39:25, 43:06, 48:33
- * Naphtali is found in: 48:01, 48:04, 48:33
- * nation is found in: 02:01, 03:04, 04:12, 05:05, 06:08, 11:11, 11:16, 12:14, 16:13, 19:01, 19:08, 20:08, 20:21, 20:23, 20:30, 22:04, 23:30, 25:06, 26:03, 28:06, 28:25, 29:11, 29:15, 30:01, 30:10, 30:22, 31:05, 31:10, 31:16, 32:01, 32:09, 32:11, 32:17, 34:28, 35:10, 36:01, 36:04, 36:07, 36:13, 36:19, 36:24, 36:29, 36:35, 37:21, 38:10, 38:14, 39:07, 39:21
- * Nebuchadnezzar is found in: 26:07, 29:17, 29:19, 30:10
- * Negev is found in: 20:45
- * neighbor is found in: 16:25, 18:05, 18:10, 18:14, 22:10, 33:25
- * new moon is found in: 45:16, 46:01, 46:06
- * Nile River, River of Egypt is found in: 29:01, 29:04
- * Noah is found in: 14:12, 14:19
- * oak is found in: 06:13, 27:06
- * oath, swear, swear by is found in: 16:59, 17:13, 17:15, 17:17, 17:19, 20:04, 20:15, 20:23, 21:21, 36:07, 44:10
- * obey, obedient, obedience is found in: 20:10, 33:30, 33:32, 37:24, 43:10
- * oil is found in: 16:09, 16:13, 16:17, 23:40, 27:16, 32:13, 45:13, 45:23, 46:03
- * oppress, oppression, oppressor is found in: 18:07, 18:12, 18:16, 18:18, 22:06, 22:10, 22:29, 45:08
- * ox, oxen is found in: 01:10
- * palm is found in: 40:14, 40:22, 40:26, 41:18
- * parable is found in: 17:01, 20:48, 24:03
- * peace, peaceful is found in: 07:23, 13:10, 13:15, 34:25, 34:28, 37:26
- * peace offering is found in: 43:25, 45:13, 45:16, 46:01

- * **people group, peoples, the people, a people** is found in: 03:04, 11:01, 11:16, 13:05, 13:17, 17:09, 20:33, 21:28, 22:29, 25:03, 26:01, 27:01, 27:10, 27:31, 29:13, 32:03, 32:09, 33:01, 33:17, 34:11, 38:04, 38:07, 39:12, 39:25
- * **people of God, my people** is found in: 02:01, 13:22, 14:07, 21:12, 25:14, 34:30, 35:04, 36:08, 36:26, 37:26, 39:07, 43:06, 44:23, 45:08, 45:09
- * **perfect** is found in: 16:13, 27:01, 28:11
- * **perish, perishing, perishable** is found in: 07:26, 33:12
- * **Persia, Persians** is found in: 27:10, 38:04
- * **Pharaoh, king of Egypt** is found in: 17:17, 29:01, 30:20, 31:01, 32:01, 32:31
- * **Philistines** is found in: 16:27, 16:56, 25:15
- * **pillar, column** is found in: 06:04, 26:09, 42:04
- * **pit** is found in: 26:19, 28:08, 31:13, 31:16, 32:17, 32:22, 32:24, 32:28
- * **plague** is found in: 05:11, 05:15, 06:11, 07:14, 12:14, 14:19, 14:21, 24:15, 28:23, 33:27, 38:21
- * **pledge** is found in: 18:07, 18:12, 18:16
- * **possess, possession** is found in: 35:10, 36:01, 36:10
- * **power, powers** is found in: 01:01, 17:13, 22:06
- * **priest, priesthood** is found in: 01:01, 07:26, 22:26, 40:44, 41:10, 42:13, 43:18, 43:22, 43:25, 44:13, 44:15, 44:30, 45:03, 45:18, 46:01, 46:19, 48:10
- * **prince, princess** is found in: 07:26, 12:08, 12:11, 17:11, 22:26, 30:13, 32:30, 39:17, 45:06, 45:16, 45:21, 46:01, 46:06, 48:21
- * **profane** is found in: 13:19, 20:08, 20:13, 20:18, 20:39, 21:25, 22:06, 22:26, 25:03, 28:06, 36:19, 36:22, 39:07, 43:06, 44:06, 44:23
- * **profit, profitable** is found in: 18:08, 18:12, 18:16, 22:10, 33:30
- * **promise** is found in: 17:17
- * **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess** is found in: 02:04, 04:06, 06:01, 11:02, 11:13, 12:26, 13:01, 13:08, 13:15, 13:17, 14:04, 14:07, 20:45, 21:01, 21:08, 21:14, 22:23, 25:01, 28:20, 30:01, 33:30, 33:32, 34:01, 35:01, 36:01, 37:04, 38:01, 38:17, 39:01
- * **prostitute, harlot, whore** is found in: 06:08, 16:15, 16:17, 16:27, 16:30, 16:32, 16:35, 16:40, 20:30, 23:01, 23:26
- * **proud, pride, prideful** is found in: 07:10, 07:23, 16:56, 24:19, 30:06, 33:27
- * **proverb** is found in: 12:21, 14:07, 16:44, 18:01, 18:03, 24:03
- * **province, provincial** is found in: 19:08
- * **provoke** is found in: 20:27

- * **punish, punishment** is found in: 04:04, 14:21, 14:22, 16:38, 16:40, 17:19, 21:25, 23:24, 23:30, 23:43, 25:15, 35:04
- * **pure, purify, purification** is found in: 16:04, 36:24, 36:32, 37:21, 39:12, 39:14, 43:25
- * **queen** is found in: 16:13
- * **quench** is found in: 20:45, 20:48
- * **Rabbah** is found in: 21:18, 25:03
- * **raise, rise, risen, arise, arose** is found in: 03:22, 17:24, 23:46, 26:03
- * **rebel, rebellious, rebellion** is found in: 02:01, 03:08, 12:01, 12:03, 12:08, 12:24, 17:11, 17:15, 20:08, 20:13, 20:21, 20:36, 24:03, 44:06
- * **rebuke** is found in: 03:26, 05:15
- * **reign** is found in: 20:33
- * **reject** is found in: 05:05, 20:13
- * **rejoice** is found in: 07:12, 18:23, 21:10, 25:06, 35:14
- * **remnant** is found in: 06:08, 09:07, 11:13, 14:22, 23:24, 25:15
- * **repent, repentance** is found in: 14:06, 18:29, 18:31, 33:10, 33:12
- * **report** is found in: 40:03
- * **reproach** is found in: 05:13, 22:04, 44:13
- * **rest** is found in: 24:14, 37:13, 39:25
- * **restore, restoration** is found in: 16:53, 29:13, 34:04, 39:25
- * **Reuben** is found in: 48:04, 48:30
- * **reveal, revelation** is found in: 21:24, 22:10, 23:28, 40:03, 43:10
- * **righteous, righteousness** is found in: 03:20, 13:22, 14:12, 14:19, 18:05, 18:08, 18:19, 18:21, 18:24, 18:25, 18:27, 21:01, 21:04, 23:43, 33:12, 33:17, 45:09
- * **robe** is found in: 16:08, 26:15, 27:24
- * **rod** is found in: 20:36, 21:10
- * **royal** is found in: 17:13
- * **ruin, ruins** is found in: 19:05, 21:25, 26:01, 28:16, 29:08, 30:04, 33:23, 33:27, 35:04, 36:32, 36:35, 38:07, 38:10
- * **ruler, rulers, rule** is found in: 19:10, 21:25, 22:06, 28:01, 31:10, 44:01
- * **Sabbath** is found in: 20:10, 20:13, 20:18, 22:06, 22:26, 44:23, 45:16, 46:01
- * **sackcloth** is found in: 07:17, 27:31
- * **sacrifice, offering** is found in: 16:20, 20:27, 20:40, 39:17, 40:42, 44:10, 45:01, 46:21, 48:08, 48:19
- * **Salt Sea, Dead Sea** is found in: 47:06, 47:11

- * Samaria, Samaritan is found in: 16:46, 16:51, 16:53, 23:01, 23:33
- * sanctuary is found in: 05:11, 08:05, 09:05, 11:16, 21:01, 23:38, 24:19, 25:03, 40:48, 41:08, 41:10, 41:12, 41:15, 42:01, 42:07, 42:10, 43:20, 44:01, 44:06, 44:15, 45:18, 47:11
- * sandal is found in: 16:09
- * save, safe is found in: 07:17, 13:17, 33:05, 33:12, 34:22, 36:29, 37:21
- * scepter is found in: 19:10, 19:14, 21:10, 21:12
- * scribe, expert in the Jewish law is found in: 09:01, 09:03
- * scroll is found in: 02:09, 03:01
- * seed is found in: 17:05, 36:08
- * seize is found in: 18:12, 18:16, 36:04
- * send, send out, sent is found in: 02:01, 03:04, 07:03, 13:05, 14:12, 14:21, 14:22, 17:15, 20:36, 34:25, 37:01, 38:04, 39:04, 39:28
- * servant, slave, slavery is found in: 28:25, 34:22, 37:24, 38:17, 44:10, 46:16
- * serve, service is found in: 40:46, 43:18, 44:10, 44:19, 45:03, 48:10
- * set apart is found in: 28:25, 37:26
- * shame, shameful, ashamed is found in: 07:17, 16:27, 16:51, 16:53, 16:56, 16:60, 22:10, 23:08, 23:20, 23:26, 23:35, 23:48, 24:13, 32:24, 32:30, 36:07, 36:13, 36:29, 36:32, 39:25, 43:10
- * Sheba is found in: 27:22
- * sheep, ram, ewe is found in: 27:19, 34:14, 34:17, 39:17, 43:22, 45:13, 45:23, 46:03
- * shepherd, to shepherd is found in: 34:01, 34:11, 34:22, 37:24
- * shield is found in: 27:10, 32:26, 39:09
- * Sidon, Sidonians is found in: 27:08, 28:20, 32:30
- * siege, besiege is found in: 04:01, 04:06, 17:17, 21:21, 24:01, 26:07
- * sign, proof, reminder is found in: 04:01, 12:04, 12:11, 14:07, 20:10, 20:18, 24:22
- * silver is found in: 16:17, 27:12, 28:04
- * Simeon is found in: 48:23, 48:33
- * sin, sinful, sinner, sinning is found in: 02:01, 03:16, 03:20, 04:04, 07:12, 14:12, 15:07, 16:49, 16:51, 18:03, 18:14, 18:16, 18:19, 18:21, 18:24, 21:24, 23:48, 28:16, 33:05, 33:07, 33:10, 33:12, 36:29, 37:21, 39:23, 44:10
- * sin offering is found in: 40:38, 42:13, 43:18, 43:22, 44:25, 44:28, 45:18, 45:21, 45:25, 46:19
- * sister is found in: 16:46, 23:11
- * slay, slain is found in: 28:23
- * slander, slanderer is found in: 22:06, 36:01

- * slaughter is found in: 21:10, 21:14, 21:15, 23:38, 26:09, 26:15, 34:01, 40:38, 44:10
- * Sodom is found in: 16:46, 16:47, 16:49, 16:53, 16:56
- * son, son of is found in: 05:09, 16:20, 18:03, 18:10, 18:19, 19:01, 23:36, 40:46, 46:16
- * Son of Man, son of man is found in: 02:01, 02:06, 03:01, 03:24, 04:01, 05:01, 06:01, 07:01, 08:05, 11:02, 11:14, 12:01, 12:03, 12:08, 12:17, 12:21, 12:26, 13:01, 13:17, 14:01, 15:01, 16:01, 17:01, 20:02, 21:01, 21:12, 21:14, 22:01, 23:01, 23:36, 24:01, 25:01, 26:01, 27:01, 28:01, 30:01, 31:01, 32:01, 32:17, 33:01, 33:23, 34:01, 35:01, 36:01, 37:01, 37:09, 38:01, 39:01, 40:03, 43:06, 43:10, 44:04, 47:06
- * sow, sower, plant is found in: 36:08
- * spear is found in: 39:09
- * spirit, spiritual is found in: 01:19, 10:15, 11:19, 13:01, 18:31, 21:06, 36:04, 36:26, 37:04
- * splendor is found in: 25:08, 27:10, 28:06, 28:16
- * staff is found in: 04:16, 05:15, 14:12
- * statute, statutes is found in: 05:05, 11:11, 11:19, 18:08, 18:16, 18:19, 18:21, 20:10, 20:13, 20:18, 20:25, 33:14, 36:26, 37:24, 44:04, 44:23, 46:13
- * stone, stoning is found in: 11:19, 16:40, 20:30, 23:46
- * stronghold, fortress, fortified is found in: 19:08, 30:15
- * stumbling block, stone of stumbling is found in: 03:20, 07:17, 14:01, 14:07, 18:29, 44:10
- * sulfur is found in: 38:21
- * sword is found in: 05:01, 05:11, 05:15, 06:01, 06:08, 07:14, 11:08, 12:14, 14:17, 14:21, 16:40, 17:19, 21:01, 21:04, 21:08, 21:10, 21:14, 21:18, 21:28, 21:30, 23:08, 23:24, 23:46, 24:19, 25:12, 26:05, 26:09, 28:06, 28:23, 29:08, 30:04, 31:17, 32:09, 32:11, 32:19, 32:22, 32:24, 33:01, 33:05, 33:25, 35:04, 38:04, 38:07, 38:21, 39:23
- * Tamar is found in: 48:27
- * Tarshish is found in: 27:12, 27:24, 38:13
- * temple is found in: 08:16, 40:05, 40:44, 41:01, 45:18, 46:21, 47:01, 48:08, 48:21
- * terror, terrify is found in: 07:17, 23:46, 26:17, 30:08, 30:13, 31:12, 32:09, 32:11, 32:22, 32:24, 39:25
- * threshold is found in: 09:03, 10:03, 10:18, 40:05, 43:06, 46:01, 47:01
- * throne is found in: 01:26, 10:01, 26:15, 43:06
- * tomb, grave, burial place is found in: 32:22, 32:24, 37:11, 39:11
- * tongue is found in: 36:01
- * transgress, transgression is found in: 14:09, 18:21, 18:27, 18:29, 18:31, 21:24, 33:10
- * trial is found in: 21:12
- * tribe is found in: 37:18, 45:08, 47:13, 48:01, 48:23

- * **tribute** is found in: 20:40, 27:14
- * **trumpet** is found in: 07:14, 33:01
- * **trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness** is found in: 16:15, 33:12
- * **Tubal** is found in: 27:12, 32:26, 38:01, 39:01
- * **turn, turn away, turn back** is found in: 14:06, 18:21, 18:23, 18:24, 18:27, 18:29
- * **Tyre, Tyrians** is found in: 26:01, 26:15, 27:01, 27:08, 27:31, 28:01, 29:17
- * **uncircumcised, uncircumcision** is found in: 28:08, 31:17, 32:19, 32:24, 32:28, 32:30, 32:31, 44:06, 44:08
- * **unclean** is found in: 04:12, 04:14, 07:20, 20:07, 20:25, 20:30, 20:42, 22:01, 22:26, 23:05, 23:30, 24:11, 24:13, 36:16, 36:29, 39:23, 44:23, 44:25
- * **unjust, unjustly, injustice** is found in: 03:20, 18:12, 18:16
- * **unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread** is found in: 45:21
- * **vain, vanity** is found in: 14:22
- * **veil** is found in: 13:17, 13:20, 24:15
- * **vine** is found in: 15:01, 17:05, 17:07, 19:10
- * **vineyard** is found in: 28:25
- * **virgin** is found in: 09:05, 23:01, 44:20
- * **vision** is found in: 01:01, 07:12, 07:26, 08:03, 10:20, 11:24, 12:21, 12:24, 12:26, 13:05, 13:08, 13:15, 21:28, 40:01, 43:03
- * **voice** is found in: 01:24, 10:03, 19:08, 27:28, 43:01
- * **walk** is found in: 05:05, 11:11, 11:19, 16:47, 18:08, 18:16, 20:13, 20:18, 23:30, 33:14, 36:10, 36:26, 37:24
- * **waste, wasteland** is found in: 06:06, 12:19, 13:01, 14:15, 15:07, 29:08, 29:11
- * **watchtower, tower** is found in: 26:03, 27:10
- * **water, waters** is found in: 26:19, 27:34, 31:03, 32:01
- * **wheat** is found in: 04:09, 27:16, 45:13
- * **wine, wineskin, new wine** is found in: 27:16, 44:20
- * **wise, wisdom** is found in: 28:01, 28:04, 28:06
- * **woe** is found in: 02:09, 13:01, 13:17, 16:23, 21:15, 24:06, 30:01, 34:01
- * **wolf, wolves, wild dogs** is found in: 22:26
- * **womb** is found in: 20:25
- * **word** is found in: 02:06, 03:04, 12:24, 12:26, 33:07, 33:30

- * word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture is found in: 01:01, 03:16, 06:01, 11:14, 12:01, 12:08, 12:17, 12:26, 13:01, 14:01, 14:12, 15:01, 16:01, 16:35, 17:01, 17:11, 18:01, 20:02, 21:01, 22:01, 23:01, 24:01, 25:01, 26:01, 27:01, 28:01, 30:01, 31:01, 32:01, 32:17, 33:01, 33:23, 34:01, 35:01, 36:01, 36:16, 37:04, 38:01
- * works, deeds, work, acts is found in: 03:16, 06:06, 16:30, 20:42, 36:16, 36:29
- * worship is found in: 08:16, 20:30, 20:39, 20:40, 44:15, 46:01, 46:09
- * worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless is found in: 23:42
- * wrath, fury is found in: 05:13, 05:15, 07:03, 07:08, 09:07, 13:13, 20:08, 20:21, 20:33, 22:20, 24:07
- * Yahweh is found in: 01:01, 03:12, 03:14, 04:12, 06:06, 07:01, 09:03, 10:03, 11:05, 11:08, 11:11, 11:14, 11:22, 11:24, 12:14, 12:19, 12:21, 12:24, 13:05, 14:04, 14:07, 15:07, 16:56, 16:62, 17:24, 20:01, 20:04, 20:25, 20:45, 20:48, 21:04, 21:15, 29:21, 32:15, 33:21, 33:30, 34:22, 35:07, 35:12, 36:19, 37:01, 39:28, 40:01, 40:46, 41:21, 42:13, 43:03, 43:22, 44:01, 45:01, 46:03, 48:08
- * yoke is found in: 30:17, 34:25
- * Zadok is found in: 40:46, 43:18, 44:15, 48:10
- * zeal, zealous is found in: 39:25
- * Zebulun is found in: 48:23, 48:27, 48:33

Ezekiel 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Ezekiel's call

Ezekiel had a vision of God calling him to prophetic ministry. (See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#) and [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

Ezekiel 1:1-3**UDB:**

1-2 "When I, Ezekiel, was thirty years old, I was living among the Israelite people by the Chebar Canal, which was south of Babylon. The Babylonians had taken us from the land of Judah and brought us here. On the fifth day of the fourth month of that year, it was as though the sky opened and I saw visions from God.

The fifth day of the fourth month was almost five years after King Jehoiachin had been exiled." ³ So God gave Ezekiel the priest, son of Buzi, messages in Babylonia while he was beside the Chebar Canal. Yahweh's power went to him there.

ULB:

1 ¹ In the thirtieth year, the fourth month, and the fifth day of the month, it came about that I was living among the captives by the Chebar Canal. The heavens opened, and I saw visions of God. ² On the fifth day of that month—it was the fifth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin—³ the word of Yahweh came with power to Ezekiel son of Buzi the priest, in the land of the Chaldeans by the Chebar Canal, the hand of Yahweh was upon him there.

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- biblical time: day
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- vision
- God
- exile, the Exile
- king
- Jehoiachin
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- power, powers
- Ezekiel
- priest, priesthood
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **In the thirtieth year** - This is the thirtieth year of Ezekiel's life. (See: **Ordinal Numbers**)

- **the fourth month, and the fifth day of the month** - “the fifth day of the fourth month.” This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifth day is around the end of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **it came about that** - This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **I was living among the captives** - The word “I” refers to Ezekiel. “I was one of the captives”
- **I saw visions of God** - “God showed me unusual things”
- **it was the fifth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin** - Throughout the book, Ezekiel will date his prophecies based on when the Babylonians forced Jehoiachin to leave Jerusalem.
- **to Ezekiel ... upon him there** - Ezekiel speaks of himself as if he were another person. AT: “to me, Ezekiel ... upon me there” (See: [Pronouns](#))
- **the word of Yahweh came with power to Ezekiel** - “Yahweh spoke strongly to Ezekiel”
- **Buzi** - the name of a man (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the Chebar Canal** - This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. “the Chebar River”
- **the hand of Yahweh was upon him** - The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. A person with his hand on another person has power over that other person. AT: “Yahweh was controlling him” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Yahweh** - This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 1:4-6

UDB:

⁴ In one of the visions, I saw a windstorm coming from the north. There was a huge cloud, and lightning was flashing within it continually, and a brilliant light surrounded the cloud. In the center of where the lightning was flashing, there was amber-colored fire. ⁵ In the center of the storm I saw what resembled four living creatures. They resembled humans, ⁶ but each of them had four faces and four wings.

ULB:

⁴ Then I looked, and there was a windstorm coming from the north; a great cloud with fire flashing within it and brightness surrounding it and inside of it, and the fire was the color of amber inside the cloud. ⁵ In the middle was the likeness of four living creatures. This was their appearance: they had the likeness of a man, ⁶ but they had four faces each, and each of the creatures had four wings.

translationWords:

- fire
- like, likeness
- life, live, living, alive
- creature

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.
- **a windstorm** - This is a storm that has a lot of wind.
- **coming from the north** - North is the direction to your left when you look toward the sun while it is rising.
- **a great cloud with fire flashing within it** - This can be translated as a new sentence: “The storm had a very large cloud with fire flashing in it”
- **fire flashing** - Possible meanings are 1) “flashing lightning” or 2) “constant lightning.”
- **and brightness surrounding it and inside of it** - “and a very bright light was around the cloud and inside of it”
- **the color of amber** - “bright yellow like amber” or “bright yellow” or “glowing yellow”
- **amber** - a hard yellow resin that is used as a beautiful decoration on jewelry
- **In the middle** - “Inside the storm”
- **was the likeness of four living creatures** - “there were things that looked like four creatures” or “there was what looked like four creatures”
- **This was their appearance** - “This is what the four creatures looked like”

- **they had the likeness of a man** - “the four creatures looked like people”
- **but they had four faces each, and each of the creatures had four wings** - “but each of them had four different faces and four wings.” Each creature had a face on the front, a face on the back, and a face on each side of its head.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 1:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Their legs were like human legs, but their feet resembled the hooves of calves that shined like polished bronze. ⁸ On the four sides of their bodies under their wings there were hands like humans have. ⁹ As the four creatures stood there, they formed a circle, with their wings touching each other. They did not turn when they were moving; they went straight ahead.

ULB:

⁷ Their legs were straight, but the soles of their feet were like the hooves of a calf that shone like polished bronze. ⁸ Yet they had human hands under their wings on all four sides. For all four, their faces and wings were like this: ⁹ their wings were touching the wings of the next creature, and they did not turn as they went; instead, each one went straight forward.

translationWords:

- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [creature](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.
- **but the soles of their feet were like the hooves of a calf** - “but their feet looked like calf hooves” or “but their feet looked like the feet of calves”
- **hooves of a calf** - the hard part of a calf’s foot
- **that shone like polished bronze** - “that were shiny like bronze that has been polished.” This describes the feet of the creatures. AT: “and they shone like polished bronze” (See: [Simile](#))
- **on all four sides** - “on all four sides of their bodies”
- **For all four, their faces and wings were like this** - “For all four of the creatures, their wings and their faces were like this”
- **and they did not turn as they went** - “and the creatures did not turn as they moved”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 1:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ Each of the creatures had four faces. In front there was a face that resembled a human face. The face on the right side resembled a lion's face. The face on the left side resembled an ox's face. The face in back resembled an eagle's face. ¹¹ Two of each creature's wings were lifted up and touched the wings of the creatures that were on either side of it. The other two wings were folded against the creature's body. ¹² The creatures went straight ahead in whatever direction the Spirit of God, who controlled them, wanted them to go, without changing directions while they were moving.

ULB:

¹⁰ The appearance of their faces was like the face of a man, next, the face of a lion to the right, next, the face of an ox to the left, and finally, the face of an eagle. ¹¹ Their faces were like that, and their wings were spread out above, so that each creature had a pair of wings that touched another creature's wing, and also a pair of wings that covered their bodies. ¹² Each went straight forward, so that wherever the Spirit directed them to go, they went without turning.

translationWords:

- lion
- ox, oxen
- eagle
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.
- **The appearance of their faces was like the face of a man** - Ezekiel is describing the faces of the creatures on their front side. AT: "The faces of each creature looked like this: The face in front looked like the face of a man" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **next, the face of a lion to the right** - "the face on the right side of its head looked like the face of a lion"
- **next, the face of an ox to the left** - "the face on the left side of its head looked like the face of an ox"
- **finally, the face of an eagle** - "finally, the face on the back of its head looked like the face of an eagle"
- **their wings were spread out above, so that each creature had a pair of wings that touched another creature's wing** - "each creature held up two of his wings so that one wing touched the wing of the creature on one side of him, and the other wing touched the wing of the creature on the other side of him"

- **and also a pair of wings that covered their bodies** - This can be translated as a new sentence: “The other two wings of each creature covered its body”
- **Each went straight forward** - “Each creature moved with a face looking forward”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 1:13-14

UDB:

¹³ The four creatures resembled burning coals or torches. A blazing fire moved back and forth among the creatures, and lightning flashed from among them. ¹⁴ The creatures were moving back and forth very rapidly, so that they looked like flashes of lightning.

ULB:

¹³ The living creatures looked like burning coals of fire, or like torches; bright fire also moved about among the creatures, and there were flashes of lightning. ¹⁴ The living creatures were moving swiftly back and forth, and they looked like lightning!

translationWords:

- [creature](#)
- [fire](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.
- **looked like burning coals of fire, or like torches** - “were bright like coals in a hot fire, or like torches”
- **and there were flashes of lightning** - “and lightning came out from the fire.”
- **The living creatures were moving swiftly back and forth, and they looked like lightning** - Lightning flashes and then disappears quickly, and the creatures moved from one place to another quickly. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 1:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ While I looked at the four living creatures, I saw a wheel on the ground beside each of them. ¹⁶ Each of the wheels was the same, and they all shone like beryl. Each wheel seemed to have one wheel inside another wheel.

ULB:

¹⁵ Then I looked at the living creatures; there was one wheel on the ground beside the living creatures. ¹⁶ This was the appearance and structure of the wheels: each wheel was like beryl, and the four were all the same; they looked like a wheel intersecting another wheel.

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [creature](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Ezekiel continues to tell about his vision.
- **there was one wheel on the ground beside the living creatures** - “there was one wheel on the ground by each one of the living creatures, one wheel for each direction the creatures faced”
- **This was the appearance and structure of the wheels** - “This is what the wheels looked like and how they were made”
- **like beryl** - Beryl is a kind of clear, valuable stone, often of yellow or golden color. “clear and yellow like a beryl stone” or “clear and yellow like a precious stone”
- **the four were all the same** - “all four of the wheels looked the same”
- **they looked like a wheel intersecting another wheel** - “they were made with one wheel going through another wheel”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 1:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Whenever they moved, they would go straight in one of the four directions that the creatures were facing; they did not turn in another direction while they moved. ¹⁸ The rims of the wheels were imposing and frightening, and they were covered with eyes.

ULB:

¹⁷ When the wheels moved, they went without turning in any direction the creatures faced. ¹⁸ As for their rims, they were high and fearsome, for the rims were full of eyes round about.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.
- **they went without turning in any direction the creatures faced** - “the wheels were able to go in any of the four directions that the creatures faced”
- **As for their rims** - “This is what the rims of the wheels looked like”
- **they were high and fearsome** - “the rims were very tall and awe-inspiring” or “the rims where tall and frightening”
- **for the rims were full of eyes round about** - “because the rims had very many eyes around all four of the wheels”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 1:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ Whenever the living creatures moved, the wheels moved with them. So whenever the creatures rose up from the ground, the wheels also rose up. ²⁰ Wherever the Spirit of God, who controlled the creatures, wanted them to go, they went; and the wheels went with them, because their spirit controlled the wheels. ²¹ Whenever the creatures moved, the wheels moved. Whenever the creatures stood still, the wheels stopped. Whenever the creatures rose up from the ground, the wheels rose up with them.

ULB:

¹⁹ Whenever the living creatures moved, the wheels moved beside them. When the living creatures rose up from the earth, the wheels also rose up. ²⁰ Wherever the Spirit would go, they went, and the wheels rose up beside them, for the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels. ²¹ Whenever the creatures moved, the wheels also moved; and when the creatures stood still, the wheels stood still; when the creatures rose up from the earth, the wheels rose up beside them, because the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels.

translationWords:

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)

translationNotes:

- **When the living creatures rose up from the earth** - The creatures were flying in the air after they left the ground. AT: “So when the creatures left the ground and went up into the air.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the spirit of the living creature** - Possible meanings are that Ezekiel is 1) speaking of the “creatures” of verse 19 as if they were one creature, “the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels” or 2) using an idiom to speak of “the spirit of life” or “the living spirit” or 3) “the same spirit that gave life to the creatures also gave life to the wheels.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the wheels also rose up** - “the wheels also left the ground and went into the air”
- **Wherever the Spirit would go, they went** - The word “they” refers to the creatures.
- **the wheels rose up beside them** - “the wheels went up into the air with the living creatures”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)

- Ezekiel 01 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 1:22-23

UDB:

²² Above the heads of the creatures there was something that resembled a dome. It glistened as ice shines, and it was awesome. ²³ Under the dome, the creatures stretched out their wings. Each one had two wings that touched the wings of the creatures on either side, and two wings that covered his own body.

ULB:

²² Over the heads of the living creatures was what looked like an expansive dome; it looked like awe-inspiring crystal stretched out over their heads above. ²³ Beneath the dome, each one of the creature's wings stretched out straight and touched another creature's wings. Each of the living creatures also had a pair to cover themselves; each had a pair to cover his own body.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **an expansive dome** - A dome looks like a hollow ball that is cut in half. "Expansive" means very large. "a huge upside-down bowl"
- **awe-inspiring crystal** - "awe-inspiring ice" or "crystal that makes people marvel when they look at it"
- **stretched out over their heads above** - "and the expansive dome was spread out above the heads of the creatures" or "and the expansive dome took up a lot of space over the heads of the creatures"
- **Beneath the dome** - "under the dome"
- **Each of the living creatures also had a pair to cover themselves; each had a pair to cover his own body** - "Each of the living creatures also had two other wings, which they used to cover their bodies"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 1:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ Whenever the creatures moved, their wings made a sound that resembled the crashing of waves in the sea. It also sounded like the voice of Almighty God, and like the noise of a huge army marching. Whenever the creatures stood still on the ground, they lowered their wings. ²⁵ While they stood on the ground with their wings lowered, there was a voice from the dome that was over their heads.

ULB:

²⁴ Then I heard the sound of their wings. Like the noise of rushing water. Like the voice of the Almighty whenever they moved. Like the sound of a rainstorm. Like the sound of an army. Whenever they stood still, they lowered their wings. ²⁵ A voice came from above the dome over their heads whenever they stood still and lowered their wings.

translationWords:

- voice
- Almighty

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel continues to tell about his vision of the living creatures.
- **Then I heard the sound of their wings. Like the noise of rushing water. Like the voice of the Almighty whenever they moved. Like** - Other possible meanings are that the words “whenever they moved” refer to 1) all the words before them in this verse, “Whenever they moved, I heard the sound of their wings. Like the noise of rushing water. Like the voice of the Almighty. Like” (see UDB), or 2) to the words that follow, “wings. Like the noise of rushing water. Like the voice of the Almighty. Whenever they moved, it sounded like.”
- **Like ... water. Like ... moved. Like ... rainstorm. Like ... army.** - These sentences are not complete because Ezekiel was showing that he was excited about what he saw. They can be translated as complete sentences: “The wings sounded like ... water. They sounded like ... moved. They sounded like ... rainstorm. They sounded like ... army.” (See: [Simile](#))
- **rushing water** - This simply means “a lot of water.” It could refer to “a loud river” or “a large waterfall” or “the waves crashing at the ocean”. All of these are very loud.
- **Like the voice of the Almighty** - The Bible sometimes refers to thunder as “the voice of the Almighty.” AT: “It sounded like the voice of the Almighty God” or “It sounded like the thunder of the Almighty” (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **Like the sound of a rainstorm** - Possible meanings are: 1) “Like the sound of very big storm” or 2) “Like the sound of a very large crowd of people” AT: “There was a sound that was loud like a big storm” or “There was a sound that was loud like a very large crowd of people”
- **Whenever they stood still** - “Whenever the creatures stopped moving”
- **they lowered their wings** - “the creatures let their wings hang down by their sides.” They did this when they were not using their wings to fly.
- **A voice came from above the dome** - “Someone who was above the dome spoke.” If you need to tell whose voice this is, you should probably identify it as the voice of Yahweh (1:3).
- **the dome over their heads** - “the dome that was over the heads of the creatures”
- **the dome** - Translate this as in 1:23.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 1:26**UDB:**

²⁶ Above the dome was something that resembled a huge throne that was made of a huge sapphire. Sitting on the throne was someone who resembled a human.

ULB:

²⁶ Above the dome over their heads was the appearance of a throne that looked like sapphire, and on the throne was the appearance of one who looked like a man.

translationWords:

- [throne](#)

translationNotes:

- **over their heads** - “over the heads of the living creatures”
- **was the appearance of a throne** - “was something that looked like a throne”
- **sapphire** - a very valuable stone that is clear blue and very shiny
- **on the throne was** - “on the throne there was”
- **the appearance of one who looked like a man** - “someone who looked like a man” or “someone who looked like person.” If you need to tell who this is, you should probably identify him as Yahweh ([1:3](#)).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 1:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ I saw that above his waist he resembled metal that was glowing as though it had a very hot fire inside it. And I saw that below his waist there was a very brilliant light that surrounded him. ²⁸ It shone like a rainbow in the clouds on a rainy day.

That was the brilliant light that represented the presence of Yahweh. When I saw it, I threw myself flat onto the ground, and I heard him speak!

ULB:

²⁷ I saw a figure that looked like glowing metal with fire in it from his hips up; from his hips downward it looked like fire and brightness all around. ²⁸ It looked like a rainbow that appears in the clouds on a rainy day, and like bright light surrounding it. This appeared as the likeness of the glory of Yahweh. When I saw it, I fell on my face, and I heard a voice speaking.

translationWords:

- fire
- like, likeness
- glory, glorious

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision.
- **from his hips up** - The person's body above the hips looked like glowing metal that had fire in it.
- **all around** - "all around the person sitting on the throne"
- **from his hips downward it looked like fire and brightness all around** - "All around him below the hips, I saw what looked like fire and a bright light."
- **It looked like a rainbow that appears in the clouds on a rainy day, and like bright light surrounding it** - "The brightness that was all around him looked like a rainbow that appears in the clouds on a day when it rains."
- **rainbow** - the colorful strip of light that appears in the rain when the sun shines from behind the viewer
- **This appeared as the likeness of the glory of Yahweh** - "The bright light looked like something that was similar to the glory of Yahweh."
- **I fell on my face** - "I bowed down to the ground" or "I lay on the ground." Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. (See: **Idiom**)

- **I heard a voice speaking** - The word “voice” is a metonym for the person. AT: “I heard someone speaking” or “Someone spoke, and I hear his voice” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Ezekiel's call continues in this chapter. God appointed Ezekiel to be a prophet but warned him that the people were very rebellious and would not listen to him. (See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#) and [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 02:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 2:1-3

UDB:

¹ The voice said to me, “Son of man, stand up while I speak to you.” ² While he spoke to me, God’s Spirit entered me and enabled me to stand up. Then I heard him speak to me.

³ He said, “Son of man, I will send you to the Israelite people. They are people who have turned away from me and rebelled against me. Their ancestors rebelled against me, and they themselves are still rebelling against me.

ULB:

² ¹ He said to me, “Son of man, stand up on your feet; then I will speak to you.” ² Then, as he spoke to me, the Spirit entered into me and set me on my feet, and I heard him speaking to me. ³ He said to me, “Son of man, I am sending you to the people of Israel, to rebellious nations that have rebelled against me—both they and their ancestors have sinned against me up to this very day!

translationWords:

- Son of Man, son of man
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- send, send out, sent
- people of God, my people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- nation
- ancestor, father, forefather
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that he saw.
- **He said to me** - If your language has to identify the one speaking, it would be best to identify the speaker as the “one who looked like a man” (1:26). It was not “the Spirit.”
- **the Spirit** - Other possible meanings are 1) “a spirit” or 2) “a wind.”
- **Son of man** - “Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”
- **to the people of Israel, to rebellious nations** - “to the Israelites, to rebellious peoples.” The two phrases refer to the same people. AT: “to the people of Israel, who are rebellious”
- **up to this very day** - “even now” or “even today.” This means that the people of Israel were continuing to disobey God.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 2:4-5

UDB:

⁴ The people to whom I will send you are very stubborn. But say to them, ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says to you.’ ⁵ And when you tell them my messages, perhaps those rebellious people will heed those messages and perhaps they will not heed them; but they will know that a prophet has been among them!

ULB:

⁴ Their descendants have stubborn faces and hard hearts. I am sending you to them, and you will say to them, ‘This is what the Lord Yahweh says.’ ⁵ Either they will listen or they will not listen. They are a rebellious house, but they will at least know that a prophet has been among them.

translationWords:

- hard, hardness, harden
- heart
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- house
- know, knowledge, make known
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God continues to speak to Ezekiel.
- **Their descendants** - The descendants of the past generations of Israel who had rebelled against God, referring to the people living in Israel at the time Ezekiel writes.
- **stubborn faces and hard hearts** - The words “stubborn faces” refers to the way they act on the outside, and the words “heard hearts” refers to the way they think and feel. Together they emphasize that the people of Israel would not change how they lived in order to obey God. (See: **Doublet**)
- **have stubborn faces** - “have expression on their faces that show that they are stubborn”
- **stubborn** - “unwilling to change”
- **hard hearts** - Rocks never change and become soft, and these people never change and become sorry when they do evil things. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **house** - This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. AT: “people group” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **a prophet has been among them** - “the one whom they have refused to listen to was a prophet”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 2:6

UDB:

⁶ And you, son of man, you must not be afraid of them or afraid of what they say. Living among them will be like living in the midst of briars or scorpions, but do not be afraid of them. They are rebellious people, but do not allow them to frighten you.

ULB:

⁶ You, son of man, do not be afraid of them or their words. Do not be afraid, although you are with briars and thorns and although you live with scorpions. Do not fear their words or be dismayed by their faces, since they are a rebellious house.

translationWords:

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [word](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God continues to speak to Ezekiel
- **son of man** - “Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate this as in [2:3](#). AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”
- **briars and thorns and ... scorpions** - These words describe the people of Israel who will not treat Ezekiel kindly when he tells them what God says. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **briars and thorns** - Briars are bushes with sharp points on the branches. The sharp points on the branches are called thorns.
- **scorpions** - A scorpion is a small animal with two front claws, six legs, and a large tail with a poisonous stinger. Its sting is very painful.
- **Do not fear their words** - “Do not be afraid of what they say.”
- **be dismayed by their faces** - The words “their faces” are a metonym for the message the people express with their faces. AT: “lose your desire to serve me because of the way they look at you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 2:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Tell them my message, but do not expect them to pay attention to it, because they are very rebellious. ⁸ But son of man, you must pay attention to what I say. Do not be rebellious like they are. Now open your mouth and eat what I give to you.”

ULB:

⁷ But you will speak my words to them, whether they listen or not, because they are most rebellious. ⁸ But you, son of man, listen to what I am saying to you. Do not be rebellious like that rebellious house. Open your mouth and eat what I am about to give to you!”

translationWords:

- [house](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God continues to speak to Ezekiel.
- **are most rebellious** - “are very rebellious” or “totally rebel against me”
- **house** - This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. AT: “people group” Translate as in [2:5](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 2:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Then, as I watched, I saw his hand that was stretched toward me. In his hand was a scroll. ¹⁰ He unrolled the scroll. On both sides of it were written words that expressed sorrow and mourning and words about trouble.

ULB:

⁹ Then I looked, and a hand was extended out to me; in it was a written scroll. ¹⁰ He spread it out before me; it had been written on both its front and back, and written on it were lamentations, mourning, and woe.

translationWords:

- [scroll](#)
- [lament, lamentation](#)
- [woe](#)

translationNotes:

- **a hand was extended out to me** - It was as if 1) a person in the heavens had extended his hand out toward Ezekiel and all Ezekiel could see was from the hand to the elbow or shoulder or 2) the “one who looked like a man” (1:26) extended his hand.
- **a written scroll** - “a scroll that had writing on it”
- **He spread it out** - The word “He” refers to the “one who looked like a man” (1:26).
- **it had been written on both its front and back** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “someone had written on both its front and its back” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **written on it were lamentations, mourning, and woe** - The abstract nouns “lamentations,” “mourning,” and “woe” can be translated as adjectives. AT: “someone had written on it that these people would lament, be sad the way they would be if someone they loved had died, and have bad things happen to them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Ezekiel's call concludes in this chapter. God told Ezekiel more about what he should say to the people and how he should say it. (See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 03:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 3:1-3**UDB:**

¹ He said to me, “Son of Man, eat this scroll that is in front of you. Then go and speak to the Israelite people.” ² So I opened my mouth, and he gave me the scroll to eat it.

³ Then he said to me, “Son of Man, eat the scroll that I have given to you. Fill your stomach with it.” So I ate it, and in my mouth it tasted as sweet as honey.

ULB:

3 ¹ He said to me, “Son of man, what you have found, eat. Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel.” ² So I opened my mouth, and he fed me that scroll. ³ He said to me, “Son of man, feed your belly and fill your stomach with this scroll that I have given to you!” So I ate it, and it was as sweet as honey in my mouth.

translationWords:

- Son of Man, son of man
- scroll
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- honey, honeycomb

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that he saw.
- **He said to me** - The word “He” refers to the “one who looked like a man” (1:26).
- **Son of man** - “Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate this as in 2:3. AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”
- **what you have found** - This refers to the scroll that God was giving him. (See: 2:9)
- **house of Israel** - The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)
- **that scroll** - Many versions have “the scroll” or “this scroll.”
- **feed your belly and fill your stomach with this scroll** - The word “belly” refers to the part of the body people can see from the outside. The word “stomach” refers to the internal organs inside the belly.
- **it was as sweet as honey** - Honey tastes sweet, and the scroll tasted sweet.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 3:4-7**UDB:**

⁴ Then he said to me, "Son of Man, go to the Israelite people and tell them my message. ⁵ The people to whom I am sending you are not people whose language is very difficult to learn, a language which you do not understand. I am sending you to your Israelite people. ⁶ I am sending you to people whose language you understand very well. If I were sending you to people whose language was difficult for you to understand, they would pay attention to what you say to them. ⁷ But because the Israelite people do not want to listen to me, they will not want to listen to you. They do not want to listen because they are all very rebellious.

ULB:

⁴ Then he said to me, "Son of man, go to the house of Israel and speak my words to them. ⁵ For you are not being sent to a people of a strange speech or a difficult language, but to the house of Israel— ⁶ not to a mighty nation of strange speech or a difficult language whose words you could not understand! If I sent you to them, they would listen to you. ⁷ But the house of Israel will not be willing to listen to you, for they are not willing to listen to me. So all the house of Israel is strong browed and hard hearted.

translationWords:

- word
- send, send out, sent
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- mighty, might
- nation
- hard, hardness, harden
- heart

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that he saw.
- **he said to me** - If your language has to identify the one speaking, it would be best to identify the speaker as the "one who looked like a man" (1:26). It was not "the Spirit."
- **house of Israel** - The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. Translate as in 3:1. AT: "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **of a strange speech or a difficult language** - "who speak a strange or difficult language"
- **not to a mighty nation of strange speech** - "I am not sending you to a mighty nation whose people speak a strange language"

- **If I sent you to them, they would listen to you** - This is a hypothetical situation that could have happened but did not. Yahweh did not send Ezekiel to people who did not understand his language. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))
- **If I sent you to them** - The word “them” refers to a mighty nation other than Israel.
- **strong browed and hard hearted** - “very rebellious” (UDB) or “very stubborn” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **strong browed** - unwilling to change (See: [Idiom](#))
- **hard hearted** - This phrase suggests that the people resist God and are unwilling to obey him. The heart is used to describe the place in the body where a person decides what they want to do. Translate as in [2:4](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 3:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ But you—I will enable you to be as stubborn and tough as they are. ⁹ I will cause you to be as firm as the hardest stone, like flint. So, even though they are very rebellious people, do not be afraid of them; do not allow them to frighten you.”

ULB:

⁸ Behold! I have made your face as stubborn as their faces and your brow as hard as their brows. ⁹ I have made your brow like a diamond, harder than flint! Do not fear them or be discouraged by their faces, since they are a rebellious house.”

translationWords:

- [face](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The Spirit of God continues speaking to Ezekiel.
- **Behold!** - The word “Behold” here alerts Ezekiel to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
- **I have made your face as stubborn as their faces** - The words “face” and “faces” are used to stand for the people the sentence is about. AT: “I have made you as stubborn as they are.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **I have made ... your brow as hard as their brows** - The “brow” is the forehead or eyebrow and is a metonym for the person. AT: “I have made ... you strong so you will not stop doing what you are doing” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I have made your brow like a diamond, harder than flint** - “I have made your brow like the hardest stone, harder than flint.”
- **flint** - a stone that is hard enough to start a fire by hitting it with metal or another stone
- **house** - This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. Translate as in [2:5](#). AT: “people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 03 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 03 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 3:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ He also said to me, "Son of Man, listen very carefully to what I say, and keep thinking about it. ¹¹ Go to your fellow Israelites who are here after being exiled, and speak to them. Say to them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says' and then tell them my message, whether they want to hear it or whether they would rather cease to exist."

ULB:

¹⁰ Then he said to me, "Son of man, all the words that I announce to you—take them into your heart and hear them with your ears! ¹¹ Then go to the captives, to your people, and speak to them. Say to them, 'This is what the Lord Yahweh says,' whether they will listen or not."

translationWords:

- [captive, captivity](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **take them into your heart and hear them with your ears** - "remember them and listen carefully"
- **Then go to the captives** - The word "captives" refers to the people of Israel who were living in Babylon.
- **your people** - "your people group." Ezekiel had lived in Judah before the Babylonians took him to Babylon.
- **Lord Yahweh** - Translate as in [2:4](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 3:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Then in the vision the Spirit of God lifted me up, and I heard behind me the sound of a large earthquake. (Praise our glorious Yahweh in the place where he lives in heaven!) ¹³ I heard the sound of the wings of the four living creatures brushing against each other, and I also heard the sound of the wheels that were beside them. It was a loud sound like an earthquake.

ULB:

¹² Then the Spirit lifted me up, and I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake: “Blessed be the glory of Yahweh from his place!” ¹³ It was the sound of the wings of the living creatures as they touched one another, and the sound of the wheels that were with them, and the sound of a great earthquake.

translationWords:

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- bless, blessed, blessing
- glory, glorious
- Yahweh
- creature

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel continues telling about the vision he saw.
- **I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake: “Blessed be the glory of Yahweh from his place!”** - Some versions take “Blessed ... place!” as a words that the “great earthquake” spoke: “I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake, which said, ‘Blessed be the glory of Yahweh from his place!’” Others understand the sound of the earthquake as the sound of the glory of Yahweh leaving his place, “as the glory of Yahweh left its place, I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake.”
- **the sound of a great earthquake** - It is not clear if the sound came from an earthquake, from a voice that was loud like an earthquake, or from the wings and wheels. “a sound like the sound of a great earthquake” or “a voice speaking; the voice sounded like a great earthquake” or “a loud rumbling noise”
- **the glory of Yahweh** - Translate as in [1:28](#).
- **the sound of a great earthquake** - “a loud, deep and powerful rumbling sound like the sound of an earthquake”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 3:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ The Spirit took me away. Within me I was very bitter and angry, and I felt unable to do anything, as though Yahweh were pushing down on me very powerfully. ¹⁵ I came to the exiles who lived at the town of Tel Abib near the Chebar Canal in Babylon. Then, where they were living, I sat for seven days. I was shocked about everything that I had seen.

ULB:

¹⁴ The Spirit lifted me up and took me away, and I went with bitterness in my spirit's rage, for the hand of Yahweh was powerfully pressing on me! ¹⁵ So I went to the captives at Tel Abib who lived along the Chebar Canal, and I stayed there among them for seven days, overwhelmed in amazement.

translationWords:

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Yahweh
- captive, captivity
- marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel seems to have been angry because Yahweh had sent him to speak to the Israelite exiles, thus rebelling against Yahweh himself. Though he was supposed to speak to them, he sat in silence for seven days, even though he could feel the anger of Yahweh "powerfully pressing on" him.
- **with bitterness in my spirit's rage** - The words "bitterness" and "rage" are types of anger. Alternate translations: "I was bitter and my spirit was full of anger" or "I was very bitter and angry."
- **bitterness** - Ezekiel speaks of his anger at Yahweh as if there were a bad taste in his mouth because Yahweh had forced him to eat something that tasted bad.
- **for the hand of Yahweh was powerfully pressing on me** - Ezekiel speaks of being sad and tired because Yahweh had commanded him to do things he did not want to do as if Yahweh were pushing him down into the ground. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the hand of Yahweh** - Possible meanings are 1) the word "hand" is often used to refer to someone's power or action, AT: "the power of Yahweh," or 2) Ezekiel knew that Yahweh was angry with him because he was not obeying Yahweh by speaking to the Israelite exiles. (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **Tel Abib** - A town in Babylon, about 80 kilometers southeast of the main city, which was also called Babylon. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the Chebar Canal** - This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. Translate as in [1:1](#).
- **overwhelmed in amazement** - “unable to do anything because I was so amazed”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 3:16-19**UDB:**

¹⁶ After those seven days had ended, Yahweh gave me this message: ¹⁷ "Son of Man, I am appointing you to be like a watchman. So listen to these messages that I will give you, and tell them those messages to warn them. ¹⁸ When I say about some wicked people, 'They will surely die because of their sins,' if you do not warn them or tell them that they must turn from their wicked behavior if they want to save their lives, they will die because of their sin, and it will be your responsibility since you did not act to prevent it. ¹⁹ But if you warn wicked people and they do not turn from all their wicked behavior, they will die because of their sins, but you will have saved yourself from my punishment.

ULB:

¹⁶ Then it happened after seven days that the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ¹⁷ "Son of man, I have made you a watchman for the house of Israel, so listen to the word from my mouth, and give them my warning. ¹⁸ When I say to the wicked, 'You will surely die' and you do not warn him or speak a warning to the wicked about his evil deeds so he might live—the wicked one will die for his sin, but I will require his blood from your hand. ¹⁹ But if you warn the wicked, and he does not turn from his wickedness or from his wicked deeds, then he will die for his sin, but you will have rescued your own life.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- death, die, dead
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- blood
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- works, deeds, work, acts

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel tells about his experience at Tel-Abib.
- **the word of Yahweh came to me** - "Yahweh spoke to me." Translate as in **1:1**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **watchman** - God told Ezekiel to warn the people of Israel just as a watchman would warn the people of a city if enemies were coming, so that they could prepare and be safe. (See: **Metaphor**).

- **house of Israel** - The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. Translate as in **3:1**. AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **a warning to the wicked about his evil deeds so he might live** - “a warning to the wicked to stop doing his evil deeds so that he might live” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the wicked** - “wicked people”
- **require his blood from your hand** - This is an idiom for holding someone responsible or guilty of murder. AT: “I will treat you as if you had murdered him” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **he does not turn from his wickedness or from his wicked deeds** - The phrase “wicked deeds” means the same thing as “wickedness.” AT: “he does not stop doing wicked things.” (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 3:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Similarly, when righteous people turn from their righteous behavior and do evil deeds, and I cause bad things to happen to them, they will die. But you must warn them. If they do not stop their sinful behavior, they will die because of their sins. I will not think about the righteous things that they did previously. But if you have not warned them, I will hold you responsible for their deaths. ²¹ But if you warn righteous people not to sin, and they do not sin; they will surely remain alive because they heeded your warning, and you will have saved yourself from my punishment.”

ULB:

²⁰ If a righteous man turns from his righteousness and acts unjustly, and I set a stumbling block before him, he will die. Because you did not warn him, he will die in his sin, and I will not call to mind the righteous deeds that he performed, but I will require his blood from your hand. ²¹ But if you warn the righteous man to stop sinning so that he no longer sins, he will surely live since he was warned; and you will have rescued your own life.”

translationWords:

- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [unjust, unjustly, injustice](#)
- [stumbling block, stone of stumbling](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

translationNotes:

- **set a stumbling block before him** - Possible meanings are 1) “make something bad happen to him” (UDB) or 2) “cause him to sin openly.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he will die in his sin** - “he will die as a sinner” or “he will die as a guilty person because he has disobeyed me”
- **I will require his blood from your hand** - This is an idiom for holding someone responsible or guilty of murder. Translate as in [3:18](#). AT: “I will treat you as if you had murdered him” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **since he was warned** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “since you warned him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 03 General Notes
- Ezekiel 03 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 3:22-23**UDB:**

²² I felt Yahweh take control, and he spoke to me and said, “Get up and go to the plain, and I will speak to you there.” ²³ So I got up and went out to the plain. And I saw the glory of Yahweh there, like the glory that I had seen along the Chebar Canal. And I threw myself flat onto the ground.

ULB:

²² So the hand of Yahweh was on me there, and he said to me, “Arise! Go out into the plain, and I will speak with you there!” ²³ I arose and went out into the plain, and there the glory of Yahweh was staying, like the glory that I had seen beside the Chebar Canal; so I fell on my face.

translationWords:

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)

translationNotes:

- **the hand of Yahweh** - The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. Alternate translation: “the power of Yahweh.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the glory of Yahweh** - Translate as in [1:28](#).
- **the Chebar Canal** - This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. Translate as in [1:1](#).
- **I fell on my face** - “I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. Translate as in [1:28](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 3:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ Then the Spirit of God entered me and enabled me to stand up. He said to me, "Go into your house and stay inside it. ²⁵ People will tie you with ropes, with the result that you will be unable to go out among the people.

ULB:

²⁴ The Spirit came to me and stood me up on my feet; and he spoke with me, and said to me, "Go and shut yourself up within your house, ²⁵ for now, son of man, they will place ropes upon you and tie you so you cannot go out among them.

translationWords:

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)

translationNotes:

- **he spoke with me** - If your language has to identify the one speaking, it would be best to identify the speaker as the "one who looked like a man" (1:26). It was not "the Spirit."
- **they will place ropes upon you and tie you so you cannot go out among them** - This is best translated literally.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 3:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ Even though they are very rebellious people, I will cause your tongue to stick to the roof of your mouth, with the result that you will be unable to talk and to rebuke them. ²⁷ But then when I speak to you again, I will enable you to talk and tell them ‘This is what the Lord Yahweh is saying to you.’ The one who wants to hear me will hear me, but the one who ignores the message will come to an end, since they are a rebellious people!”

ULB:

²⁶ I will make your tongue stick to the roof of your mouth, so you will be mute, and you will not be able to rebuke them, since they are a rebellious house. ²⁷ But when I speak with you, I will open your mouth so you will say to them, ‘This is what the Lord Yahweh says.’ The one who will hear will hear; the one who will not listen will not listen, for they are a rebellious house!”

translationWords:

- [rebuke](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [house](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.
- **the roof of your mouth** - “the top of your mouth”
- **you will be mute** - “you will not be able to speak”
- **house** - This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. Translate as in [2:5](#). AT: “people group”(See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will open your mouth** - “I will make you able to speak”
- **the one who will not listen will not listen** - “the one who refuses to listen will not listen”
- **Lord Yahweh** - Translate as in [2:4](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 4 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Destruction of Jerusalem

The destruction of Jerusalem is pictured in this chapter. Ezekiel showed the lack of food and water that would occur during the siege of Jerusalem.

Links:

- [Ezekiel 04:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 4:1-3

UDB:

¹ Yahweh continued and said, "Son of man, take a large clay tablet and scrape lines on it that represent Jerusalem. ² Then draw figures around it to represent enemy soldiers who will build earthworks and forts around the city in order to take it. Set figures around it that represent battering rams. ³ Then take an iron pan, and place it to be like an iron wall between you and the carving of the city. Then turn your face toward the drawing. It will symbolize that enemy troops will surround the city to attack it. That will be a warning to the Israelite people.

ULB:

4 ¹ "But you, son of man, take a brick for yourself and place it before you. Then carve the city of Jerusalem on it. ² Then lay siege against it, and build forts against it. Raise up an assault ramp against it and set camps around it. Place battering rams all around it. ³ Then take for yourself an iron pan and use it as an iron wall between yourself and the city and set your face against it, for it will be under siege, and you are to put the siege against it. This will be a sign to the house of Israel.

translationWords:

- Son of Man, son of man
- Jerusalem
- siege, besiege
- face
- sign, proof, reminder
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel. He tells Ezekiel to take a brick and dirt and pieces of wood and act as if he were Yahweh destroying the city of Jerusalem.
- **son of man** - "son of a human being" or "son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate this as in [2:3](#). AT: "mortal person" or "human"
- **carve the city of Jerusalem** - You may need to make explicit that Ezekiel is to carve a picture. AT: "carve a picture of the city of Jerusalem" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **lay siege against it** - "surround the city in order to capture it"

- **build forts against it** - “build strong walls against it.” The walls would keep people from leaving the city.
- **Raise up an assault ramp against it** - “build a ramp outside of it for the enemies to get inside.” Jerusalem had a wall around it to protect the people inside. The enemies could only get inside if they had a ramp to climb up over the wall.
- **Place battering rams all around it** - “Battering rams” are large trees or poles that many men in an army would pick up and hit against a wall or door so they could break it down and get inside. “Set around it huge poles people would use to break down the gates and get inside”
- **set your face against it** - “look at it with an angry face”
- **house of Israel** - The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. Translate as in [3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 4:4-5**UDB:**

4-5 Then lie on your left side, and stay like that for 390 days. You will be symbolically bearing the punishment for the sins of the Israelites, the northern kingdom; you must lie like that one day for each year that I will punish them.

ULB:

⁴ Then, lie on your left side and put the sin of the house of Israel on it; you will carry their sin for the number of the days that you lie down against the house of Israel. ⁵ I myself am assigning to you one day to represent each year of their punishment: 390 days! In this way, you will carry the sin of the house of Israel.

translationWords:

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- punish, punishment

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.
- **put the sin of the house of Israel on it** - Possible meanings are 1) “symbolically bear the punishment for the sins of the Israelites” (see UDB) or 2) “suffer by lying on your side because of their sin.”
- **house of Israel** - The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. AT: “the Israelite people group” Translate as in **3:1**. (See: **Metonymy**)
- **you will carry their sin** - Possible meanings are 1) “you will be guilty of their sin” or 2) “you will be punished for their sin.” Either of these meanings will be demonstrated “symbolically” by Ezekiel as noted in the UDB.
- **lie down against the house of Israel** - Alternate translation: “lie facing the kingdom of Israel in a hostile manner.”
- **I myself am assigning to you one day to represent each year of their punishment** - Alternate translation: “I myself command you to lay on your side for the same number of days as the number of years that I will punish them.”
- **each year of their punishment** - Possible meanings are 1) each year that they will be punished for their sins or 2) each year that they have sinned.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 4:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ After that, lie down again. This time, lie on your right side for forty days. That will symbolize that the Judean people, the southern kingdom, will be punished for their sins, one year for each day that you lie there. ⁷ Turn your face toward the drawing of Jerusalem and bare your arm like a soldier does who prepares to go into battle, and prophesy about what will happen to the city. ⁸ You will not be able to move; it will be as though I have tied you with ropes so that you cannot turn from one side to the other until you have finished symbolizing how many years the city will be besieged.

ULB:

⁶ When you have completed these days, then lie down a second time on your right side, for you will carry the sin of the house of Judah for forty days. I am assigning to you one day for each year. ⁷ Set your face toward Jerusalem that is under siege, and with your arm uncovered prophesy against it. ⁸ For behold! I am placing bonds on you so you will not turn from one side to the other until you have completed the days of your siege.

translationWords:

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- face
- Jerusalem
- siege, besiege
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- bind, bond, bound

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.
- **these days** - the days Ezekiel lies down on his left side to illustrate the siege of the kingdom of Israel
- **you will carry the sin** - Possible meanings are 1) “you will be guilty of the sin” or 2) “you will be punished for the sin.” Either of these meanings will be demonstrated “symbolically” by Ezekiel as noted in the UDB. Similar words appear in [4:4](#).
- **house of Judah** - The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. AT: “the Judah people group” or “the people of Judah” Similar words appear in [3:1](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I am assigning to you one day for each year** - “I will make you do this one day for each year that I will punish them.”

- **Set your face toward Jerusalem** - “Look at Jerusalem with an angry face” See how you translated this in [4:3](#)
- **prophesy against it** - “prophesy about the bad things that will happen to Jerusalem”
- **behold!** - “look!” or “listen!” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”
- **I am placing bonds on you** - Bonds are ropes or chains that keep a person from moving. It is not clear whether the word “bonds” is a metaphor for something Yahweh does that is as if he had bound Ezekiel (UDB) or if he used literal, physical ropes. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 4:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ Before you do that, take some wheat, barley, beans, lentils, millet, and spelt; and put them in a storage jar, and use that to bake bread for yourself. That is what you will eat during the 390 days while you lie on your left side. ¹⁰ You will eat about two hundred grams of bread each day throughout the day. ¹¹ Also measure out about one half liter of water to drink each day throughout the day.

ULB:

⁹ Take for yourself wheat, barley, beans, lentils, millet, and spelt; put them in a single container and make bread for yourself according to the number of the days that you will lie upon your side. For 390 days you will eat it. ¹⁰ The food you will eat will be by weight, twenty shekels per day, and you will eat it at set times each day. ¹¹ Then you will drink water, measured out to a sixth of a hin, and you will drink it at set times.

translationWords:

- [wheat](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.
- **wheat, barley, ... millet, and spelt** - These are different kinds of grains.
- **beans** - vines whose seeds, which grow in a single row inside its otherwise empty fruit, can be eaten
- **lentils** - These are like beans, but their seeds are very small, round, and somewhat flat. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **twenty shekels per day** - “20 shekels per day.” AT: 200 grams of bread each day” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))
- **a sixth of a hin** - “1/6 hin” or “a sixth part of a hin” or “about one-half liter” (UDB). (See: [Biblical Volume and Fractions](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 4:12-13

UDB:

¹² Eat that bread like you would eat a loaf of barley bread. But use your own dried dung for fuel to bake the bread while people are watching. ¹³ That will symbolize that the Israelite people will be forced to eat food that is unacceptable to me when they are living in the nations to which I will force them to go.”

ULB:

¹² You will eat it as barley cakes, but you will bake it on excrement of human dung within their sight!” ¹³ For Yahweh says, “This means that the bread that the people of Israel will eat will be unclean, there among the nations where I will banish them.”

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [bread](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [nation](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.
- **You will eat it** - the bread (4:9)
- **barley cakes** - flat bread made of barley (4:9) (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **you will bake it on excrement of human dung** - “you will cook it over a fire made with pieces of human solid waste.” Your language may have a way of expressing this politely.
- **will banish** - will send away by force

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 4:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Then I said, “No, Lord Yahweh! Do not force me to do that! I have never caused myself to become unacceptable to you. From the time when I was young, I have never eaten meat of any animal that was found dead or that had been killed by wild animals. And I have never eaten any meat that is unacceptable to you.”

¹⁵ Yahweh replied, “Because of that, I will allow you to bake your bread using dried cow manure instead of human dung for fuel.”

ULB:

¹⁴ But I said, “Alas, Lord Yahweh! I have never been unclean! I have never eaten either anything that died or anything killed by animals, from my youth until now, and foul meat has never entered my mouth!” ¹⁵ So he said to me, “Look! I have given you cow manure instead of human dung so you can prepare your bread over that.”

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [unclean](#)

translationNotes:

- **Alas** - Ezekiel is very troubled by what the Lord has told him to do. “It would be wrong for me to do that”
- **Lord Yahweh** - Translate as in [2:4](#). Here Ezekiel is speaking to the Lord.
- **foul meat** - This refers to meat that is unclean because it has come from an animal that has died of sickness or old age or was killed by another animal. The word “foul” shows his disgust over meat like this. “disgusting, unclean meat”
- **foul meat has never entered my mouth** - “I have never eaten foul meat.”
- **Look!** - “Listen” or “Pay attention to the important thing I will tell you now”
- **I have given you** - “I will allow you to use”
- **cow manure** - solid waste from cows. Your language may have a polite way of expressing this.
- **human dung** - solid waste from humans. Your language may have a polite way of expressing this. Translate as in [4:12](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 04 General Notes
- Ezekiel 04 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 4:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ Then he said to me, "Son of man, I will cause the supply of food to Jerusalem to be cut off. Then the people will eat the small amounts of food and drink the small amounts of water that their leaders permit them to have, and they will be very distressed and anxious as they do that, ¹⁷ because water and food will be very scarce. They will see each other becoming extremely thin, and they will be appalled; but this will happen because they are being punished for the sins that they have committed."

ULB:

¹⁶ He also said to me, "Son of man! Behold! I am breaking the staff of bread in Jerusalem, and they will eat bread while rationing it in anxiety and drink water while rationing it in trembling. ¹⁷ Because they will lack bread and water, every man will be dismayed at his brother and waste away because of their iniquity."

translationWords:

- staff
- bread
- Jerusalem
- brother
- iniquity

translationNotes:

- **Behold!** - "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"
- **I am breaking the staff of bread in Jerusalem** - "I will stop the supply of food to Jerusalem."
- **the staff of bread** - The supply is called a staff because some people need a staff to walk and do their work, and people need bread to live. Bread represents all kinds of food. AT: "the supply of food" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **Jerusalem, and they will ... trembling. Because** - Another possible meaning, which connects "they will lack bread and water" to "I am breaking the staff of bread" is "Jerusalem—they will ... trembling—so that"
- **they will eat bread while rationing it in anxiety** - "they will carefully divide their bread because they fear that there will not be enough" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **rationing** - giving small amounts to many people of something of which there is not enough
- **rationing it in trembling** - "rationing it while shaking" or "rationing it in fear" (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **every man will be dismayed at his brother and waste** - Possible meanings are 1) “everyone will look at his brother and worry about how much food his brother eats and waste” or 2) “every one of them will be dismayed and waste” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **waste away** - This word is usually used of flesh or wood rotting. Here it is a metaphor for wicked people becoming thin and dying because they have no food. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 5 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The destruction of Jerusalem

The destruction of Jerusalem is continued to be pictured in this chapter. Ezekiel showed the destruction of Jerusalem by fire and war.

Links:

- [Ezekiel 05:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 5:1-2

UDB:

¹ "Then, son of man, when you start doing those things, take a sharp sword and use it like a barber's razor to shave your head and your beard. Put the hair that you shaved off on scales, and divide the hair into three equal parts. ² When the time during which you will symbolize that the city will be surrounded by enemy troops ends, put a third of the hair inside the drawing of the city and burn it. Take another third of the hair, scatter it all around the drawing of the city, and then strike it with your sword. That will symbolize that I will strike the people of Jerusalem with their enemies' swords. Then allow the wind to scatter the other third of the hair. That will symbolize that even if they flee from the city, I will still cause their enemies to pursue them and attack them with swords.

ULB:

⁵ ¹ "Then you, son of man, take a sharp sword as a barber's razor for yourself, and pass the razor over your head and your beard, then take scales to weigh and divide your hair. ² Burn a third of it with fire in the midst of the city when the days of the siege are completed, and take a third of the hair and strike it with the sword all around the city. Then scatter a third of it to the wind, and I will draw out a sword to chase after the people.

translationWords:

- Son of Man, son of man
- sword

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel. All instances of "the city" refer to the "city" that Ezekiel carved onto the brick (4:1).
- **son of man** - "son of a human being" or "son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate this as in 2:3. AT: "mortal person" or "human"
- **barber's razor** - "blade for cutting hair"
- **pass the razor over your head and your beard** - "shave your head and your face" or "remove the hair from your head and the beard from your face"
- **Burn a third of it** - "Burn a third of your hair" (See: [Fractions](#))
- **midst** - middle
- **when the days of the siege are completed** - "when the days of Jerusalem's siege have ended" or "when the days have ended that you show how Jerusalem will put under siege"
- **take a third of the hair** - "take one of the three piles of hair" (See: [Fractions](#))

- **and strike it with the sword all around the city** - “and hit it with your sword all over the city”
- **scatter a third of it to the wind** - “let the wind blow the last third of your hair in different directions” (See: [Fractions](#))
- **I will draw out a sword to chase after the people** - The word “sword” is a metonym for enemy soldiers who will attack with their swords, and to “draw out a sword” is to send the soldiers into battle. AT: “I will cause their enemies to pursue them and attack them with swords.” (UDB) (See [Metonymy](#))
- **I will draw out a sword** - “I will pull a sword out of its container”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 5:3-4**UDB:**

³ But take a few your hairs and tie them to your sleeves. ⁴ Then take a few of those hairs, throw them into the fire, and burn them up. That will symbolize that a fire will spread from Jerusalem and destroy things throughout Israel.

ULB:

³ But take a small number of hairs from them and tie them into the folds of your robe. ⁴ Then take more of the hair and throw it into the midst of the fire; and burn it in the fire; from there a fire will go out to all the house of Israel.”

translationWords:

- fire
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to Ezekiel.
- **But take ... Then take** - Ezekiel was to do this when he shaved his hair and beard (5:1) and before he burned the hair (5:2). You may need to place these verses before those verses. “But when you shave off your hair and beard, and before you burn them, take ... After you have scattered the hair to the wind, then take” (See: [Order of Events](#) and [Verse Bridges](#))
- **a small number of hairs from them** - “a few hairs from the piles”
- **tie them** - The word “them” refers to the hairs. Possible meanings are 1) the hairs were long enough so Ezekiel could tie them or 2) Ezekiel was to sew the hairs or otherwise attach them 3) Ezekiel was to place the hairs loosely in a fold of the garment.
- **the folds of your robe** - Possible meanings are 1) “the cloth on your arms” (“your sleeves”) (UDB) or 2) “the end of the cloth on your robe” (“your hem”) or 3) the fold in the garment where it is tucked into the belt.
- **from there a fire will go out to all the house of Israel** - “from there a fire will spread out and burn up all the people of Israel.” Yahweh speaks of how he will punish Israel as if he were going to set fire to a house and of the people of Israel as if they were the family that lives in that house but were at that time outside the house. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **house of Israel** - The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. AT: “the Israelite people group” Translate as in 3:1. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 5:5-6

UDB:

⁵ This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: This drawing will represent Jerusalem, the city that I have placed in the center of the nations, with other countries around it. ⁶ But the wicked people of Jerusalem rebel against obeying my commands, and they show that they are more wicked than the people of the surrounding countries. They rejected my laws and refused to obey my commands.

ULB:

⁵ The Lord Yahweh says this, "This is Jerusalem in the midst of the nations, where I have placed her, and where I have surrounded her with other lands. ⁶ But she has in wickedness rejected my decrees more than the nations have, and my statutes more than the countries that surround her. The people have rejected my judgments and have not walked in my statutes."

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- Jerusalem
- reject
- decree
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- nation
- statute, statutes
- walk

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak.
- **Lord Yahweh** - Translate as in [2:4](#).
- **This is Jerusalem** - "This carving represents Jerusalem" ([4:1](#))
- **in the midst of the nations** - Possible meanings are 1) other nations were on all sides of Jerusalem or 2) "more important than all other nations."
- **I have placed her** - Jerusalem is referred to as "her" and "she." (See: [Personification](#))
- **other lands** - "the neighboring countries" or "the countries around her"
- **The people have rejected my judgments** - "The people of Israel and Jerusalem have refused to obey my judgments."

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 05 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 05 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 5:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: You people of Jerusalem have been more rebellious than the people of the nations around you; you have not obeyed any of my laws. You have not even obeyed the laws of the nations around you!

⁸ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I am opposed to you people of Jerusalem. I will punish you, and the people of other nations will see it.

ULB:

⁷ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, “Because you are more troublesome than the nations that surround you and have not walked in my statutes or acted according to my decrees, or even acted according to the decrees of the nations that surround you,” ⁸ therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, “Behold! I myself will act against you. I will execute judgments within your midst for the nations to see.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.
- **Lord Yahweh** - Translate as in [2:4](#).
- **Because you are more troublesome than** - “because your sinfulness is worse than” or “because you are more unruly than”
- **that surround you** - “that are all around you.”
- **have not walked in my statutes** - Walking is a metaphor for the way a person lives. AT: “have not lived according to my statutes” or “have not obeyed my statutes” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **or acted according to my decrees** - “or obeyed my decrees”
- **Behold!** - “Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”
- **I will execute judgments within your midst** - “I will judge you in various ways” or “I will punish you” (UDB).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 5:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Because of all your detestable idols and practices, I will punish you people of Jerusalem like I have never done before and will never do again. ¹⁰ As a result, parents among you will eat their children, and children will eat their parents because there will be nothing else to eat. I will punish you severely, and I will cause those who will still be alive to be scattered in every direction.

ULB:

⁹ I will do to you what I have not done and the like of which I will not do again, because of all your disgusting actions. ¹⁰ Therefore fathers will eat the children in your midst, and sons will eat their fathers, since I will execute judgment on you and scatter to every direction all of you who are left.

translationWords:

- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [son, son of](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Israel and Jerusalem.
- **what I have not done and the like of which I will not do again** - “as I have not done before and will not do in a similar way again” or “like I have never done before and will never do again” (UDB).
- **because of all your disgusting actions** - “because of all the disgusting things you do.” God was angry because the people were worshiping idols and false gods.
- **fathers will eat the children in your midst, and sons will eat their fathers** - Ezekiel is probably telling what will really happen when the people have no food.
- **I will execute judgment on you** - “I will judge you” or “I will punish you severely” (UDB)
- **and scatter to every direction all of you who are left** - “and I will force all of you who are left to go to different places.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 5:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Therefore, I, Yahweh the Lord, make this declaration! That as surely as I am alive, because you have polluted my temple with all your disgusting idols and with the other awful things that you do, I will no longer bless you. I will not pity you or act mercifully toward you. ¹² One third of your people will die inside the city because of the plagues they will experience, or by famine. One third of your people will be killed by your enemies' swords outside the city. And one third I will scatter in every direction, but your enemies will still pursue you and kill you with their swords.

ULB:

¹¹ Therefore, as I live—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—it is certainly because you have defiled my sanctuary with all your hateful things and with all your disgusting deeds, that I myself will reduce you in number; my eye will not have pity on you, and I will not spare you. ¹² A third of you will die by plague, and they will be consumed by famine in your midst. A third will fall by the sword surrounding you. Then I will scatter a third in every direction, and draw out a sword to chase after them as well.

translationWords:

- life, live, living, alive
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration
- defile, be defiled
- sanctuary
- death, die, dead
- plague
- famine
- sword

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.
- **live—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—it** - Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh is speaking of himself as if he were another person AT: "live—I, the Lord Yahweh, am making this declaration—it" or 2) Ezekiel reminds his readers that he is quoting Yahweh AT: "live'—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—'it"
- **as I live** - "as surely as I live." or "as true as it is that I am alive, it is also true that"
- **Lord Yahweh** - Translate as in 2:4.
- **defiled ... sanctuary** - ruined the place that Yahweh had set aside to be only for his use

- **with all your hateful things** - “with all of those things of yours that I hate.” You may need to make explicit that this refers to idols: “with all your idols, which I hate” or “with all your disgusting idols” (UDB). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **and with all your disgusting deeds** - “and with all the disgusting things that you do”
- **my eye will not have pity on you** - The word “eye” is a metonym for Yahweh. AT: “I will not have pity on you” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will not spare you** - “I will surely punish you”
- **they will be consumed by famine in your midst** - “many of them will die because of famine”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 5:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Then I will no longer be angry with you; I will stop punishing you after I have avenged myself against you. And when I stop punishing you, you will know that I, Yahweh, have spoken to you because I have finished punishing you in my anger.

¹⁴ I will cause your city to be a ruins, so that people of other nations that are around you will pass by and see it and sneer at you.

ULB:

¹³ Then my wrath will be completed, and I will cause my fury toward them to rest. I will be satisfied, and they will know that I, Yahweh, have spoken in my wrath when I have completed my fury against them. ¹⁴ I will make you a desolation and a reproach to the nations that surround you in the sight of everyone who passes by.

translationWords:

- [wrath, fury](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [reproach](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.
- **my wrath will be completed** - “I will no longer be angry because I will have done everything I wanted to do because I was angry”
- **I will cause my fury toward them to rest** - The word “fury” means violent anger, and here it is a metonym for punishment. “I will stop punishing them because I will have punished them fully.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will be satisfied** - You may need to make explicit why Yahweh will be satisfied. AT: “I will be satisfied that I have punished them enough” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **when I have completed my fury against them** - “when I have finished punishing them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 5:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ They will scorn you and taunt you. When I severely punish you because of my great anger, they will be horrified and you will be a warning to them. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it. ¹⁶ And when I cut off your food supply and cause there to be more famine, it will be as though I am shooting at you with my arrows that will destroy you. ¹⁷ So I will cause you to experience a famine, and I will send wild beasts to attack you and your children, and all your children will be killed. You will experience plagues and wars, and I will cause your enemies to attack you with their swords. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

¹⁵ So Jerusalem will become something for other people to condemn and to mock, a warning and a horror to the nations that surround you. I will execute judgments against you in wrath and fury, and with a furious rebuke—I, Yahweh have declared this! ¹⁶ I will send out harsh arrows of famine against you that will become the means with which I will destroy you. For I will increase the famine on you and break your staff of bread. ¹⁷ I will send a famine and disasters against you so you will be childless. Plague and blood will pass through you, and I will bring a sword against you—I, Yahweh, have declared this.”

translationWords:

- Jerusalem
- condemn, condemnation
- judge, judgment
- wrath, fury
- rebuke
- famine
- staff
- bread
- plague
- blood
- sword
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.
- **in wrath and fury** - The words “wrath” and “fury” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh is very angry. AT: “because I will be very angry with you.” (See: **Doublet**)

- **will send out harsh arrows of famine against you** - The word “arrows” is a metonym for the sharp pains that people feel when they have had no food for a long time. AT: “will make you feel the pain of intense hunger” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **increase the famine on you** - “make the famine more severe for you” or “make the famine last longer for you” or “make sure that there is less and less for you to eat”
- **break your staff of bread** - A “staff” was something that people leaned upon to support them. This phrase is a metaphor for means removing the supply of food that the people were depending upon. AT: “cut off your food supply” (UDB). See how “staff of bread” is translated in [4:16](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Plague and blood will pass through you** - Sickness and violent death are spoken of as if they were soldiers going through the city killing everyone they could. AT: “Many people will die of disease, and many others will die in war” (See: [Personification](#))
- **I will bring a sword against you** - The word “sword” is a metonym for killing people using a sword. AT: “I myself will cause you to die a violent death” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 6 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Shrines on the hill tops

God will destroy all those who have been worshiping idols at the hill top shrines.

Links:

- [Ezekiel 06:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 6:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "Son of man, turn toward the mountains of Israel, and prophesy about what will happen to them, and say, ³ 'Mountains of Israel, listen to what Yahweh the Lord says to you! He says this to the mountains and the high hills and to the streambeds and the low valleys. He says: I am about to send enemy soldiers with swords to destroy all the hilltops where you worship idols.

ULB:

6 ¹ The word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, set your face against the mountains of Israel and prophesy to them. ³ Say, 'Mountains of Israel, listen to the word of the Lord Yahweh! The Lord Yahweh says this to the mountains and to the hills, to the streambeds, and to the valleys: Behold! I am bringing a sword against you, and I will destroy your high places.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- face
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- sword
- high places

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is telling Ezekiel to speak to the mountains as if they were people so that the people of Israel would hear the words and know that Ezekiel's words were for them. (See: [Apostrophe](#))
- **The word of Yahweh came to me** - "Yahweh spoke to me." Translate as in [1:1](#).
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate this as in [2:3](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **set your face against the mountains of Israel** - "look at the mountains of Israel with an angry face." Similar words appear in [4:3](#).
- **the mountains of Israel** - "the mountains in the land of Israel."
- **Behold!** - "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"
- **Lord Yahweh** - Translate as in [2:4](#).

- **I am bringing a sword against you** - The word “sword” here refers to war. AT: “I am bringing war against you” or “I will enemy soldiers against you.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 6:4-5

UDB:

⁴ They will smash all your altars for worshiping idols and your pillars you use for astronomy, and they will kill many Israelite people in front of their idols. ⁵ Their corpses will lie in front of their idols, and their bones will be scattered around their altars.

ULB:

⁴ Then your altars will become desolate and your pillars will be destroyed, and I will throw down your dead in front of their idols. ⁵ I will lay the dead bodies of the people of Israel before their idols, and scatter your bones around your altars.

translationWords:

- altar
- desolate, desolation
- pillar, column
- idol, idolatrous

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.
- **Then your altars will become desolate and your pillars will be destroyed** - "There will no longer be anyone to worship at your altars and your enemy will destroy your pillars" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **I will throw down ... I will lay ... and scatter** - Yahweh was speaking of sending soldiers (6:3) to do these things. AT: "I will send soldiers to throw down ... They will lay ... and scatter." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **your dead** - "your people who have died"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 6:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Wherever you live, your towns will be ruined and the places where idols were worshiped on the hilltops will be smashed. Your altars will be completely smashed, and everything that you own will become a pile of ruins. ⁷ Many of your people will be killed right in front of you, and then you will know that I am Yahweh and I do what I say I will do.

ULB:

⁶ Everywhere you live, cities will be laid waste and the high places ruined, so that your altars will be laid waste and made desolate. Then they will be broken and disappear, your pillars will be cut down and your works will be wiped away. ⁷ The dead will fall down in your midst and you will know that I am Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [waste, wasteland](#)
- [high places](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.
- **cities will be laid waste** - "Enemy armies will lay waste your cities" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **they will be broken** - "your altars will be broken" or "enemy armies will break them." (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **your pillars will be cut down** - "they will cut down your pillars." See how you translated "pillars" in [6:4](#).
- **your works will be wiped away** - "no one will remember what you have done"
- **The dead will fall down in your midst** - "You will see the enemy kill many people"
- **know that I am Yahweh** - Possible meanings are 1) "understand who I, Yahweh, am" or 2) "understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God" or 3) "know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do the things that I say that I will do." (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 06 General Notes
- Ezekiel 06 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 6:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ But I will allow some of you to remain alive. They will escape death when your enemies scatter you among many other nations. ⁹ When that happens, in those nations to which you have been forced to go, those of you who have escaped death will think about me. You will remember that I was very grieved because you turned away from me, because you were disloyal to me, and because you desired to worship your idols. You will hate yourselves because of the evil and detestable things that you have done. ¹⁰ And you will realize that I, Yahweh, have punished you. You will realize that when I threatened to punish you, I surely intended to do that.

ULB:

⁸ But I will preserve a remnant among you, and there will be some who escape the sword among the nations, when you are scattered throughout the countries. ⁹ Then those who escape will think of me among the nations where they will be held captive, that I was grieved by their promiscuous heart that turned away from me, and by their eyes that whored after their idols. Then they will show loathing on their face for the wickedness which they have committed with all their abominations. ¹⁰ So they will know that I am Yahweh. It was for a reason that I said I would bring this evil to them.

translationWords:

- remnant
- sword
- nation
- captive, captivity
- heart
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- abomination, abominable

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.
- **some who escape the sword** - "some who are not killed in battle." The sword represents being killed in war. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **when you are scattered throughout the countries** - "when you go live in different countries"

- **I was grieved by their promiscuous heart that turned away from me** - Yahweh speaks of the Israelites as if they were a woman who sleeps with many people. AT: “I was sad because they were like a wife who has left me to sleep with other men” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and by their eyes that whored after their idols** - Yahweh speaks of the Israelites as if they were a married woman who looks at other men and desires to sleep with them. AT: “and by the way they desired strongly to worship idols” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they will show loathing on their face for the wickedness which they have committed** - Possible meanings are 1) “they will hate themselves because of the wicked things they have done” or 2) “they will hate the wicked things that they have done.” AT: “Their faces will show their hatred for the wickedness that they did.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 6:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ So this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to you, Ezekiel: Slap your hands and stamp your feet and cry out to show that you are distressed, and groan about what will happen to the Israelite people because of all their wicked and detestable behavior. They will be killed by their enemies' swords, they will die from hunger, and they will die from plagues. ¹² Those who are far from Jerusalem will die from plagues, those who are close to Jerusalem will be killed by their enemies' swords. Those who are still alive after that will die from hunger. That is how I will punish them.

ULB:

¹¹ The Lord Yahweh says this: Clap your hands and stomp your foot! Say, "Alas!" because of all the evil abominations of the house of Israel! For they will fall by sword, famine, and plague. ¹² The one far away will die by plague, and the one who is near will fall by the sword. Those who remain and survive will die by famine. In his way I will accomplish my fury against them.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- abomination, abominable
- house
- famine
- plague

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to Ezekiel.
- **Lord Yahweh** - Translate as in [2:4](#).
- **Clap your hands and stomp your foot** - Ezekiel was to do this symbolic action to get the people's attention. This was not applause.
- **Alas** - The word "Alas" is used to express sadness.
- **house of Israel** - The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. AT: "the Israelite people group" Translate as in [3:1](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **For they will fall by sword, famine, and plague.** - "For they will die by sword, famine, and plague." "Sword", "famine", and "plague" are the different ways that they will die. The word "sword" represents war. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will accomplish my fury against them** - "I will satisfy my anger against them"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 6:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Some of your people's corpses will lie among their idols around their altars, on every high hilltop and on all the mountaintops, under every big tree—at all the places where they burned incense to honor their idols. When this happens you will realize that I, Yahweh, have done this. ¹⁴ For I will display my power and cause every area in which they live in your country to become an empty wasteland, from the desert in the far south to the town of Diblah in the far north. Then they will realize that I, Yahweh, have done this.”

ULB:

¹³ Then you will know that I am Yahweh, when their dead lie among their idols, around their altars, on every high hill—on all the mountain peaks, and under every flourishing tree and thick oak—the places where they burned incense to all their idols. ¹⁴ I will strike with my hand and make the land desolate and a waste, from the wilderness to Diblah, throughout all the places where they live. Then they will know that I am Yahweh.”[1]Instead of *Diblah*, some ancient copies and modern versions have *Riblah*.

translationWords:

- oak
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- desert, wilderness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.
- **know that I am Yahweh** - Possible meanings are 1) “understand who I, Yahweh, am” or 2) “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or 3) “realize that I, Yahweh, have done this” (UDB).
- **around their altars, on every high hill** - Another possible meaning is “around their altars, which are on every high hill”
- **hill—on all the mountain peaks, and under every flourishing tree and thick oak** - Another possible meaning is “hill, on all the mountain peaks, under every flourishing tree, and under every thick oak.”
- **flourishing** - healthy and growing
- **oak** - a large tree with strong wood that provided shade for worshipers
- **Diblah** - Some early texts say Riblah. This was the name of a city in the north. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 7 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Now is the time for punishment

The people will be punished severely for their idol worship and the temple will be destroyed. (See: [temple](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 07:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 7:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "You, son of man, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to the people of Israel: All of Israel, everything within its borders, will soon be destroyed.

ULB:

7 ¹ The word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "You, son of man—the Lord Yahweh says this to the land of Israel"

'An end! An end has come to the four borders of the land.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This starts God's prophecy of judgment on Israel.
- **The word of Yahweh came to me** - "Yahweh spoke to me." Translate as in [1:1](#).
- **You, son of man** - "Son of man, I want you to pay attention to what I am going to say"
- **son of man** - "son of a human being" or "son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate this as in [2:1](#). AT: "mortal person" or "human"
- **Lord Yahweh** - Translate as in [2:4](#).
- **to the land of Israel** - "to the people of Israel". (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **An end!** - "The end has come!"
- **the four borders of the land** - This refers to the entire land of Israel.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 7:3-4**UDB:**

³ You people of Israel, the end has come. I will punish you severely. I will judge you for all the wicked things that you have done, and pay you back for your disgusting behavior. ⁴ I will not pity you or act mercifully toward you. I will surely punish you for your wicked behavior. Then you will know that it has happened because I, Yahweh, have done it.

ULB:

³ Now the end is upon you, for I am sending out my wrath on you, and I will judge you according to your ways;

then I will bring all your abominations upon you.

⁴ For my eyes will not pity you, and I will not spare you. Instead, I will bring your ways upon you,

and your abominations will be in your midst, so you will know that I am Yahweh.

translationWords:

- send, send out, sent
- wrath, fury
- judge, judgment
- abomination, abominable
- compassion, compassionate
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.
- **the end is upon you** - "your life is finished" or "the end of your time has arrived"
- **according to your ways** - "according to the things you do" or "because of the wicked things you do"
- **I will bring all your abominations upon you** - "I will make you experience the consequences of your disgusting behavior" or "I will punish you for doing those things that I hate so much"
- **abominations** - This refers here to behavior that God hates.
- **For my eyes will not pity you** - "For I will not look at you with compassion"
- **I will bring your ways upon you** - "I will make you experience the consequences of your bad behavior" or "I will punish you for the bad things you do."

- **your abominations will be in your midst** - 1) “the consequences of your disgusting behavior will surround you” or 2) “your idols will be with you and powerless.” Abominations here either refers to punishment for the behavior that God hates, or to their idols, which God hates. (See: [Metonymy](#)).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 7:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ This is also what Yahweh the Lord says: You will soon experience many terrible disasters! ⁶ This will be the end of Israel; your country will be finished! And your lives will be ended! ⁷ It will be the end of you people who live in the land of Israel. The time has come; the day when you will be destroyed is near. At that time the people who worship idols on the mountains will not be happy; they will panic.

ULB:

⁵ The Lord Yahweh says this:

Disaster! A unique disaster! Behold, it is coming. [1]Instead of *Disaster! A unique disaster!* some ancient copies have *Disaster after disaster*

⁶ An end is surely coming. The end has woken up against you. Behold, it is coming!

⁷ Your doom is coming to you who inhabit the land.

The time has come; the day of destruction is near, and the mountains will no longer be joyful.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- doom
- joy, joyful

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.
- **Lord Yahweh** - Translate as in 2:4.
- **Disaster! A unique disaster! Behold, it is coming.** - These exclamations are meant to make the passage very strong. AT: "Behold, a terrible disaster is coming, one that no one has ever experienced before."
- **Behold** - The word "behold" here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translations: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you."
- **The end has woken up against you** - The judgment that is coming is treated as if it were an enemy waking up from sleep. (See: **Personification**)
- **the mountains will no longer be joyful** - "the people on the mountains will not have any more joy." (See: **Synecdoche**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 7:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ I am very angry with you and am about to pour out my punishment on you. I will judge you for all the wicked things that you have done and pay you back for your disgusting behavior. ⁹ I will not pity you or act mercifully toward you. I will surely punish you for your wicked behavior. Then you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have punished you.

ULB:

⁸ Now before long I will pour out my fury against you and fill up my wrath upon you

when I judge you according to your ways and bring all your abominations upon you.

⁹ For my eye will not look compassionately, and I will not spare you. As you have done, I will do to you;

and your abominations will be in your midst so you will know that I am Yahweh, the one punishing you.

translationWords:

- **wrath, fury**
- **judge, judgment**
- **abomination, abominable**
- **compassion, compassionate**

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.
- **Now before long** - "Very soon now"
- **I will pour out my fury against you and fill up my wrath upon you** - Yahweh uses the terms "pour out" and "fill up" to compare his acting in anger with pouring out water and filling a jar. The two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the severity of Yahweh's punishment. AT: "I will punish you severely because I am very angry." (See: **Metaphor** and **Parallelism**)
- **fury** - "wrath" or "great anger"
- **For my eye will not look compassionately** - The phrase "my eye" means God himself. "For I will not look with compassion" (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **I will not spare you** - "I will not leave you without punishment" or "I will punish you"

- **your abominations will be in your midst so you will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [7:4](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 7:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ The day of your punishment is here! It has arrived! Disasters have come as a result of your pride. ¹¹ People are acting violently and doing more wicked things. And nothing that belongs to those people will be left, none of their money, and they will not be respected by anyone.

ULB:

¹⁰ Behold! The day is coming. Doom has gone out.

The rod has bloomed with the blossom of pride.

¹¹ Violence has grown up into a rod of wickedness—

none of them, and none of their multitude, none of their wealth, and none of their importance will last!

translationWords:

- proud, pride, prideful
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words about Israel.
- **Behold!** - AT: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"
- **The day is coming** - "The day of your punishment is coming." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Doom has gone out** - This shows the certainty that disasters will come to Israel. AT: "Disaster has begun to come to Israel" or "Terrible things have begun to happen."
- **The rod has bloomed with the blossom of pride** - "A flower has begun to grow on the stick and it has grown big with pride." Here the rod represents either Israel or violence. Possible meanings are 1) "The people of Israel have grown very proud" or "The people of Israel have become very violent and very proud." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Violence has grown up into a rod of wickedness** - "The people's violence has led them to do more wicked things"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 7:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Now is the time; that day has arrived. People who buy things should not rejoice because they bought things very cheaply and those who sell things should not be sad because they had to sell things cheaply, because Yahweh will be punishing everyone. ¹³ People who sell some of their property will never be able to buy it back—they will not even be able to return to see it; because they have sinned, not one of them will succeed in staying alive.

ULB:

¹² The time is coming; the day has come close. Do not let the buyer rejoice, nor the seller mourn, since my anger is on the entire multitude!

¹³ For the seller will never return to that which is sold for as long as they live, since the vision is against the entire multitude. They will not return, for no man living in his sin will be strengthened!

translationWords:

- rejoice
- angry, anger
- vision
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words about Israel.
- **The time is coming; the day has come close** - Both "The time" and "the day" refer to the time when God will punish the people of Israel. Alternative translation: "Israel's punishment will happen very soon" (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **the vision is against the entire multitude** - "what God has shown will happen to the multitude"
- **multitude** - a very large number of people. Here it refers to the people of Israel.
- **as long as they live** - The word "they" refers to the people of Israel who sell things.
- **They will not return** - "they will not go back to Israel." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **no man living in his sin will be strengthened** - The word "strengthened" refers to God's helping a person to keep going when things are hard through hope, encouragement and physical energy. "no one alive who keeps disobeying God will be helped by God."

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 7:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ Your commanders will blow trumpets to get the army ready to fight, but no one will respond, because I will be angry at all the people.

¹⁵ When those things happen, your enemies will be outside the city with their swords, and there will be plagues and famines inside the city. Those who are caught outside of the city in the fields will be killed by their enemies' swords, and those who are in the city will die from famines and plagues. ¹⁶ Those who survive and escape will flee to the mountains, and they all will moan because of their sins, as pigeons moan.

ULB:

¹⁴ They have blown the trumpet and made everything ready, but there is no one marching to battle;

since my anger is on the entire multitude.

¹⁵ The sword is on the outside, and plague and famine are inside the building.

Those who are in the field will die by the sword, while famine and plague will consume those in the city.

¹⁶ But some survivors will escape from among them, and they will go to the mountains.

Like doves of the valleys, all of them will moan—each man for his iniquity.

translationWords:

- trumpet
- sword
- plague
- famine
- dove, pigeon
- iniquity

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words about Israel.
- **They have blown the trumpet** - "They have blown the trumpet to call people to fight against the enemy"

- **The sword is on the outside** - The sword represents battle or war. Alternate translation: “There is fighting outside.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **plague and famine are inside the building** - The building probably refers to the city.
- **while famine and plague will consume those in the city** - Here the word “consume” means “totally destroy.” Alternate translation: “and most of the people in the city will die from hunger and sickness.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Like doves of the valleys, all of them will moan** - Doves make a low-pitched noise that sounds like the sound a person makes when he is in constant pain or deep sadness. AT: “They will all be so sad that they will moan, and the sound will be as if they were a flock of doves” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 7:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ Because they will be very afraid, all the people's hands will become limp and weak, and their knees will become very weak and unable to hold them up. ¹⁸ They will put on clothes made from rough cloth, and they will be terrified. Their faces will show that they are ashamed, and they will shave their heads to show that they are very sad. ¹⁹ They will throw their silver into the streets, and consider their gold the same way they would consider garbage, because they will realize that their silver and gold will not be able to rescue them when Yahweh punishes them. They will not be able to buy food to fill their stomachs, because having a lot of gold and silver has led them to sin.

ULB:

¹⁷ Every hand will falter and every knee will be weak as water,

¹⁸ and they will wear sackcloth, and terror will cover them;

and shame will be on every face, and baldness on all of their heads.

¹⁹ They will throw their silver into the streets and their gold will be like refuse. Their silver and their gold

will not be able to rescue them in the day of Yahweh's rage. Their lives will not be saved,

and their hunger will not be satisfied, because their iniquity has become a stumbling block.

translationWords:

- sackcloth
- terror, terrify
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- save, safe
- iniquity
- stumbling block, stone of stumbling

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words about Israel.
- **and terror will cover them** - "they will be full of fear" or "and they will be very afraid"
- **in the day of Yahweh's rage** - "in the day when Yahweh acts on his anger" or "when Yahweh punishes them"

- **their hunger will not be satisfied** - “and they will have no food to eat”
- **their iniquity has become a stumbling block** - Possible meanings are 1) “because having a lot of gold and silver has led them to sin” (UDB) or 2) “because they are evil, they are committing sins that show how evil they are.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 7:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ They were proud, so they used their beautiful jewelry to make detestable and disgusting idols of their false gods. So I will make them see how disgusting and unacceptable these things are. ²¹ I will give their silver and gold to foreigners who invade your country and take away your valuable treasures. I will give those things to wicked people, and I will not interfere when they will do disgraceful things to the things that they take. ²² I will allow robbers to enter the temple I love and protect, and they will desecrate it.

ULB:

²⁰ They took jeweled ornaments in their pride and they formed idolatrous figures depicting their abominations and their detestable things they made with them,

therefore, I am making these things unclean to them.

²¹ Then I will give those things into the hand of strangers as plunder and to the wicked of the earth as plunder,

and they will defile them.

²² Then I will turn my face away from them when they defile my cherished place;

bandits will enter it and defile it.

translationWords:

- idol, idolatrous
- abomination, abominable
- unclean
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- defile, be defiled
- face

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words about Israel.
- **I will give those things into the hand of strangers** - The word "hand" is used to refer to control. "I will give those idols into the control of people they do not know" or "I will give those idols to people they do not know" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **plunder** - things that are stolen or taken by force

- **they will defile them** - The strangers and wicked people will defile the idols that the people of Israel had made.
- **I will turn my face away** - “I will not pay attention” or “I will look away” or “I will not notice”
- **my cherished place** - “the place I love.” This refers to God’s temple.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 7:23-25**UDB:**

²³ Prepare chains to be fastened on you when your enemies capture you as punishment because the people throughout the country are committing murder, and people in the city are being violent. ²⁴ So I will bring armies of the nations whose people are extremely wicked to take the houses of the Israelite people. I will make Israelite people realize that they are to no longer be proud. Your enemies will cause your places of worship to no longer be acceptable to be used. ²⁵ When your enemies cause you to be terrified, you will plead for them to make peace, but there will be no peace.

ULB:

²³ Make a chain, because the land is filled with the judgment of blood, and the city is full of violence.

²⁴ So I will bring the most wicked of the nations, and they will possess their houses,

and I will bring an end to the pride of the mighty, for their holy places will be defiled!

²⁵ Fear will come! They will seek peace, but there will be none.

translationWords:

- judge, judgment
- blood
- proud, pride, prideful
- mighty, might
- holy, holiness
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- peace, peaceful

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words to Ezekiel about Israel.
- **Make a chain** - Chains are used to hold slaves or prisoners. God says this to show the people that they will become slaves or prisoners.
- **the land is filled with the judgment of blood** - Possible meanings are 1) "everywhere in the country God is judging people because they violently killed others" or 2) "the courts everywhere in the country are murdering people." The word "blood" here represents murder and death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **the city is full of violence** - “violence is everywhere in the city” or “many people in the city are doing violent things to others”
- **and they will possess their houses** - “the wicked will take the houses of Israel”
- **I will bring an end to the pride of the mighty** - I will cause the powerful people in Israel to stop being proud of themselves”
- **their holy places will be defiled!** - “Enemies will defile the places where you worship.”
- **their holy places** - the places in which they worshiped idols.
- **Fear will come** - “The people will be afraid”
- **They will seek peace** - “They will hope for peace” or “They will try to make peace with their enemies”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 7:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ You will experience many disasters, and you will continually hear rumors about disasters that are happening in other places. People will plead with prophets to tell them what visions they have received, but the prophets will not have received any visions. Priests will no longer teach people the laws that I gave to Moses. Even the wise older people will not have any answers. ²⁷ Your king will mourn, and his son will no longer expect that good things will happen. The hands of people throughout the country will tremble. And I will do to them what they deserve for their wicked behavior. I will judge and condemn them the same way they have judged and condemned others. Then they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

ULB:

²⁶ Disaster upon disaster will come, and there will be rumor after rumor.

Then they will seek a vision from the prophet, but the law will perish from the priest and advice from the elders.

²⁷ The king will mourn and the prince will dress in despair,

while the hands of the people of the land will tremble in fear. According to their own ways I will do this to them!

I will judge them with their own standards until they know that I am Yahweh.”

translationWords:

- vision
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- perish, perishing, perishable
- priest, priesthood
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- elder
- king
- prince, princess
- judge, judgment

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh’s words about Israel.
- **they will seek a vision from the prophet** - “they will ask the prophets what visions they have seen.”

- **the law will perish from the priest and advice from the elders** - “The priests will not teach the law and the elders will not be able to give good advice.” This is because God will not give them wisdom.
- **the prince** - Possible meanings are 1) “the king’s son” (UDB) or 2) every male member of the royal family except the king.
- **will dress in despair** - Possible meanings are 1) “will have no hope” or 2) “will dress in clothes that show he is mourning.” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **hands of the people of the land will tremble in fear** - “the people of the land will be so afraid that their hands will tremble” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **know that I am Yahweh** - Possible meanings are 1) “understand who I, Yahweh, am” or 2) “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or 3) “know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 8 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Judah's sin

The people have contaminated the temple with their worship of other gods and through their sin. (See: [temple](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 08:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 8:1-2**UDB:**

¹ On the fifth day of the sixth month, almost six years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, I was sitting with the leaders of Judah in my house when I felt the presence of Yahweh the Lord come on me again. ² Then in a vision I saw someone who resembled a man, but below his waist his body was like fire and above his waist his body was glowing like very hot metal.

ULB:

8 ¹ So it came about in the sixth year and the sixth month, in the fifth day of the month, as I sat in my house and the elders of Judah sat before me, that the hand of the Lord Yahweh again fell upon me there. ² So I looked, and behold, there was a figure like a man, with what looked like fire from his hips downward, and from his hips upward there was a shining appearance like glowing metal.

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- biblical time: day
- elder
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- fire

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel tells about another vision he saw.
- **So it came about** - This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **in the sixth year** - AT: “in the sixth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the sixth month, in the fifth day of the month** - “the fifth day of the sixth month.” This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifth day is near the beginning of September on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the hand of the Lord Yahweh again fell upon me** - This should be translated literally, as Ezekiel later sees something like a hand. Others may choose to consider the hand a metaphor for Yahweh’s presence or power. (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Lord Yahweh** - Translate as in [2:4](#).
- **fell upon** - “took hold of”
- **glowing metal** - When metal is very hot, it glows with a yellow or orange light.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 8:3-4**UDB:**

³ He reached out what seemed to be a hand and grabbed me by the hair of my head. The Spirit lifted me up high above the earth, and in visions God took me from Babylon to Jerusalem. He took me to the temple, to the inner north gate, to the place where there was an idol that caused Yahweh to be very disgusted and furious. ⁴ And there in front of me was the very bright light of God himself whom the Israelite people previously worshiped. It was like the vision that I had seen in the plain.

ULB:

³ Then he reached out the form of a hand and took me by the hair of my head; the Spirit lifted me up between earth and heaven, and in visions from God, he brought me to Jerusalem, to the entrance of the inner northern gate, where the idol that provokes great jealousy was standing. ⁴ Then the glory of the God of Israel, whose appearance was the same as I had seen in the plain, was there.

translationWords:

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- vision
- God
- Jerusalem
- gate, gate bar
- idol, idolatrous
- jealous, jealousy
- glory, glorious
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel continues telling about the vision from God.
- **he reached out** - The word “he” probably refers to the “figure like a man” (8:2).
- **between earth and heaven** - “between the ground and sky”
- **in visions from God, he brought me to Jerusalem** - The words “in visions” mean that this experience is happening in Ezekiel’s thoughts. He would still be in his home while God shows him these things.
- **the inner northern gate** - “the inner northern gate of the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **the idol that provokes great jealousy** - “the idol that causes great jealousy” or “the idol that causes God to be jealous”
- **whose appearance was the same as I had seen in the plain** - “who looked the same as the one I had seen in the plain”
- **the plain** - a large area of flat land that has few trees.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 8:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ God said to me, “Son of man, look toward the north!” So I looked, and I saw at the entrance of the gate near the altar that idol that caused Yahweh to be disgusted and furious.

⁶ He said to me, “Son of man, do you see what the Israelite people are doing? They are doing detestable things here, things that will cause me to abandon my temple. But you will see things that are even more detestable.”

ULB:

⁵ Then he said to me, “Son of man, lift up your eyes to the north.” So I lifted up my eyes to the north, and to the north of the gate leading to the altar, there in the entrance, was the idol of jealousy. ⁶ So he said to me, “Son of man, do you see what they are doing? These are great abominations that the house of Israel is doing here to make me go far from my own sanctuary. But you will turn and see even greater abominations.”

translationWords:

- Son of Man, son of man
- gate, gate bar
- altar
- idol, idolatrous
- jealous, jealousy
- abomination, abominable
- house
- sanctuary

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The “figure like a man” (8:2) speaks to Ezekiel.
- **Son of man** - “Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate this as in 2:3. AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”
- **lift up your eyes** - “look” or “turn your head and look” (See: **Idiom**)
- **gate leading to the altar** - “gate through which people would walk so they could go to the altar”
- **do you see what they are doing?** - God uses this question to bring Ezekiel’s attention to what the people were doing. AT: “I want you to understand why I hate what the people here are doing.” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)

- **house of Israel** - The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. AT: “the Israelite people group” Translate as in [3:1](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 8:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ Then he brought me to the entrance of the courtyard. I looked and saw a hole in the wall. ⁸ He said to me, “Son of man, dig through the wall here.” So I dug through the wall, and I saw a doorway inside.

⁹ He said to me, “Go in and see the wicked and detestable things that they are doing here!”

ULB:

⁷ Then he brought me to the doorway of the courtyard, and I looked, and there was a hole in the wall. ⁸ He said to me, “Son of man, dig into this wall.” So I dug into the wall, and there was a door.

⁹ Then he said to me, “Go and see the wicked abominations that they are doing here.”

translationWords:

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)

translationNotes:

- **the courtyard** - “the temple courtyard” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 8:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ So I went in through the doorway and looked, and I saw all over the walls of a big room, drawings of all kinds of creatures that crawl along the ground and other detestable animals, and drawings of all the idols that the people of Israel were worshiping. ¹¹ In front of them stood seventy elders of Israel. Jaazaniah son of Shaphan, was standing among them. Each of them was holding a pan in which incense was burning, and fragrant smoke of burning incense was rising up.

ULB:

¹⁰ So I went in and looked, and behold! There was every form of creeping thing and detestable beast! Every idol of the house of Israel was carved into the wall all around. ¹¹ Seventy elders of the house of Israel were there, and Jaazaniah son of Shaphan was standing in their midst. They were standing in front of the images, and each man had his censer in his hand so that the smell of the cloud of incense went up.

translationWords:

- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [house](#)
- [elder](#)
- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)
- [incense](#)

translationNotes:

- **behold!** - The word “behold” here shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.
- **every form of creeping thing and detestable beast** - “carvings in the wall of all kinds of creeping animals and detestable beasts.” The phrase “creeping thing” refer to insects and other small animals.
- **house of Israel** - The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. AT: “the Israelite people group” Translate as in [3:1](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Jaazaniah son of Shaphan** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **censer** - a pan that people use for burning incense in when they worship God or false gods

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)

- **Ezekiel 08 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 8:12-13

UDB:

¹² God said to me, “Son of man, look at what the Israelite elders are doing here in the darkness, each of them standing in his rooms with the carved images, worshiping his own idols! They are saying, ‘Yahweh does not see us; Yahweh has deserted this country.’” ¹³ He also said, “But you will see things that are even more detestable!”

ULB:

¹² He said to me, “Son of man, do you see what the elders of the house of Israel are doing in the dark? Each one does this in the hidden chamber of his idol, for they say, ‘Yahweh does not see us! Yahweh has forsaken the land.’” ¹³ Then he said to me, “Turn again and see the other great abominations that they are doing.”

translationWords:

- [darkness](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, forsook](#)

translationNotes:

- **do you see what the elders of the house of Israel are doing in the dark** - God asked this question so Ezekiel would look at what God was telling him to look at. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **house of Israel** - The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. AT: “the Israelite people group” Translate as in [3:1](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the hidden chamber of his idol** - “the room where no one can see him worship his idol” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 8:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Then he took me to the entrance at the outer north gate of the temple. I saw women sitting there, mourning for the death of the god of the people of Babylonia, Tammuz. ¹⁵ He said to me, “Son of man, do you see this? And you will see things that are more detestable than this!”

ULB:

¹⁴ Next he brought me to the entrance of the gate of Yahweh’s house that was on the north side, and behold! The women were sitting there mourning for Tammuz. ¹⁵ So he said to me, “Do you see this, son of man? Turn again and see even greater abominations than these.”

translationWords:

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)

translationNotes:

- **the entrance of the gate of Yahweh’s house that was on the north side** - This was the outer north gate—not the same one as in [8:3](#). See the UDB.
- **behold!** - The word “behold” here shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.
- **mourning for Tammuz** - “grieving because the false god Tammuz had died. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 8:16**UDB:**

¹⁶ Then he took me into the inner courtyard inside the temple. There at the entrance of the temple, between the porch and the altar, were about twenty-five men. Their backs were toward the temple, and their faces were toward the east; they were bowing down to worship the sun as it rose in the east.

ULB:

¹⁶ He brought me into the inner courtyard of Yahweh's house, and behold! at the entrance of the temple of Yahweh between the portico and the altar, there were about twenty-five men with their backs toward the temple of Yahweh and their faces toward the east, and they were worshiping the sun.

translationWords:

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [temple](#)
- [altar](#)
- [face](#)
- [worship](#)

translationNotes:

- **behold!** - The word "behold" here shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.
- **portico** - covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support
- **and their faces toward the east** - "and they were looking toward the east"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 8:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ He said to me, "Son of man, do you see what they are doing? Do you think that it is not a serious thing that these men of Judah are doing, worshiping these detestable things here? But they are doing other terrible things. They are acting violently throughout their country, and continually provoking my anger. Look at them! They are insulting me by their actions of false worship! ¹⁸ So I will show them that I am very angry. I will not pity them or act mercifully toward them. And even if they shout loudly to me to help them, I will not pay attention to them."

ULB:

¹⁷ He said to me, "Do you see this, son of man? Is it a little thing for the house of Judah to do these abominations that they are doing here? For they have filled the land with violence and they have turned again to provoke me to anger, putting the branch to their noses. ¹⁸ So I will also act among them; my eye will not have compassion, and I will not spare them. Though they cry in my ears with a loud voice, I will not hear them."

translationWords:

- house
- Judah
- abomination, abominable
- angry, anger
- compassion, compassionate

translationNotes:

- **Is it a little thing for the house of Judah to do these abominations that they are doing here** - God uses this question to show his anger that the people of Judah do not think that worshiping idols is very bad. Alternate translation: Do the people of Judah think that their abominations are not serious?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **house of Judah** - The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. AT: "the Judah people group" or "the people of Judah" Similar words appear in [3:1](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **they have filled the land with violence** - "throughout the country they are doing violent things or "all over the country they are attacking one another"
- **to provoke me to anger** - "to make me angry"
- **putting the branch to their noses** - This may mean "holding up branches to their nose in false worship."
- **I will not spare them** - "I will still punish them."

- **Though they cry in my ears with a loud voice** - Alternate translation: “Though they yell their prayers to me with a loud voice”
- **I will not hear them** - “I will not listen to them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Sorrow over sin

God was looking for people who were sad that there was so much evil being done. Yahweh would keep these faithful people from being killed with the rest of the people. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 09:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 9:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh called out loudly, “You men who are going to punish this city, bring your tools of destruction here.” ² Then I saw six men coming from the north gate of the temple. Each one was carrying a weapon. With them was a man wearing a white linen robe. He carried at his side a case containing things to write with. They all came in and stood beside the bronze altar.

ULB:

9¹ Then he cried in my hearing with a loud voice, and said, “Let the guards come up to the city, each with his weapon of destruction in his hand.” ² Then behold! Six men came from the pathway of the upper gate that faces north, each with his weapon of slaughter in his hand. There was a man in their midst dressed in linen with a scribe’s equipment at his side. So they went in and stood beside the bronze altar.

translationWords:

- gate, gate bar
- scribe, expert in the Jewish law
- bronze
- altar

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision God gave him. It started in **8:1**.
- **he cried in my hearing** - “I heard him call out”
- **guards** - people who protect something.
- **weapon of destruction** - weapon for destroying people or things
- **weapon of slaughter** - weapon for killing many people
- **behold!** - The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. It can also be translated as “indeed!”
- **linen** - a strong, smooth cloth made from a plant. It is worn by many people in places that are hot. Alternate translation: “smooth cloth” (See: **Translate Unknowns**)
- **scribe’s equipment** - tools that scribes use to write with
- **bronze** - A dark gold-colored metal. It is made from mostly copper with tin added for strength. (See: **Translate Unknowns**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 9:3-4**UDB:**

³ Then the glory that symbolized the presence of the God of Israel rose up from above the four winged creatures and moved to the entrance of the temple, and Yahweh called to the man wearing the linen robe, ⁴ and said to him, “Go throughout Jerusalem and put a mark on the foreheads of those who are very sad because of the detestable things that are being done inside the city.”

ULB:

³ Then the glory of the God of Israel went up from the cherubim where it had been to the threshold of the house. He called to the man dressed in linen who had the scribe’s equipment at his side. ⁴ Yahweh said to him, “Pass through the midst of the city—the midst of Jerusalem—and make a mark on the foreheads of those who groan and sigh about all the abominations being performed in the midst of the city.”

translationWords:

- glory, glorious
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- cherubim, cherub
- threshold
- scribe, expert in the Jewish law
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- abomination, abominable

translationNotes:

- **from the cherubim where it had been** - Possible meanings are 1) “from above the four winged creatures” (1:5) (UDB) or 2) from between the two cherubim in the most holy place in the temple. Try to translate this literally. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **threshold of the house** - The “house” refers to God’s temple.
- **linen** - See how you translated this in 9:2.
- **scribe’s equipment** - see how you translated this in 9:2.
- **groan and sigh** - These are sounds people make when they feel very sad or grieved about something. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **the abominations being performed in the midst of the city** - “the horrible things being done in the city” or “the detestable things that people are doing in the city”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 9:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ While I was listening, he said to the other six men, "Follow the man wearing the white robe, and kill people. Do not pity them or act mercifully toward them. ⁶ Slaughter old men, young men and women, older women and children; but do not harm any of those who have that mark on their forehead. Start at my temple." So they began by killing the elders who were worshiping idols in front of the temple.

ULB:

⁵ Then he spoke to the others within my hearing, "Pass through the city after him and kill. Do not let your eyes have compassion, and do not spare ⁶ either old man, young man, virgin, little children or women. Kill all of them! But do not approach anyone who has the mark on his head. Begin at my sanctuary!" So they began with the elders who were in front of the house.

translationWords:

- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [virgin](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

translationNotes:

- **he spoke to the others within my hearing** - The word "others" refers to the guards. (See: [Ezekiel 09:1-2](#))
- **Do not let your eyes have compassion** - "Do not have compassion on the people you see."
- **do not spare** - "do not refrain from killing"
- **mark on his head** - These were the people who groaned about the abominations happening in Jerusalem. See how you translated "mark" in [9:4](#).
- **Begin at my sanctuary** - "Begin to kill the ones who do not have the mark at my sanctuary" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the elders** - Possible meanings are 1) the "seventy elders of the house of Israel" ([8:11](#)) or 2) any "old man" (verse 6).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 9:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Then Yahweh said to those men, “Pollute the temple by filling the courtyard with the corpses of those whom you kill! Start now!” So they went out and starting killing people throughout the city. ⁸ While they were doing that, I was left alone. I prostrated myself on the ground and cried out, “Yahweh my Lord, are you going to get rid of all the other people of Israel who are still alive, while you are severely punishing the people of Jerusalem?”

ULB:

⁷ He said to them, “Defile the house, and fill its courtyards with the dead. Proceed!” So they went out and attacked the city. ⁸ As they were attacking it, I found myself alone and I fell on my face and cried out and said, “Ah, Lord Yahweh, will you destroy all the remnant of Israel in the outpouring of your wrath on Jerusalem?”

translationWords:

- defile, be defiled
- house
- courtyard, court
- death, die, dead
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- remnant
- wrath, fury

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God continuing to speak to the guards judging the people of Israel.
- **attacked the city** - “attacked the people in the city”
- **I fell on my face** - “I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. Translate as in **1:28**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **Ah, Lord Yahweh** - Ezekiel says this because he is very troubled by what the Lord told the men to do to Jerusalem. Translate as in **4:14**.
- **will you destroy all the remnant of Israel in the outpouring of your wrath on Jerusalem?** - “will you destroy all the remnant of Israel by pouring out your wrath on Jerusalem?” Ezekiel is actually pleading with Yahweh not to destroy the remnant. AT: “please do not destroy all the remnant of Israel by pouring out your wrath on Jerusalem!” (See: **Idiom** and **Rhetorical Question**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 9:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ He replied, "The sins of the people are numerous and severe! There is murder everywhere in this country, and this city is full of people who act unjustly. They say, 'Yahweh has abandoned this country, and he does not see what we are doing.' ¹⁰ So I will not pity them or act mercifully toward them. I will do to them the evil things that they have done to other people."

¹¹ Then the man wearing the linen robe returned, saying, "I have done what you commanded me to do."

ULB:

⁹ He said to me, "The iniquity of the house of Israel and Judah is exceedingly great. The land is full of blood and the city full of perversions, since they say, 'Yahweh has forgotten the land,' and 'Yahweh does not see!' ¹⁰ So then, my eye will not look with compassion, and I will not spare them. I will instead bring it all on their heads." ¹¹ Behold! The man dressed in linen who had the scribe's equipment by his side came back. He reported and said, "I have done all that you have commanded."

translationWords:

- iniquity
- house
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- blood
- command, to command, commandment

translationNotes:

- **house of Israel** - The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. AT: "the Israelite people group" Translate as in **3:1**. (See: **Metonymy**)
- **exceedingly great** - "very great"
- **The land is full of blood** - "the land is full of violence" or "All over the land people are killing people" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **the city full of perversions** - Possible meanings are 1) "the city is full of people who pervert justice" or 2) "the city is full of people who do perverse things." Alternate translations: "the city is full of people who act unjustly" (UDB) or "the city has many people who do wicked things" (See: **Metonymy**)

- **my eye will not look with compassion** - “I will not look on them with compassion” or “I will not be compassionate to them.” The eye here refers to how he regards people. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **bring it all on their heads** - “bring the effects of what they have done on their heads.” It means “I will repay them for what they have done” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **behold!** - The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. It can also be translated as “indeed!”
- **linen** - See how you translated this in [9:2](#).
- **He reported and said** - “He reported to Yahweh and told him”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God left the temple

God now abandoned Judah, and left the temple. This was devastating to the religious life of Judah. (See: [temple](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 10:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 10:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then I saw what resembled a throne made of sapphire above the thing that resembled a dome that was above the heads of the four winged creatures. ² Yahweh said to the man wearing the linen robe, “Go between the wheels that are under the winged creatures. Pick up as many hot coals as you can, and scatter them over the city.” And while I watched, the man wearing the white robe left.

ULB:

10 ¹ As I looked toward the dome that was over the heads of the cherubim; something appeared above them like a sapphire with the appearance of the likeness of a throne. ² Then Yahweh spoke to the man dressed in linen and said, “Go between the wheels underneath the cherubim, and fill both your hands with fiery coals from between the cherubim and scatter them over the city.” Then the man went in as I watched.

translationWords:

- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [like, likeness](#)
- [throne](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that started in [8:1](#).
- **toward the dome** - “toward the curved roof”
- **cherubim** - See how you translated this in [9:3](#).
- **like a sapphire** - A sapphire is a valuable stone of blue or green color.
- **with the appearance of the likeness of a throne** - “that looked like a throne”
- **man dressed in linen** - See how you translated the word “linen” in [9:1](#).
- **Go between the wheels** - See how you translated the word “wheels” in [1:15](#).
- **fiery coals** - Coals are the burned pieces of wood left over after a fire. They are black, but they glow red and orange when they are very hot.
- **scatter them over the city** - “sprinkle them over the city” or “spread them over the city”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 10:3-5**UDB:**

³ The four winged creatures were standing on the south side of the temple when the man wearing the white robe entered. Then a cloud filled the inner courtyard of the temple. ⁴ And the glory of Yahweh went up from directly over the winged creatures and stood over the doorway of the temple. It filled the entire temple with a cloud and everything in the courtyard was bright because of Yahweh's glorious presence. ⁵ I also heard the sound made by the wings of the winged creatures in the courtyard outside the temple. It was very loud, like the voice of Almighty God when he speaks.

ULB:

³ The cherubim stood on the right side of the house when the man went in, and a cloud filled the inner courtyard. ⁴ The glory of Yahweh rose up from the cherubim and stood over the threshold of the house; it filled the house with the cloud, and the courtyard was full of the brightness of Yahweh's glory. ⁵ Then I heard the sound of the cherubim's wings in the outer courtyard, like the voice of God Almighty when he speaks.

translationWords:

- cherubim, cherub
- house
- courtyard, court
- glory, glorious
- Yahweh
- threshold
- voice
- God
- Almighty

translationNotes:

- **cherubim** - See how you translated this in [10:1](#) .
- **on the right side** - As one faces east, "the right side" is towards to south. AT: "on the south side" (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the glory of Yahweh** - Translate as in [1:28](#).
- **it filled the house** - The word "it" refers to the glory of God.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 10:6-8

UDB:

⁶ When Yahweh commanded the man wearing the linen robe to take burning coals from among those winged creatures, the man went into the courtyard and stood beside one of the wheels. ⁷ Then one of those winged creatures reached out his hand to the fire that was there among them. He picked up some of the coals and put them in the hands of the man wearing the linen robe, and that man took them and left. ⁸ Under the wings of the winged creatures was something that resembled a human's hands.

ULB:

⁶ It came about, when God commanded the man dressed in linen and said, "Take fire from between the wheels that are between the cherubim," the man went in and stood beside a wheel. ⁷ A cherub reached out his hand between the cherubim to the fire that was among the cherubim, and lifted it up and placed it into the hands of the one dressed in linen. The man took it and went back out. ⁸ I saw on the cherubim something like a man's hand under their wings.

translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [fire](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)

translationNotes:

- **It came about** - This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **when God commanded the man dressed in linen and said** - This is a repeat of the information that was given in [10:2](#). After talking about the cherubim and God's glory in 10:3-5, Ezekiel returns to telling about the man that was wearing linen.
- **the man dressed in linen** - See how you translated the word "linen" in [9:1](#).
- **beside a wheel** - See how you translated the word "wheel" in [1:15](#).
- **I saw on the cherubim something like a man's hand under their wings** - "I saw that the cherubim had something like a man's hand under their wings"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 10:9-11

UDB:

⁹ Then I saw four wheels alongside the winged creatures. There was one wheel beside each of the winged creatures. The wheels shone like very valuable stones. ¹⁰ The wheels were all alike: Each had one wheel inside another wheel. ¹¹ Whenever they moved, they went straight in whatever direction one of the winged creatures faced. The wheels did not turn in another direction while the winged creatures flew.

ULB:

⁹ So I looked, and behold! Four wheels were beside the cherubim—one wheel beside each cherub—and the appearance of the wheels was like a beryl stone. ¹⁰ They appeared in the same likeness for all four of them, like a wheel intersecting another wheel. ¹¹ When they moved, they went in any of the four directions without turning in any other direction. Instead, wherever the head was facing, they followed it. They did not turn in any other direction as they went.

translationWords:

- [face](#)

translationNotes:

- **behold!** - The word “behold” here shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.
- **wheels** - See how you translated this in [1:15](#).
- **cherubim** - See how you translated this in [10:1](#).
- **like a beryl stone** - “Beryl” is a very hard, valuable stone. This beryl was probably green or blue. Emerald is the green type of beryl and aquamarine is the blue type of beryl. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **a wheel intersecting another wheel** - The word “intersecting” means “crossing” or “meeting” or “touching.”
- **wherever the head was facing** - “wherever the cherub was facing” or “wherever the cherub was going”
- **the head** - This refers to the head of any cherub.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 10:12-14**UDB:**

¹² Their bodies, including their backs and hands and wings, were covered with eyes. The wheels were also covered with eyes. ¹³ I heard someone call them ‘the whirling wheels.’ ¹⁴ Each of the winged creatures had four faces. One face was like the face of a bull, one face was like the face of a human, one face was like the face of a lion, and one face was like the face of an eagle.

ULB:

¹² Their whole body—including their backs, their hands, and their wings—was covered with eyes, and eyes covered the four wheels all around also. ¹³ As I listened, the wheels were called, “Whirling.” ¹⁴ They had four faces each; the first face was the face of a cherub, the second face was the face of a man, the third the face of a lion, and the fourth the face of an eagle.

translationWords:

- [lion](#)
- [eagle](#)

translationNotes:

- **Their whole body** - “The whole bodies of the cherubim”
- **wheels** - See how you translated the word “wheels” in [1:15](#).
- **the wheels were called, “Whirling.”** - The word “Whirling” means “Spinning.” Here it is the name of the wheels. This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone called the wheels, ‘Whirling’” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **They had four faces each** - “Each cherub had four faces” or “Each of the cherubim had four faces.” Each creature had a face on the front, a face on the back, and a face on each side of its head. See how you translated this in [1:6](#).
- **cherub** - See how you translated cherubim in [10:3](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 10:15-17

UDB:

¹⁵ Then the winged creatures rose up. They were the same living creatures that I had seen alongside the Chebar Canal. ¹⁶ When the winged creatures moved, the wheels moved with them. When the winged creatures spread their wings to fly over the ground, the wheels did not leave them but stayed beside them. ¹⁷ When the winged creatures stopped, the wheels stopped. When the winged creatures started to fly, the wheels flew with them, because the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels.

ULB:

¹⁵ Then the cherubim—these were the living creatures that I had seen by the Chebar Canal—rose up. ¹⁶ Whenever the cherubim moved, the wheels would go beside them, and whenever the cherubim lifted up their wings to rise up from the earth, the wheels did not turn. They still stayed beside them. ¹⁷ When the cherubim stood still, the wheels stood still, and when they rose up, the wheels rose up with them, for the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels.

translationWords:

- [spirit, spiritual](#)

translationNotes:

- **cherubim** - See how you translated this in [10:1](#)
- **living creatures** - See how you translated this in [1:13](#).
- **the Chebar Canal** - This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. Translate as in [1:1](#).
- **rose up** - “went up into the air”
- **They still stayed beside them** - “The wheels stayed with the cherubim.” Alternate translation: “The wheels moved with the cherubim.”
- **stood still** - “stayed still” or “did not move”
- **the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels** - Possible meanings: 1) “the spirit of the living creatures controlled the wheels” or 2) “the spirit of the living creature was the same as the spirit in the wheels.” See how you translated this in [1:20](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 10:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ Then the glory of Yahweh left the entrance of the temple and stopped above the winged creatures. ¹⁹ While I watched, the winged creatures spread their wings and started to fly, and the wheels went with them. They stopped at the gate on the east side of the temple, and the glory of God, the one whom the Israelites had worshiped, was above them.

ULB:

¹⁸ Then the glory of Yahweh went out from over the threshold of the house and stood over the cherubim. ¹⁹ The cherubim lifted up their wings and rose from the earth in my sight when they went out, and the wheels did the same beside them. They stood at the eastern entrance to Yahweh's house, and the glory of the God of Israel came upon them from above.

translationWords:

- [threshold](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **the glory of Yahweh** - Translate as in [1:28](#).
- **the house** - This refers to God's temple.
- **stood over** - "stayed over"
- **stood** - Here the word "stood" means "halted" or "waited."
- **came upon them from above** - "went above the cherubim"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 10:20-22

UDB:

²⁰ These were the same four living creatures that I had seen alongside the Chebar Canal, and I realized that they were the winged creatures. ²¹ Each of them had four faces and four wings, and under their wings was what resembled a human's hands. ²² Their faces were the same as the faces that I had seen at the Chebar Canal. Each of them flew straight ahead.

ULB:

²⁰ These were the living creatures that I had seen below the God of Israel by the Chebar Canal, so I knew that they were cherubim! ²¹ They had four faces each and four wings each, and the likeness of human hands under their wings, ²² and the likeness of their faces was like the faces that I had seen in the vision at the Chebar Canal, and each of them went straight ahead.

translationWords:

- [creature](#)
- [vision](#)

translationNotes:

- **the living creatures** - See how you translated this in [1:13](#).
- **the Chebar Canal** - This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. Translate as in [1:1](#).
- **went straight ahead** - "faced forward" or "looked directly ahead"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 11 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Safety

The people were trusting Jerusalem to keep them safe. But God was going to pull them out of Jerusalem. (See: [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The people in Jerusalem used the metaphor “this city is the pot and we are the meat in the pot” meaning they were safe in Jerusalem. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 11:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 11:1**UDB:**

¹ Then God's Spirit lifted me up and took me to the gate on the east side of the temple. There at the gate were twenty-five men. Among them I saw Jaazaniah son of Azzur, and Pelatiah son of Benaiah, who were leaders of the people.

ULB:

11 ¹ Then the Spirit lifted me up and brought me to the eastern gate of Yahweh's house, facing east, and behold, in the doorway of the gate there were twenty-five men. I saw Jaazaniah son of Azzur and Pelatiah son of Benaiah, leaders of the people, among them.

translationWords:

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- gate, gate bar
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that started in **8:1**.
- **facing east** - "which faces east." The "eastern gate" faced east.
- **behold** - The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
- **Yahweh's house** - Translate these words in the same way you did in **8:16**.
- **Jaazaniah son of Azzur and Pelatiah son of Benaiah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **among them** - "among the twenty-five men"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 11:2-4**UDB:**

² Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, these are the new leaders in Jerusalem who are planning to do evil things and who are giving wicked advice to people in this city. ³ They say, 'It is not the time to build houses yet, but just as pieces of meat are carefully stored in covered pots we will be protected from the bad things that will happen to others.' ⁴ So, son of man, prophesy about the terrible things that will happen to them."

ULB:

² God said to me, "Son of man, these are the men who devise iniquity, and who decide wicked plans in this city. ³ They are saying, 'The time to build houses is not now; this city is the pot, and we are the meat.' ⁴ Therefore prophesy against them. Prophesy, son of man."

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision.
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in [2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **this city is the pot, and we are the meat** - The people speak of themselves as if they were good cuts of meat and of the city as if it were a pot in which the meat was stored or cooked. The metaphor suggests that they are important and safe within the city. AT: "This city is like a pot that will protect us as a pot protects meat." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the pot** - Possible meanings are 1) a pot for storing meat or 2) a pot for cooking meat.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 11:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ Then the Spirit of Yahweh came upon me and told me to say to the people, "This is what Yahweh says, 'You Israelite people say those things, and I know what you are thinking. ⁶ You have killed many people in this city and filled the streets with their corpses.

⁷ Therefore this is what Yahweh the Lord says, 'The corpses of the people whom you have killed here are like the meat and Jerusalem is the cauldron, but I will expel you people from this city!

ULB:

⁵ Then the Spirit of Yahweh fell on me and he said to me, "Say: This is what Yahweh says: as you are saying, house of Israel; for I know what goes through your mind. ⁶ You have multiplied the people you have killed in this city and filled its streets with them. ⁷ Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this: The people you have killed, whose bodies you have laid in the midst of Jerusalem, are the meat, and this city is the pot. But you are going to be brought out from the midst of this city.

translationWords:

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- mind
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to talk to the prophet Ezekiel.
- **the Spirit of Yahweh fell on me** - Ezekiel speaks of the Spirit of Yahweh inspiring and empowering him to prophesy as if the Spirit of Yahweh fell upon him. AT: "the Spirit of Yahweh empowered me" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **house of Israel** - The word "house" is a metonym for the family, in this case the Israelites who are the descendants of Jacob. See how you translated this in **3:1**. AT: "people of Israel" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **as you are saying** - "You are saying these things." This refers to what the people were saying in **11:3**.
- **The people you have killed ... are the meat, and this city is the pot** - Yahweh speaks of the people whom they have killed as if they were good cuts of meat and of the city as if it were a pot in which the meat was stored or cooked. See how you translated this metaphor in **11:3**.

AT: "The people you have killed ... are like the meat in the pot, and this city is the pot. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **But you are going to be brought out** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "But I am going to bring you out" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 11:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ You are afraid of being killed by enemies' swords, so that is what I will cause to happen to you. ⁹ I will expel you from this city and enable foreigners to capture you and punish you. ¹⁰ They will kill you with their swords; you will be punished right here in Israel! Then people will realize that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

ULB:

⁸ You have feared the sword, so I am bringing the sword upon you—this is the declaration of the Lord Yahweh. ⁹ I will bring you out of the midst of the city, and put you into the hands of foreigners, for I will bring judgment against you. ¹⁰ You will fall by the sword. I will judge you within the borders of Israel so you will know that I am Yahweh.

translationWords:

- sword
- declare, declaration
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- judge, judgment
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.
- **You have feared the sword, so I am bringing the sword upon you** - The word “sword” is a metonym for enemy armies who will attack with their swords. AT: “You have feared war, so I am bringing enemy armies to attack you” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **put you into the hands of foreigners** - Here the word “hands” here represents power or control. AT: “I will put you into the power of foreigners” or “I will enable foreigners capture you” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **You will fall by the sword** - The word “sword” is a metonym for enemy armies who will attack with their swords. To “fall by the sword” means that they will be killed with swords. AT: “They will kill you with their swords” (UDB) or “You will die in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **you will know that I am Yahweh** - Possible meanings are 1) “you will understand who I, Yahweh, am” or 2) “you will understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or 3) “you will

know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do the things that I say that I will do” (UDB). See how you translated this in [6:7](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 11:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ This city will not be a place where you will be protected like meat in a covered pot. I will punish you wherever you are in Israel. ¹² Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have predicted that would happen, because you have not obeyed my commands and decrees; instead, you have imitated the wicked behavior of the people of the nearby nations.”

ULB:

¹¹ This city will not be your cooking pot, nor will you be the meat within her midst. I will judge you within the borders of Israel. ¹² Then you will know that I am Yahweh, the one whose statutes you have not walked in and whose decrees you have not carried out. Instead, you have carried out the decrees of the nations that surround you.”

translationWords:

- judge, judgment
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Yahweh
- statute, statutes
- walk
- decree
- nation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.
- **This city will not be your cooking pot, nor will you be the meat** - The people had spoken of themselves as if they were good cuts of meat and of the city as if it were a pot in which the meat was stored or cooked. Yahweh says that this is not true. See how you translated this metaphor in **11:3**. AT: “This city is not like a pot that will protect you as a pot protects meat.” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **within the borders of Israel** - “in the land of Israel”
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - Translate this phrase the same way you did in **6:7**.
- **the one whose statutes you have not walked in** - Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if it were walking in them, like a person would walk along a road. AT: “the one whose statutes you have not obeyed” (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 11:13

UDB:

¹³ While I was prophesying that, Pelatiah son of Benaiah suddenly died. Then I prostrated myself on the ground and cried out loudly, “Yahweh my Lord, are you going to similarly get rid of all the Israelite people who are still alive?”

ULB:

¹³ It came about that as I was prophesying, Pelatiah son of Benaiah, died. So I fell on my face and cried out with a loud voice and said, “Alas, Lord Yahweh, will you completely destroy the remnant of Israel?”

translationWords:

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **It came about** - This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **Pelatiah son of Benaiah** - This is the name of a man. Translate this as you did in [11:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **I fell on my face** - “I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Alas, Lord Yahweh** - The word “Alas” is an exclamation that expresses fear and sadness. AT: “Oh no, Lord Yahweh” or “Ah, Lord Yahweh” (See: [Exclamations](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 11:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Then Yahweh gave me this message, ¹⁵ “Son of man, the people who are still in Jerusalem are talking about your relatives, your clan, and all the rest of the Israelites who were exiled and saying, ‘They are in Babylonia, far from Yahweh. They have left their property here in Israel, so their property now belongs to us!’”

ULB:

¹⁴ The word of Yahweh came to me and said, ¹⁵ ”Son of man, your brothers! Your brothers! The men of your clan and all the house of Israel! All of them are those of whom it is said by those living in Jerusalem, ‘They are far away from Yahweh! This land was given to us as our possession.’

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- brother
- clan
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Jerusalem
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came** - This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. AT: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **your brothers! Your brothers!** - This is stated twice for emphasis. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **the house of Israel** - The word “house” is a metonym for the family, in this case the Israelites who are the descendants of Jacob. See how you translated this in [3:1](#). AT: “people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **All of them are those of whom it is said by those living in Jerusalem** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “All of them are those about whom the people living in Jerusalem are saying” or “The people living in Jerusalem say about all of them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **All of them are those of whom** - Some versions have “All of them are those to whom.”
- **This land was given to us as our possession** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh has given this land to us as our possession” or “This land has become our possession” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 11:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ So tell them, “This is what Yahweh the Lord says: Although I caused them to be taken far away from Israel and scattered them among other nations, for a short time I have become like a refuge for them in the countries to which they have been taken.”

¹⁷ So also tell them, “This is what Yahweh the Lord says: Some day I will gather you from the nations to which you have been taken and bring you back to Israel, and you will live in your country again.

¹⁸ When you return to your country, you will get rid of all the vile statues of gods and detestable idols.

ULB:

¹⁶ Therefore say, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: though I have removed them far off among the nations, and though I have scattered them among the lands, yet I have been a sanctuary for them for a little while in the lands where they have gone.’ ¹⁷ Therefore say, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: I will gather you from the peoples, and assemble you from the lands where you were scattered, and I will give you the land of Israel.’ ¹⁸ Then they will go there and remove every detestable thing and every abomination from that place.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- nation
- sanctuary
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- abomination, abominable

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh gives this message to Ezekiel about the Israelites who were in exile.
- **I have been a sanctuary for them** - AT: “I have been with them to preserve them.”
- **lands where they have gone** - AT: “nations where they have been taken”
- **I will gather you from the peoples, and assemble you from the lands** - Yahweh says this promise two times in different ways in order to show that it’s important. AT: “I will bring you back from the nations of people” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **detestable** - AT: “horrible,” or “offensive”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 11:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ I will give you Israelites one new heart and I will give you a new way of thinking when you return to Israel. You will not be stubborn, but will be obedient. ²⁰ When I do that, you will carefully obey all my laws. You will be my people, and I will be your God. ²¹ But as for those who are devoted to worshiping their vile statues and detestable idols, I will punish them as they deserve for the evil things that they have done.” This is what Yahweh declared.

ULB:

¹⁹ I will give them one heart, and I will put a new spirit in them when they come near to me; I will take the stone heart from their flesh and give them a heart of flesh, ²⁰ so that they will walk in my statutes, they will carry out my decrees and do them. Then they will be my people, and I will be their God. ²¹ But to those who walk with affection toward their detestable things and their abominations, I will bring their conduct on their own heads—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- heart
- spirit, spiritual
- stone, stoning
- flesh
- statute, statutes
- decree
- God
- walk
- abomination, abominable
- head
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God continues the prophecy of what will happen to the scattered Israelites.
- **the stone heart from their flesh** - This is a way of saying that God will change their attitude from stubborn rebellion. AT: “their stubbornness” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **a heart of flesh** - This is a way to say that God will change their attitude to accept his rule. AT: “a willingness to obey” (See: **Metonymy**)

- **they will walk in my statutes, they will carry out my decrees and do them** - Each of these phrases describes the people as obeying what Yahweh has commanded them to do. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **affection** - AT: “devotion”
- **detestable things** - AT: “obnoxious things” or “offensive things”
- **conduct** - AT: “actions”
- **on their own heads** - AT: “back onto those people.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **declaration** - AT: “statement”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 11:22-23

UDB:

²² Then the winged creatures, with their wheels beside them, spread their wings and flew up into the air, and the dazzling brightness of Yahweh was above them. ²³ That light went up away from the city and stopped above the mountain to the east of the city.

ULB:

²² The cherubim lifted up their wings and the wheels that were beside them, and the glory of the God of Israel was high up over them. ²³ Then the glory of Yahweh went up from within the midst of the city and stood on the mountain to the east of the city.

translationWords:

- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The cherubim of Chapter 10 leave the temple and city along with the glory of God.
- **wheels that were beside them** - See how you translated “wheels” in [1:16](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 11:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ In the vision that I had been seeing, God's Spirit lifted me up and brought me back to the exiles in Babylon. Then the vision ended, ²⁵ and I told the exiles everything that Yahweh had shown me in the vision.

ULB:

²⁴ The Spirit lifted me up and brought me into Chaldea, to the exiles, in the vision from the Spirit of God, and the vision that I had seen went up from upon me. ²⁵ Then I declared to the exiles all the things of Yahweh that I had seen.

translationWords:

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [vision](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **exiles** - "exiles" refers to the Israelites forced to live in Chaldea.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 12 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Exile

God warned that very soon the people in Jerusalem would be exiled to Babylon.

Links:

- [Ezekiel 12:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 12:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "Son of man, you are living among people who are very rebellious. They have eyes, but they do not see what I want them to see; they have ears, but they do not listen to what I want them to hear, because they are such a rebellious people.

ULB:

12 ¹ The word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, you live in the midst of a rebellious house, where they have eyes to see but they do not see; and where they have ears to hear but do not listen, because they are a rebellious house.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- life, live, living, alive
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- house

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **they have eyes to see but they do not see; and where they have ears to hear but do not listen** - Both of these phrases are using either eyes or ears to refer to the people's ability to learn. AT: "they have the ability to learn but choose not to" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 12:3

UDB:

³ Therefore, son of man, pack your belongings as though you were going into exile. Then, during the daytime, while people are watching, prepare to go to another place. Even though the people are rebellious, perhaps they will understand what you are symbolizing.

ULB:

³ Therefore as for you, son of man, prepare your things for exile, and begin going out by day in their sight, for I will exile you in their sight from your place to another place. Perhaps they will begin to see, though they are a rebellious house.

translationWords:

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)
- [house](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel is performing another of the acted-out parables.
- **Therefore as for you** - “So this is for you”
- **Perhaps they will begin to see, though they are a rebellious house** - AT: “Maybe they will begin to understand what you are describing” The word “see” is used to refer to the Jewish people’s ability to understand. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 12:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ During the daytime, while they are watching, bring out the things that you want to take, and pack them. Then in the evening, while they are watching, do what those who are preparing to go into exile do. ⁵ Dig through the city wall and take your things through the hole. ⁶ Put them in a sack on your shoulder while they are watching, and leave when it becomes dark. Cover your face so you cannot see the path. I want you to do this because I want you to warn the Israelite people.”

ULB:

⁴ You will bring out your things for an exile in the day in their sight; go out in the evening in their sight in the way that anyone goes into exile. ⁵ Dig a hole through the wall in their sight, and go out through it. ⁶ In their sight, lift up your things onto your shoulder, and bring them out in the darkness. Cover your face, for you must not see the land, since I have set you as a sign to the house of Israel.”

translationWords:

- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God is speaking to Ezekiel describing how he should act out the parable.
- **in their sight** - The word “their” refers to the people of Israel.
- **house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **have set you as a sign** - AT: “have placed you as a correction to their thinking”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 12:7**UDB:**

⁷ So I did what Yahweh told me to do. During the day I brought things out of my house as though I was packing to go into exile. Then in the evening I dug through the city wall. Then while people watched, I put my sack of belongings on my shoulder and left.

ULB:

⁷ So I did this, just as I was commanded. I brought out my things of exile in the daytime, and in the evening I dug a hole through the wall by hand. I brought my things out in the dark, and lifted them up on my shoulder in their sight.

translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [darkness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel shows the people of Israel they will soon be forced into exile.
- **dug a hole through the wall by hand** - AT: “dug a hole through the wall with my hands”
- **out in the dark** - AT: “out at night while it is dark”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 12:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ The next morning, Yahweh gave me this message, ⁹ "Son of man, did the rebellious people of Israel not ask you, 'What are you doing?'

¹⁰ So go back and say to them, 'What I did is about the king in Jerusalem and all the other people of Israel who are there.'

ULB:

⁸ Then at dawn the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ⁹ "Son of man, is the house of Israel, that rebellious house, not asking, 'What are you doing?' ¹⁰ Say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: this prophetic action concerns the prince in Jerusalem, and all the house of Israel in whose midst they are.'

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- prince, princess
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in **1:1**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **house of Israel** - See how you translated this in **3:01**.
- **Son of man, is the house of Israel, that rebellious house, not asking, 'What are you doing?'** - God asks this question to Ezekiel to show that the people of Israel have noticed what Ezekiel is doing. AT: "Ezekiel, the people of Israel, the ones who disobey me, have noticed what you are doing." (See: **Rhetorical Question** and **Double Negatives**)
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in **2:1**. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **in whose midst they are** - AT: "who are among them"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 12:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ Tell them, 'What I did is a warning to you. What I did in front of you, they are going to have to do. They will be captured and forced to go to another country. ¹² Their king will put his belongings on his shoulder when it becomes dark and he will try to escape. His servants will dig a hole through the city wall, and he will take his belongings through it. He will cover his face so others will not recognize him and he will not be able to see the land. ¹³ But it will be as though I will spread a net for him to be captured; enemy soldiers will capture him, blind him, and take him to the city of Babylon where the Chaldean people live. But he will not be able to see it because he will be blind; and there he will die.

ULB:

¹¹ Say, 'I am a sign to you. As I have done, so it will be done to them; they will go into exile and into captivity. ¹² The prince who is among them will lift up his things upon his shoulder in the dark, and will go out through the wall. They will dig through the wall and bring out their things. He will cover his face, so he will not see the land with his eyes. ¹³ I will spread out my net over him and he will be caught in my snare; then I will bring him to Babylon, the land of the Chaldeans, but he will not see it. He will die there.

translationWords:

- sign, proof, reminder
- exile, the Exile
- captive, captivity
- prince, princess
- darkness
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **in the dark** - "at night while it is dark"
- **I will spread out my net over him and he will be caught in my snare** - The words "net" and "snare" are used because these are different ways to trap an animal. God knows what the leader of Jerusalem will do and has set up events so that he will be captured as he tries to escape. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will bring him to Babylon** - AT: "I will cause him to be taken to Babylon"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 12:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ I will scatter all those who have been around him—his advisors and his soldiers—in every direction; and I will cause his enemies to pursue them, with their swords ready to strike them.

¹⁵ Then, when I scatter them among many nations, they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do. ¹⁶ But I will spare some of them from being killed by the sword, or starving to death, or dying of disease so they can record that they have been doing disgusting things, and they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

ULB:

¹⁴ I will also scatter in every direction all of those around him who were to assist him and his entire army, and I will send out a sword after them. ¹⁵ Then they will know that I am Yahweh, when I scatter them among the nations and disperse them throughout the lands. ¹⁶ But I will spare a few men from among them from the sword, famine, and plague, so they may record all of their abominations in the lands where I take them, so they will know that I am Yahweh.”

translationWords:

- sword
- Yahweh
- nation
- disperse, dispersion
- famine
- plague
- abomination, abominable
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **I will send out a sword after them** - The word “sword” is used to refer to an army of men carrying swords. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **when I scatter them among the nations and disperse them throughout the lands** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing. AT: “when I cause them to separate from each other and live in different nations.” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **from the sword** - The word “sword” refers to being killed in fighting. AT: “from being killed” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 12:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Then Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ¹⁸ "Son of man, tremble while you eat your food, and shudder fearfully while you drink your water.

ULB:

¹⁷ The word of Yahweh came to me and said, ¹⁸ "Son of man, eat your bread with trembling, and drink your water with shaking and worry.

translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [bread](#)

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **eat your bread with trembling, and drink your water with shaking and worry** - AT: "live your daily life with great fear." Eating and drinking are common things done in life and so tell Ezekiel to live with great fear. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 12:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Tell this to the Israelite people: 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says about those who are still living in Jerusalem and in other places in Israel. They also will be very anxious while they eat their food and drink their water, because their country will soon have everything taken away. That will happen because the people who live there continually act very violently. ²⁰ The towns where people live will be devastated, and the land will become barren. Then you people will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do what I say that I will do.'

ULB:

¹⁹ Then say to the people of the land, 'The Lord Yahweh says this concerning the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and the land of Israel: They will eat their bread with trembling and drink their water while shaking, since the land will be despoiled of its fullness because of the violence of all those who live there. ²⁰ So the cities that were inhabited will be desolate, and the land will become a wasteland; so you will know that I am Yahweh.'

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- Jerusalem
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- bread
- desolate, desolation
- waste, wasteland
- know, knowledge, make known
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **They will eat their bread with trembling and drink their water while shaking** - These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that the people will be very afraid, even while doing the most basic things like eating and drinking. AT: "They will live daily life with great fear." (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **cities that were inhabited will be desolate** - "desolate" describes a place where no one lives. AT: "people in cities will leave or die" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **know that I am Yahweh** - See how this phrase is translated in [6:6](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 12:21-23**UDB:**

²¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ²² "Son of man, the people in Israel have this proverb that says, 'The days keep passing, and what the prophets predict never happens.' ²³ So say to them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: I am going to prove that what they say is not correct, and then they will never say it again in Israel.' Tell them, 'It will soon be the time when everything that the prophets predict will happen.'

ULB:

²¹ Again the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ²² "Son of man, what is this proverb that you have in the land of Israel that says, 'The days are prolonged, and every vision fails?' ²³ Therefore, say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: I will put an end to this proverb so the people of Israel will no longer use it.' Then declare to them, 'The days are approaching, and every vision will speak.'

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- Son of Man, son of man
- proverb
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- vision
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **The days are prolonged, and every vision fails** - This was a saying of the people of Israel who did not believe that God would judge them. AT: "Many days have passed without God's judgment, the prophet's warnings are false" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **The days are approaching** - This phrase refers to the days in which Israel will be judged. AT: "The days of judgment are coming soon" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **every vision will speak** - The visions God gives to the prophets will come true. AT: "every prophecy will happen" (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 12:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ No longer will prophets tell the Israelite people false visions, or tell people prophecies just to please them. ²⁵ Instead, I, Yahweh, will say what I want to tell the people, and what I predict will quickly happen. You rebellious people, I will cause to happen everything that I say will happen. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say.”

ULB:

²⁴ For there will no longer be any false visions or favorable divinations within the house of Israel. ²⁵ For I am Yahweh! I speak, and I carry out the words that I speak. The matter will no longer be delayed. For I will speak this word in your days, rebellious house, and I will carry it out!—This is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- [vision](#)
- [divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [word](#)
- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to the people of Israel.
- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **The matter will no longer be delayed** - “What I predict will happen soon” (See: [Litotes](#))
- **This is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **speak this word** - Possible meanings 1) “everything that I say will happen” (UDB) or 2) “speak this message” or 3) “speak this prophecy”
- **in your days** - “while you are alive”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 12 General Notes
- Ezekiel 12 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 12:26-28**UDB:**

²⁶ Yahweh also gave me this message. He said, ²⁷ "Son of man, the Israelite people are constantly saying about you, 'The things that he sees in visions will not happen soon. They are about things that will happen many years from now, far in the future.'

²⁸ Therefore say to them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: I will no longer delay causing to happen any of the things that I have prophesied. Whatever I have predicted will soon happen.'

ULB:

²⁶ Again the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ²⁷ "Son of man! Behold, the house of Israel has said, 'The vision that he sees is for many days from now, and he prophesies of far off times.' ²⁸ Therefore say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: My words will not be delayed any longer, but the word that I have spoken will be done—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.'"

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- vision
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- word
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in **1:1**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **came to me ... vision that he sees ... and he prophesies** - The words "me" and "he" refer to Ezekiel.
- **say to them** - The word "them" refers to the people of Israel.
- **Behold** - The word "Behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
- **The vision that he sees is for many days from now, and he prophesies of far off times** - These phrases are both ways the people of Israel are saying Ezekiel's warnings will not happen in their lifetime but will happen far in the future. (See: **Parallelism**)

- **My words will not be delayed any longer, but the word that I have spoken will be done** - These phrases are both ways God is telling the people of Israel that the things he has warned about, will happen soon. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration!** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

False prophets

God spoke against people who said they were prophesying but had not received any message from God. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

God said of people who encourage others to feel safe even when they continue to sin were not strengthening a wall but just putting whitewash on it to hide the imperfections. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 13:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 13:1-4**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "Son of man, prophesy a warning against the prophets in Israel who are prophesying. Some of them are prophesying things that they themselves have imagined. Say to them, 'Listen to what Yahweh says!' ³ He says, "Terrible things will happen to those wicked prophets who proclaim their own ideas and have not seen any visions from me. ⁴ You Israelite people, your prophets are like jackals in the desert, they are scavengers feeding off of others' loss.

ULB:

13 ¹ Again, the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, prophesy against the prophets who are prophesying in Israel, and say to those who are prophesying out of their own imaginations, 'Listen to the word of Yahweh. ³ The Lord Yahweh says this: Woe to the foolish prophets who follow their own spirit, but who have seen nothing! ⁴ Israel, your prophets have been like jackals in the wastelands.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- mind
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- woe
- fool, foolish, folly
- spirit, spiritual
- waste, wasteland

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in **1:1**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in **2:1**. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **prophesying out of their own imaginations** - prophesying from their own thoughts
- **follow their own spirit** - This phrase is used to refer to the prophets doing what they want. The word "spirit" refers to their thoughts and the word "follow" refers to what they do. (See: **Idiom**)

- **jackals** - wild animals like dogs or a small wolves.
- **like jackals in the wastelands** - Like jackals that steal food from other animals in the desert, the prophets steal from the people of Israel when they lie about having messages from God. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 13:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ Because you were listening to them, you have not repaired breaches or strengthened your walls. That needs to be done so that the walls will be strong when I, Yahweh, send your enemies to attack you. ⁶ The visions and prophecies of those prophets are false. They say, ‘Yahweh told me this.’ I have not sent them to you to be my prophets, but you expect that what they prophesy will truly happen! ⁷ They say that they have seen visions, but those visions are false, and the things that they prophesy are lies. They say, ‘Yahweh told me this,’ but I have told them nothing!

ULB:

⁵ You have not gone to the breaks in the wall around the house of Israel in order to repair it, in order to resist in battle on the day of Yahweh. ⁶ The people have false visions and make false predictions, those who say, “Such and such is Yahweh’s declaration.” Yahweh has not sent them, but they nevertheless have made people hope that their messages would come true. ⁷ Have you not had false visions and made false predictions, you who say, “Such and such is Yahweh’s declaration” when I myself have not spoken?

translationWords:

- day of the Lord, day of Yahweh
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- vision
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration
- send, send out, sent

translationNotes:

- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **resist in battle** - “defend”
- **Have you not had false visions ... when I myself have not spoken?** - Yahweh uses a question to rebuke the false prophets. AT: “You have had false visions ... because I myself have not spoken.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **had false visions and made false predictions** - Since the false prophets have not really received a message from Yahweh, what they predict about the future is not true.
- **Such and such** - This is a phrase used to refer to anything the prophet may have said. Your language may have another way to say this. “Yahweh told me this” (UDB)
- **Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 13:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Because you prophets have said what is false and because your visions are lies, I am opposed to you. ⁹ I will strike all you prophets who falsely say that you have seen visions and prophesy things that are lies. You will not have any place among my people, your names will not be listed in the records of the Israelite people, and you will never return to Israel. Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

ULB:

⁸ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Because you have had false visions and have told lies—therefore this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration against you: ⁹ My hand will be against the prophets who have lying visions and who make false predictions. They will not be in the assembly of my people, or enrolled in the record of the house of Israel; they must not go to the land of Israel. For you will know that I am the Lord Yahweh!

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- vision
- declare, declaration
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- assembly, assemble

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaks to the people of Israel and repeats phrases in different ways to express how true they are. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **had false visions and have told lies** - AT: "have lied about having messages from God"
- **Lord Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **My hand will be against the prophets** - The term "hand" is often used in reference to Yahweh's power.
- **have lying visions and who make false predictions** - AT: "who have messages from God but are lying"
- **in the assembly of my people, or enrolled in the record of the house of Israel** - AT: "listed as one of my people" This is two ways to describe the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **will know that I am the Lord Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 13:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ They deceive my people, saying “Things will go well for us” when things will not go well. It is like they want to make people think that there is a very strong wall when it is not strong. ¹¹ So, tell those prophets who cover the wall with whitewash that the wall will surely fall down. It will rain very hard. I will send big hailstones to fall. Very strong winds will blow against it. ¹² When the wall falls down, the people will certainly say to those prophets, “The white paint certainly did not make the wall strong!”

ULB:

¹⁰ Because of this, and because they led my people astray and said, “Peace!” when there is no peace, they are building a wall that they will paint with whitewash.’ ¹¹ Say to those who are whitewashing the wall, ‘It will fall down; there will be a downpour of rain, and I will send hailstones to make it fall down, and a windstorm wind to break it down. ¹² See, the wall will fall down. Have others not said to you, “Where is the whitewash that you put on it?”

translationWords:

- astray, go astray, led astray, stray
- peace, peaceful

translationNotes:

- **Because of this** - The word “this” refers to the Lord’s promise to force the false prophets out of Israel.
- **they led my people** - The word “they” refers to the false prophets in the land of Israel.
- **they are building a wall that they will paint with whitewash** - Here “a wall” stands for peace and security that the false prophets told the people that Yahweh was promising to give them. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **whitewashing ... whitewash** - “whitewash” is a white liquid mixture used for making surfaces (such as walls or fences) whiter.
- **downpour of rain ... hailstones ... windstorm** - These are all part of a very bad storm. God uses a storm to refer to the armies that will attack Jerusalem. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **hailstones** - balls of ice that sometimes falls from the sky during a rainstorm.
- **Have others not said to you ... it?** - Ezekiel asks this as a question to press for an answer. AT: “Others have certainly said to you ... it!”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 13:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ So this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Because I am very angry with you, I will send enemy armies to destroy Jerusalem. It will be as though I will send a very strong wind and hailstones and very heavy rains to destroy you. ¹⁴ The false prophecies of your prophets are like a wall that they have covered with whitewash, but I will break it down, and shatter it down to the ground, with the result that people can see its foundations. When the wall collapses you also will be killed, and everyone will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

ULB:

¹³ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: I will bring a windstorm in my rage, and there will be floods of rain in my wrath! Hailstones in my rage will completely destroy it. ¹⁴ For I will tear down the wall that you have covered with whitewash, and I will demolish it to the ground and lay bare its foundations. So it will fall, and you will be annihilated in the middle of it all. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- flood
- wrath, fury
- foundation, founded
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **windstorm ... floods of rain ... Hailstones** - These are all part of a very bad storm. God uses a storm to refer to the armies that will attack Jerusalem. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **I will bring a windstorm in my rage** - “when I act on my anger I will bring a windstorm”
- **there will be floods of rain in my wrath** - “when I act on my anger I will bring large amounts of rain”
- **Hailstones in my rage will completely destroy it** - “When I act on my anger I will bring hailstones to destroy the walls the people are building”
- **lay bare** - “uncover”
- **annihilated** - “brought to your end” or “totally destroyed”
- **know that I am Yahweh** - Possible meanings are 1) “understand who I, Yahweh, am” or 2) “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or 3) “know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 13:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ In that way I will show that I am very angry with the wall and with those who covered it with whitewash. And I will say, “The wall is gone and those who whitewashed it have been killed.”

¹⁶ Those are the prophets who prophesied that things would go well for the people in Jerusalem, when things would not go well for them.’

ULB:

¹⁵ For I will annihilate in my fury the wall and those who whitewashed it. I will say to you, “The wall exists no more, nor do the people who whitewashed it—¹⁶ the prophets of Israel who prophesied about Jerusalem and who had visions of peace for her. But there is no peace!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Jerusalem
- vision
- peace, peaceful
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- I - refers to Yahweh
- **I will annihilate in my fury** - “when I act on my anger I will bring to an end”
- **whitewashed it** - “painted the wall white” (See how you translated this in [13:10](#))
- **The wall exists no more, nor do the people** - “The wall is no longer there, nor are the people”
- **visions of peace for her** - The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 13:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ So you, son of man, show that you are angry with the women of Jerusalem who prophesy things that they themselves have imagined, and speak true prophesy against them. ¹⁸ Tell them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: Terrible things will happen to you women who fasten magic charms on your wrists and make veils of various sizes to put on your heads in order to deceive the people. You think that you will deceive others by telling them that you know what will happen in the future, and you will save your own lives.

ULB:

¹⁷ So you, son of man, set your face against the daughters of your people who prophesy out of their own minds, and prophesy against them. ¹⁸ Say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Woe to the women who sew magic charms onto every part of their hand and make veils for their heads of every size, used to hunt down people. Will you hunt down my people but save your own lives?

translationWords:

- Son of Man, son of man
- face
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- mind
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- woe
- magic, magician
- veil
- save, safe
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **set your face against** - See how you translated this in [4:3](#).
- **daughters of your people** - women of Israel
- **prophesy out of their own minds** - This means they are creating prophecies from their own imaginations. AT: "imagining their own prophecies" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **prophesy against** - See how you translated this in [4:7](#).
- **charms** - objects believed to have magical powers.
- **make veils for their heads of every size, used to hunt down people** - The decorations worn by prophetesses were like a "trap" because they were using beauty, mystery and lies to trick the people so they would believe them and sin against God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 13:19**UDB:**

¹⁹ You dishonored me by telling lies in order to get from my people a few handfuls of barley and a few pieces of bread. My people listen to lies; and you women who are lying to them have caused people who did not deserve to die to be killed, and have spared those who should not continue to live.'

ULB:

¹⁹ You have profaned me among my people for handfuls of barley and crumbs of bread, to kill people who should not die, and to preserve the lives of those who should not continue to live, because of your lies to my people who heard you.

translationWords:

- [profane](#)
- [bread](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak against the false prophetesses in Israel.
- **handfuls of barley and crumbs of bread** - Barley is a grain used to make bread and the word "crumb" is a small amount of bread. Both phrases are small amounts of food and are used to emphasize how small the payment was to the prophetesses. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 13:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to those women: 'I detest your magic charms by which you deceive people like other people trap birds. I will tear those charms off your wrists, and I will cause the people whom you have deceived to no longer be deceived by you. ²¹ I will also tear off your veils and rescue my people from continuing to be deceived by you, and they will no longer be under your control. Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

ULB:

²⁰ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: I am against the magic charms that you have used to ensnare the people's lives as if they were birds. Indeed, I will tear them from your arms; and the people whom you have trapped like birds—I will let them go free. ²¹ I will tear away your veils and rescue my people from your hand, so they will no longer be trapped in your hands. You will know that I am Yahweh.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- magic, magician
- life, live, living, alive
- free, freedom, liberty
- veil
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **the Lord Yahweh says this** - See how you translated this in 5:5.
- **charms** - objects that are believed to have magic powers
- **ensnare** - "to trap." A snare is a small looped rope that catches something by the foot.
- **ensnare the people's lives as if they were birds ... people whom you have trapped like birds** - Yahweh is comparing the prophetesses' decorations to traps for a bird. (See: **Simile**)
- **tear them from your arms** - The word "arms" refers to the control by the prophetesses. The lies they use to control the people of Israel are like arms that hold them back from escaping. AT: "take them away from your control" (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **they will no longer be trapped in your hands** - To say they will not be trapped is the same as saying they will be free. The phrase "trapped in your hand" refers to the people of Israel being in the control of the false prophetesses. AT: "they will be free from you control" (See: **Litotes** and **Synecdoche**)

- **know that I am Yahweh** - Possible meanings are 1) “understand who I, Yahweh, am” or 2) “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or 3) “know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 13:22-23**UDB:**

²² You have discouraged righteous people by telling them lies when I did not do things to cause them to be sad. And you have encouraged wicked people to keep on doing their wicked behavior; if they had turned away from it, they would have continued to live. ²³ Therefore, you will no longer falsely say that you have seen visions or tell people what will happen in the future in order to please them. I will rescue my people from being deceived by you. And then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

ULB:

²² Because you discourage the heart of the righteous person with lies, even though I did not desire his discouragement, and because you encourage instead the actions of the wicked person so that he will not turn from his way to save his life— ²³ therefore you will no longer have false visions or continue to make predictions, for I will rescue my people out of your hand. You will know that I am Yahweh.”

translationWords:

- heart
- righteous, righteousness
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- people of God, my people

translationNotes:

- **discourage the heart of the righteous person** - The righteous person’s heart is used to refer to their emotions. AT: “discourage the righteous person” (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **turn from his way** - To stop doing something is referred to as turning in a different direction. AT: “stop what he is doing” (See: **Idiom**)
- **have false visions or continue to make predictions** - Both of these phrases refer to talking about what will happen in the future. AT: “continue to make false predictions” (See: **Parallelism**)
- **out of your hand** - The word “hand” is used to refer to the control of the prophetess. AT: “out of your control” (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **know that I am Yahweh** - Possible meanings are 1) “understand who I, Yahweh, am” or 2) “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or 3) “know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 14 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Jerusalem deserves punishment

When the captives from Jerusalem arrive in Babylon, it will be obvious why God has punished them.

Links:

- **[Ezekiel 14:01 Notes](#)**

Ezekiel 14:1-3**UDB:**

¹ One day some of the elders of Israel came to me and sat down in front of me. ² Then Yahweh gave me this message: ³ "Son of man, these men worship idols, and they are allowing idols to induce them to sin. So should I answer them if they ask me for advice?"

ULB:

14 ¹ Some of the elders of Israel came to me and sat before me. ² Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ³ "Son of man, these men have taken their idols into their hearts and have put the stumbling block of their iniquity before their own faces. Should I be inquired of at all by them?"

translationWords:

- elder
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- idol, idolatrous
- heart
- stumbling block, stone of stumbling
- iniquity
- face

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **have taken their idols into their hearts** - AT: "consider their idols to be very important" or "have affection for their idols"
- **before their own faces** - God is saying the men have placed the idols where they can see them. This shows the idols are important to them. AT: "where it can be seen"
- **stumbling block of their iniquity** - The idols are referred to as something their sin causes them to trip and fall over. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Should I be inquired of at all by them?** - AT: "They should not ask me for anything." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 14 General Notes
- Ezekiel 14 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 14:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ But say this to them: 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: When any Israelite person wants to worship idols that will induce him to sin, and goes to a prophet to get advice, I, Yahweh, will give him the same answer that they deserve to receive because they worship idols. ⁵ I will do this so the Israelite people, who have abandoned me in order to worship their idols, will sincerely worship me again.'

ULB:

⁴ Therefore announce this to them and say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Every man of the house of Israel who takes his idols into his heart, or who puts the stumbling block of his iniquity before his face, and who then comes to a prophet—I, Yahweh, will answer him according to the number of his idols. ⁵ I will do this so that I may take back the house of Israel in their hearts that have been driven far from me through their idols.'

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **Therefore announce this to them** - The word "them" refers to the "men from the elders of Israel"
- **who takes his idols into his heart** - AT: "who considers his idols to be very important" or "who has affection for his idols"
- **the stumbling block of his iniquity before his face** - The words "before his face" mean "with his full attention." AT: "the idol that he has used to sin by worshiping it" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **then comes to a prophet** - A person goes to a prophet in order to hear what God has to say. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the number of his idols** - AT: "how many idols he has."
- **I may take back the house of Israel in their hearts** - AT: "I will make the people of Israel love me again"
- **take back ... driven far from me** - He says he will bring them back in order to make them love Him even though their idols have pushed them away from God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 14:6**UDB:**

⁶ Therefore, say to the Israelite people, ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says: Repent! Stop worshipping your idols, and stop all your other detestable behavior!’

ULB:

⁶ Therefore say to the house of Israel, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Repent and turn away from your idols! Turn back your faces from all your abominations.’

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- repent, repentance
- turn, turn away, turn back
- face
- abomination, abominable

translationNotes:

- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **Repent and turn away from your idols! Turn back your faces from all your abominations** - Both of these phrases are ways to tell the people of Israel to stop worshipping idols. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Repent and turn away** - The words “Repent” and “turn way” mean basically the same thing. Together they strengthen the command to stop worshipping idols. (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 14:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ When any of you Israelite people or any foreigner living among you turns away from me and starts worshiping idols that induce him to sin, and then goes to a prophet to find out what I want him to do, I myself will answer him. ⁸ I will show that I detest him, and cause what happens to him to be a warning to others, and cause him to be someone whom people despise. I will not allow him to associate with my people. Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

ULB:

⁷ For every one from the house of Israel and every one of the foreigners staying in Israel who deserts me, who takes his idols into his heart and puts the stumbling block of his iniquity before his own face, and who then comes to a prophet to seek me—I, Yahweh, will answer him myself. ⁸ So I will set my face against that man and make him a sign and a proverb, for I will cut him off from the midst of my people, and you will know that I am Yahweh.

translationWords:

- foreigner, foreign, alien
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- idol, idolatrous
- heart
- stumbling block, stone of stumbling
- iniquity
- face
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- sign, proof, reminder
- proverb
- cut off
- people of God, my people

translationNotes:

- **who takes his idols into his heart** - AT: “who considers his idols to be very important” or “who has affection for his idols”
- **and puts the stumbling block of his iniquity before his own face** - AT: “the idol that he has used to sin by worshiping it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **I will set my face against that man** - AT: “I will be against him” or “I will give my attention to being against him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **make him a sign and a proverb** - Here the words “sign” and “proverb” refer to something that serves as a warning to others about the bad consequences of wicked behavior. (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 14:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ And if a prophet is deceived and gives a false prophecy, even though I have allowed him to give that message, I will get rid of him and remove him from among my Israelite people. ¹⁰ Both the prophet and the one who asks him for advice will be guilty, and I will punish both of them. ¹¹ Then the Israelite people will no longer abandon me, and they will no longer become unacceptable to me because of their sins. They will be my people, and I will be their God. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say.”

ULB:

⁹ If a prophet is deceived and speaks a message, then I, Yahweh, will deceive that prophet; I will reach out with my hand against him and destroy him from the midst of my people Israel. ¹⁰ They will carry their own iniquity; the iniquity of the prophet will be the same as the iniquity of the one who inquires from him. ¹¹ Because of this, the house of Israel will no longer wander away from following me nor defile themselves any longer through all their transgressions. They will be my people, and I will be their God—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- defile, be defiled
- transgress, transgression
- God
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **I will reach out with my hand against him** - God’s hand refers to what he does. AT: “I will work against him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **They will carry their own iniquity** - AT: They will be responsible for what they have done wrong” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **will no longer wander away from following me** - The phrase “wander away from following me” compares not doing what God wants to walking away from him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)

- **Ezekiel 14 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 14:12-14**UDB:**

¹² Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ¹³ "You human, if the people of some country sin against me by abandoning me, and I punish them by cutting off their food supply and by sending a famine so that people and animals die, ¹⁴ even if Noah, Daniel, and Job were there, they would save only themselves because of their being righteous. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

ULB:

¹² Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ¹³ "Son of man, when a land sins against me by committing a sin so that I reach out with my hand against it and break the staff of its bread, and send out over it a famine and cut off both man and beast from the land; ¹⁴ then even if these three men—Noah, Daniel, and Job—were in the land's midst, they could only rescue their own lives by their righteousness—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- staff
- bread
- send, send out, sent
- famine
- Noah
- Daniel
- Job
- righteous, righteousness
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 14:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Or, if I send wild animals throughout the country, and they attack and kill many of the people, so that travel in that country becomes very dangerous and no one travels through that country, ¹⁶ as surely as I am alive, even if those three men were in that country, they could not save even their own sons or daughters from being killed. Only they three would be saved, and the country would become a wasteland. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

ULB:

¹⁵ If I send evil beasts through the land and make it barren so that it becomes a wasteland where no man may pass through because of the beasts, ¹⁶ then even if these same three men were in it—as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh—they would not be able to rescue even their own sons or daughters; only their own lives would be rescued, but the land would become a wasteland.

translationWords:

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [barren](#)
- [waste, wasteland](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **these same three men** - Noah, Daniel, and Job
- **as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh** - This can be reordered: “the Lord Yahweh declares. ”as I live”
- **only their own lives would be rescued** - “Yahweh would only rescue their lives” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 14:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Or, if I bring enemy soldiers to kill the people and animals throughout that country with their swords, ¹⁸ as surely as I am alive, even if those three men were in that country, they would not be able to save even their own sons or daughters from being killed. They would save only themselves. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

ULB:

¹⁷ Or if I bring a sword against that land and say, ‘Sword, go through the land and cut off both man and beast from it’, ¹⁸ then even if these three men were in the midst of the land—as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh—they would not be able to rescue even their own sons or daughters; only their own lives would be rescued.

translationWords:

- [sword](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **these three men** - Noah, Daniel, and Job
- **as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh** - This can be reordered: “the Lord Yahweh declares. ”as I live”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 14:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Or, if I send a plague into that land and cause the people and the animals to die from the plague because I am very angry with those people, ²⁰ as surely as I am alive, even if Noah, Daniel and Job were in that country, they would not be able to save even their sons and daughters. They would save only themselves because of their being righteous. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

ULB:

¹⁹ Or if I send a plague against this land and pour out my fury against it through bloodshed, in order to cut off both man and beast, ²⁰ then even if Noah, Daniel, and Job were in that land—as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh—they would not be able to rescue even their own sons or daughters; only their own lives would be rescued by their righteousness.

translationWords:

- [plague](#)
- [bloodshed](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [Daniel](#)
- [Job](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)

translationNotes:

- **pour out my fury** - Like a jar holds water, God had been holding back judgment. So “pour out my fury” means God will no longer hold back from acting on his anger but will act on his anger against the people of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **cut off both man and beast** - This phrase refers to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin. AT: “kill both man and beast” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 14:21**UDB:**

²¹ So now this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I will cause four things to happen to the people of Jerusalem to punish them very severely. Some people and animals will be killed by swords, some will die from famines, others will be attacked and killed by wild animals, and others will die in plagues.

ULB:

²¹ For the Lord Yahweh says this: I will certainly make things worse by sending my four punishments—famine, sword, wild animals, and plague—against Jerusalem to cut off both man and beast from her.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [famine](#)
- [sword](#)
- [plague](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [cut off](#)

translationNotes:

- **from her** - The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 14:22-23**UDB:**

²² But some of your people will remain alive, both adults and children. They will come to you, Ezekiel. And when you see their disgusting behavior and actions, you will realize that I had good reasons for causing the people of Jerusalem to experience those many great disasters that I have sent to them. ²³ When you see those things that they do, you will know that there were very good reasons for me to do everything that I caused to happen to them. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.”

ULB:

²² Yet, behold! A remnant will be left in her, survivors who will go out with sons and daughters. Behold! They will go out to you, and you will see their ways and actions and be comforted concerning the punishment that I have sent to Jerusalem, and about everything else that I have sent against the land. ²³ The survivors will comfort you when you see their ways and their actions, so you will know all these things I have done against her, that I have not done them in vain!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- remnant
- comfort, comforter
- punish, punishment
- send, send out, sent
- Jerusalem
- vain, vanity
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak with Ezekiel about the punishment of the people of Israel.
- **Behold!** - The word “Behold!” here alerts us to pay attention to the information that follows.
- **left in her ... done against her** - The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.
- **their ways and their actions** - Both of these phrases refer to what the people of Israel have done. AT: “the way they live” or “the things they do.” (See: **Doublet**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 15 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Useless

God said that the people of Jerusalem were useless to him. He uses a simile to show just how useless they were. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 15:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 15:1-4**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "Son of man, the wood of a grapevine is certainly not more useful than the branches of the trees in a forest. ³ No one even makes pegs from them to hang things on. ⁴ And after a branch of a grapevine is thrown into a fire and the fire burns both ends and chars the branch in the middle, after that will it be useful for anything?"

ULB:

15 ¹ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, how is a vine better than any tree with branches that is among the trees in a forest? ³ Do people take wood from a vine to make anything? Or do they make a peg from it to hang anything on it? ⁴ See! If it is thrown into a fire as fuel, and if the fire has burned both of its ends and also the middle, is it good for anything?"

translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [vine](#)
- [fire](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking to Ezekiel in this section.
- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **how is a vine better than any tree with branches that is among the trees in a forest?** - AT: "the vine is not better than any tree with branches that is among the trees in a forest." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Do people take wood from a vine to make anything?** - AT: "People do not take wood from a vine to make anything." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **do they make a peg from it to hang anything on it?** - AT: "they do not make a peg from it to hang things on it." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **If it is thrown into a fire as fuel, and if the fire has burned both of its ends and also the middle, is it good for anything?** - AT: if the fire has burned both of its ends and also the middle, it certainly is not good for anything! - (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 15 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 15 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 15:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ No; if it was not useful for anything before it was burned, it certainly cannot be made into something useful after the fire has burned and charred it.

⁶ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: The wood of grapevines is useful only for fuel in a fire. Similarly, the people who live in Jerusalem are useless.

ULB:

⁵ See! When it was complete, it could not make anything; surely then, when the fire has burned, then it still will not make anything useful. ⁶ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Unlike the trees in the forests, I have given the vine as fuel for fires; I will act in the same way toward the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about the vine.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 15 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 15 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 15:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ I will reject them. It will be as though they have escaped from a fire, but there will still be a fire that will burn them up. And when I punish them, you people who remain alive will know that I, Yahweh, have done it. ⁸ I will cause your country to become a wasteland because your people have not been loyal to me. That is what I, Yahweh, the Lord, say.”

ULB:

⁷ For I will set my face against them. Though they come out from the fire, yet the fire will consume them; so you will know that I am Yahweh, when I set my face against them. ⁸ Then I will make the land into an abandoned wasteland because they have committed sin—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- [face](#)
- [fire](#)
- [consume](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [waste, wasteland](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speak to Ezekiel about the people of Israel.
- **abandoned** - a place where everyone has left.
- **they have committed sin** - “they have sinned”
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 15 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 15 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16 General Notes

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

God compared Judah to an adulteress because she worshiped idols instead of God who had done so much to help her. Adultery is a common image used to describe the worship of idols by Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 16:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 16:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "Son of man, inform the people of Jerusalem about their detestable behavior. ³ Say to them, "This is what Yahweh the Lord says to you people of Jerusalem: It is as though you are a woman whose father belonged to the Amor people group and your mother belonged to the Heth people group.

ULB:

16 ¹ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, inform Jerusalem about her abominations, ³ and declare, "The Lord Yahweh says this to Jerusalem: Your beginning and your birth took place in the land of Canaan; your father was an Amorite, and your mother was a Hittite.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- Jerusalem
- abomination, abominable
- declare, declaration
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Amorite
- Hittite

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaks to Ezekiel about the origins of the people of Israel.
- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in **1:1**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **Your beginning and your birth** - Both of these speak of when the city of Jerusalem was founded. (See: **Doublet** and **Metaphor**)
- **father was an Amorite, and your mother was a Hittite** - Both of these nations developed the city of Jerusalem before the people of Israel existed. AT: "you were founded by the Amorites and the Hittites"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 16 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 16:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ It is as though on the day that you were born, your umbilical cord was not cut, and your body was not washed in water or rubbed with salt and wrapped in strips of cloth, like Israelite babies always are. ⁵ No one pitied you or acted kindly toward you by doing those things for you. Instead, it was as though they hated you. As soon as you were born they threw you into a field to die.

ULB:

⁴ On the day of your birth, your mother did not cut your navel, nor did she purify you in water or rub you down with salt, or wrap cloth around you. ⁵ No eye had compassion for you to do any of these things for you, to be compassionate toward you. On the day that you were born, with loathing for your life, you were thrown out into the open field.

translationWords:

- pure, purify, purification
- compassion, compassionate
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh compares Jerusalem to an unwanted baby.
- **No eye** - “Nobody” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **with loathing for your life** - “people hated you”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Then it was as though I passed by and saw you lying in your own blood and kicking. And while you lay there kicking in your own blood, I said to you, “I want you to remain alive!” ⁷ It was as though I caused you to grow up, like plants in the field grow; you grew up and became tall and became like the most precious jewel of all. You developed into a beautiful woman, but you were still completely naked.

ULB:

⁶ But I passed by you, and I saw you writhing in your own blood; so I said to you in your blood, “Live!” I said to you in your blood, “Live!”^[1]Some modern versions leave out the second occurrence of *I said to you in your blood, “Live!”* . ⁷ I made you grow like a plant in a field. You multiplied and became great, and you became the jewel of jewels. Your breasts became firm, and your hair grew thick, though you had been naked and bare.

translationWords:

- [blood](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as an unwanted baby who grows into a beautiful woman.
- **But I passed by you** - Yahweh is walking near the newborn baby.
- **hair** - body hair
- **you became the jewel of jewels** - Here the woman, who represents Jerusalem, is spoken of as if she had become the finest of all jewels, that is, as if she had become the most beautiful of all women. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **you became the jewel of jewels** - Some modern versions translate “You became old enough to wear jewels.”
- **naked and bare** - These two words mean the same thing and emphasize that she was completely naked. AT: “completely naked” (UDB). (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:8

UDB:

⁸ When I saw you several years later, it was as though I spread the cloth of my robe over you to symbolize that I would marry you, with the result that you were no longer naked. I solemnly promised that I would marry you and made a marriage agreement with you, and you became my wife.' That is what Yahweh the Lord says.

ULB:

⁸ I passed by you again, and I saw you. See! the time of love came for you, so I spread my robe over you and covered your nakedness. Then I swore to you and brought you into a covenant—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—and you became mine.

translationWords:

- [love](#)
- [robe](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as a young woman.
- **I passed by you again** - This is to say that Yahweh has walked by the young woman.
- **the time of love came for you** - This is to say that Yahweh sees the young woman is old enough to be married.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:9-12**UDB:**

⁹ And then it was as though I bathed you and washed the blood from you and put ointment on your body. ¹⁰ It was as though I put a fine linen robe on you and gave you expensive clothes. I put an embroidered dress on you and put leather sandals on your feet. ¹¹ It was as though I put bracelets on your arms and a necklace around your neck. Those things all had nice jewels fastened to them. ¹² I put a gold ring in your nose and fastened earrings to your ears and put a beautiful crown on your head.

ULB:

⁹ So I washed you with water and rinsed your blood off you, and I anointed you with oil. ¹⁰ I dressed you in embroidered clothes and placed leather sandals on your feet. I wrapped you with fine linen and covered you with silk. ¹¹ Next I adorned you with jewelry, and I put bracelets on your hands, and a chain around your neck. ¹² I put a nose ring in your nostrils and earrings in your ears, and a beautiful crown on your head.

translationWords:

- [anoint, anointed](#)
- [oil](#)
- [sandal](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)
- [head](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as a young woman.
- **embroidered** - different colored pieces of cloth sewn together to form a design.
- **I adorned you** - "I added decoration to you"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ So it was as though you wore gold and silver ornaments. You had clothes made from fine linen and other expensive fabrics, and an embroidered dress. You ate fine flour, honey, and oil. You were the most beautiful woman and I made you into a queen. ¹⁴ You were very beautiful, with the result that people in other nations heard about you, because they knew that I, Yahweh the Lord, am the one who had caused you to become very beautiful.

ULB:

¹³ So you were adorned with gold and silver, and you were dressed in fine linen, silk, and embroidered clothes; you ate fine flour, honey, and oil, and you were very beautiful, and you became a queen. ¹⁴ Your fame went out among the nations because of your beauty, for it was perfect in the majesty that I had given to you—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- [honey, honeycomb](#)
- [oil](#)
- [queen](#)
- [nation](#)
- [perfect](#)
- [majesty](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as a young woman.
- **adorned** - “decorated”
- **fame** - being known and respected by a lot of people.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ But it was as though you forgot that I made you beautiful and started acting promiscuous with every man who came along, and they all enjoyed your beauty. ¹⁶ It was as though you took some of your clothes to make beautifully decorated the high places, and that is where you slept with those men. Those things should certainly never occur!

ULB:

¹⁵ But you trusted in your own beauty, and you acted like a whore because of your fame; you poured out your acts of prostitution on everyone who passed by. They were for them. ¹⁶ Then you took your clothes and with them you made high places for yourself decorated in various colors, and there you acted like a prostitute. This should not have happened. Nor should such a thing exist.

translationWords:

- [trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [high places](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as his wife.
- **But you trusted in your own beauty** - “thought your own beauty could provide for your needs”
- **acted like a prostitute** - This compares the people of Israel worshiping idols with a woman who is paid to sleep with strangers. (See: [Simile](#))
- **poured out** - Moral or immoral actions and qualities are often spoken of in the Bible as if they were liquids. AT: “freely committed” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **They were for them** - The acts of prostitution were committed for those who passed by. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **They were for them** - This Hebrew phrase is translated in many different ways by various modern versions.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 16 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 16:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ You took the fine gold and silver jewelry that I gave you, and you made male idols for yourself, in order to sleep with them. ¹⁸ You took some of your embroidered clothes to put on those idols, and you burned oil and incense in front of them to honor them. ¹⁹ And the bread that was made from fine flour and the olive oil and honey that I gave to you to eat, you offered to be a fragrant sacrifice to those idols. I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that that is what happened.

ULB:

¹⁷ You took the fine jewels of the gold and silver that I gave you, and you made for yourself male figures, and you did with them as a prostitute would do. ¹⁸ You took your embroidered garments and covered them, and you set my oils and perfumes before them. ¹⁹ My bread of I gave you—made with fine flour, oil, and honey—you set before them for a fragrant aroma, for this is what happened—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

translationWords:

- gold
- silver
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- oil
- bread
- honey, honeycomb
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as his unfaithful wife.
- **male figures** - “statues of men” or “idols that look like men”
- **you did with them as a prostitute would do** - This is a polite way to say the young woman was sleeping with the male figures. (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **set before them** - “placed as an offering in front of them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 16 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 16:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ And you even took your sons and daughters who were supposed to be committed to me and sacrificed and killed them as though they were less important than your becoming a prostitute. ²¹ You slaughtered those who were like my children, and offered them to be sacrifices to these false gods! ²² All during the time when you were acting like a prostitute and doing other detestable things, you did not think about the time when it was as though you were very young, naked, lying in your own blood and kicking in the field.

ULB:

²⁰ Then you took your sons and daughters whom you bore for me, and you sacrificed them to the images to be devoured as food. Are your acts of prostitution a small matter? ²¹ You slaughtered my children and put them into the fire. ²² In all your abominations and your acts of prostitution you have not thought about the days of your youth, when you were naked and bare as you thrashed about in your blood.

translationWords:

- son, son of
- sacrifice, offering
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- devour
- children, child
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- abomination, abominable

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as his unfaithful wife.
- **bore for me** - “gave birth to”
- **Are your acts of prostitution a small matter?** - AT: “you act like your acts of prostitution are not a serious sin.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **slaughtered** - killed
- **naked and bare** - See how you translated this in [16:7](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 16 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 16:23-24

UDB:

²³ So I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that terrible things will happen to you. In addition to all the other wicked things that you did, ²⁴ you built yourself a tall building in which you worship idols and you built a place to worship idols in every city square.

ULB:

²³ Woe! Woe to you!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—therefore, in addition to all this wickedness, ²⁴ you built yourself a vaulted chamber in every public place.

translationWords:

- [woe](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [high places](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to Jerusalem and the people of Israel.
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **you built yourself a vaulted chamber in every public place** - This phrase refers to building a place to worship idols.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ At the beginning of every street you built a tall building for the worship of idols, and showed people your beautiful body, offering it to sleep with every man who walked by, and so you were known as a prostitute and your fame for your immorality grew every day. ²⁶ It was as though you had slept with men from Egypt who were eager to sleep with you, men who lived near Israel. You caused me to become very angry because you became more eager to sleep with more and more of them.

ULB:

²⁵ You built your high place at the head of every road and desecrated your beauty, for you offered your body to every one who passed by and you performed many more acts of prostitution. ²⁶ You have acted like a prostitute with the Egyptians, your lustful neighbors, and you committed many more acts of prostitution, provoking me to anger.

translationWords:

- [high places](#)
- [desecrate](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [lust](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [angry, anger](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as his unfaithful wife.
- **head of every road** - The beginning of the road is referred to as its head. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:27-29**UDB:**

²⁷ So I punished you and caused your enemies to capture some of your country. I enabled your greedy enemies from Philistia to defeat you; and even they were shocked because of your disgraceful behavior. ²⁸ It was as though you slept with soldiers from Assyria, too, because you always wanted to sleep with more men. And after that, you still were not satisfied. ²⁹ So you also slept with soldiers from Babylonia, a country full of merchants, but even that did not satisfy you.

ULB:

²⁷ See! I will strike you with my hand and cut off your food. I will hand your life over to your enemies, the daughters of the Philistines, to bring you shame because of your lustful behavior. ²⁸ You have acted like a prostitute with the Assyrians because you could not be satisfied. You acted like a prostitute and still were not satisfied. ²⁹ You performed many more acts of prostitution in the land of the merchants of Chaldea, and even this did not satisfy you.

translationWords:

- hand, right hand, to hand over
- cut off
- life, live, living, alive
- adversary, enemy
- Philistines
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- lust
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Chaldea, Chaldean

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as his unfaithful wife.
- **I will strike you with my hand** - AT: "I will act against you with my power"
- **cut off your food** - refers to stopping the supply of food.
- **I will hand your life over** - "I will give your life over"
- **the daughters of the Philistines** - Since Jerusalem has been referred to as a young woman, her enemy the Philistines are also referred to as young women.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:30-31

UDB:

³⁰ I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that when you did all those things, acting like a bold prostitute, you were showing that you could not control your lust and would do anything, no matter how promiscuous, that you wanted to satisfy your desires. ³¹ But when you built the houses on the hills to worship idols in every city square, you were not really like a prostitute because prostitutes charge money. You refused to take money for what you did!

ULB:

³⁰ Why is your heart so weak?—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—that you would do all these things, deeds of a promiscuous and shameless woman? ³¹ You have built your high places at the head of every street and made your vaulted chamber in every public place. Yet you were not like a prostitute because you refused to take payment.

translationWords:

- heart
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration
- works, deeds, work, acts
- high places
- prostitute, harlot, whore

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as his unfaithful wife.
- **Why is your heart so weak?** - Here, the word “heart” refers to love and faithfulness. AT: “Why do you love me so little?” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **promiscuous and shameless** - The word “promiscuous” refers to a person who sleeps with many different people.” The word “shameless” refers to a person who openly sins. Both of these words describe one thought. AT: “shamelessly promiscuous” (See: [Hendiadys](#))
- **head of every street** - See how this is translated in [16:25](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:32-34

UDB:

³² You are like a woman who commits adultery: You prefer to sleep with strangers rather than with your husband. ³³ Prostitutes are paid, but it is as though you give gifts to all your lovers; you bribe them to come to you from everywhere to sleep with you. ³⁴ So although you act like you are a prostitute, you are actually the opposite of other prostitutes! Instead of them giving any money to you, you give men money to sleep with you!

ULB:

³² You adulterous woman, you accept strangers instead of your husband. ³³ People give payment to every prostitute, but you give your wages to all your lovers and bribe them to come to you from all around for your acts of prostitution. ³⁴ So there is a difference between you and those other women, since no one goes to you to ask you to sleep with them. Instead, you pay them. No one pays you.

translationWords:

- [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [bribe](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as his unfaithful wife.
- **accept strangers** - This refers to accepting someone to sleep with them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:35-37**UDB:**

³⁵ Therefore, you people of Jerusalem, you, who are like a prostitute, listen to what Yahweh the Lord is saying about you! ³⁶ He says that what you have done is as though you have lusted for everyone around you and had slept with them and with the male idols you made, so that you even made your own children to be sacrifices to them. ³⁷ So what I am going to do is as though I will gather those who you think have loved you and those whom you hated. I will gather them around you to attack you, and what I will do is as though I will strip your clothes off you, and they will see you when you are completely naked.

ULB:

³⁵ Therefore, you prostitute, listen to the word of Yahweh. ³⁶ The Lord Yahweh says this: Because you have poured your lust out and exposed your private parts through your acts of prostitution with all of your lovers and with all your disgusting idols, and because of the blood of your children that you gave to your idols, ³⁷ therefore, behold! I will gather all your lovers that you have met, all those whom you loved and all those whom you hated, and I will gather them against you on every side. I will expose your private parts to them so they can see all your nakedness.

translationWords:

- prostitute, harlot, whore
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- lust
- idol, idolatrous
- blood
- children, child
- love

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as his unfaithful wife.
- **poured your lust out** - Actions having moral qualities are often spoken of as if they were liquid. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **poured your lust out** - Some modern versions translate “poured your wealth out.”
- **the blood of your children that you gave to your idols** - This refers to killing children as a sacrifice to idols.
- **behold!** - alerts us to pay attention to what follows.

- **nakedness** - The word “nakedness” refers to a person being without clothing but also refers to seeing all of a person’s faults. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:38-39

UDB:

³⁸ I will punish you like women who commit adultery and who murder people are punished. I will get revenge on you and get rid of you because I am extremely angry with you. ³⁹ I will allow your enemies who you thought loved you break apart your high places of idol worship and pagan altars. They will strip you naked and keep your clothes and jewelry, and abandon you with nothing to cover yourself with.

ULB:

³⁸ For I will punish you for adultery and the shedding of blood, and I will bring on you the bloodshed of my anger and passion. ³⁹ I will give you into their hands so they will throw down your mound and break down your high places and they will strip you of your clothes and take all of your jewelry. They will leave you naked and bare.

translationWords:

- [punish, punishment](#)
- [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress](#)
- [bloodshed](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [high places](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaks about enemy soldiers as the lovers of Jerusalem
- **throw down your mound ... break down your high places** - These phrases are saying the same thing in different ways. This adds emphasis to the phrase. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **naked and bare** - See how you translated this in [16:7](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:40-42**UDB:**

⁴⁰ They will bring a mob to attack you, and that mob will throw stones at you and cut you to pieces with their swords. ⁴¹ They will burn down your houses and punish you while many women are watching. I will let them do this so that you will learn a lesson for acting so adulterous and for paying people to sleep with you. ⁴² Then I will no longer be angry with you. I will stop being jealous because your punishment will satisfy me.

ULB:

⁴⁰ Then they will bring up a crowd against you and stone you with stones, and they will cut you apart with their swords. ⁴¹ They will burn your houses and will perform many acts of punishment on you in the sight of many women, for I will put a stop to your prostitution, and you will no longer pay anyone for them. ⁴² Then I will calm my fury against you; my anger will leave you, for I will be satisfied, and will no longer be angry.

translationWords:

- [stone, stoning](#)
- [sword](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [angry, anger](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaks about enemy soldiers as the lovers of Jerusalem.
- **I will calm my fury against you; my anger will leave you** - The words “fury” and “anger” refer to the punishment that Yahweh inflicts because he is angry. The two phrases mean basically the same thing. AT: “I will stop punishing you because I will no longer be angry with you.” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:43

UDB:

⁴³ You have forgotten the wonderful things that I did for you in previous years. You have caused me to become extremely angry because of all the evil things that you have done. In addition to all the other detestable things that you did, you committed many sexual sins. So I Yahweh the Lord declare that I will punish you for doing those things.

ULB:

⁴³ Because you did not call to mind the days of your youth when you made me shake with anger over all these things. Behold! I myself will bring the punishment for your conduct on your own head—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—so you will no longer act wickedly in all your disgusting ways.

translationWords:

- [call, calling, called, call out](#)
- [mind](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as his unfaithful wife.
- **the days of your youth** - Yahweh is referring to earlier times. AT: “my kindness to you when you were young” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Behold!** - This alerts us to pay attention to what follows.
- **I myself will bring the punishment for your conduct on your own head** - AT: “I will punish you for how you have acted” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:44-45**UDB:**

⁴⁴ People who like to quote proverbs will quote this proverb about you: ‘Daughters behave like their mothers behave.’ ⁴⁵ You are like your mother; it was as though she detested her husband and her children. You are like your sisters, who also despised their husbands and their children. It was as though your father belonged to the Amor people group and your mother belonged to the Heth people group.

ULB:

⁴⁴ Behold! Everyone who speaks proverbs concerning you will say, “As the mother is, so also is her daughter.” ⁴⁵ You are the daughter of your mother, who detested her husband and her children, and you are the sister of your sisters who detested their husbands and their children. Your mother was a Hittite, and your father was an Amorite.

translationWords:

- [proverb](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [Amorite](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as his unfaithful wife.
- **Behold!** - “behold” alerts us to pay attention to what follows.
- **who detested her husband** - “who hated her husband”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:46**UDB:**

⁴⁶ And it was as though your older sister was Samaria, and she and her daughters lived to the north of you, and it was as though your younger sister was Sodom, and her daughters lived to the south of you.

ULB:

⁴⁶ Your older sister was Samaria and her daughters were the ones living in the north, while your younger sister was the one living south of you, that is, Sodom and her daughters.

translationWords:

- [sister](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Sodom](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:47-48**UDB:**

⁴⁷ You not only imitated all their detestable behavior, but you quickly became more sinful than they were. ⁴⁸ I, Yahweh the Lord, solemnly declare that as surely as I am alive, the people who lived in Sodom and other nearby cities never did the detestable things that you people in Jerusalem and other places in Judah have done.

ULB:

⁴⁷ Now do not walk in their ways or after their disgusting actions, as if those were very small things. Indeed, in all your ways you have been worse than they have been. ⁴⁸ As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—Sodom, your sister, and her daughters, have not done as much evil as you and your daughters have done.

translationWords:

- [walk](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to refer to other nations as relatives of Jerusalem.
- **Now** - This word is used to mark a break in the teaching. Yahweh changes from his parable to command the people of Jerusalem.
- **do not walk in their ways or after their disgusting actions** - AT: “do not act like them or do the disgusting things that they do” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:49-50

UDB:

⁴⁹ These are the sins of the people who lived in Sodom, who were like your sister people among them: they were prideful and did not think they would ever be punished. They ignored poor and hurting people around them. ⁵⁰ The people of Sodom and nearby cities were proud and did detestable things in my presence, so I got rid of them when I saw what they had been doing.

ULB:

⁴⁹ Behold! This was the sin of your sister Sodom: she was arrogant in her leisure, careless and unconcerned about anything. She did not strengthen the hands of the poor and needy people. ⁵⁰ She was arrogant and committed disgusting actions before me, so I took them away just as you have seen.

translationWords:

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [arrogant](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to refer to other nations as relatives of Jerusalem.
- **arrogant in her leisure, careless and unconcerned about anything** - Yahweh describes Sodom as a rich woman who has more than enough food and lives in security. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **She did not strengthen the hands of the poor and needy people** - The words “poor” and “needy” emphasize that these are people who cannot help themselves. AT: “She did not help the people who could not help themselves.” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:51-52

UDB:

⁵¹ Also, the people of Samaria did not commit half as many sins as you commit. You have done more disgusting things than they have done. You cause the people of Samaria to appear to be good, compared to you. ⁵² Your sins are worse than their sins, so they seem to be less wicked than you are. So I will punish you more than I punished them. As a result, you will be ashamed and disgraced.

ULB:

⁵¹ Neither did Samaria commit even half of your sins; instead, you have done many more disgusting things than they did, and you have shown that your sisters were better than you because of all the disgusting things that you do! ⁵² Especially you, show your own shame; in this way you have shown that your sisters were better than you, because of the sins you committed in all those disgusting ways. Your sisters now seem better than you. Especially you, show your own shame, for in this way you have shown that your sisters were better than you.

translationWords:

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to refer to other nations as relatives of Jerusalem.
- **you have shown that your sisters were better than you** - Yahweh uses this phrase three times to emphasize that the wicked cities of Samaria and Sodom were more righteous than Jerusalem.
- **Especially you, show your own shame** - Yahweh uses this phrase twice to emphasize how shamefully the people of Jerusalem have acted.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:53-55

UDB:

⁵³ However, some day I will cause the people of Sodom and Samaria and the cities near to them to prosper again. And I will cause you to prosper again, too. ⁵⁴ You will be very ashamed of the wicked things that you have done, and that will cause the people of those cities to be encouraged. ⁵⁵ The people of Sodom and Samaria will prosper again, and you and the people in nearby cities will prosper also.

ULB:

⁵³ For I will restore their fortunes—the fortunes of Sodom and her daughters, and the fortunes of Samaria and her daughters; but your fortunes will be among them. ⁵⁴ On account of these things you will show your shame; you will be humiliated because of everything that you have done, and in this way you will be a comfort to them. ⁵⁵ So your sister Sodom and her daughters will be restored to their former condition, and Samaria and her daughters will be restored to their former estate. Then you and your daughters will be restored to your former condition.

translationWords:

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [humiliate, humiliation](#)
- [comfort, comforter](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to refer to other nations as relatives of Jerusalem.
- **fortunes** - “wealth”
- **you will show your shame; you will be humiliated** - Both of these phrases refer to Yahweh punishing the people of Jerusalem publicly. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:56-58**UDB:**

⁵⁶ You sneered at the people of Sodom when you were proud, ⁵⁷ before it was revealed that you were more wicked than she was. And now the people of Edom and the people of Philistia all insult you and despise you. ⁵⁸ And you are being punished for all your immoral behavior and other detestable things that you do. This is what Yahweh is saying to you!

ULB:

⁵⁶ Sodom your sister was not even mentioned by your mouth in the days when you were proud, ⁵⁷ before your wickedness was revealed. But now you are an object of scorn to the daughters of Edom and to all the daughters of the Philistines around her. People all about despise you.[1] Instead of *Edom*, some ancient copies and modern versions have *Aram*, that is, Syria. ⁵⁸ You will show your shame and your disgusting actions!—this is Yahweh’s declaration!

translationWords:

- Sodom
- proud, pride, prideful
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Philistines
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to refer to other nations as relatives of Jerusalem.
- **Sodom your sister was not even mentioned by your mouth** - AT: “You would not even say the name of Sodom your sister” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **you are an object of scorn** - refers to Jerusalem as something people talk badly about.
- **despise** - “hate”
- **You will show your shame and your disgusting actions** - “You will be humiliated and everyone will understand how sinful you have been”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 16 General Notes
- Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 16:59**UDB:**

⁵⁹ This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I will continue to punish you like you deserve to be punished, because by rejecting the agreement that I made with you, you have despised that solemn agreement that you promised to obey.

ULB:

⁵⁹ The Lord Yahweh says this: I will deal with you as you deserve, you who have despised your oath by breaking the covenant.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [covenant](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to Jerusalem.
- **despised your oath by breaking the covenant** - AT: “decided your promise meant nothing so you can break a formal agreement”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:60-61**UDB:**

⁶⁰ But I will not forget the agreement that I made with you long ago and I will make an agreement with you that will endure forever. ⁶¹ Then you will think about what you have done, and you will be ashamed about those things when you welcome the people of Sodom and Samaria, cities which are like your daughters, but they will not have the same agreement that I will make with you.

ULB:

⁶⁰ But I myself will call to mind my covenant with you made in the days of your youth, and I will establish an everlasting covenant with you. ⁶¹ Then you will call to mind your ways and be ashamed when you receive your older sisters and your younger sisters. I will give them to you as daughters, but not because of your covenant.

translationWords:

- [call, calling, called, call out](#)
- [mind](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [everlasting, eternal, eternity](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to refer to Jerusalem as an unfaithful wife and other nations as relatives of Jerusalem.
- **call to mind** - “remember”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 16:62-63**UDB:**

⁶² I will establish my agreement with you, and you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do. ⁶³ Then when I have forgiven you for all your sins, you will think about all the sins that you committed and you will be ashamed. You will never again boast about them, because you will be humiliated.” I, the Lord Yahweh, have said so! This is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

ULB:

⁶² I myself will establish my covenant with you, and you will know that I am Yahweh. ⁶³ Because of these things, you will call everything to mind and be ashamed, so you will no longer open your mouth to speak because of your shame, when I have forgiven you for all that you have done—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [forgive, forgiveness](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **call everything to mind** - “remember everything”
- **you will no longer open your mouth to speak** - AT: “you will no longer say anything”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 17 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Breaking allegiance

The king of Judah had vowed to obey Babylon but instead he followed Egypt. Therefore, God said he would not prosper. (See: [vow](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Judah is compared to a vine that grows one direction and then another. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 17:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 17:1-4**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "Son of man, tell this story as an illustration to the people of Israel. ³ Say to them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: A huge eagle that had strong wings and long beautiful feathers of many colors flew to Lebanon. It grasped the top of a cedar tree ⁴ and broke it off. Then the eagle carried it away to Canaan, a country that had many merchants, and planted it in one of the cities there.

ULB:

17 ¹ The word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, present a riddle and speak a parable to the house of Israel. ³ Say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this:

A large eagle with large wings and long pinions, full of feathers,
and that was multicolored went to Lebanon and took hold of the top of a
cedar tree.

⁴ It broke off the tips of the branches and took them to the land of Canaan;
he planted it in a city of merchants.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- parable
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- Lebanon
- cedar
- Canaan, Canaanite

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel reports a message that God gives him.
- **The word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in [2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

- **present a riddle and speak a parable** - “give them a puzzle to think about” or “tell this story as an illustration” (UDB)
- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **A large eagle** - “a very big eagle”
- **long pinions, full of feathers** - The word “pinion” means the outer end of the wings. Alternate translation: “the ends of its wings were long and full of feathers.”
- **that was multicolored** - This refers to the eagle.
- **It broke off the tips of the branches** - “It broke off the highest part of the tree”
- **took them** - “took the top of the tree” or “took the branches”
- **he planted it in a city of merchants** - A merchant is a person who sells things. “He put it in a city that had many merchants” or “The eagle planted the top of the tree in a city that was known for its markets.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 17:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Then that eagle took a seedling from your country and planted it in a fertile field. He planted it like people plant a willow tree, alongside a stream that had plenty of water. ⁶ It grew and became a low grapevine that spread along the ground. Its branches turned up toward the eagle, but its roots grew down into the ground. So it became a good vine and produced lots of branches and leaves.

ULB:

⁵ He also took some seed of the land, and planted it ground ready for sowing.

He planted it beside a large body of water like a willow.

⁶ Then it sprouted and became a spreading vine low to the ground.

Its branches turned toward him, and its roots grew under it.

So it became a vine and produced branches and sent out shoots.

translationWords:

- seed
- vine

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is a continuation of the parable about the eagle.
- **He also took** - The word "He" is the eagle in the parable.
- **ground ready for sowing** - "a field that was ready for seed to be planted in it." Alternate translations: "a fertile field" or "in good ground."
- **He planted it beside a large body of water** - "the eagle planted the seed in a place where there was a lot of water"
- **planted it ... like a willow** - Willow trees grow in places where there is a lot of water. If the eagle planted the seed like a willow, it means that he planted it in a place with a lot of water. Alternate translation: "and planted the seed like a willow tree by water." (See: **Parallelism**)
- **Then it sprouted** - "Then the seed began to grow into a plant"
- **a spreading vine low to the ground** - "a vine that spreads out on the ground"
- **Its branches turned toward him** - The branches of the vine turned toward the eagle.
- **its roots grew under it** - The roots of the vine grew under the eagle.
- **So it became a vine** - "That is how the vine grew"
- **produced branches and sent out shoots** - "grew branches and spread its shoots"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 17:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ But there was another huge eagle that had strong wings and beautiful feathers. And some of the roots of the vine grew toward that eagle, and its branches also turned toward it, hoping that the eagle would bring more water to it. ⁸ That happened in spite of the fact that the vine had been planted in good soil, where there was plenty of water, with the result that it had produced branches and produced grapes and had become a very healthy vine.'

ULB:

⁷ But there was another great eagle with large wings and many feathers.

Behold! This vine turned its roots toward the eagle,

and it spread out its branches toward the eagle from the place it had been planted so it would be watered.

⁸ It had been planted in good soil beside a large body of water

so it would produce branches and sprout fruit, to become a magnificent vine.'

translationWords:

- vine
- fruit, fruitful

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The introductory “but” shows that a different eagle is being describe than the one before.
- **great eagle** - The eagle is large, powerful, and impressive bird.
- **Behold!** - The word “Behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
- **This vine turned its roots toward the eagle** - AT: “The roots of the vine grew toward the eagle”
- **so it would be watered** - AT: “so the eagle would water the vine” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **It had been planted** - AT: “the first eagle had planted the vine.”
- **beside a large body of water** - AT: “in a place where there was a lot of water”
- **so it would produce branches and sprout fruit, to become a magnificent vine** - “so that the vine would grow branches and fruit and be an impressive vine”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 17:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Then after you have told that to the people, say to them, "This is what Yahweh the Lord says: That vine will certainly not remain healthy. It will be pulled up by its roots by the eagle that planted it, and all its fruit will be stripped off and its leaves will wither. And it will not need someone with strong arms or many people to pull it out by its roots. ¹⁰ Even if that vine is transplanted, it certainly will not continue to grow. When the hot wind from the east blows against it, it will completely wither, there where it was planted!"

ULB:

⁹ Say to the people, "The Lord Yahweh says this: Will it prosper?

Will he not pull up its roots and pluck out its fruit so all of its growth of leaves will wither away?

No strong arm or multitudes of people will sprout up from its roots.

¹⁰ So behold! After it has been planted, will it grow? Will it not wither when the eastern wind touches it?

It will completely wither away in its plot."

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- fruit, fruitful
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

translationNotes:

- **Will it prosper?** - AT: "It will not prosper." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Will he not pull up its roots and pluck out its fruit so all of its growth of leaves will wither away?** - AT: "He will pull up its roots and pluck out its fruit so all of its growth of leaves will wither away." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **behold!** - The word "behold!" here adds emphasis to what follows. ("indeed!", "look!" or "listen!" or "pay attention to what I am about to tell you!")
- **will it grow?** - AT: "It will not grow." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Will it not wither when the eastern wind touches it?** - AT: "It will wither when the eastern wind touches it." (See [Rhetorical Question](#)).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 17:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Then Yahweh gave this message to me: ¹² "Ask these rebellious Israelite people, 'Do you know what this parable means?' Tell them that it signifies that the king of Babylon went to Jerusalem with his army and captured the king of Judah and his officials, and took them back to Babylon.

ULB:

¹¹ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ¹² "Speak to the rebellious house, 'Do you not know what these things mean? Behold! The king of Babylon came to Jerusalem and took her king and her princes and brought them to him in Babylon.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- house
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Jerusalem
- prince, princess

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Do you not know what these things mean?** - AT: "You should know what these things mean." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Behold!** - "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 17:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Then he took one of the king's close relatives, appointed one of them as king, and made an agreement with him, forcing him to solemnly promise to remain loyal. The king of Babylon also took to Babylon the other important citizens of Judah, ¹⁴ in order that the kingdom of Judah would not be able to become powerful again. The king of Babylon intended that the kingdom of Judah would not continue to exist if the people did not obey that agreement that he made with the king of Babylon.

ULB:

¹³ Then he took a royal descendant, made a covenant with him, and brought him under an oath. He took away the powerful people of the land, ¹⁴ so the kingdom might become lowly and not lift itself up. By keeping his covenant the land will survive.

translationWords:

- royal
- descendant, descended from
- covenant
- oath, swear, swear by
- power, powers
- kingdom
- lowly, lowliness

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 17:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ The king of Judah rebelled against the king of Babylon by sending officials to Egypt to request from them horses and a large army to fight against the army of Babylonia. But the king of Judah will certainly not be successful. Rulers who rebel like that and refuse to obey solemn agreements will never escape.

¹⁶ I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that as surely as I am alive, the king of Judah will die in Babylon, in the city where the king of Babylon appointed him to be the king of Judah. He will die because he despised the solemn agreement and refused to do what he promised to do.

ULB:

¹⁵ But the king of Jerusalem rebelled against him by sending his ambassadors to Egypt to acquire horses and an army. Will he succeed? Will the one doing these things escape? If he breaks the covenant, will he escape? ¹⁶ As I live!—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—he will surely die in the land of the king who made him king, the king whose oath he despised, and whose covenant he broke. He will die in the middle of Babylon.

translationWords:

- king
- Jerusalem
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- send, send out, sent
- ambassador, representative
- Egypt, Egyptian
- horse
- covenant
- life, live, living, alive
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration
- death, die, dead
- oath, swear, swear by
- Babylon, Babylonian

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaks about the king of Jerusalem rebelling against the king of Babylon.

- **Will he succeed?** - AT: “He will certainly not succeed” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Will the one doing these things escape?** - AT: “The one doing these things will not escape!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **If he breaks the covenant, will he escape?** - AT: “If he breaks the covenant, he will certainly not escape!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 17:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ The king of Egypt with all his very huge army will not be able to help the king of Judah: The soldiers from Babylonia will build ramps up against the city walls and set up devices to batter the walls. They will enter Jerusalem and kill many of its people. ¹⁸ The king of Judah despised the solemn agreement by disregarding the treaty. Although he had solemnly promised to be under the control of the king of Babylon, he sent officials to request help from Egypt. Therefore he will not escape being punished by the king of Babylon.

ULB:

¹⁷ Pharaoh with his mighty army and assembling of many men for war will not protect him in battle, when the Babylonian army builds siege mounds and siege walls to destroy many lives. ¹⁸ For the king despised his oath by breaking the covenant. Behold, he reached out with his hand to make a promise and yet he did all these things. He will not escape.

translationWords:

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- mighty, might
- assembly, assemble
- Babylon, Babylonian
- siege, besiege
- life, live, living, alive
- king
- oath, swear, swear by
- covenant
- promise

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaking about the king of Jerusalem.
- **mighty army and assembling of many men for war** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize how large and strong Pharaoh's army is. (See: **Doublet**)
- **will not protect him** - Here the word "him" refers to the king of Judah.
- **siege walls** - this refers to a tower with ladders that can be placed next to a wall and allow soldiers to get over the wall and into the city.
- **Behold** - "Behold" adds emphasis to what follows. AT: "Indeed."
- **reached out with his hand to make a promise** - This refers to taking hold of another person's hand as a sign of friendship and agreement.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 17:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ Therefore this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Just as surely as I am alive, I will cause the king of Judah to be punished for ignoring the solemn agreement that he made with the king of Babylon and then refusing to obey it, since this violates what I expect. ²⁰ It will be as though I will spread a net to capture him, and he will be caught in it. He will be captured and taken to Babylon and punished because he rebelled against me. ²¹ Most of his soldiers who try to escape will be killed by their enemies' swords, and those who survive will be scattered in all directions. Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do."

ULB:

¹⁹ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: As I live, was it not my oath that he despised and my covenant that he broke? So I will bring his punishment on his head! ²⁰ I will spread my net out over him, and he will be caught in my hunting net. Then I will bring him to Babylon and execute judgment on him there for his treason that he committed when he betrayed me! ²¹ All of his refugees in his armies will fall by the sword, and the ones who remain will be scattered in every direction. Then you will know that I am Yahweh; I have declared this would happen."

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- life, live, living, alive
- oath, swear, swear by
- covenant
- punish, punishment
- Babylon, Babylonian
- judge, judgment
- betray, betrayer
- sword
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **was it not my oath that he despised and my covenant that he broke?** - "it was my oath that the king of Jerusalem despised and my covenant that he broke." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#)).
- **I will bring his punishment on his head** - AT: "I will punish him." (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **fall by the sword** - AT: "be killed by Babylon's army" (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 17:22-23

UDB:

²² This is also what Yahweh the Lord says: "It will be as though I will take a shoot from the top of a very tall cedar tree and plant it in another place. I will plant it on a very high mountain. ²³ It will be as though I will plant it on a mountain in Israel, and it will grow and become a beautiful cedar tree. Many kinds of birds will make their nests in the tree, and they will have shade in its branches.

ULB:

²² The Lord Yahweh says this, 'So I myself will take away the highest part of the cedar tree, and I will plant it away from its tender branches. I will break it off, and I myself will plant it on a high mountain. ²³ I will plant it on the mountains of Israel so it will bear branches and produce fruit, and it will become a majestic cedar so that every winged bird will live under it. They will nest in the shade of its branches.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [majesty](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaking about Jerusalem like it's a branch planted in the mountains of Israel.
- **bear branches** - "grow new branches"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 17:24**UDB:**

²⁴ And it will be as though all the trees in the field will know that I, Yahweh, get rid of tall trees and will make little ones grow. I cause big green trees to wither, and I cause dry trees to become green. I, Yahweh have said this, and I will certainly do what I have said that I will do.”

ULB:

²⁴ Then all the trees of the field will know that I am Yahweh. I bring down the high trees and I raise up the low trees. I wither the watered tree and I cause the dried tree to bloom. I am Yahweh, I have declared that this will happen; and I have done it.”

translationWords:

- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaks about trees like they are cities.
- **Then all the trees of the field will know that I am Yahweh** - (See: [Personification](#))
- **high trees ... low trees** - (See: [Idiom](#))
- **wither** - when a plant dries up and dies.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Inherited Guilt

God does not punish children for the sins of their parents, but only punishes them for their own sins. Despite this, the parents' sins may still have consequences for their children. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 18:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 18:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "You people quote this proverb and say that it is about Israel:

'Parents eat sour grapes,
but it is their children who have a very sour taste in their mouths.'

This means that you think that you must suffer for the sins that your ancestors committed.

ULB:

18 ¹ The word of Yahweh came to me again and said, ² "What do you mean, you who use this proverb concerning the land of Israel and say,

'Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt?'

translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [proverb](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [grape](#)

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **What do you mean, you who use this proverb ... 'Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt?'** - God is rebuking the people for thinking that they are being punished for their parent's sins, but believe they themselves are sinless. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt** - This proverb means that children are punished because of their parents' wicked deeds. (See: [Proverbs](#))
- **land of Israel** - This refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:3-4**UDB:**

³ But I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that as surely as I am alive, you Israelite people will no longer say this proverb. ⁴ Everyone who is alive belongs to me. That includes children and their parents; they all belong to me. And it is those who sin who will die because of their sins.

ULB:

³ As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—there will certainly no longer be any occasion for you to use this proverb in Israel. ⁴ Behold! Every life belong to me—the life of the father as well as the life of the son belong to me! The soul who sins is the one who will die!

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [proverb](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [son, son of](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **Behold!** - The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. It can also be translated as “Indeed!” This can also be translated as “Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ So suppose that there is a righteous person,

one who always does what is fair and right.

⁶ He does not eat meat sacrificed to idols on the hilltops;

he does not request help from idols as the rest of Israel has been doing.

He does not sleep with someone else's wife

or with a woman during her monthly menstrual period.

ULB:

⁵ Suppose that a man is righteous and carries out justice and righteousness. ⁶ Suppose that he has not eaten on the mountains, that he has not lifted up his eyes to the idols of the house of Israel, and that he has not defiled his neighbor's wife, nor approached a woman during her monthly period.

translationWords:

- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [house](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [neighbor](#)

translationNotes:

- **has not eaten on the mountains ... has not lifted up his eyes to the idols** - These phrases refer to idol worship. People ate the food at the mountain shrines to honor the idols. The phrase "lifted up his eyes" refers to looking at the idols and honoring them. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:7**UDB:**

⁷ He does not mistreat people;

if a person borrows money from him and gives him something to guarantee that he will pay the money back, this man always gives it back to that person before the sun goes down.

He does not rob people.

He gives food to hungry people.

He gives clothing to people who need clothes.

ULB:

⁷ Suppose that he has not oppressed anyone but instead has returned a pledge to its debtor. Suppose that he has not taken what was stolen, but instead gives his food to the hungry, and that he covers the naked with clothes.

translationWords:

- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [pledge](#)

translationNotes:

- **returned a pledge** - God is impressed by lenders who return the pledge back to the borrower before the borrower actually pays the lender back.
- **gives his food to the hungry. and that he covers the naked with clothes** - God is impressed by those who are generous towards those who lack food and cloths.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ When he lends money to people,

he does not do it to make him pay interest.

He does not do things that are evil.

He always decides things fairly.

⁹ He faithfully obeys all my laws.

That man is truly righteous;

he will remain alive.

That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, promise.

ULB:

⁸ Then suppose that he does not charge any interest for loans, nor gains too much profit. Suppose that he carries out justice and establishes faithfulness between people. ⁹ Suppose that he walks in my statutes and keeps my decrees to act faithfully. Then the promise for this righteous man is this: He will surely live!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

translationWords:

- profit, profitable
- just, justice, justly
- walk
- statute, statutes
- righteous, righteousness
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to describe the actions of the righteous man.
- **interest** - This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “any interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ But suppose that man has a son who acts violently, who murders people and does any of these other things, even though his father has not done any of them.

¹¹ He eats meat sacrificed to idols on the hilltops.

He sleeps with other people's wives.

ULB:

¹⁰ But suppose that he has a violent son who sheds blood and does any of these things to a brother,[1]Some ancient copies and many modern versions leave out *to a brother* . ¹¹ even though his father did not do any of these things. Suppose that he eats on the mountains and he defiles his neighbor's wife.

translationWords:

- [son, son of](#)
- [blood](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [neighbor](#)

translationNotes:

- **sheds blood** - This phrase refers to killing someone. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **any of these things** - This refers to the sinful actions mentioned in 18:11-18:13.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:12-13**UDB:**

¹² He mistreats poor and needy people.

He robs people.

If someone gives him something to guarantee that he will pay back money that he has borrowed, the unrighteous man never gives it back to him before the sun goes down.

He seeks help from idols.

He does other disgusting things.

¹³ When he lends money, he charges interest.

If you think that I will keep such a person alive, you are certainly wrong. Because he has done all those detestable things, I will certainly make him die, and it will be his own fault.

ULB:

¹² Suppose that he oppresses the poor and needy, and that he seizes and robs and does not return a pledge. Suppose that he lifts up his eyes to the idols or commits disgusting actions. ¹³ Suppose that he lends charging interest or gains too much profit. Should he live? He will not live! He has done all these disgusting actions. He will surely die, and his blood will be on him.

translationWords:

- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- seize
- pledge
- idol, idolatrous
- unjust, unjustly, injustice
- profit, profitable
- life, live, living, alive
- death, die, dead
- blood

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about the violent son.
- **the poor and needy** - The words “poor” and “needy” emphasize that these are people who cannot help themselves. (See: **Doublet**)

- **charging interest** - The word 'interest' refers to money added to a debt.
- **interest** - This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret "any interest" in this passage as "too much interest."
- **Should he live?** - "He should not live!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **his blood will be on him** - This phrase means he is responsible for his own death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ But suppose that man has a son who sees all the sins that his father commits, but he himself does not do those things.

¹⁵ The son does not eat meat sacrificed to idols on the hilltops.

He does not request help from idols.

He does not sleep with other people's wives.

ULB:

¹⁴ But behold! Suppose that he bears a son who sees all the sins that his father has committed. Suppose that he himself fears God and does not do such things. ¹⁵ Suppose that he does not eat on the mountains. Suppose that he does not lift up his eyes to the idols of the house of Israel, nor does he defile his neighbor's wife.

translationWords:

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [neighbor](#)

translationNotes:

- **behold!** - The word "behold" here adds emphasis to what follows.
- **committed** - "done"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ He does not mistreat people.

If he lends money to someone, he does not require that person to give him something to guarantee that he will pay the money back.

He does not rob anyone.

He gives food to those who need it.

He gives clothes to those who need clothes.

¹⁷ He does not commit sins, unlike his father,

and does not charge interest when he lends money.

He faithfully obeys all my laws.

I will make sure that that person does not die for his father's sins; he will certainly stay alive.

ULB:

¹⁶ Suppose that he does not oppress anyone, seize a pledge, or take stolen things, but instead gives his food to the hungry and covers the naked with clothes. ¹⁷ Suppose that he draws his hand back from the poor and does not take interest or gains too much profit. Suppose that he carries out my decrees and walks according to my statutes. Then he will not die for his father's sin; he will surely live!^[1] Instead of *the poor*, some ancient and many modern versions have *from sin*.

translationWords:

- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- seize
- pledge
- judge, judgment
- unjust, unjustly, injustice
- profit, profitable
- decree
- walk
- statute, statutes
- death, die, dead
- ancestor, father, forefather
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak about the son who does not commit the same sins as his father.
- **the naked** - This may mean people with no clothes at all, but more probably means people who are dressed in rags, very poor clothing. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **covers the naked with clothes** - Giving clothes to people who need them is spoken of as if it were placing the clothes on their bodies. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he draws his hand back from the poor** - Here “hand” stands for committing unjust actions. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **interest** - This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:18**UDB:**

¹⁸ But I will ensure that his father will die for the sins that he committed, because the father cheated and robbed people, and did other things that are evil.

ULB:

¹⁸ His father, since he oppressed others by extortion and robbed his brother, and did what is not good among his people—behold, he will die in his iniquity.

translationWords:

- ancestor, father, forefather
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- brother
- death, die, dead
- iniquity

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaks about the son's father who has not obeyed God's law.
- **extortion** - to take something from someone else by using threats or force.
- **behold** - The word "behold" here adds emphasis to what follows.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ If you ask, ‘Why should the man’s son not suffer for the evil things that his father did?’, I will answer that the son has done what is fair and right and has obeyed all my laws, so he will surely remain alive. ²⁰ It is those who sin who will die because of their sins. I will not punish people because their parents have sinned, or because their children have sinned. I will reward people who live rightly, and I will punish the wicked people, those who live wrongly.

ULB:

¹⁹ But you say, ‘Why does the son not bear the iniquity of his father?’ Because the son carries out justice and righteousness and keeps all my statutes; he does them. He will surely live! ²⁰ The one who sins, he will die. A son will not bear his father’s iniquity, and a father will not bear his son’s iniquity. The righteousness of the one who acts rightly will be on himself, and the wickedness of the wicked person will be on himself.

translationWords:

- son, son of
- iniquity
- ancestor, father, forefather
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- statute, statutes
- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- death, die, dead
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **Why does the son not bear the iniquity** - AT: “Why is the son not responsible for the iniquity”
- **The righteousness of the one who acts rightly will be on himself** - AT: “The one who does what is right will be considered righteous”
- **the wickedness of the wicked person will be on himself** - AT: “the one who does what is wicked will be considered wicked”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ But if a wicked person stops doing all the evil things that he did previously, and if he starts to obey faithfully all my laws, and if he does what is fair and right, he will surely remain alive; I will not kill him. ²² I will not punish him for the sins he committed previously. Because of the good things that he has done since that time, I will allow him to stay alive.

ULB:

²¹ But if the wicked turns away from all his sins that he has done, and keeps all my statutes and performs justice and righteousness, then he will certainly live and not die. ²² All the transgressions that he has committed will not be called to mind against him. He will live by the righteousness that he practices.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- turn, turn away, turn back
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- statute, statutes
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- life, live, living, alive
- death, die, dead
- transgress, transgression

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaking of the wicked person who changes and does what is righteous.
- **be called to mind** - AT: “be remembered” (See: **Idiom**)
- **He will live by the righteousness that he practices** - He will continue to live because he does the right things”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:23**UDB:**

²³ I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that I certainly am not happy about wicked people dying. Instead, I am happy when they stop doing wicked things and remain alive as a result.

ULB:

²³ Do I greatly rejoice over the death of the wicked—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—and not in his turning away from his way so that he may live?

translationWords:

- rejoice
- death, die, dead
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration
- turn, turn away, turn back
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaking about his desire for wicked people.
- **Do I greatly rejoice over the death of the wicked ... and not in his turning away from his way so that he may live?** - “I do not greatly rejoice over the death of the wicked, but I do rejoice if he turns away from his evil actions and lives” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **not in his turning away from his way** - ”not changing from his sinful actions to do what is right. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:24**UDB:**

²⁴ But if a righteous person stops doing right things and starts to commit sins and does the same disgusting things that wicked people do, I will certainly not allow him to remain alive. I will not think about the righteous things that he did previously. Because he did not faithfully do what pleases me, and because of all the sins that he has committed, he will certainly die.

ULB:

²⁴ But if the righteous person turns away from his righteousness and commits iniquity and practices abominations like all the abominations that the wicked person does, then will he live? All the righteousness that he had done will not be called to mind when he betrays me in his treason. So he will die in the sins that he commits.

translationWords:

- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [betray, betrayer](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh gives an example of a man who turns from righteousness to wickedness.
- **will he live?** - AT: “he must die” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **will not be called to mind** - AT: “will not be remembered” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **treason** - crime done against a country or against God, by someone who is expected to be loyal.
- **So he will die in the sins that he commits** - AT: “Therefore, he will die for the sins he committed.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 18 General Notes
- Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 18:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ But you say that I, Yahweh, do not act fairly. You Israelite people, listen to what I say: It is certainly not what I do that is unfair; it is what you continually do that is not fair. ²⁶ If a righteous person turns away from doing what is right and commits sins, he will die for committing those sins.

ULB:

²⁵ But you say, 'The way of the Lord is not fair!' Listen, house of Israel! Are my ways unfair? Is it not your ways that are unfair? ²⁶ When the righteous man turns away from his righteousness, and commits iniquity and dies because of them, then he will die in the iniquity that he has done.

translationWords:

- Lord
- righteous, righteousness
- iniquity
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **dies because of them ... die in the iniquity that he has done** - These phrases repeat the thought of a man dying because of his sin to express that it was his fault and the fault of no one else. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ But if a wicked person turns away from doing wicked things and does what is just and right, he will save himself from dying. ²⁸ Because he has thought about all the evil things that he did and has turned away from doing them, I will certainly allow him to live. I will not kill him.

ULB:

²⁷ But when a wicked man turns away from his wickedness that he has done and performs justice and righteousness, then he will preserve his life. ²⁸ For he has seen and turned away from all the transgressions that he had done. He will live life; he will not die.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- life, live, living, alive
- turn, turn away, turn back
- transgress, transgression
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **he has seen** - he has realized something. (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ But you, the Israelites, say that I do not act fairly. You people of Israel, I always act fairly. It is you who are acting wickedly.

³⁰ Therefore, you Israelite people, I, Yahweh the Lord, will judge each of you according to what you have done. Repent! Turn away from all your wicked behavior! Then I will not destroy you because of the wrong things you have done.

ULB:

²⁹ But the house of Israel says, ‘The way of the Lord is not fair!’ How is my way not fair, house of Israel? How is your way not unfair? ³⁰ Therefore I will judge each man among you according to his ways, house of Israel!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration. Repent and turn away from all your transgressions so that they will not be stumbling blocks of iniquity against you.

translationWords:

- Lord
- judge, judgment
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration
- repent, repentance
- turn, turn away, turn back
- transgress, transgression
- stumbling block, stone of stumbling
- iniquity

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to teach the people of Israel why his way is fair.
- **How is my way not fair, house of Israel?** - “My way is certainly fair, people of Israel.” (See [Rhetorical Question](#)).
- **How is your way not unfair?** - “How is your way fair?” or “It is your way that is not fair.” (See: [Double Negatives](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **each man among you according to his ways** - “the actions of each man.”
- **so that they will not** - “they” refers to all the transgressions of the people of Israel.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 18:31-32

UDB:

³¹ Stop doing wicked things; start thinking in a new way. You Israelite people, do you really want me to kill you because you have sinned? ³² I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that I am not pleased if you die. So turn away from your sins and stay alive!”

ULB:

³¹ Throw away from off yourselves all of the transgressions that you have committed; make a new heart and a new spirit for yourselves. For why should you die, house of Israel? ³² For I do not rejoice in the death of the one who dies—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—so repent and live!”

translationWords:

- [transgress, transgression](#)
- [heart](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [repent, repentance](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel.
- **make a new heart and a new spirit for yourselves** - AT: “completely change who you are” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 19 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Judah destroyed

The first king was taken as a captive to Egypt, the next was taken as a captive to Babylon. Now Judah is not prospering.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The kings of Judah are compared to man-eating lions. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 19:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 19:1-4**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh said to me, ² "Ezekiel, sing a sad funeral song which will be a parable about the leaders of Israel. Say to the Israelite people,

'It is as though your mother had been a brave female lion
who raised her cubs among other lions.

³ She taught one of them to hunt for other animals to kill,
and he even learned to kill and eat people.

⁴ When people from other nations heard about him,
they trapped him in a pit.

Then they used hooks
to drag him to Egypt.

ULB:

19 ¹ "Now you, take up a lamentation against the leaders of Israel ² and say,

'Who was your mother? A lioness, she lived with a lion's son;
in the midst of young lions, she nurtured her cubs.

³ She is the one who raised up one of her cubs to become a young lion, a lion
who learned to tear apart his victims, and then he devoured men.

⁴ Then the nations heard about him. He was caught in their trap, and they
brought him with hooks to the land of Egypt.

translationWords:

- lament, lamentation
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- lion
- son, son of
- devour
- nation
- Egypt, Egyptian

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to the people of Israel. He tells a story where the nation of Israel is a lioness and some of the past kings in the kingdom of Judah are her cubs.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 19:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ His mother waited for him to return,

but soon she stopped hoping for that to happen.

So she raised another cub

who also became very fierce.

⁶ He hunted along with other lions for animals to kill,

and he even learned to kill and eat people.

⁷ He raped his victims' widows,

and he destroyed cities.

When he roared loudly,

everyone was terrified and abandoned everything they owned.

ULB:

⁵ Then she saw that although she had waited for his return, her hopes were now gone, so she took another of her cubs and raised him to become a young lion.

⁶ This young lion roamed about in the midst of lions. He was a young lion and learned to tear his victims; he devoured men.

⁷ Then he raped their widows and ruined their cities.

The land and its fullness were abandoned because of the sound of his roaring. [1]Instead of *he raped their widows*, some ancient copies and many modern versions have *he destroyed their fortresses*.

translationWords:

- hope
- lion
- devour
- ruin, ruins

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to describe the nation of Israel as a lioness and the kings of the kingdom of Judah as her cubs.

- **so she took another of her cubs** - Yahweh now compares Jehoiachin with a young lion cub. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he raped their widows and ruined their cities** - These expressions are metonymy for God causing or allowing Israel's enemies to do these things. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **and its fullness** - “and everything in it”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 19:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ So people of other nations planned to kill him;

and men came from many places
to spread out a net for him.

They caught him in it.

⁹ They put him into an iron cage and dragged it with hooks and chains;

they took him to the king of Babylon.

There they locked him up in a mountain prison,

with the result that no one on the hills of Israel ever heard him
roar again.'

Also, say to the Israelite people:

ULB:

⁸ But the nations came against him from the surrounding provinces;

they spread their nets over him. He was caught in their trap.

⁹ They put him in a cage with hooks and brought him to the king of Babylon.

They brought him into mountain fortresses so that his voice would no longer
be heard on the mountains of Israel.

translationWords:

- nation
- province, provincial
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- voice
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to describe the nation of Israel as a lioness and the kings of the kingdom of Judah as her cubs.
- **against him** - The word “him” refers to the second young lion, who represents Jehoiachin.
- **from the surrounding provinces** - AT: “from the provinces surrounding the land of Israel.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **provinces** - countries that were ruled by Babylon

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 19:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ 'It is as though your mother

were a grapevine fertilized in blood,
and growing up beside a stream.

There was plenty of water,

so it had lots of branches and produced a lot of grapes.

¹¹ That grapevine grew and became taller than all the nearby trees;

everyone could see that it was very strong and healthy.

And those branches were good for making scepters that symbolize the power of a king.

ULB:

¹⁰ Your mother was like a vine planted in your blood beside the water.[1]Instead of *in your blood*, some ancient copies and many modern versions have *in your vineyard*.

she was fruitful and full of branches because of the abundance of water.

¹¹ She had strong branches for rulers' scepters,

and her heights were exalted among the branches of the thicket.

translationWords:

- **vine**
- **ruler, rulers, rule**
- **scepter**
- **exalt, exaltation**

translationNotes:

- **mother** - Yahweh describes the nation of Israel as though it was the mother of the princes of Israel. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **a vine planted in your blood** - Possible meanings are that "blood" represents 1) the violence of the kings of Judah who had murdered people or 2) the plentiful wine of Judah which had become a symbol of prosperity. AT: "a vine planted by means of violence" or "a vine planted in your prosperity" (See: **Metonymy** and **Symbolic Language**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 19:12-13**UDB:**

¹² But Yahweh became very angry,

so he pulled up the vine by its roots
and threw it on the ground,

where the very hot winds from the desert dried up all its fruit.
The strong branches wilted and were burned in a fire.

¹³ Now Yahweh has planted that vine in a hot, dry desert.

ULB:

¹² But the vine was uprooted in fury and thrown down to the earth, and an eastern wind dried out her fruit.

her strong branches were broken off and withered; fire consumed them.

¹³ So now she is planted in the wilderness, in a land of drought and thirst.

translationWords:

- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [fire](#)
- [consume](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to compare Israel with a vine and her leaders with the strong branches of the vine.
- **were broken off** - “he broke off”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 19:14**UDB:**

¹⁴ A fire started to burn its stem,
and then started to burn the branches;
it burned all the grapes.
Now not even one strong branch remains;
they will never become scepters for a king.’

This funeral song must be sung very sadly.”

ULB:

¹⁴ For fire went out from her large branches and consumed her fruit.
There is no strong branch on her, no scepter to rule.’ This is a lamentation
and will be sung as a lamentation.”

translationWords:

- [consume](#)
- [scepter](#)
- [lament, lamentation](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to compare Israel with a vine and her leaders with the strong branches of the vine.
- **to rule** - “that a king could use to rule”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Rebels cannot ask for help

The people of Israel have rebelled against God again and again. Now they cannot come to God for help in their troubles.

Links:

- [Ezekiel 20:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 20:1

UDB:

¹ Almost seven years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, on the tenth day of the fifth month of that year, some Israelite elders came to me to ask if I had any message for them from Yahweh.

ULB:

20 ¹ It came about in the seventh year, on the tenth day of the fifth month, that elders of Israel came to inquire of Yahweh and sat before me.

translationWords:

- [biblical time: year](#)
- [biblical time: day](#)
- [elder](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [inquire](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **It came about** - This phrase is used to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.
- **in the seventh year** - AT: “in the seventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the tenth day of the fifth month** - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is near the beginning of August on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **before me** - “in front of me”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:2-3**UDB:**

² Then Yahweh gave me a message for them. He said, ³ "Son of man, speak to the elders and tell them that the Lord Yahweh says this: 'You say that you have come to ask if there is any message from me, but as surely as I am alive, I will not allow you to ask for any message from me.'

ULB:

² Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ³ "Son of man, declare to the elders of Israel and say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Have you come to inquire of me? As I live, I will not be inquired of by you!—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.'

translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [elder](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **As I live** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **I will not be inquired of by you** - AT: "I will not allow you to ask for any message from me." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ If you are willing to warn them, remind them of the disgusting things that their ancestors did. ⁵ Then say to them, ‘On the day that I chose you Israelite people to belong to me, I made a solemn oath to your ancestors while they were still in Egypt.’ I said to them, ‘I am Yahweh, your God. ⁶ I will bring you out of Egypt and lead you to a land that I have chosen for you. It is the most fertile and beautiful land in the world.

ULB:

⁴ Will you judge them? Will you judge, son of man? Let them know about their fathers’ abominations. ⁵ Say to them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: On the day that I chose Israel and raised my hand to swear an oath to the descendants of the house of Jacob, and made myself known to them in the land of Egypt, when I raised my hand to swear an oath to them. I said, “I am Yahweh your God”—⁶ on that day I raised my hand to swear an oath to them that I would bring them out of the land of Egypt into a land that I had carefully selected for them. It was flowing with milk and honey; it was the most beautiful ornament among all the lands.

translationWords:

- judge, judgment
- ancestor, father, forefather
- abomination, abominable
- oath, swear, swear by
- descendant, descended from
- house
- Jacob, Israel
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Yahweh
- honey, honeycomb

translationNotes:

- **Will you judge them? Will you judge, son of man** - AT: “You judge them, son of man.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **son of man** - “son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in [2:1](#). AT: “mortal person” or “human”
- **It was flowing with milk and honey** - “A land where plenty of milk and honey flowed.” AT: “It was very fertile land” or “It was land where animals and plants grew very well.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:7**UDB:**

⁷ Each of you must get rid of the disgusting idols that you love, and the idols which you learned to worship in Egypt, and with which you made it impossible for me to accept you. I, Yahweh your God, am saying this to you.'

ULB:

⁷ I said to them, "Let each man throw away the detestable things from before his eyes and the idols of Egypt. Do not make yourselves unclean; I am Yahweh your God."

translationWords:

- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.
- **to them** - "to the descendants of the house of Jacob"
- **from before his eyes** - This phrase means "that he loves" or "that he worships." (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ But they rebelled against me. They would not pay attention to me. They did not get rid of the disgusting idols they loved; they did not reject the idols that they saw in Egypt. So because I was angry with them, I said that I would punish them in Egypt. ⁹ But for the sake of my own reputation, I decided to do something for your people so that the other people groups would not laugh at me and say I had no power. I decided that they would see me bring my people out of Egypt.

ULB:

⁸ But they rebelled against me and were unwilling to listen to me. Each man did not throw away the detestable things from before his eyes nor forsake the idols of Egypt, so I determined to pour out my fury upon them to satisfy my wrath among them in the middle of the land of Egypt. ⁹ I acted for my name's sake so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations among whom they were staying. I made myself known to them, in their eyes, by bringing them out of the land of Egypt.

translationWords:

- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- wrath, fury
- name
- profane
- nation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.
- **they rebelled against me** - The word “they” refers to “the descendants of the house of Jacob.”
- **were unwilling to listen to me** - “would not obey me”
- **so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations** - This phrase means “so the nations would not think that my name was unholy.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **they were staying** - “they were living.”
- **I made myself known to them** - “I showed the nations who I am”
- **in their eyes** - “in a way that the nations could see”
- **bringing them** - “bringing the people of the house of Jacob”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 20 General Notes
- Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 20:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ Therefore I led your people out of Egypt and brought them into the wilderness. ¹¹ I gave them all my laws and decrees, in order that they would obey them, and as a result they would live for a long time. ¹² Also, I established the Sabbath days to be a reminder between me and them, so they would know that I am Yahweh, the one who sets them apart for my honor.

ULB:

¹⁰ So I sent them out of the land of Egypt and brought them into the wilderness. ¹¹ Then I gave them my statutes and made my decrees known to them, by which a man will live if he obeys them. ¹² I also gave them my Sabbaths as a sign between myself and them, for them to know that I am Yahweh who makes them holy.

translationWords:

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [decree](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.
- **I sent them** - The word “them” refers to “the descendants of the house of Jacob.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:13-14

UDB:

¹³ But the Israelite people rebelled against me in the wilderness also. They did not obey my commands; they rejected them, even though they would have lived a long time if they had obeyed them, and they treated the Sabbath days like any other day. So I said that I would destroy them in the wilderness, because that would show that I was very angry with them. ¹⁴ But again, so that the other people groups would not laugh at me, I decided to do something in order to show those people groups that I was still as powerful as when they had seen me bring my people out of Egypt.

ULB:

¹³ But the house of Israel rebelled against me in the wilderness. They did not walk in my statutes; instead, they rejected my decrees, by which a man will live if he obeys them. They greatly profaned my Sabbaths, so I said I would pour out my fury upon them in the wilderness in order to end them. ¹⁴ But I acted for my name's sake so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations, in whose sight I had brought them out of Egypt.

translationWords:

- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- desert, wilderness
- walk
- statute, statutes
- reject
- decree
- profane
- Sabbath

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.
- **pour out my fury** - See how you translated this in [20:8](#).
- **I acted for my name's sake so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations** - See how you translated this in [20:9](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:15-17

UDB:

¹⁵ I solemnly swore to your people in the wilderness that I would not take them into the land that I had promised to give them, a land that was the most fertile and beautiful land in the world. ¹⁶ I made this oath, because they had rejected and disobeyed all my laws, and because they were treating the Sabbath days like any other day. And they insisted on worshiping their idols. ¹⁷ But I still pitied them, so I did not destroy them in the wilderness.

ULB:

¹⁵ So I myself also raised my hand to swear an oath to them in the wilderness not to bring them into the land that I had been going to give them, a land flowing with milk and honey. which was the most beautiful ornament among all the lands. ¹⁶ I swore this because they had rejected my decrees and did not walk in my statutes, and they profaned my Sabbaths, since their hearts walked after their idols. ¹⁷ But my eye had compassion for them because of their destruction, so I did not annihilate them in the wilderness.

translationWords:

- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [heart](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.
- **raised my hand to swear an oath** - See how you translated this in [20:5](#).
- **to them** - “to the house of Israel”
- **But my eye had compassion for them** - AT: “But I still pitied them.” (UDB) (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **because of their destruction** - “and I did not destroy them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ I said to their children, the next generation, 'Do not do the things that your parents always do. Do not worship their idols and so make it impossible for me to accept you. ¹⁹ I am Yahweh your God. Carefully obey my laws and commands. ²⁰ Respect my Sabbath days, in order that by doing that, it will remind you that you belong to me.

ULB:

¹⁸ I said to their sons and daughters in the wilderness, "Do not walk according to the statutes of your parents; do not keep their decrees or profane yourselves with idols. ¹⁹ I am Yahweh your God, walk in my statutes; keep my decrees and obey them. ²⁰ Keep my Sabbaths holy so that they will be a sign between me and you, so that you will know that I am Yahweh your God."

translationWords:

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [walk](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [decree](#)
- [profane](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [sign, proof, reminder](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.
- **Do not walk according to the statutes of your parents** - "Do not do the things that your parents commanded you to do"
- **do not keep their decrees** - "do not obey their rules"
- **keep my decrees and obey them!** - To "keep" Yahweh's decrees is the same as to "obey them." (See: [Doublet](#))
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 20 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 20:21-22

UDB:

²¹ But their children also rebelled against me. They did not take care to obey my laws, even though anyone who obeys them will live for a long time; and they also treated the Sabbath days like any other day. So again I said that I would kill them all in the wilderness, and in this way I would stop being angry. ²² But I did not do that. I decided once more to do something so that the other people groups, those that had seen me bring your people out of Egypt, would not laugh and say that I had lost my power.

ULB:

²¹ But their sons and daughters rebelled against me. They did not walk in my statutes or keep my decrees, by which a man might live if he obeys them. They profaned my Sabbaths, so I determined to pour out my fury upon them to satisfy my wrath against them in the wilderness. ²² But I turned my hand away and acted for my name's sake, so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations in whose sight I had brought out the Israelites.

translationWords:

- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- wrath, fury
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- name
- nation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.
- **They did not walk in my statutes** - See how you translated this in [20:13](#).
- **so I determined to pour out my fury upon them to satisfy my wrath** - See how you translated this in [20:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:23-24

UDB:

²³ So I swore to them in the wilderness that I would scatter them among many people groups, ²⁴ because they had rejected and disobeyed all my laws, and because they were treating the Sabbath days like any other day—and because they were eager to worship the idols that their parents had worshiped.

ULB:

²³ I myself also raised my hand to them in the wilderness, in order to swear that I would scatter them among the nations and disperse them among the lands. ²⁴ I decided to do this since they had not obeyed my decrees, and since they had rejected my statutes and profaned my Sabbaths. Their eyes were longing after their fathers' idols.

translationWords:

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [nation](#)
- [disperse, dispersion](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.
- **raised my hand to them** - It was a common practice to take an oath by raising a hand toward heaven.
- **scatter them among the nations and disperse them among the lands** - See how you translated this in [12:15](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Their eyes were longing after their fathers' idols** - AT: "they were eager to worship the idols that their parents had worshiped." (UDB) (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ So I also allowed them to obey laws that were not good, laws that would not help them live a long time. ²⁶ I allowed them to do things that made it impossible for me to accept them: I allowed them to sacrifice their firstborn children in fire. I allowed them to do that in order that they would be horrified at themselves, and in order that they would know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

ULB:

²⁵ Then I also gave them statutes that were not good, and decrees by which they could not live. ²⁶ I made them unclean by their gifts when they made a sacrifice of every firstborn of the womb and put them into the fire. I did this in order to terrify them so they might know that I am Yahweh!

translationWords:

- statute, statutes
- decree
- unclean
- gift
- firstborn
- womb
- fire
- know, knowledge, make known
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.
- **Then I also gave them statutes that were not good, and decrees by which they could not live** - The words statutes in this phrase do not refer to God's law. God permitted them to live by human laws and judgments that were not good.
- **gave them** - The word "them" refers to the children of those whom Yahweh brought out of Egypt.
- **by their gifts** - AT: "by the gifts that they gave me." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **put them into the fire** - This mean to sacrifice children to idols by burning them alive. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:27-29**UDB:**

²⁷ Therefore, son of man, speak to the Israelite people. Say this to them, ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says to you: This is one way that your ancestors dishonored me by turning away from me.’ ²⁸ After I brought them into the land that I had sworn to give them, every time that they saw a high hill or a big green tree, they offered sacrifices to idols there. They made offerings to them, and that caused me to become angry. They presented to those idols their fragrant incense, and they poured out wine offerings to them. ²⁹ Then I asked them, ‘What is this hilltop place where you go to worship idols?’ So they are still called Bamah, which means ‘hilltop’.

ULB:

²⁷ Therefore, son of man, announce this to the house of Israel; say to them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Your fathers blasphemed me by betraying me against me. They did it in this way: ²⁸ when I brought them into the land that I lifted my hand to give to them, and when they saw all the high hills and leafy trees, then they offered their sacrifices there and provoked me by their offerings there. There they also burned fragrant incense and poured out drink offerings. ²⁹ Then I said to them, “What is this high place where you bring offerings there?” So the name is called Bamah to this day.’

translationWords:

- blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous
- betray, betrayer
- sacrifice, offering
- provoke
- incense
- drink offering
- high places
- name

translationNotes:

- **What is this high place where you bring offerings there** - AT: “This is not a high place where you are to bring offerings!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **the name is called Bamah** - AT: “People have called that place Bamah” (See: [Active or Passive](#)) “Bamah” means “high place,” a place for worshiping idols.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:30-32**UDB:**

³⁰ Therefore, say this to the Israelite people: 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: Why do you imitate your ancestors in acting in ways that make me unable to accept you? You act like prostitutes, leaving their husbands for other men. In the same way, you have left me to worship disgusting idols. ³¹ When you sacrifice your children in the fire, you make me unable to accept you. It is the same as when you bow down to your idols. You Israelite people, should I allow you to ask me to direct you in any matter? I, Yahweh the Lord, say that as surely as I am alive, I will not answer if you ask me.'

³² You say, 'We want to be like the other people groups in the world. We want to worship idols made of wood and stone like they do.' But what you want will never happen.'

ULB:

³⁰ Therefore say to the house of Israel, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Why do you make yourselves unclean with the ways of your fathers? So why do you act like prostitutes, searching for disgusting things? ³¹ For when you offer up your gifts and you put your sons into the fire, and to this day you make yourselves unclean with all your idols. So why should I let you question me, house of Israel? As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—I will not let you question me. ³² The thought that is forming in your mind will come true. You say, "Let us be like the other nations, like the clans in the other lands who worship wood and stone."

translationWords:

- unclean
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- gift
- fire
- idol, idolatrous
- inquire
- mind
- nation
- clan
- worship
- stone, stoning

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

- **put your sons into the fire** - This mean to sacrifice children to idols by burning them alive. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **So why should I let you question me ... Israel?** - AT: “You have no right to ask me for a message ... Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:33-35

UDB:

³³ I, Yahweh your Lord, say that as surely as I am alive, I will use my great power to rule over you, and to show that I am angry with you. ³⁴ With my great power I will gather you from the places to which I scattered you. ³⁵ I will bring you to a wilderness that is surrounded by other nations. There, while I am looking at you, I will judge you.

ULB:

³³ As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—I will certainly reign over you with a mighty hand, a raised arm, and fury that will be poured out on you. ³⁴ I will bring you out from the other peoples and will gather you out of the countries among whom you have been scattered. I will do this with a mighty hand and with fury poured out. ³⁵ Then I will bring you into the wilderness of the peoples, and there I will judge you face to face.

translationWords:

- [reign](#)
- [mighty, might](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [face](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.
- **a mighty hand, a raised arm** - Both of these phrases refer to great power. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:36-38**UDB:**

³⁶ I will punish you, as I punished your ancestors in the wilderness near Egypt. ³⁷ I will make you submit to me; I will force you to obey the covenant that I made with you. ³⁸ I will destroy the people among you who rebel against me. Although I will bring them out of Babylonia, where they are now living, they will not enter Israel. Then you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do what I say that I will do.

ULB:

³⁶ As I judged your fathers in the wilderness of the land of Egypt, so also I will judge you—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration. ³⁷ I will cause you to pass under my rod, and I will make you obey the requirements of the covenant. ³⁸ I will purge from among you the rebels and those who revolt against me. I will send them out from the land where they are staying as foreigners, but they will not enter the land of Israel. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

translationWords:

- judge, judgment
- ancestor, father, forefather
- desert, wilderness
- Egypt, Egyptian
- rod
- bind, bond, bound
- covenant
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- send, send out, sent
- foreigner, foreign, alien

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:39**UDB:**

³⁹ As for you Israelite people, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Go and worship your idols now, each of you. But afterwards, you will surely pay attention to me and no longer dishonor me by taking gifts to your idols.

ULB:

³⁹ So to you, house of Israel, the Lord Yahweh says this: Each of you should go to his own idols. Worship them if you will refuse to listen to me, but you must no longer profane my holy name with your gifts and your idols.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [worship](#)
- [profane](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [name](#)
- [gift](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.
- **house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **to listen to me** - “to obey me” or “to pay attention to me”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:40-41**UDB:**

⁴⁰ I, Yahweh your Lord, declare that there on my sacred hill, Zion, that high hill in Israel, you will bring gifts to me, and I will accept them. I will require you to bring to me gifts and offerings there, and your sacrifices that you will set apart for me. ⁴¹ When I bring you out from the other nations to which you have been scattered, I will accept you as though you were fragrant incense. I will show the people of other nations that I have set myself apart as holy, that I might be honored.

ULB:

⁴⁰ For on my holy mountain, on the mountain peak of Israel—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—all of the house of Israel will worship me there in the land. I will be pleased to require your offerings there, and also the firstfruits of your tribute with all your holy things. ⁴¹ I will accept you like fragrant incense when I bring you out from the peoples and gather you out of the countries where you have been scattered. I will show myself as holy among you for the nations to see.

translationWords:

- holy, holiness
- declare, declaration
- worship
- sacrifice, offering
- firstfruits
- tribute
- incense

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.
- **to require** - “to command to bring”
- **the firstfruits of your tribute** - Here “firstfruits” probably means the best things among all the offerings set aside to give to God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **your holy things** - “the offerings that you set aside to give to me”
- **bring you out from the peoples and gather you out of the countries** - These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will bring his people back from all of the nations to which he had scattered them. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **you have been scattered** - AT: “I have scattered you.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **I will show myself as holy among you for the nations to see** - “I will use you to show the nations that I am holy”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:42-44**UDB:**

⁴² Then, when I bring you into the land of Israel, the land that I swore to give to your ancestors, you will know that I, Yahweh, have done it. ⁴³ And there in Israel you will remember how you conducted your lives previously, the actions that caused you to become unacceptable to me, and you will hate yourselves for all the evil things that you have done. ⁴⁴ When I act toward you Israelite people to protect my reputation, and not because of your evil deeds and corrupt behavior, you Israelite people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do. That is what Yahweh the Lord declares.”

ULB:

⁴² Then, when I bring you to the land of Israel, to the land that I have lifted my hand up to give to your fathers, you will know that I am Yahweh. ⁴³ Then you will call to mind there your evil ways, and all of your deeds by which you made yourselves unclean, and you will hate yourselves in your own eyes for all your evil actions that you have committed. ⁴⁴ So you will know that I am Yahweh when I do this to you for my name’s sake, not for your evil ways or your corrupt deeds, house of Israel—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- ancestor, father, forefather
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- unclean
- name
- corrupt, corruption
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.
- **have lifted my hand** - This phrase means “have sworn” or “have promised.” (See: **Idiom**)
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in **6:7**.
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in **5:11**.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 20 General Notes
- Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 20:45-47**UDB:**

⁴⁵ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ⁴⁶ "Son of man, turn toward the south. Preach about what will happen to that dry land, to the forest there. ⁴⁷ Say to the forest in the southern wilderness of Israel: Listen to this message that Yahweh the Lord is saying about you: I am about to start a fire in your midst, and it will burn up all your trees, both the green trees and the withered trees. Nothing will extinguish the blazing flames. And the fire will scorch the faces of everyone who lives in that area, from the south to the north.

ULB:

⁴⁵ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ⁴⁶ "Son of man, set your face toward the southern lands, and speak against the south; prophesy against the forest of the Negev. ⁴⁷ Say to the forest of the Negev, 'Hear the declaration of Yahweh! The Lord Yahweh says this: See, I will set a fire among you. It will devour every fresh tree and every dried tree among you. The fiery flame will not be quenched; every face from the south to the north will be burned.

translationWords:

- [face](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Negev](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [fire](#)
- [devour](#)
- [quench](#)

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 20:48-49**UDB:**

⁴⁸ Everyone will see that it is I, Yahweh, who have lit this fire, and no one will be able to put it out.”

⁴⁹ Then I said, “Yahweh, my Lord, when I tell things like this to people, they do not believe me. They say about me, ‘He is only telling parables.’”

ULB:

⁴⁸ Then all flesh will see that I am Yahweh when I light the fire, and it will not be quenched.” ⁴⁹ Then I said, “Alas! Lord Yahweh, they are saying of me, ‘Is he not a mere teller of parables?’”

translationWords:

- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [fire](#)
- [quench](#)
- [parable](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the forest of the Negev.
- **will see** - “will understand”
- **Alas** - a word that expresses distress or grief
- **Is he not a mere teller of parables?** - AT: He’s just telling stories” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Refusing to learn

Judah has refused to respond to their punishment, so God is sending the destruction of war.

Links:

- [Ezekiel 21:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 21:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "Son of man, turn toward the south. Set yourself against them. Preach against the south and prophesy against the forest in the southern Judean wilderness. ³ Say to them, 'This is what Yahweh says: I am opposed to you, and it will be as though I pull my sword from its sheath to kill both the righteous and the wicked people among you!

ULB:

21 ¹ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, set your face toward Jerusalem, and speak against the sanctuaries; prophesy against the land of Israel. ³ Say to the land of Israel, 'Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you! I will draw my sword from its sheath and cut off both the righteous person and the wicked person from you!

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- face
- Jerusalem
- sanctuary
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- sword
- cut off
- righteous, righteousness
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. See how you translated this in [2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **the word of Yahweh came to me** - "Yahweh gave me a message." See how you translated this phrase in [1:1](#).
- **set your face toward Jerusalem** - This is an idiom. This means to that Yahweh is casting judgement upon Jerusalem and is telling Ezekiel to look toward Jerusalem and speak his judgement against it. See how you translated this in [4:7](#). AT: "look in judgement upon Jerusalem" or "look towards Jerusalem with judgement"
- **I will draw my sword from its sheath and cut off both the righteous person and the wicked person from you** - This speaks of Yahweh causing these people to die as if he actually

killed them with his own sword. AT: “I am opposed to you, and it will be as though I pull my sword from its sheath to kill both the righteous and the wicked people among you” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **the righteous person and the wicked person** - “righteous people and wicked people.” This refers to multiple people, not just one righteous person and one wicked person.
- **sheath** - something that holds and covers a sword when no one is using it
- **cut off** - This is a euphemism that means to kill. AT: “kill” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ So what I will do to you will be as though I pull my sword from its sheath and strike you. I will kill everyone, including righteous people and wicked people. I will get rid of everyone, from the south to the north. ⁵ Then everyone will know that it is as though I, Yahweh, have struck people with my sword, and I will not put it back in its sheath again.'

ULB:

⁴ In order for me to cut off both the righteous and the wicked from you, my sword will go out from its sheath against all flesh from the south to the north. ⁵ Then all flesh will know that I, Yahweh, have drawn my sword from its sheath. It will no longer hold back!

translationWords:

- cut off
- righteous, righteousness
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- sword
- flesh
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the land of Israel.
- **cut off** - This is a euphemism that means to kill. AT: "kill" (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **the righteous ... the wicked** - This refers to righteous and wicked people. AT: "those who are righteous ... those who are wicked" or "the righteous people ... the wicked people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **from you** - "among you"
- **my sword will go out from its sheath against** - This speaks of Yahweh causing these people to die as if he actually killed them with his own sword. AT: "it will be as though I pull my sword from its sheath and strike" (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **all flesh** - Here "flesh" is a metonym for "people." AT: "all people" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **from the south to the north** - This is a merism that refers to the area to the north, and to the south, and all places in between. AT: "in every direction" or "everywhere" (See: [Merism](#))
- **that I, Yahweh, have drawn my sword from its sheath** - This speaks of Yahweh causing people to die as if he actually killed them with his own sword. AT: "it is as though I, Yahweh, have struck people with my sword" (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **It will no longer hold back** - This speaks of Yahweh not holding back his sword from attacking people as if his sword were a person that was no longer holding itself back from attacking. AT: “and I will not put it back in its sheath again” (UDB) or “I will not hold back from attacking people” (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Therefore, Son of man, groan! Groan in front of the Israelite people very sadly and sorrowfully. ⁷ And when they ask you, ‘Why are you groaning?’ tell them that it is because of the news that they soon will hear. Everyone will be very fearful, and their hands will tremble uncontrollably, while their knees become as weak as water. A great disaster will soon occur. This is what Yahweh the Lord is promising.”

ULB:

⁶ As for you, son of man, groan as your loins break! In bitterness groan before their eyes! ⁷ Then it will happen that they will ask you, ‘For what reason are you groaning?’ Then you will say, ‘Because of the news that is coming, for every heart will faint away, and every hand will falter! Every spirit will grow faint, and every knee will flow like water. Behold! It is coming and it will be like this!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.’”

translationWords:

- loins
- heart
- spirit, spiritual
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to Ezekiel.
- **groan as your loins break** - Yahweh tells Ezekiel to groan as a sign to accompany his message. He tells him to groan deeply as if his abdomen was in great pain. “groan deeply as if your loins were in great pain” or “groan deeply with great sorrow” (See: **Idiom**)
- **In bitterness groan** - “With great grief” or “With great sorrow”
- **before their eyes** - Here the Israelites are referred to by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. AT: “before them” or “before the Israelite people” (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **the news that is coming** - This speaks of the “news” as if it were a person that was soon coming to them. AT: “the news that they will soon hear” (UDB) (See: **Personification**)
- **for every heart will faint away** - This speaks of people becoming afraid as if their hearts were fainting. Also, this speaks of being fearful as faints. AT: “for everyone will become fearful” (See: **Synecdoche** and **Metaphor**)
- **will falter** - “will be weak”

- **Every spirit will grow faint** - This speaks of people becoming fearful in their spirits as if their spirits were about to faint. AT: “Everyone will be fearful in their inner being” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **every knee will flow like water** - “every knee will be as weak as water” (UDB). This is a euphemism for people being so afraid that they lose their bladder control and urinate on themselves. AT: “every leg will be wet with urine” or “everyone will lose control of their urine” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ⁹ "Son of man, prophesy and say to them, 'This is what the Lord says:

I will sharpen my sword
and polish it.

ULB:

⁸ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ⁹ "Son of man, prophesy and say, 'The Lord says this:

Say: A sword! A sword! It will be sharpened and polished!

translationWords:

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [sword](#)

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **It will be sharpened and polished** - This phrase indicates that the sword is ready for someone to use it. This can be stated in active form. AT: "It is sharp and polished" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **polished** - Someone made the sword smooth, shiny, and clean by rubbing it with a rough material.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ It will be sharp in order that I can slaughter many people with it;

I will polish it so that it will flash like lightning.

The people of Judah will not celebrate about their king's scepter,
because it will not resist the sword that is coming against it.

¹¹ So I will polish the sword,
and the right person will then hold it in his hand.

Now it is sharp; now it shines,
ready for the killer to use!

ULB:

¹⁰ It will be sharpened in order to engage in great slaughter! It will be polished in order to be like lightning!

Should we rejoice in my son's scepter? The coming sword hates every such rod!

¹¹ So the sword will be given to be polished, and then to be grasped by the hand!

The sword is sharpened and it is polished and it is to be given into the hand of the one who kills!

translationWords:

- slaughter
- rejoice
- scepter
- sword
- rod

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Jerusalem and of the land of Israel.
- **It will be sharpened ... It will be polished in order to** - These can be stated in active form. AT: "I will sharpen it ... I will polish it so that it will" (See: **Active or Passive**)

- **in order to be like lightning** - This means that the sword will be so shiny that light reflects off of it easily and brightly. AT: “so that it flashes like lightning” or “so that light reflects off of it as brightly as lightning” (See: [Simile](#))
- **Should we rejoice in my son’s scepter?** - This rhetorical emphasize that the people of Israel will not celebrate their king’s power, because it cannot resist the “sword.” AT: “The people of Judah will not celebrate about their king’s scepter.” or “we should not celebration the power of our king’s scepter” (UDB) (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Should we** - The word “we” refers Ezekiel and the people of Israel. (See: [Inclusive “We”](#))
- **in my son’s scepter** - Here Yahweh refers to the king of Judah as his son. The king’s scepter represents his rule as king. It is important to maintain the image of the king’s scepter here, as it is reference in the next phrase. AT: “in the king’s scepter” or “in the power represented by the king’s scepter” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **The coming sword hates every such rod** - Here the “sword” is personified as coming to attack the people. This speaks of the king not being able to resist the “sword” as the “sword” hating the king’s scepter. AT: “the sword will overpower his scepter like that of any other ruler” or “for the king will not be able to resist when the sword is brought against him” (See: [Personification](#))
- **such rod** - This phrase is used to mock the king’s scepter by calling it a “rod.” AT: “such scepter” (See: [Irony](#))
- **the sword will be given to be polished** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will polish the sword” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **then to be grasped by the hand** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “then the right person will hold it in his hand” (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **it is to be given into the hand of the one who kills** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “it is ready for the killer to use” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:12-13**UDB:**

¹² So, Son of man, cry and wail,

because I will use my sword to kill my people,
including the leaders of Israel.

That sword will kill them and all the others of my people;

my sword will kill them all,

so beat your chests to show that you are sad.

¹³ I am about to test my people,

and what will happen if the scepter cannot resist?

That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say.

ULB:

¹² Call for help and lament, son of man! For that sword has come against my people! It is against all the leaders of Israel.

They are thrown against the sword with my people. Therefore, slap your thigh in grief!

¹³ For there is a trial, but what if the scepter does not last?—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- lament, lamentation
- Son of Man, son of man
- people of God, my people
- trial
- scepter

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Jerusalem and of the land of Israel.
- **that sword has come against my people! It is against all** - This speaks of Yahweh's sword attacking his people as if the sword itself were the attacker. AT: "I will use my sword to kill my people! I will bring it against all" (UDB) (See: **Personification**)

- **They are thrown against the sword with my people** - This speaks of people being killed with a sword as if they are thrown against the sword. AT: “They are killed with the sword along with my people” or “The sword will kill them along with my people” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **slap your thigh in grief** - In Ezekiel’s culture, slapping one’s thigh was a sign of grief. Some other translation use the gesture of beating one’s breast which is a sign of grief in many cultures. AT: “beat your chests in grief” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **but what if the scepter does not last?** - This rhetorical question is used to make the audience think about what could happen. This question can be written as a statement. AT: “and it will be very frightening if the sword destroys the scepter” or “but it will be very frightening if the king cannot resist it” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **the scepter** - Here the king of Judah is represented by his scepter. AT: “the king” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **does not last** - This is an idiom. AT: “cannot resist” or “is destroyed” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:14**UDB:**

¹⁴ So, Son of man, prophesy;

clap your hands to show that you are very sad about what is going to happen.

My sword will strike my people again and again;

it is a sword for slaughtering many people,

while I attack them from every side.

ULB:

¹⁴ Now you, son of man, prophesy and hit your two hands together, for the sword will attack even a third time!

A sword for the ones to be slaughtered! It is a sword for the many to be slaughtered, piercing them everywhere!

translationWords:

- Son of Man, son of man
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- sword
- slaughter

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message.
- **hit your two hands together** - This means for him to clap his hands as a sign of his grief. AT: “clap your hands to show that you are very sad” (UDB) (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **even a third time** - “even a 3rd time.” This is an idiom that means multiple times. AT: “again and again” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **A sword for the ones to be slaughtered** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “It is a sword for slaughtering people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **It is a sword for the many to be slaughtered, piercing them everywhere** - This can be stated in active form. The “everywhere” is an exaggeration and refers only to Jerusalem and the areas surrounding it, this emphasizes that the people were unable to escape. AT: “It is a sword for slaughtering many people everywhere” or “For there will be a great massacre and the people will be unable to escape the sword” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **piercing them** - The word “them” refers to the people of Jerusalem and of the land of Israel.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ In order that people will be very much afraid

and that many people will die,

I have placed soldiers at every city gate,

ready to slaughter people.

My sword will flash like lightning,

as the soldiers slaughter the people.

¹⁶ I will tell my sword to slash to the right

and then to the left,

and to turn in every direction until no one remains alive.

¹⁷ Then I will clap my hands triumphantly;

and then I will no longer be angry.

That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

¹⁵ In order to melt their hearts and to multiply their fallen, I have set the slaughter of the sword against their gates! Woe! It is made like lightning, set free to butcher!

¹⁶ You, sword! Strike to the right! Strike to the left! Go wherever your face is turned.

¹⁷ For I will also hit my two hands together, and then I will bring my fury to rest! I, Yahweh, declare it!”

translationWords:

- heart
- slaughter
- gate, gate bar
- woe
- Yahweh
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Jerusalem and of the land of Israel.
- **to melt their hearts** - This speaks of causing the people people to be terrified as melting their hearts. AT: “to fill them with terror” or “to cause them to be terrified”
- **to multiply their fallen** - Here “fallen” refers to the people killed in battle. This means for there to be a greater number of people killed. AT: “to kill many people among them” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **their gates** - The word “their” refers to the people of Jerusalem.
- **It is made like lightning** - This compares how the sword is well polished and how it reflect light to the appearance of lightning. AT: “It is polished and flashes like lightning” or “It is polished and reflects light as bright as lightning” (See: [Simile](#))
- **You, sword! Strike to the right! ... Go wherever your face is turned** - It is as if Yahweh were talking to a sword. (See: [Apostrophe](#))
- **wherever your face is turned** - “wherever I have turned your blade.”
- **your face** - Here “face” stands for the sword’s edge. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ¹⁹ "Son of man, draw on a map two roads for the king of Babylon to march on with his army. When they depart from their own country, they will come to a signpost where a single road divides into those two roads. ²⁰ If they take one of those roads, they will attack the city of Rabbah, the capital of the Ammon people group. If they take the other road, they will come to Judah and Jerusalem, a city with walls around it.

ULB:

¹⁸ The word of Yahweh came to me again and said, ¹⁹ "Now you, son of man, assign two roads for the sword of the king of Babylon to come. The two roads will start in the same land, and a signpost will mark one of them as leading to a city. ²⁰ Mark one road for the Babylonian army to come to Rabbah, the city of the Ammonites. Mark the other to lead the army to Judah and the city of Jerusalem, which is fortified.

translationWords:

- sword
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Rabbah
- Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites
- Judah
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the sword** - AT: "the army." (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:21-23**UDB:**

²¹ When the army of Babylon comes to where the road divides, the army will stop, while the king performs magic rituals to decide which road to go on. He will throw arrows; then he will consult his idols about which road to go on, and he will examine the liver of a sheep. ²² With his right hand he will pick up the arrow marked with the name of Jerusalem. He will then command his soldiers to go to Jerusalem. When they arrive there, they will set up rams to batter down the walls, and then the king will give the command for them to slaughter the people. They will shout the battlecry, and they will set up the rams against the city gates. They will build a dirt ramp against the walls around the city, and set walls against the city. ²³ The people in Jerusalem who had promised to be loyal to the king of Babylonia will think that those magic rituals must be wrong. They will think that his army should not be attacking them. But he will remind them of the disloyalty of which they are guilty, and he will say that they have violated their agreement with him.

ULB:

²¹ For the king of Babylon will stop at the crossroads, at the junction, in order to practice divination. He will shake some arrows and ask direction from some idols and he will examine a liver.

²² In his right hand will be an omen about Jerusalem, to set battering rams against it, to open his mouth to order the slaughter,

to sound a war cry, to set battering rams against the gates,

to build a ramp, and to erect siege towers.

²³ It will seem to be a useless omen in the eyes

of the ones in Jerusalem, those who had sworn an oath to the Babylonians!
But the king will accuse them of violating their treaty in order to besiege them!

translationWords:

- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer
- bow and arrow
- idol, idolatrous
- gate, gate bar
- siege, besiege
- oath, swear, swear by

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message.
- **battering rams** - big machines that people used to knock down walls or towers
- **against it** - "against Jerusalem
- **to build a ramp** - These were large dirt ramps that the king of Babylon built so that his soldiers could get onto the walls of Jerusalem.
- **siege towers** - These were wooden towers that the king of Babylon built around Jerusalem to enable the Babylonian soldiers to shoot arrows over the walls of Jerusalem.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:24**UDB:**

²⁴ Therefore, tell the Israelite people that this is what Yahweh the Lord says: ‘You people have allowed everyone to see that you are openly rebelling against the king of Babylonia, and by doing that you have shown that everything that you do is sinful. Therefore he will capture you and take you to Babylonia.’

ULB:

²⁴ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Because you bring your iniquity to my remembrance,

your transgressions will be revealed! Your sins will be seen in all of your actions!

For this reason you will remind everyone that you will be captured by your enemy’s hand!

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- iniquity
- transgress, transgression
- reveal, revelation
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- adversary, enemy
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Jerusalem.
- **Because you bring your iniquity to my remembrance** - “Because you remind me of your iniquity”
- **your transgressions will be revealed! Your sins will be seen in all of your actions** - “by revealing your transgression, your sins will be clearly shown to everyone.”
- **For this reason you will remind everyone that** - “For this reason everyone will understand that”
- **you will be captured by your enemy’s hand** - AT: “the king of Babylon will capture you.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ Also, say to the king of Judah, ‘You very wicked king of Israel, it is your time to die. It is the time for Yahweh to punish you.’ ²⁶ And this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to you about your king in Jerusalem, ‘Take off the king’s turban and his crown, because now things will be different than they were before. I will give power to those who had none, and I will disgrace those who had power. ²⁷ I will cause the Babylonians to destroy everything. No one will be king of Judah again, not until the man comes who deserves to be king. Then I will make him become king.’

ULB:

²⁵ As for you, profane and wicked ruler of Israel, whose day of punishment has come, and whose time of committing iniquity has ended, ²⁶ the Lord Yahweh says this to you: Remove the turban and take off the crown! Things will no longer be the same! Exalt the lowly and humble the exalted! ²⁷ I will make everything a ruin! A ruin! A ruin! The crown will exist no longer, not until the one comes who has a right to it. Then I will give it to him.

translationWords:

- profane
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- ruler, rulers, rule
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- punish, punishment
- iniquity
- crown, to crown
- exalt, exaltation
- lowly, lowliness
- humble, humility
- ruin, ruins

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh gives Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Israel.
- **whose day of punishment has come** - This phrase means “whom Yahweh will now punish.” (See: **Idiom**)
- **whose time of committing iniquity has ended** - “at the time when Yahweh ends iniquity”
- **turban** - a beautiful piece of cloth that kings wore on their heads as a symbol of their authority

- **humble the exalted** - “and make the exalted lowly”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ And, Son of man, prophesy and say that this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say about the Ammon people group, and about how I will disgrace them:

'My soldiers have swords
and they have pulled out those swords to slaughter many people.
They have polished them in order to kill people,
and to flash like lightning.

²⁹ Your Ammonite prophets have given you false visions about what will happen to you,
and they have held useless ceremonies that give you false messages.

So swords will strike the necks of those wicked people.
The day when I punish them has come,
because they have not been loyal to me.'

ULB:

²⁸ So you, son of man, prophesy and say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this to the people of Ammon concerning their coming disgrace: A sword, a sword is drawn! It is sharpened for the slaughter in order to devour, so it will be like lightning! ²⁹ While prophets see empty visions for you, while they perform rituals to come up with lies for you, this sword will lie on the necks of the wicked who are about to be killed, whose day of punishment has come and whose time of iniquity is about to end.

translationWords:

- **people group, peoples, the people, a people**
- **Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess**
- **sword**
- **devour**
- **false prophet**
- **vision**

translationNotes:

- **is drawn** - "is out of its sheath"

- **While prophets see empty visions for you** - The word “you” refers to the nation of Ammon. In the original language, it is feminine singular, because nations were often thought of as a woman. This continues through verse 32. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women and Personification](#)).
- **empty visions** - “visions that are not true”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ But later the soldiers of Babylon will have to put their swords back into their sheaths,
because the time for them to slaughter their enemies will end.

I will judge these Babylonians in the country where they were born.

³¹ I will pour out my punishment on them.

Because I am very angry with them,

my breath on them will scorch them like a fire.

I will allow brutal men to capture them,

men who are experts at killing people.

ULB:

³⁰ Return the sword to its sheath. In the place of your creation, in the land of your origin, I will judge you! ³¹ I will pour out my indignation on you! I will fan the fire of my rage against you and put you into the hand of cruel men, craftsmen of destruction!

translationWords:

- [sword](#)
- [create, creation, Creator](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Ammon.
- **sheath** - See how you translated this in [21:3](#).
- **In the place of your creation** - “In the place that I created you”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 21:32**UDB:**

³² They will be like fuel that is burned in a fire.

 Their blood will flow in their own land.

 No one will remember them anymore.

 That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

ULB:

³² You will become fuel for the fire! Your blood will be in the midst of the land. You will not be remembered, for I, Yahweh have declared this!”

translationWords:

- [blood](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Ammon.
- **You will become fuel for the fire** - “The fire will burn you up”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 22 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Continuous evil

Murder, idolatry and all sorts of evil have been done in Jerusalem; so God will destroy the city and scatter the people among the nations. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 22:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 22:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "Son of man, are you ready to condemn the people of Jerusalem? It is a city full of murderers. Remind them of all the detestable things that they have done. ³ Then say, "This is what Yahweh the Lord says: By murdering people and by defiling yourselves, by making idols, you people of this city have brought on yourselves the time when I will destroy you.

ULB:

22 ¹ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Now you, son of man, will you judge? Will you judge the city of blood? Make her know all her abominations. ³ You must say, "The Lord Yahweh says this: This is a city that pours out blood in her midst so that her time may come; a city that makes idols to make herself unclean.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- judge, judgment
- blood
- know, knowledge, make known
- abomination, abominable
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- idol, idolatrous
- unclean

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in **1:1**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **Now you, son of man, will you judge? Will you judge the city of blood?** - AT. "Son of man, go and judge. Go and judge the city of blood." (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **son of man** - "son of a human being" or "son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in **2:1**. AT: "mortal person" or "human"
- **city of blood** - Yahweh refers to Jerusalem as the city of blood. This refers to the murders and violence that happen in Jerusalem. (See: **Metonymy**)
- **her ... herself** - The word "her" refers to Jerusalem. Cities were often thought of as a woman. This continues through verse 32. (See **When Masculine Words Include Women** and **Personification**).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 22:4-5

UDB:

⁴ You have become guilty by murdering innocent people. You have made it impossible for me to accept you, by making idols for yourselves. You are bringing your time to an end. Therefore I will cause the other people groups to laugh at you and mock you. ⁵ People in countries that are near you and people who live far from you will make fun of you, because your city is full of confusion, and because you have made it impossible for me, your own God, to accept you.

ULB:

⁴ You are guilty by the blood that you have poured out, and are made unclean by the idols that you have made. For you have drawn your days close and approached your final years. Therefore I will make you a reproach to the nations and a derision in the sight of every land. ⁵ Both those who are near and those who are far away from you will mock you, you unclean city, with the reputation known everywhere as being full of confusion.

translationWords:

- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [reproach](#)
- [nation](#)
- [mock, ridicule, scoff at](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak through Ezekiel to the people of Jerusalem.
- **For you have drawn your days close and approached your final years.** - Both of these phrases mean that the time when Yahweh will punish Jerusalem is very near. (See: [Paral-lelism](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **full of confusion** - many people in Jerusalem are confused

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 22:6-9**UDB:**

⁶ Think about how each of your Israelite kings have used his power to murder people. ⁷ Your people do not respect their parents; they have oppressed foreigners; they mistreat orphans and widows. ⁸ You despise my sacred places and practices, and you treat the Sabbath days like any other day. ⁹ Among you are men who tell lies in order to cause others to be executed. There are those who go to the hilltops and eat food offered to idols, and they openly perform evil acts.

ULB:

⁶ Behold! The rulers of Israel, each one by his own power, have come to you to pour out blood. ⁷ They have dishonored fathers and mothers within you, and they have performed oppression on the foreigners in your midst. They have mistreated the orphans and the widows within you. ⁸ You have despised my holy things and have profaned my Sabbaths. ⁹ Slandering men have come among you in order to pour out blood, and they eat on the mountains. They perform wickedness in your midst.

translationWords:

- ruler, rulers, rule
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- power, powers
- dishonor, dishonorable
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- holy, holiness
- profane
- Sabbath
- slander, slanderer
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaking about the ruler of Israel in Jerusalem.
- **Behold** - AT: “Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you.”
- **come to you ... in your midst** - The words “you” and “your” refer to Jerusalem.
- **they eat on the mountains** - Here, “the mountains” refer to the altars to idols that are on the mountains. They eat meat that has been sacrificed to the idols in order to be have the blessing of false gods. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **They perform wickedness in your midst** - This means that they do evil things inside the city of Jerusalem.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 22:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ There are men who sleep with their father's wife, and men who sleep with women during their monthly menstrual periods. ¹¹ There are men who sleep with someone else's wife. Some of your men sleep with their daughters-in-law or with their own sisters or half-sisters. ¹² There are among you men who accept bribes in order to cause someone to be executed. You charge interest when you lend people money. You become rich by forcing people to give you money. And you have forgotten me, Yahweh.

ULB:

¹⁰ The nakedness of a father is revealed within you. They have abused the unclean woman within you during her impurity. ¹¹ Men who commit abominations with their neighbors' wives, and men who make their own daughters-in-law shamefully unclean; men who abuse their own sisters—daughters of their own fathers—all these are among you. ¹² These men take bribes among you in order to pour out blood. You have taken interest and gained too much profit, you have damaged your neighbors through oppression, and you have forgotten me—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- reveal, revelation
- neighbor
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- bribe
- profit, profitable
- neighbor
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God continues to speak through Ezekiel about the terrible things that the people of Jerusalem have done.
- **you ... They** - These pronouns refer to Jerusalem (the people of Jerusalem).
- **The nakedness of a father is revealed** - This is the father's wife. It is the nakedness that is only meant for him to see. (See: **Euphemism**)

- **abused ... commit abominations with ... make their own daughters-in-law shamefully unclean** - These are all ways to express that the men have had slept with women they should not have and how sinful their actions are.
- **interest** - This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”
- **you have forgotten me** - refusing to obey Yahweh is like forgetting that he exists. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 22:13-16**UDB:**

¹³ So I will shake my fist at your unfair profits and at the murderers who live among you. ¹⁴ When I finish punishing you, you will no longer be courageous. I, Yahweh, have said what I will do to you, and I will do it. ¹⁵ I will scatter you among many people groups, and I will make you stop your sinful behavior. ¹⁶ When the people of other nations see that you have been humiliated, you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

ULB:

¹³ See! With my hand I have struck the dishonest gain that you have made, and the bloodshed that is in your midst. ¹⁴ Will your heart stand, will your hands be strong on the days when I myself will deal with you? I, Yahweh, am declaring this, and I will do it. ¹⁵ So I will scatter you among the nations and disperse you through the lands. In this way, I will purge your uncleanness from you. ¹⁶ So you will become unclean in the eyes of the nations. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.”[1]Instead of *you will become unclean* , some ancient copies have *I will give you your inheritance* .

translationWords:

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Jerusalem by speaking directly to the city of Jerusalem.
- **I have struck the dishonest gain ... the bloodshed** - The word “struck” refers to Yahweh taking action against those things. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Will your heart stand, will your hands be strong on the days when I myself will deal with you?** - AT: “Your heart will not stand, your hands will not be strong on the days when I myself will deal with you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **scatter you among the nations and disperse you through the lands** - See how you translated this in [12:15](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **purge** - remove something unwanted.
- **in the eyes of the nations** - “in the opinion of the people in other nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 22 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 22 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 22:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ Yahweh then said to me, ¹⁸ "Son of man, your Israelite people have become useless to me. They are like dross to me. They are like the useless copper, tin, iron, and lead that remains after silver is melted in a very hot furnace ¹⁹ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Because you have all become like dross, I will gather you in Jerusalem.

ULB:

¹⁷ Next the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ¹⁸ "Son of man, the house of Israel has become dross to me. All of them are the leftovers of bronze and tin, and iron and lead in your midst. They will be like the dross of silver in your furnace. ¹⁹ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Because all of you have become like dross, therefore, behold! I am about to gather you into the center of Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [house](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **dross** - AT: "worthless" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **All of them are the leftovers of bronze and tin, and iron and lead in your midst** - AT: "All of the people around you are worthless" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 22:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ People put ore containing silver, copper, iron, lead, and tin in a very hot furnace and melt them in a blazing fire to burn up the impurities. Similarly, I will gather you together inside Jerusalem, and because I am very angry with you, what I will do will be as though I am melting you. ²¹ It will be as though I am blowing on you with a hot breath that shows that I am very angry, and it will be as though you will melt, ²² as though you will melt like silver melts in a furnace, and then you will know that I, Yahweh, have punished you.”

ULB:

²⁰ As a collection of silver and bronze, iron, lead and tin in the midst of the furnace must have fire blown against it, I will melt you. So I will gather you in my wrath and fury. I will put you there and blow the fire on it to melt it; so will I gather you in my anger and in my wrath, and I will put you there and pour you out. ²¹ So I will gather you and blow against you with the fire of my wrath so that you will be poured out in her midst. ²² As melting silver in the middle of a furnace, you will be melted down in its midst, and you will know that I, Yahweh, have poured out my fury against you!”

translationWords:

- [fire](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [angry, anger](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God continues to describe his punishment of the people of Israel in Jerusalem as metals being melted and purified in a furnace. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will melt you.** - God’s punishment is referred to as the fire of a furnace that will purify Jerusalem like a furnace that separates worthless materials from the precious metals when they are melted.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 22:23-25

UDB:

²³ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ²⁴ "Son of man, say to the Israelite people, 'You are disgusting to Yahweh, completely unacceptable to him. So Yahweh is angry with you. There will be no rain in your country.' ²⁵ Their leaders are like lions that tear apart the animals that they have killed. The leaders destroy their people. They steal treasures and other valuable things from people, and they murder many men and make their wives into widows.

ULB:

²³ The word of Yahweh came to me and said, ²⁴ "Son of man, say to her, 'You are a land that has not been cleansed. There is no rain on the day of wrath!' ²⁵ There is a conspiracy of her prophets within her, like a roaring lion tearing apart a victim. They consume life and take precious wealth; they make many widows within her! [1] Instead of *There is a conspiracy of her prophets within her*, some ancient copies have *whose princes*.

translationWords:

- [clean, cleanse](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [lion](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to Jerusalem.
- **The word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **There is no rain on the day of wrath** - Rain is used as an example of God's blessing. AT: "There is no blessing on the day of wrath" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **conspiracy** - a secret plan made by two or more people to do something harmful or illegal.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 22:26-28**UDB:**

²⁶ Their priests disobey my laws and dishonor my sacred things by saying that there is no difference between things that are sacred and those that are not sacred, and by ignoring my laws about resting on the Sabbath days. As a result, they no longer honor me. ²⁷ Their officials are like wolves that tear apart the animals that they have killed. They murder people in order to get their money. ²⁸ Their prophets try to cover up those sins by saying they have received visions from God. They say, ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says,’ when I have said nothing to them.

ULB:

²⁶ Her priests do violence to my law, and they profane my holy things. They do not distinguish between holy things and profane things, and do not teach the difference between the unclean and the clean. They hide their eyes from my Sabbaths so that I am profaned in their midst. ²⁷ Her princes within her are like wolves tearing apart their victims. They pour out blood and destroy life, to make a profit dishonestly. ²⁸ Her prophets have painted them over with whitewash; they see false visions and predict falsehoods to them. They say “The Lord Yahweh says this” when Yahweh has not spoken.

translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [profane](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [wolf, wolves, wild dogs](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **her** - This pronoun refers to Jerusalem.
- **They pour out blood and destroy life** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the violence that Jerusalem’s princes practice. AT: “They murder people” (UDB). (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 22 General Notes
- Ezekiel 22 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 22:29**UDB:**

²⁹ The Israelite people force others to give them money, and they rob people. They oppress poor people, and they mistreat foreigners among them by not treating them fairly in the courts.

ULB:

²⁹ The people of the land have oppressed through extortion and plundered through robbery, and they mistreat the poor and needy, and oppress the foreigner without justice.

translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 22:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ I looked among them to find a man who would pray for the people and cause them to repent so that I would not need to destroy them. But I did not find anyone. ³¹ So because I am very angry with them, I will severely punish them for all the wicked things that they have done. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have said it.”

ULB:

³⁰ So I searched for a man from them who would build up a wall and who would stand before me in its breach for the land so I would not destroy it, but I found no one. ³¹ So I will pour out my indignation upon them. I will finish them with the fire of my indignation and set their way on their own heads—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- [head](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh compares the leaders of Jerusalem to a wall and himself to an invading army. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a man from them who would build up a wall** - a leader putting himself between Yahweh and the people by taking responsibility to lead them back into righteousness. AT: “a man from them who would act like a wall”
- **stand before me in its breach** - to stand in the place the wall has a gap or has been broken. A leader defending the people of Israel is like a warrior defending a city in battle.
- **pour out my indignation upon them!** - judgment that can be poured out like water from a bowl.
- **the fire of my indignation** - judgment of God is like fire because it is very intense.
- **set their way on their own heads** - Setting something on a person’s head refers to making them carry it or take responsibility for it. AT: “make them take responsibility for what they have done” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 22 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 22 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 23 General Notes

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Israel and Judah have been unfaithful to God by worshiping idols. They are compared to two unfaithful wives who have repeatedly committed adultery. (See: [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 23:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 23:1-4**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh said to me, ² "Son of man, listen to this parable about Jerusalem and Samaria. Once there were two women, daughters of the same mother. ³ They lived in Egypt. And from the time that they were young women, they became prostitutes. In that land, men fondled their breasts and caressed their young bosoms. ⁴ The older sister was Oholah, and her younger sister was Oholibah. It was as though they later became my wives. Later they gave birth to sons and daughters. Oholah represents Samaria, and Oholibah represents Jerusalem.

ULB:

23 ¹ The word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, there were two women, daughters of the same mother. ³ They acted as prostitutes in Egypt in the time of their youth. They acted as prostitutes there. Their breasts were squeezed and their virgin nipples were fondled there. ⁴ Their names were Oholah—the older sister—and Oholibah—her younger sister. Then they became mine and bore sons and daughters. Their names mean this: Oholah means Samaria, and Oholibah means Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- Egypt, Egyptian
- virgin
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh tells Ezekiel a story about two young women in Egypt to express how he views the behavior of the people of Israel.
- **The word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in **1:1**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **Their breasts were squeezed** - AT. "Men squeezed their breasts." (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **their virgin nipples were fondled there** - This phrase means basically the same thing as the previous phrase and emphasizes the immoral behavior of the two young women. AT: "there men fondled their virgin nipples." (See: **Parallelism** and **Active or Passive**)
- **fondled** - to be touched lovingly or softly
- **Oholah** - This is a female name that means "her tent." (See: **How to Translate Names**)

- **Oholibah** - This is a female name that means “my tent is in her.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ Oholah acted like a prostitute while she was still my wife. She desired to sleep with those whom she loved—soldiers from Assyria. ⁶ Some of them were army officers and commanders. They wore beautiful purple uniforms. They were all handsome young men who rode horses. ⁷ She acted like a prostitute toward all the important Assyrian officials. I could no longer accept her as belonging to me, because she was worshiping all the idols of the men she wanted to sleep with.

ULB:

⁵ But Oholah acted as a prostitute even when she was mine; she lusted for her lovers, for the Assyrians who were dominant, ⁶ the governor who wore violet, and for his officials, who were strong and handsome, all of them men riding on horses. ⁷ So she gave herself as a prostitute to them, to all the best of Assyria's men, and she made herself unclean with everyone she lusted for—and with all their idols.

translationWords:

- [lust](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [governor, govern, proconsul, government](#)
- [horse](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues telling his story to Ezekiel about his unfaithful wife Oholah.
- **dominant** - “in control”
- **all the best of Assyria's men** - This identifies who the word “them” refers to.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ When she was a young woman in Egypt, she started being a prostitute, and she allowed young men to caress her breasts and have sex with her. When she became older, she did not quit acting like a prostitute.

⁹ So I allowed the Assyrian soldiers, whom she wanted to sleep with, to capture her. ¹⁰ They stripped all her clothes off her. They took away her sons and daughters. And then they killed her with a sword. Other women started talking about how she was disgraced, and about how she deserved to suffer.

ULB:

⁸ For she had not left her prostitute behavior behind in Egypt, when they had slept with her when she had been a young girl, when they first began to fondle her virgin breasts, when they first began to pour out their promiscuous behavior on her. ⁹ Therefore I gave her into the hand of her lovers, into the hand of the Assyrians for whom she lusted. ¹⁰ They stripped her naked. They took her sons and daughters, and they killed her with the sword, and she became shameful to other women, so they passed judgment on her.

translationWords:

- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- sword
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- judge, judgment

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues telling his story to Ezekiel about his unfaithful wife Oholah.
- **to pour out their promiscuous behavior** - The phrase “pour out” uses the thought of water pouring out to express something happening in a great amount. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **into the hand of her lovers, into the hand of the Assyrians** - The word “hand” refers to power or authority. The second phrase explains that “her lovers” were “the Assyrians.” AT: “I gave her over to her lovers, the Assyrians.” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ Her younger sister Oholibah saw those things that happened to Oholah, but she was also a prostitute, and she desired to sleep with men even more than her older sister had desired. ¹² Oholibah also wanted to sleep with the Assyrian soldiers. Some of them were army officers and commanders. They all wore beautiful uniforms. They were all handsome young men. And they rode horses. ¹³ I saw what she did that caused me to be unable to accept her, just like her older sister.

ULB:

¹¹ Her sister Oholibah saw this, but she lusted even more passionately and acted like a prostitute even more than her sister. ¹² She lusted for the Assyrians, the governors and the dominating officials who dressed impressively, who were men riding horses. All of them were strong, handsome men. ¹³ I saw that she had made herself unclean. It was the same for both sisters.

translationWords:

- [sister](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh begins telling the story to Ezekiel about his unfaithful wife Oholibah, the sister of Oholah.
- **Oholibah** - See how you translated this name in [23:4](#).
- **who dressed impressively, who were men riding horses** - Both of these phrases describe men who are wealthy. AT: “who were wealthy” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **It was the same for both sisters** - AT: “Both sisters became unclean through their acts of prostitution” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ But she did even worse things. She saw drawings of men from Babylonia on the walls, painted in red. ¹⁵ The men in the drawings had belts around their waists and long turbans on their heads. They all resembled officers from Babylonia who rode in chariots.

ULB:

¹⁴ Then she increased her prostitution even more. She saw men carved on walls, figures of Chaldeans painted in red, ¹⁵ wearing belts around their waists, with flowing turbans on their heads. All of them appeared to be officers of chariot troops, men of whom Babylonia was their birthplace.

translationWords:

- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues telling the story about his unfaithful wife Oholibah to Ezekiel.
- **turbans** - hats made out of long cloth and wrapped around the top of a man's head.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ As soon as she saw those drawings, she wanted to sleep with those men, and she sent messages to them in Babylonia. ¹⁷ Then the soldiers from Babylonia came to her, lay in bed with her, and slept with her. Then she became disgusted with them and turned away from them.

ULB:

¹⁶ As soon as her eyes saw them, she lusted for them, so she sent out messengers to them in Chaldea. ¹⁷ Then the Babylonians came to her and to her bed of lust, and they made her unclean with their promiscuousness. By what she had done she was made unclean, so she turned herself away from them in disgust.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues telling the story about his unfaithful wife Oholibah to Ezekiel.
- **so she turned herself away from them in disgust.** - AT: "her emotions regarding them changed from desire to disgust"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ But when she continued to openly act like a prostitute and to show herself naked to others, I became disgusted with her and rejected her, as I had rejected her older sister. ¹⁹ But she became even more immoral, as she remembered when she was a young woman learning to be a prostitute in Egypt.

ULB:

¹⁸ She displayed her acts of prostitution and she showed her unclothed body, so my soul turned away from her, just as my soul turned away from her sister.

¹⁹ Then she committed many more acts of prostitution, as she brought to mind and imitated the days of her youth, when she behaved as a prostitute in the land of Egypt.

translationWords:

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

translationNotes:

- **brought to mind and imitated the days of her youth** - AT: “remembered and did the same things as she had done when she was young”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ There she wanted to sleep with those who loved her, whose private parts were very long, like those of donkeys, and whose reproductive emissions were huge, like those of horses. ²¹ So she desired to be immoral like she was when she was young, when men in Egypt caressed her bosom and fondled her young breasts.

ULB:

²⁰ So she lusted for her lovers,

whose private parts were like those of donkeys, and whose reproductive emissions were like those of horses.

²¹ This is how you committed shameful acts of your youth, when the Egyptians fondled your nipples and squeezed your young breasts.

translationWords:

- [donkey, mule](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh finishes speaking about Oholibah and the Assyrians and starts speaking to Oholibah.
- **whose private parts were like those of donkeys, and whose reproductive emissions were like those of horses** - Impossibly large, in order to show how wicked was Oholibah's desire. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:22-23**UDB:**

²² Oholibah represents you people of Jerusalem. Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord say: Those soldiers who loved you but from whom you turned away because you became disgusted with them—I will make them angry with you. I will make them come and attack you from every side— ²³ soldiers from Babylon and all the other places in Babylonia, and their allies from the regions of Pekod, Shoa, and Koa, and all the army of Assyria. Yes, all of them are handsome young men, army officers and commanders, officers who have great fame, all riding on horses.

ULB:

²² Therefore, Oholibah, the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Behold! I will turn your lovers against you.

Those from whom you turned away, I will bring them against you from every side:

²³ the Babylonians and all the Chaldeans, Pekod, Shoa, and Koa, and all the Assyrians with them,

strong, handsome men, governors and commanders, all of them are officers and men of reputation, all of them riding on horses.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [governor, govern, proconsul, government](#)

translationNotes:

- **Behold** - AT: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you."
- **Pekod, Shoa, and Koa** - These are people groups who lived in Babylonia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ Their huge army will attack you with weapons, riding in chariots and pulling wagons that will carry the army supplies. They will surround you, carrying large and small shields, and wearing helmets. I will allow them to capture you and punish you in the way that they always punish their enemies. ²⁵ Because I am very angry with you, I will cause them to act furiously toward you. They will cut off your noses and your ears. Then, those who are still alive, they will kill with their swords. They will take away your sons and daughters, and it will be like a fire that burns up your descendants.

ULB:

²⁴ They will come against you with weapons, and with chariots and wagons, and with a great crowd of people.

They will set large shields, small shields, and helmets against you all around.

I will give them the opportunity to punish you, and they will punish you with their actions. ²⁵ For I will set my anger on you, and they will deal with you in fury. They will cut off your nose and your ears, and your remnant will fall by the sword. They will take your sons and your daughters, so that your descendants will be devoured by fire.

translationWords:

- chariot
- punish, punishment
- angry, anger
- remnant
- sword
- descendant, descended from
- devour
- fire

translationNotes:

- **weapons** - The Hebrew word translated here as “weapons” is rare. Many modern versions translate it in this way, but some versions leave it out.
- **set large shields, small shields, and helmets against you** - These defensive items are used to refer to different kinds of soldiers in an army. (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **They will cut off your nose and your ears** - This describes the punishment in Babylon for married women who slept with men that are not their husbands. AT: “They will punish you as an adulteress” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ They will strip off your clothes and your fine jewelry, and they will take them away. ²⁷ In that way, I will stop all the immoral behavior that began when you became a prostitute in Egypt. You will no longer desire to do those things; you will no longer think about what you did in Egypt.

ULB:

²⁶ They will strip you of your clothes and take away all of your jewelry. ²⁷ So I will remove your shameful behavior from you and your acts of prostitution from the land of Egypt. You will not lift up your eyes toward them with longing, and you will think of Egypt no longer.'

translationWords:

- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

translationNotes:

- **You will not lift up your eyes** - This is a way to refer to a person turning their head to look at something. AT: "You will not look" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **you will think of Egypt no longer** - The phrase "think of Egypt" refers to the acts of prostitution she learned in Egypt. She will no longer think about them because she has learned they will not give her the nice things that the Egyptians, Babylonians, and Assyrians have. Instead, the acts of prostitution have caused her to be punished and she will not want to think about doing them again. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:28-29

UDB:

²⁸ This is what I, Yahweh the Lord say: Those whom you hate, those with whom you became disgusted and from whom you turned away—I am about to allow them to capture you. ²⁹ They will be cruel; they will take away everything that you own. They will leave you completely naked, and everyone will see that you truly are a prostitute.

ULB:

²⁸ For the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Behold! I will give you into the hand of the ones you hate, back into the hand of the ones from whom you had turned away. ²⁹ They will deal with you hatefully; they will take all your possessions and abandon you unclothed and bare. The naked shame of your prostitution will be revealed, your shameful behavior and your promiscuousness.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [reveal, revelation](#)

translationNotes:

- **Behold** - The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Indeed”
- **unclothed and bare** - These two words mean the same thing and emphasize that she will be completely naked. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **your shameful behavior and your promiscuousness** - These phrases both describe her prostitution and emphasize how bad this behavior was. (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:30-31

UDB:

³⁰ It is because of what you have done that you will be punished in that way; you have been an immoral prostitute; you have slept with men of other nations, and you have made it impossible for me to accept you, because you have worshiped their idols. ³¹ You have behaved like the people of Samaria, who are like your older sister. So I will cause you to be punished as they were punished.

ULB:

³⁰ These things will be done to you in your acting like a prostitute, lusting after nations by which you became unclean with their idols. ³¹ You have walked in the way of your sister, so I will put her cup of punishment into your hand.'

translationWords:

- [lust](#)
- [nation](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [walk](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)

translationNotes:

- **acting like a prostitute, lusting after nations** - The reason this phrase says Oholibah acts like a prostitute with the nations is because the men she has slept with are symbols of the wealth and power of these nations. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will put her cup** - The word "cup" refers to Oholibah's punishment. It represents the thing she has received. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:32**UDB:**

³² This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: You will suffer when you drink from a cup that is deep and large.

It will be as though you will drink from the same cup that the people of Samaria drank from.

And it is because you will drink what it is in that cup, many people will scorn you and make fun of you,

because when you drink from the cup it will make you drunk and then you will be overcome with sadness.

ULB:

³² The Lord Yahweh says this, 'You will drink your sister's cup that is deep and large.

You will become a laughingstock and a subject for derision—this cup contains a great amount.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **You will drink your sister's cup** - Drinking the from the same cup is another way to say they will experience the same thing. AT: "You will experience the same punishment as your sister" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **that is deep and large** - This refers to the amount of punishment received. AT: "that is severe" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **a laughingstock ... a subject for derision** - Both of these phrases refer to a person who is laughed at and criticized because of their foolish behavior. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **this cup contains a great amount** - This sentence does not say what is in the cup because it is understood by reading [23:31](#). AT: "this cup contains a great amount of punishment" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 23 General Notes
- Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 23:33-34**UDB:**

³³ When you become very drunk, you will become very sad,

because drinking what is in that cup will cause you to be ruined;
everyone will leave you.

This is what happened to the people of Samaria, who are like your
sister.

³⁴ You will drink all the liquid that is in that cup;

then you will break that cup into pieces

and use those pieces to cut your breasts because you will be very
sad.

That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.

ULB:

³³ You will be filled with drunkenness and sorrow,

the cup of horror and devastation;

the cup of your sister Samaria.

³⁴ You will drink it and drain it empty; then you will shatter it and tear your
breasts with the pieces.

For I have declared it—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.’

translationWords:

- horror, horrified
- devastate, devastation
- Samaria, Samaritan
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **the cup of horror and devastation!** - “the cup that causes horror and devastation.” The words “horror” and “devastation” share similar meanings here and emphasize how terrible her punishment will be. (See: **Doublet**)
- **the cup of your sister Samaria** - Oholibah’s sister Oholah has represented Samaria. Samaria is called by its name but still referred to as a sister. The cup is a symbol for the punishment that she received. (See: **Idiom**)

- **this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:35**UDB:**

³⁵ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Because you have forgotten me and rejected me, I must punish you for your immoral behavior and for being a prostitute.”

ULB:

³⁵ Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this, ‘Because you have forgotten me and thrown me away behind your back, so also you will bear the consequences of your shameful behavior and acts of sexual immorality.’”

translationWords:

- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

translationNotes:

- **and thrown me away behind your back** - Yahweh is saying Oholibah does not care about him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:36-37

UDB:

³⁶ Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, judge the people of those two cities represented by Oholah and Oholibah. You must remind them of their detestable behavior. ³⁷ It is as though they have committed adultery and have murdered people. They have been unfaithful to me by worshiping idols. They have even sacrificed their own children, who belonged to me, in fire.

ULB:

³⁶ Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, will you judge Oholah and Oholibah? So present to them their disgusting actions, ³⁷ since they have committed adultery, and since there is blood on their hands. They have committed adultery with their idols, and they have even put their sons into the fire, as food for their idols.

translationWords:

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress](#)
- [blood](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [son, son of](#)

translationNotes:

- **Son of man, will you judge Oholah and Oholibah?** - AT: "Son of man, you will judge Oholah and Oholibah!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in [2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **there is blood on their hands** - The blood is the result of killing people, and therefore represents murder. AT: "they have murdered people." (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:38-39**UDB:**

³⁸ They have done other disgraceful things: they have caused my temple to be an unacceptable place for worship, and they treat the Sabbath days like any other day. ³⁹ On the same day that they sacrificed their children to their idols, they entered my temple, which caused it to be an unacceptable place for worshipping me. They did these things in my own house!

ULB:

³⁸ Then they continue to do this to me: They make my sanctuary unclean, and on the same day they defile my Sabbaths. ³⁹ For when they had slaughtered their children for their idols, then they came to my sanctuary on the same day to defile it! So behold! This is what they have done in the middle of my house.

translationWords:

- [sanctuary](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [house](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaks to Ezekiel about Oholah and Oholibah.
- **and on the same day they defile my Sabbaths** - The phrase “same day” refers to the previous phrase “make my sanctuary unclean.” AT: “and on the same day they make my sanctuary unclean, they defile my Sabbaths” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **came to my sanctuary on the same day to defile it** - AT: “came to defile my sanctuary on the same day as slaughtering their children for their idols”
- **behold!** - The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “indeed!”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:40-41**UDB:**

⁴⁰ They sent messages to men in countries far away. And as those men were coming, the two sisters bathed themselves for them, painted their eyebrows, and put on jewelry. ⁴¹ They sat on a beautiful couch, with a table in front of it on which they had put incense and olive oil that belonged to me.

ULB:

⁴⁰ You sent out for men who came from far away, to whom messengers had been sent—now behold. They indeed came, those for whom you bathed, painted your eyes, and adorned yourself with jewelry. ⁴¹ There you sat on a beautiful bed and at a table arranged before it where you placed my incense and my oil.

translationWords:

- [incense](#)
- [oil](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel speaks to Oholah and Oholibah.
- **behold!** - AT: “look!” or “listen!” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”
- **you bathed, painted your eyes, and adorned yourself with jewelry** - These are things done by a woman to make her appear more beautiful to a man.
- **my incense and my oil** - items used in worship to Yahweh.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:42

UDB:

⁴² Soon there was a noisy crowd around them. Among the crowd there were drunkards who had come from the desert of Arabia. They put bracelets on the arms of the two sisters, and they put beautiful crowns on their heads.

ULB:

⁴² So the sound of a crowd who were with worries was with you, and drunkards were brought from the wilderness with other worthless men. They put bracelets on your hands and ornate crowns on your heads.

translationWords:

- [drunk, drunkard](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)

translationNotes:

- **the sound of a crowd who were with worries was with you** - The sound of a crowd is used to refer to the crowd of people. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **drunkards** - people who often get drunk. However, some modern versions translate “Sabeans,” that is, men from Sheba.
- **ornate** - decorated or carved to make more beautiful.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:43-45

UDB:

⁴³ Then I said about the woman who had become exhausted by sleeping with many men, ‘Now those men will act toward her as though she were a prostitute, because that is all that she is.’ ⁴⁴ So they slept with those two women, Oholah and Oholibah, as men sleep with prostitutes. ⁴⁵ But righteous men will condemn them to be punished, as women who commit adultery and who murder others are punished, because those women commit adultery and they murder others.

ULB:

⁴³ Then I said about the one worn-out by acts of adultery, ‘Now they will be sexually immoral with her, and she will be sexually immoral with them.’ ⁴⁴ Then they went and slept her as they would any prostitute; in the same way they slept with Oholah and Oholibah, women guilty of prostitution. ⁴⁵ But righteous men will condemn them to punishment for adultery and to punishment for one who pours out blood, since they have committed adultery and have blood on their hands.

translationWords:

- [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress](#)
- [sexual immorality](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [condemn, condemnation](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [blood](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

translationNotes:

- **the one worn-out by acts of adultery** - Ezekiel refers to Oholah and Ohobilah with a description.
- **as they would any prostitute** - AT: “as they would penetrate any prostitute”
- **have blood on their hands** - This phrase uses evidence of violence to say they are guilty of violence.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:46-47**UDB:**

⁴⁶ So this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Bring a mob to attack Samaria and Jerusalem, and allow that mob to cause the people of those cities to be terrified; allow the mob to rob them. ⁴⁷ The mob will throw stones at them to kill them; they will cut them into pieces with their swords, they will kill their sons and daughters, and they will burn down their houses.

ULB:

⁴⁶ So the Lord Yahweh says this: I will raise up a company against them and give them up to be terrorized and plundered. ⁴⁷ Then that company will stone them with stones and cut them down with their swords. They will kill their sons and daughters and burn down their houses.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [terror, terrify](#)
- [stone, stoning](#)
- [sword](#)

translationNotes:

- **raise up a company** - The phrase “raise up” refers to increase in the number of people. AT: “gather a large group of people”
- **give them up** - Yahweh gives up the responsibility to take care of them and allows them to suffer for their choices.
- **to be terrorized and plundered** - AT: “for the company to terrorize and plunder them.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 23:48-49**UDB:**

⁴⁸ In that way I will cause them to stop their immoral behavior. This will warn other women to not imitate what you people of Jerusalem are doing. ⁴⁹ I will punish you people of Jerusalem for your immoral behavior and for worshiping idols. Then you will know that I, Yahweh the Lord, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

ULB:

⁴⁸ For I will remove shameful behavior from the land and discipline all the women so they will no longer act like prostitutes. ⁴⁹ So they will set your shameful behavior against you. You will bear the guilt of your sins with your idols, and in this way you will know that I am the Lord Yahweh.”

translationWords:

- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [discipline, self-discipline](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

translationNotes:

- **set your shameful behavior against you** - “cause you to accept responsibility for your shameful behavior” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **bear the guilt of your sins** - “accept responsibility for the guilt of your sins”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 24 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Too many sins to be forgiven

The people of Jerusalem cannot be cleaned from their sin. (See: [clean, cleanse](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Jerusalem is compared to a pot, so rusted that it cannot be cleaned from its rust. They have been completely rotted by their sin. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 24:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 24:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Almost nine years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, on the tenth day of the tenth month of that year, Yahweh gave me this message: ² "Son of man, write down what day of the month this is. On this day the army of the king of Babylon has surrounded Jerusalem.

ULB:

24 ¹ The word of Yahweh came to me in the ninth year, on the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month: ² "Son of man, write for yourself the name of this day, this exact day, for this exact day the king of Babylon has besieged Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- biblical time: year
- biblical time: day
- Son of Man, son of man
- name
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- siege, besiege
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaks to Ezekiel.
- **The word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **in the ninth year** - AT: "in the ninth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month** - "the tenth day of the tenth month." This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is near the beginning of January on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the king of Babylon has besieged Jerusalem** - The army of Babylon is referred to by its leader. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 24 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 24 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 24:3-5**UDB:**

³ Tell those rebellious Israelite people in Babylon a parable. Say this to them: This is what Yahweh the Lord says:

'Pour water into the cooking pot
and put the pot on the fire.

⁴ Put into the pot some pieces of meat from one of your best sheep:
put in the leg and shoulder, which are the best pieces.

Then fill the rest of the pot with the best bones.

⁵ Pile wood on the fire,
and cook the bones and the meat in the boiling water.'

ULB:

³ So speak a proverb against this rebellious house, a parable. Say to them, "The Lord Yahweh says this:

Place the cooking pot. Place it and pour water into it.

⁴ Gather pieces of food within it, every good piece—the thigh and shoulder—
and fill it with the best bones.

⁵ Take the best of the flock and heap up the bones under it.
Boil it thoroughly and also cook the bones in the midst of it.

translationWords:

- **proverb**
- **rebel, rebellious, rebellion**
- **house**
- **parable**
- **Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God**
- **flock, herd**

translationNotes:

- **heap up the bones under it** - Some cultures add bones to a fire because they burn longer than wood. AT: "place the rest of the bones under the pot to fuel the fire"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 24:6**UDB:**

⁶ Do that because this is what Yahweh the Lord says:

’Terrible things will happen to Jerusalem; it is city that is full of murderers,
a city that is like a corroded copper pot,
and the corrosion cannot be removed.

Take the pieces of meat out of the pot,
but do not choose which pieces to take out.

ULB:

⁶ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Woe to the city of blood, a cooking pot that has rust in it and that rust will not come out of it. Take piece after piece from it, but do not cast lots for it.

translationWords:

- [woe](#)
- [blood](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)

translationNotes:

- **a cooking pot** - Yahweh compares Jerusalem to a cooking pot. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **rust** - the red material that forms on metal. Rust eats away at metal and eventually destroys it
- **Take** - Yahweh does not give this command to a specific person, instead he is commanding some imaginary person who is part of the metaphor.
- **but do not cast lots for it** - Casting lots was a way of choosing which pieces of meat to take out, but because Yahweh wants to take out all of the pieces of meat, there is no need to cast lots.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 24:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ The blood of the people who were murdered in Jerusalem is still there;

they were murdered on the bare rocks,

not on the soil, where their blood could be covered.

⁸ But I am the one who caused the blood of those who were murdered to be smeared on the bare rock,

where their blood could not be covered;

I did that in order that I could see it and then be angry and get revenge.'

ULB:

⁷ For her blood is in the midst of her. She has set it on the smooth rock; she has not poured it out on the ground to cover it with dust, ⁸ so it brings fury up to exact vengeance. I placed her blood on the smooth rock so it could not be covered.

translationWords:

- [wrath, fury](#)
- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Jerusalem.
- **her** - The word "her" refers to Jerusalem, which is represented by the cooking pot.
- **has set it on the smooth rock** - "has put the blood on bare rocks"
- **to cover it with dust** - "and cover it with dirt"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 24:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say:

‘Terrible things will happen to that city that is full of murderers!

It will be as though I also will pile high the wood in the fire.

¹⁰ So heap on the wood

and light the fire!

Cook the meat well,

and mix some spices with it;

cook it until the bones are black.

ULB:

⁹ Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this: Woe to the city of blood. I will also enlarge the pile of wood.

¹⁰ Stack up the wood and kindle the fire. Cook the meat well and mix in the spices and let the bones be charred.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to compare Jerusalem with a cooking pot.
- **I will also enlarge the pile of wood** - It is implied that the pile of wood is under the cooking pot, which represents Jerusalem. “I will make the pile of wood on the fire under you even bigger” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Stack up ... kindle ... Cook ... let the bones be charred** - Yahweh gives these commands to imaginary people who are part of the metaphor.
- **let the bones be charred** - “burn the bones.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 24:11-12**UDB:**

- ¹¹ Then set the empty pot on the coals of the fire
 until the pot becomes very hot and the copper glows,
so that the corrosion will disappear.
- ¹² It is as though I tried to get rid of that corrosion,
but I was not able to do it,
 not even by putting that pot on the fire.

ULB:

¹¹ Then set the pot on its coals empty, in order to heat and scorch its bronze, so its uncleanness within it will be melted, its corrosion consumed.' ¹² She has become weary because of toil, but her corrosion has not gone out of her by the fire.

translationWords:

- bronze
- unclean

translationNotes:

- **scorch** - to burn the surface of something.
- **corrosion** - when something causes metal to break apart and rust.
- **consumed** - "burnt away"
- **She has become weary** - AT: "Jerusalem has become tired"
- **toil** - difficult labor.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 24:13**UDB:**

¹³ The corrosion in the pot represents your immoral behavior. I tried to cleanse you from your wicked behavior, but you did not allow me to do that. So you will not be cleansed from the guilt of your sin until I have punished you and I am no longer angry.

ULB:

¹³ Your shameful behavior is in your uncleanness, because I cleaned you, but still you would not become clean. You will still not be free from your uncleanness until my fury rests from you.

translationWords:

- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [clean, cleanse](#)
- [free, freedom, liberty](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to Jerusalem by comparing it to a cooking pot.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 24:14**UDB:**

¹⁴ I, Yahweh, have said that I will surely punish you. And it is time for me to do that. I will not change my mind; I will not refrain from punishing you, and I will not pity you. I will judge you and punish you as you deserve to be punished for your sinful behavior. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have said it.”

ULB:

¹⁴ I, Yahweh, have declared it will happen, and I will do it. I will not relent nor will I rest from it. As your ways were, and as your activities, they will judge you!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- [rest](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **your activities, they will judge you** - what they have done proves they are guilty of sin. (See: [Personification](#))
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 24:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ One day Yahweh gave me this message: ¹⁶ "Son of man, I am going to suddenly take from you your wife by means of a disease, your wife, whom you love very much. But when she dies, do not show that you are sad or lament or cry. ¹⁷ Groan quietly; do not cry openly for her. Keep your turban wrapped around your head, and instead of being barefoot, keep your sandals on your feet. Do not cover the lower part of your face to show that you are sad. And do not eat the kind of food that people who are mourning usually eat."

ULB:

¹⁵ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ¹⁶ "Son of man! Behold, I am taking the desire of your eyes from you with a plague, but you must not mourn nor weep, and your tears must not flow. ¹⁷ You must groan silently. Do not conduct a funeral for the dead. Tie your turban on you and place your sandals on your feet, but do not veil your facial hair or eat the bread of men who mourn for having lost their wives."

translationWords:

- plague
- death, die, dead
- veil

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the desire of your eyes** - This refers to Ezekiel's wife. Yahweh refers to Ezekiel by the part of his body he uses to see his wife. (See [Synecdoche](#)).
- **you must not mourn nor weep, and your tears must not flow** - These phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Ezekiel is not to cry about his wife dying. AT: "you must not express your grief." (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **turban** - a head covering made of a long cloth wrapped around the head.
- **sandals** - a simple shoe held onto the foot with straps around the ankles.
- **do not veil your facial hair** - In Israel, men would shave their beards to express sorrow, then cover their faces until their facial hair grew back. Yahweh told Ezekiel to not cover his facial hair to show that he had not shaved his face to express his sorrow.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 24:18

UDB:

¹⁸ So one morning I talked to the people as usual, and that evening my wife suddenly died. The next morning I did what Yahweh had told me to do.

ULB:

¹⁸ So I spoke to the people in the morning, and my wife died in the evening. In the morning I did what I had been commanded to do.

translationWords:

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 24:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ Then the people asked me, “What do the things that you are doing signify to us?”

²⁰ I answered them, “This is what Yahweh told me: ²¹ ‘Tell the Israelite people that I am about to destroy the temple, the building that you are very proud of, the building that you delight to look at. Your children whom you left in Jerusalem when you were forced to come to Babylon—your enemies will kill them.

ULB:

¹⁹ The people asked me, “Will you not tell us what these things mean, the things that you are doing?”

²⁰ So I said to them, “The word of Yahweh came to me and said, ²¹ ‘Say to the house of Israel, the Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! The pride of your strength, the desire of your eyes, and your lusts are defiling my sanctuary! So your sons and your daughters whom you have left behind yourselves will fall by the sword.

translationWords:

- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- proud, pride, prideful
- lust
- defile, be defiled
- sanctuary
- sword

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The people of Israel question Ezekiel and Ezekiel tells them what Yahweh has said to them.
- **The word of Yahweh came** - “Yahweh spoke his word.” See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **pride of your strength** - AT: “pride in the building that you have made”
- **the desire of your eyes** - AT: “the building that you delight to look at” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **fall by the sword** - AT: “be killed in war” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 24:22-24

UDB:

²² When that happens, you will do as I have done: you will not cover the lower part of your faces, or eat the kinds of food that people who are mourning usually eat. ²³ You will keep your turbans wrapped around your heads and keep your sandals on your feet. You will not mourn or cry, but your bodies will become very thin and slowly die; I will not forgive your sins at all. And you will groan for each other. ²⁴ Ezekiel will be a warning to you, and you must do what he has done. When that happens, you will know that I, Yahweh the Lord have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

ULB:

²² Then you will do exactly as I have done: you will not veil your facial hair, nor eat the bread of mourning men! ²³ Instead, your turbans will be on your heads, and your sandals on your feet; you will not mourn nor weep, for you will melt away in your iniquities, and each man will groan for his brother. ²⁴ So Ezekiel will be a sign for you, as everything that he has done you will do when this comes. Then you will know that I am the Lord Yahweh!”

translationWords:

- [iniquity](#)
- [Ezekiel](#)
- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

translationNotes:

- **you will melt away** - Here wasting away and dying is spoken of as melting. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in your iniquities** - This implies that God will not forgive the sins of these people. However, some modern versions translate “because of your iniquities.”
- **groan** - the sound a person makes who wants help, but pain or sorrow is so strong that they are not capable of speaking.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 24:25-27

UDB:

²⁵ Then Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, soon I will destroy their sacred temple, which they rejoice about and which they respect and delight to look at, and I will get rid of their sons and daughters also. ²⁶ On that day, someone will escape from Jerusalem and come and tell you what has happened there. ²⁷ When that happens, you will be able to speak again without constraint. You two will talk together. You will be a warning to the people; and they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do."

ULB:

²⁵ "But you, son of man, on the day that I capture their temple, which is their joy, their pride, and what they see and desire—and when I take away their sons and daughters—²⁶ on that day, a refugee will come to you to give you the news! ²⁷ On that day your mouth will be opened up to that refugee and you will speak—you will no longer be silent. You will be a sign for them so that they will know that I am Yahweh."

translationWords:

- [joy, joyful](#)

translationNotes:

- **refugee** - someone who has been forced to leave their country because of war or another disaster.
- **your mouth will be opened up** - "Yahweh will open your mouth" This describes someone being given understanding and the ability to speak about something. AT: "you will know what to say" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **you will speak—you will no longer be silent** - Both of these mean the people of Israel will speak. It is said again as a negative to emphasis the positive. (See: [Litotes](#))
- **will be a sign** - This refers to the people of Israel as a sign because they will help the refugees to understand why Jerusalem was destroyed. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Prophecy against other nations

This chapter includes prophecies against some Gentile nations. Ammon, Moab, Edom and Philistia will all be destroyed. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 25:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 25:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Some time later, Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "Son of man, turn toward where the Ammon people group lives, and prophesy about the terrible things that will happen to them.

ULB:

25 ¹ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, set your face against the people of Ammon and prophesy against them.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- face
- Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in [2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **set your face against** - See how you translated this in [4:3](#).
- **the people of Ammon** - "the descendants of Ammon" or "those who live in the land of Ammon"
- **and prophesy against** - See how you translated this in [4:7](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 25:3-5**UDB:**

³ Say about them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: You shouted joyfully when my temple in Jerusalem was destroyed, and when the country of Israel was ruined, and when the people of Judah were exiled to Babylon. ⁴ Therefore, I am going to allow an army of the people in the east to come and conquer you. They will set up their tents in your country and live there. They will eat the fruit from your fruit trees and drink the milk from your cattle. ⁵ I will cause your capital city of Rabbah to become a pasture for camels, and the rest of Ammon, where your people are now living, to become only a resting place for sheep. Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

ULB:

³ Say to the people of Ammon, 'Hear the word of the Lord Yahweh. This is what the Lord Yahweh says: Because you said, "Aha!" over my sanctuary when it was profaned, and against the land of Israel when it was desolate, and against the house of Judah when they went into exile, ⁴ therefore, behold, I am giving you to a people in the east as their possession. They will set up camp against you and set up their tents among you. They will eat your fruit and they will drink your milk. ⁵ I will make Rabbah a pasture for camels and the people of Ammon a field for flocks. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- sanctuary
- profane
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- desolate, desolation
- house
- Judah
- exile, the Exile
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Rabbah
- camel
- flock, herd
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh tells Ezekiel what to say to the people of Ammon.

- **the people of Ammon** - See how you translated this in [25:2](#) .
- **Hear the word of the Lord Yahweh** - “Listen to this message from the Lord Yahweh”
- **you said, “Aha!”** - The word “Aha” is a sound people make when they are happy about something. In this case the people were happy because bad things happened to Israel and Judah. AT: “you laughed” or “you cheered”
- **over my sanctuary when it was profaned** - “against my sanctuary when the enemy profaned it.” AT: “when the enemy army defiled my temple” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **against the land of Israel when it was desolate** - AT: “when the land of Israel was in ruins”
- **against the house of Judah when they went into exile** - AT: “when they took the people of Judah away as slaves.”
- **behold!** - AT: “look!” or “listen!” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”
- **I am giving you to a people in the east as their possession** - “I will cause an army from a land that is east of you to come and conquer you”
- **They will set up camp against you and set up their tents among you** - This can be translated as a new sentence: “They will set up tents and live in your country.”
- **the people of Ammon a field for flocks** - Here “the people of Ammon” refers to the land that belonged to the people of Ammon. AT: “I will make the rest of the land of Ammon a field for flocks.” (See [Metonymy](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 25:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: You clapped your hands joyfully and stomped your feet, and laughed because you despised the people in the land of Israel. ⁷ Therefore, I will use my power against you, and I will enable other nations to conquer you and take you away like any other possessions of yours. I will destroy you completely, and you will no longer be one of the nations. When that happens, people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

ULB:

⁶ For the Lord Yahweh says this: You have clapped your hands and stamped your feet, and rejoiced with all the contempt within you against the land of Israel. ⁷ Therefore, behold! I will strike you with my hand and give you as plunder to the nations. I will cut you off from the peoples and make you perish from among the countries! I will destroy you, and you will know that I am Yahweh.’

translationWords:

- rejoice
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- nation
- cut off

translationNotes:

- **all the contempt within you against the land of Israel** - AT: “with all of the hatred you feel towards the people who live in Israel” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **behold!** - AT: “look!” or “listen!” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”
- **I will strike you with my hand** - AT: “I will hit you with my powerful hand” or “I will punish you”
- **and give you as plunder to the nations** - AT: “and I will cause the nations to come and take everything away from you”
- **I will cut you off from the peoples ... make you perish from among the countries** - These phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize Yahweh will completely destroy the people of Ammon so that they are no longer a nation. AT: “I will completely destroy you so that you are no longer a nation” (See: **Parallelism**)
- **you will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in **6:7**.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 25:8-11**UDB:**

⁸ This is also what the Lord Yahweh says: The people of Moab south of Ammon and the people of Seir south of Moab despised Israel and said, “The people of Israel have become as unimportant as all the other nations!” ⁹ Therefore I will destroy the cities that protect the borders of Moab, starting at Beth Jeshimoth, Baal Meon, and Kiriathaim, the finest cities in Moab. ¹⁰ I will enable people from the east to conquer Moab and also to conquer Ammon. As the result, just as I will cause Ammon to be no longer remembered by other nations, ¹¹ I will also punish the people of Moab. When that happens, people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

ULB:

⁸ The Lord Yahweh says this, ‘Because Moab and Seir say, “Behold! The house of Judah is like every other nation.”’ ⁹ Therefore, behold! I will open the slopes of Moab, starting at his cities on the border—the splendor of Beth Jeshimoth, Baal Meon, and Kiraiathaim—¹⁰ to the people of the east who have been against the people of Ammon. I will give them up as a possession so that the people of Ammon will not be remembered among the nations. ¹¹ So I will perform judgments against Moab, and they will know that I am Yahweh.’

translationWords:

- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- splendor
- judge, judgment

translationNotes:

- **Behold!** - AT: “Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”
- **I will open the slopes of Moab, starting at his cities on the border** - AT: “I will open the path to Moab by destroying the cities on its border.”
- **the splendor of Beth Jeshimoth, Baal Meon, and Kiraiathaim** - AT: “I will start at the great cities of Beth Jeshimoth, Baal Meon, and Kiraiathaim.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **to the people of the east who have been against the people of Ammon** - AT: “I will send the same army from the nations in the east who attacked Ammon.”
- **I will give them up as a possession so that the people of Ammon will not be remembered among the nations.** - AT: “I will cause the armies to conquer Ammon so that no one will even remember them.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **they will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 25:12-13

UDB:

¹² This is also what Yahweh the Lord says: "You people of Edom are guilty of getting revenge on the people of Judah. ¹³ Therefore this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I will use my power against the people of Edom and will get rid of their men and their animals. I will ruin the land from the region of Teman in central Edom to the region of Dedan in the south of Edom, and their enemies will kill many of their men.

ULB:

¹² The Lord Yahweh says this, 'Edom has taken vengeance against the house of Judah and has committed wrong in doing so. ¹³ Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this: I will strike Edom with my hand and destroy every person and animal there. I will make them a ruined, abandoned place, from Teman to Dedan. They will fall by the sword.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [sword](#)

translationNotes:

- **I will strike Edom with my hand** - See how you translated the similar phrase "I will strike you with my hand" in [25:07](#).
- **from Teman to Dedan** - These are two cities at opposite ends of Edom. This means that God will destroy all of Edom. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **They will fall by the sword** - The word "fall" represents being killed and "sword" refers to battle. AT: "Their enemies will kill them with their swords" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 25:14**UDB:**

¹⁴ The Israelite people will use their power to get revenge on the people of Edom. They will show the people of Edom that I have been angry with them and that I will punish them. I will get revenge on the people of Edom. Then they will know that I, Yahweh the Lord, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

ULB:

¹⁴ I will lay my vengeance upon Edom by the hand of my people Israel, and they will do to Edom according to my anger and my fury, and they will know my vengeance—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.’

translationWords:

- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **I will lay my vengeance upon Edom by the hand of my people Israel** - AT: “I will use my people Israel to take revenge against the people of Edom”
- **they will do to Edom according to my anger and my fury** - AT: “they will show Edom my anger and fury” or “they will punish Edom according to my anger and fury against the people of Edom”
- **my anger and my fury** - The word “fury” means basically the same thing as and intensifies the word “anger.” AT: “my furious anger” or “my extreme anger” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **they will know my vengeance** - AT: “the people of Edom will know that I have taken revenge against them”
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - AT: “This is what the Lord Yahweh declares” or “This is what the Lord says will happen”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 25:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ This is also what Yahweh the Lord says: "The Philistia people group wanted very much for a long time to get revenge on the people of Judah. They very maliciously wanted to destroy Judah. ¹⁶ Therefore this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I am about to use my power against the Philistia people. I will get rid of the Kereth people group and all those who live along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. ¹⁷ I will get great revenge on them and show that I am angry with them by the way I punish them. And when I get revenge on them, they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do."

ULB:

¹⁵ The Lord Yahweh says this, "The Philistines have taken vengeance with malice and from within themselves they tried to destroy Judah again and again. ¹⁶ So this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Behold! I will reach out with my hand against the Philistines, and I will cut off the Cherethites and destroy the remnant who are along the seacoast. ¹⁷ For I will take great vengeance against them with furious acts of punishment, so they will know that I am Yahweh, when I take my vengeance on them."

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- Philistines
- avenge, revenge, vengeance
- remnant
- punish, punishment

translationNotes:

- **The Philistines have taken vengeance with malice and from within themselves they tried to destroy Judah again and again** - AT: "Because the Philistines hated the people in Judah and tried to take revenge against them again and again" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Behold!** - AT: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"
- **I will reach out with my hand against the Philistines** - AT: "I will turn my powerful hand against the Philistines" or "I will turn my great power against the Philistines"
- **I will cut off** - AT: "I will destroy" or "I will get rid of" (UDB)
- **Cherethites** - AT: "The people of Chereth." This is a people that lived in Philistia (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **they will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated the similar phrase "you will know that I am Yahweh" in [6:7](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 26 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section of prophecy against Tyre. The Babylonians will destroy Tyre. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 26:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 26:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Almost eleven years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, on the first day of the month, Yahweh gave me another message. He said to me, ² "Son of man, the people of the city of Tyre shouted joyfully and said about Jerusalem, 'Jerusalem, the city from which traders went to many nations, is now destroyed. And now people from all over the world will come to us to buy and sell things. Because Jerusalem has now been ruined, we will prosper!'

ULB:

26 ¹ So it was in the eleventh year, on the first day of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, because Tyre has said against Jerusalem, 'Aha! The gates of the people are broken! She has turned to me; I will be filled up because she is ruined.'

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- biblical time: day
- biblical time: month
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- Tyre, Tyrians
- Jerusalem
- gate, gate bar
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- ruin, ruins

translationNotes:

- **in the eleventh year** - AT: "in the eleventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin" (See: **Ordinal Numbers** and **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **on the first day of the month** - It is uncertain which month of the Hebrew calendar Ezekiel meant. (See: **Ordinal Numbers**)
- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in **1:1**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in **2:1**. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **Tyre has said against Jerusalem** - AT: "the people of Tyre have said against the people of Jerusalem." (See: **Metonymy**)

- **Aha!** - AT: “Yes!” or “Very good!”
- **The gates of the people are broken** - The people of Tyre use these words to refer to Jerusalem as if it were a city gate through which traders from the surrounding nations pass. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Armies have broken down the gates of the people” or “Armies have destroyed Jerusalem, which was like gates through which people from many nations passed” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **She has turned to me** - Here the word “she” refers to the word “gates” which have “turned” on their hinges to open to Tyre. This phrase means that Tyre has now replaced Jerusalem as the city through which the traders from many nations pass. AT: “The gateway has opened to me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **I will be filled up** - Here to “be filled up” means to be prosperous. AT: “I will be prosperous” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **she is ruined** - “Jerusalem is ruined”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 26:3-4

UDB:

³ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: 'I am now your enemy, you people of Tyre. I will cause the armies of many nations to come and attack your city, as the waves of the sea beat against the shores. ⁴ Their soldiers will destroy the walls around Tyre and tear down your towers. The city will be completely destroyed. Then they will scrape away the rubble and cause the city to become a bare rock.

ULB:

³ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Behold! I am against you, Tyre, and I will raise up many nations against you like the sea raises its waves. ⁴ They will destroy the walls of Tyre and tear down her towers. I will sweep her dust away and make her like a bare rock.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [nation](#)
- [watchtower, tower](#)

translationNotes:

- **Behold!** - AT: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"
- **I will raise up many nations against you like the sea raises its waves** - Here the word "nations" refers to their armies. AT: "I will gather an army from the nations that is as great and powerful as the waves in the raging sea." (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Simile](#))
- **towers** - A tower is a tall building used to watch for enemies or to hide in.
- **I will sweep her dust away and make her like a bare rock** - AT: "I will cause the army to completely destroy the city, and they will leave nothing there so that it will be like a rock with nothing on it."

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 26:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Out in the sea, the part of your city that is on an island will become a place where men spread their fishing nets to dry them. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have predicted it: People from many nations will carry off everything of value in your city. ⁶ The people in small villages on the coast near Tyre—your enemies will kill them with their swords. Then people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.’

ULB:

⁵ She will become a place for nets to dry out in the midst of the sea, since I have declared it—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—and she will become plunder for the nations. ⁶ Her daughters who are in the fields will be slaughtered by the swords, and they will know that I am Yahweh.

translationWords:

- declare, declaration
- sword
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **She will become** - Cities are often referred to as “she.” AT: “Tyre will become” or “It will become.”
- **a place for nets to dry out in the midst of the sea** - Part of Tyre was an island. AT: “an empty island used for drying fishing nets” or “a deserted island where people dry out their fishing nets”
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **plunder** - things that people have stolen
- **she will become plunder for the nations** - AT: “armies from the nations will steal everything from Tyre.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Her daughters who are in the fields will be slaughtered by the swords** - AT: “The enemy armies will kill her daughters who are in the fields.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Her daughters who are in the fields** - Villages were sometimes called the daughters of the cities that ruled over them. Possible meanings are 1) the small villages on that mainland that Tyre ruled over, or 2) the young women of Tyre who were working in the fields.
- **they will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated the similar phrase “you will know that I am Yahweh” in [6:7](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 26:7-8

UDB:

⁷ This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say is going to happen: From the east, I am going to bring the most powerful king in the world, King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon, with his army to attack Tyre. They will bring horses and chariots, and men who ride the horses and men who drive the chariots; it will be a huge army. ⁸ In the battles in the small villages on the coast, their soldiers will kill many people with their swords. Then they will build up walls outside the city of Tyre. They will build a dirt ramp up to the top of the wall, and they will all hold up shields to protect themselves from arrows being shot from the ground.

ULB:

⁷ "For this is what Yahweh says: Behold, from the north I am bringing Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, king of kings, against Tyre, with horses and chariots, and with horsemen and a great many people. ⁸ He will kill your daughters in the field. He will set up a siege work and build a ramp against your walls and raise up shields against you.

translationWords:

- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [horse](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [siege, besiege](#)

translationNotes:

- **Behold!** - AT: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"
- **I am bringing Nebuchadnezzar** - God is using Nebuchadnezzar to bring about his will.
- **king of kings** - "most powerful king"
- **a great many people** - This exclamation emphasizes the great size of Nebuchadnezzar's army.
- **He will kill your daughters** - Here the word "He" refers to Nebuchadnezzar and is a metonym for his army. AT: "His army will kill your daughters" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)

- Ezekiel 26 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 26:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ The king will direct the soldiers who operate the rams to batter the wall, and those who will use iron bars to tear down the towers in the wall. ¹⁰ The king will have a huge number of horses, and the stamping of their hooves will raise dust to cover the whole city. It will be as though the walls tremble because of the noise made by the horses, the supply wagons, and the chariots when they enter the city where the enemy has broken down the walls. ¹¹ The horses will trample all of the streets of the city with their hooves. The soldiers will kill the people with their swords; they will cause the monuments that celebrated their strength to collapse.

ULB:

⁹ He will place his battering rams to hit against your walls, and his tools will tear down your towers. ¹⁰ So you, son of man, say to the house of Israel, ‘You are saying this, “Our transgressions and our sins are on us, and we are decaying in them. How can we live?”’ ¹¹ Say to them, ‘As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—I do not delight in the death of the wicked, for if the wicked repents from his way, then he will live. Repent! Repent from your wicked ways. For why should you die, house of Israel?’

translationWords:

- [horse](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [hoof, hoofed, hooves](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [sword](#)
- [pillar, column](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **He will place** - The word “he” refers to Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon.
- **battering rams** - See how you translated this in [4:2](#).
- **his tools** - “his instruments of war”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 26 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 26 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 26:12-14**UDB:**

¹² They will take away all the people's valuable possessions and steal the things that the merchants sell. They will tear down the walls of the houses and destroy their fine houses. Then they will throw into the sea the stones from the walls of those houses and the timber and the rubble. ¹³ No longer will the people sing noisy songs or play their harps. ¹⁴ They will cause the city to become a bare rock and only a place where men spread their fishing nets. And the city will never be rebuilt." Those things will certainly happen because the Lord Yahweh has declared that they will happen.

ULB:

¹² So you, son of man, say to your people, "The righteousness of a righteous person will not save him if he sins. The wickedness of a wicked person will not cause him to perish if he repents from his sin. For the righteous person will not be able to live because of his righteousness if he sins. ¹³ If I say to the righteous, "He will surely live." and if he trusts in his righteousness and then commits injustice, I will not call to mind any of his righteousness; he will die in the wickedness that he has committed. ¹⁴ If I say to the wicked, "You will surely die." But then he repents from his sins and does what is just and right, this is the promise to you.

translationWords:

- [lute, lyre](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 26:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ This is also what the Lord Yahweh says about the people of Tyre: When the people in Tyre groan because the enemy has wounded them, when many people die, and when the enemy destroys the city, the people living along the coast will tremble because they are afraid. ¹⁶ Then all the kings in the cities along the coast will step down from their thrones and lay aside their robes and their embroidered clothes. They will be terrified, and they will sit on the ground, trembling. They will be shocked because of what has happened to the city of Tyre.

ULB:

¹⁵ The Lord Yahweh says this to Tyre, 'Will not the islands quake with the sound of your downfall, and with the groans of the wounded when the terrible slaughter is in your midst? ¹⁶ None of the sins that he has committed will be called to mind for him. He has acted justly and rightly; he will surely live.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- Tyre, Tyrians
- slaughter
- chief
- throne
- robe
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **Will not the islands quake ... in your midst** - "The islands quake ... in your midst." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 26:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Then they will sing a sad song about the city, like this:

'The famous city, in which many men who sailed on the seas lived,
is now no more!

The people of that city had great power as they sailed, but now they are at
the bottom of the sea;

they terrified all the people living near them.

¹⁸ But now everyone living along the coast is terrified because the enemy
has destroyed the great city.

It is as though the land along the coast itself were trembling;
the people on the islands in the sea are terrified because that city exists no
more.'

ULB:

¹⁷ They will lift up a lament for you and say to you,

"How you, who were inhabited by sailors, have been destroyed. The famous
city that was so strong—it is now gone from the sea.

The ones living in her once spread a terror about themselves upon everyone
who lived near them.

¹⁸ Now the coasts tremble on the day of your downfall.

The islands in the sea are terrified, because you have died."

translationWords:

- lament, lamentation
- life, live, living, alive
- terror, terrify

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 26:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ This is also what the Lord Yahweh says: 'When I cause everyone to leave the city of Tyre, like people have left other cities in which no one lives any longer, and when I cause the huge waves of the sea to cover the city, ²⁰ then I will bring the people of that city down to be with everyone else who is dead, those who died long ago. I will cause them to live in the place below the earth that is like old ruins, with those who have gone down to that pit previously, and they will never return to the earth, to where people are alive. ²¹ I will cause them to die in a horrible way, and that will be the end of them. People will search for that city, but it will no longer exist.'" This is what the Lord Yahweh declares will happen.

ULB:

¹⁹ For the Lord Yahweh says this: When I make you a desolate city, like the other cities that are not inhabited, when I raise up the deeps against you, and when the great waters cover you, ²⁰ then I will bring you down to the people of ancient times, like the others who have gone down into the pit; for I will make you live in the lowest realms of the earth as in ruins of ancient times. Because of this you will not come back and stand in the land of the living.[1]The expression *and stand in the land of the living* is supplied by an ancient version. The Hebrew has *I will place glory in the land of the living*, which does not seem to fit the context here. ²¹ I will place disaster on you, and you will exist no more. Then you will be sought, but you will never be found ever again—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration."

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- desolate, desolation
- water, waters
- pit

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **make you** - The word "you" refers to the city of Tyre. In the original language it is feminine singular, because nations were often thought of as a woman. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#) and [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 26 General Notes
- Ezekiel 26 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 27 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Tyre continues in this chapter. Tyre has become wealthy from trade clear to Spain, but Tyre will be destroyed. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Tyre is compared to a ship built with the very best materials. Despite its strength and power, Yahweh will destroy it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 27:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 27:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh said this to me: ² "Son of man, sing a funeral song about Tyre. ³ The city of Tyre is on an island at the edge of the sea, and their merchants traded with people groups who live along many seacoasts. This is what Yahweh the Lord says that you should tell them:

You people of Tyre said that your city was very beautiful.

ULB:

27 ¹ Again the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Now you, son of man, begin a lamentation concerning Tyre, ³ and say to Tyre, who lives within the gates of the sea, merchants of peoples to many islands, the Lord Yahweh says this to you:

Tyre, you have said, 'I am perfect in beauty.'

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- lament, lamentation
- Tyre, Tyrians
- gate, gate bar
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- perfect

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **who lives within the gates of the sea** - "who live at the gates of the sea." This phrase means 1) "who lives by the ports of the sea" or 2) "who rules over the ports of the sea."

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ You controlled what people bought and sold—the people who lived along the sea.

Those who built your city made it very beautiful.

⁵ You and your city were like a huge ship

that you built from fir trees on Mount Hermon.

Then you took cedar wood from Lebanon to make a mast for the ship.

ULB:

⁴ Your borders are in the heart of the seas; your builders have perfected your beauty.

⁵ They have made all your planks with cypress from Mount Hermon; they took cedar from Lebanon to make a mast for you.

translationWords:

- [fir](#)
- [Mount Hermon](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [Lebanon](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **Your borders** - “The boundaries of your kingdom”
- **a mast** - a large pole on a ship that holds up the sails of the ship

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ You carved oars from oak trees from the region of Bashan.

You made the deck from cypress wood from the island of Cyprus,
and you covered the decks with ivory.

⁷ You made the sails from fine embroidered linen from Egypt;
those sails were like flags that people could see far away.

ULB:

⁶ They made your oars from the oaks of Bashan;
they made your decks out of cypress wood from Cyprus, and they overlaid
them with ivory.

⁷ Your sails were colored linen from Egypt that were like your banners!

translationWords:

- oak
- Bashan
- Cyprus
- Egypt, Egyptian

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **oars** - long pieces of wood that people use to make the boat move
- **decks** - the parts of the boat that people can walk on
- **ivory** - a white, beautiful, and hard material that is made from the teeth of animals
- **sails** - large pieces of cloth that move a ship when the wind blows on them

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Men from the cities of Sidon and Arvad pulled your oars;

the men who steered the ship were experienced sailors from Tyre.

⁹ Experienced craftsmen from Gebal were on board. They caulked the seams of your ships.

Sailors from many countries came in their ships to buy and sell goods with you.

ULB:

⁸ Those who were living in Sidon and Arvad were your rowers;

the sages of Tyre were within you; they were your pilots.

⁹ Highly experienced craftsmen from Byblos filled your seams;

all the ships of the sea and their sailors among you were carrying your merchandise for trade.

translationWords:

- [Sidon, Sidonians](#)
- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **pilots** - people who control where the ship goes
- **filled your seams** - “repaired you cracks” or “repaired you leaks”
- **sailors** - people who sail ships on the sea

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Men who came from the far away lands of Persia, Lud, and Put were soldiers in your army.

They hung their shields and helmets on the walls of your city;

this caused many people to admire your city.

¹¹ Men from the cities of Arvad and Helech were watchmen on your city walls;

men from the city of Gammad were in your towers.

They also hung their shields on your walls;

they also made your city very beautiful.

ULB:

¹⁰ Persia, Lydia, and Libya were in your army, your men of war.

they hung shield and helmet within you; they showed your splendor. ¹¹ The men of Arvad and Helech in your army were on your walls surrounding you, and the people of Gammad were in your towers. They hung up their shields on your walls all around you! They completed your beauty.

translationWords:

- [Persia, Persians](#)
- [shield](#)
- [splendor](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [watchtower, tower](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **your men of war** - “men who fought in your wars” or “serving as your warriors”
- **they showed your splendor!** - “they gave you your splendor!”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:12-13

UDB:

¹² Because of the many things that you had to trade, men from Tarshish sent merchants who brought silver, iron, tin, and lead to trade for things that you had.

¹³ Merchants from the regions of Greece, Tubal, and Meshech brought slaves and things made from bronze to trade for things that you had.

ULB:

¹² Tarshish was your client because of the multitude of every kind of wealth: silver, iron, tin, and lead. They bought and sold your wares! ¹³ Javan, Tubal, and Meshech—they traded slaves and in items made of bronze. They handled your merchandise.

translationWords:

- [Tarshish](#)
- [silver](#)
- [Tubal](#)
- [Meshech](#)
- [bronze](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **iron** - a hard metal that was good for making weapons and building things
- **tin** - the metal that is left after refining gold, silver or iron
- **lead** - a valuable metal that is very heavy and softer than other metals
- **Javan** - a nation on the western shore of Asia minor. It was also known as Ionia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Men from Beth Togarmah brought work horses, war horses, and mules to trade for things that you had.

¹⁵ Merchants came to you from the island of Rhodes.

People from many nations by the sea traded with you;

they brought ivory and valuable black ebony wood to trade for things that you had.

ULB:

¹⁴ Beth Togarmah provided horses, stallions, and mules as your merchandise. ¹⁵ The men of Rhodes were your traders on many coasts. Merchandise was in your hand; they sent back horn, ivory, and ebony as tribute!

translationWords:

- [horse](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [tribute](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **stallions** - strong male horses
- **Merchandise was in your hand** - AT: "You owned goods." (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ Because you had very many things to trade, people from the land of Aram brought to you valuable turquoise stones, purple cloth, embroidered cloth, fine linen cloth, and jewelry made from coral and rubies to you.

¹⁷ Men from Judah and Israel brought wheat from the city of Minnith in Ammon, and cakes, honey, olive oil, and ointment to trade for your things.

¹⁸ Because you had very many things to sell, men from the city of Damascus brought wine from the town of Helbon and white wool from the area of Zahar to trade for many things that you had.

ULB:

¹⁶ Aram was a dealer in your many products; they provided emeralds, purple, colored cloth, fine fabric, pearls, and rubies as your merchandise. ¹⁷ Judah and the land of Israel were trading with you. They provided wheat from Minnith, cakes, honey, oil, and balsam as your merchandise. ¹⁸ Damascus was a trader of all your products, of all your enormous wealth, and of the wine of Helbon and the wool of Zahar.

translationWords:

- Aram, Aramean, Aramaic
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- kingdom of Israel
- wheat
- honey, honeycomb
- oil
- Damascus
- wine, wineskin, new wine

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **purple** - “purple cloth” or “purple yarn”
- **pearls** - beautiful pieces of hard white material that come from creatures in the sea
- **cakes** - The meaning of the Hebrew word translated here as “cakes” is uncertain. Some modern versions translate it as “balm” or “fine foods made with grain.”
- **rubies** - red stones that are very valuable
- **balsam** - a sweet smelling gum or resin that comes from a tree

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ Men from the tribe of Dan and Greek men from the area of Uzzal brought things made of iron, cassia spice, and fragrant calamus seeds to trade for things that you had.

²⁰ Merchants came from Dedan in southern Edom bringing saddle blankets to trade for things that you had.

²¹ Men from Arabia and all the rulers of the region of Kedar sent merchants to trade lambs and rams and male goats for things that you had.

ULB:

¹⁹ Dan and Javan from Uzzal provided you with merchandise of wrought iron, cinnamon, and calamus. This became merchandise for you. ²⁰ Dedan was your dealer in fine saddle blankets. ²¹ Arabia and all the chiefs of Kedar were traders with you; they provided you with lambs, rams and goats.

translationWords:

- [Dan](#)
- [Arabia, Arabian](#)
- [chief](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [goat, kid](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **cinnamon** - the type of spice that comes from the bark of a tree. "Cassia spice" is another name for this spice.
- **calamus** - a type of grass that people used as perfume and for medicine
- **saddle blankets** - a piece of cloth that people placed on horses beneath a saddle

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:22-23**UDB:**

²² Merchants from Sheba and Raamah in Arabia brought many kinds of very good spices and jewels and gold to exchange for things that you had.

²³ Men came from Haran, Canneh, Eden, Sheba, Asshur and Kilmad in Mesopotamia with their goods.

ULB:

²² The traders of Sheba and Raamah came to sell you the best of every spice and in all kinds of precious gems; they traded gold for your merchandise. ²³ Haran, Canneh, and Eden were traders with you, along with Sheba, Asshur, and Kilmad.

translationWords:

- [Sheba](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Haran](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **precious gems** - “valuable stones”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ They brought beautiful things to trade with you: blue cloth, embroidered cloth, and rugs of many colors that were rolled up and tied with ropes.

²⁵ Cargo ships from Tarshish carried all those things that you sold;
the warehouses on your island were full of all those things and
brought you great honor.

ULB:

²⁴ These were your dealers in ornate robes of violet cloths with woven colors, and in blankets of multicolored, embroidered, and well-woven cloth in your marketplaces. ²⁵ The ships of Tarshish were the transporters of your merchandise!

So you were filled up, heavily laden with cargo in the heart of the seas!

translationWords:

- [robe](#)
- [Tarshish](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **ornate robes of violet cloths with woven colors** - “purple robes with many different colors”
- **blankets of multicolored, embroidered, and well-woven cloth** - “blankets with many colors that had designs and were of high quality”
- **in the heart of the seas** - “in the middle of all the trading routes for sea-trade.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ The men who row your ships took the ships full of cargo out onto the large seas.

But now the strong east wind has wrecked those ships.

²⁷ Everything in the ships has been lost—

all the valuable cargo and many of the sailors and ship pilots,
the ship workers and merchants and soldiers.

On the day that the ships were wrecked,

all their crews sank to the bottom of the sea.

ULB:

²⁶ Your rowers have brought you into vast seas;

the eastern wind has broken you in the middle of them. ²⁷ Your wealth, merchandise, and trade goods; your mariners, sailors, and ship builders; your traders of merchandise and all the men of war who are in you, and all your crew—they will fall into the depths of the sea on the day of your destruction.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **Your rowers have brought you into vast seas** - “The people that row you have brought you out far into the sea”
- **in the middle of them** - “in the middle of the seas”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:28-30**UDB:**

²⁸ The people in cities along the coast trembled

when they heard your ship pilots cry out.

²⁹ All the men who pulled the oars will leave the ships;

the sailors and pilots will come to the shore and stand on the beach.

³⁰ They will cry aloud because of what has happened to you,

and they weep bitterly.

They will throw earth on their heads

and roll around in ashes.

ULB:

²⁸ Cities at the sea will tremble at the sound of your pilot's cry;

²⁹ All those who handle oars will come down from their ships;

mariners and every sailor of the sea will stand on the land.

³⁰ Then they will make you listen to their voice and will wail bitterly;

they will cast dust up on their heads. They will roll about in ashes.

translationWords:

- **voice**

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **will wail bitterly** - "will shriek with extreme grief"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:31-33**UDB:**

³¹ They shave their heads to show that they are very sad because of what has happened to you,
and they put on rough sackcloth to mourn.

They weep for you very bitterly
and mourn for you.

³² While they wail and mourn because of what has happened to you
they sing this sad funeral song:

'There was certainly never a city like Tyre,
which now is silent,
covered by the waves of the sea.'

³³ The goods that your merchants traded
were things that pleased the people of many countries.
Kings in very distant places became rich
from the money they made by buying and selling with you.

ULB:

³¹ They will shave their heads bald for you and bind themselves with sackcloth,
and they will weep bitterly over you and they will cry out.

³² They will lift up their wails of lamentation for you and sing dirges over you,

Who is like Tyre, who has now been brought to silence in the middle of the sea?

³³ When your merchandise went ashore from the sea, it satisfied many peoples;
you enriched the kings of the earth with your great wealth and merchandise!

translationWords:

- sackcloth
- lament, lamentation
- Tyre, Tyrians

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [king](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **will shave their heads bald** - “will shave their heads so that they have no hair”
- **Who is like Tyre** - AT: “No other city is like Tyre.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **who has now been brought to silence** - AT: “who is destroyed.”
- **ashore** - “on to the land”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 27:34-36**UDB:**

³⁴ But now your city is like a ship wrecked in the sea;

and everything in it is broken, and it is now at the bottom of the sea.

All of your cargo and your sailors have sunk to the bottom of the sea.

³⁵ All the people who live along the seacoast are appalled

because of what has happened to you.

Their kings are very horrified;

they shake with fear as they watch.

³⁶ The merchants of the other nations shake their heads

because it is difficult for them to believe what has happened;

now your city has disappeared,

and it will not exist anymore.”

ULB:

³⁴ But when you were shattered by the seas, by deep waters,
your merchandise and all your crew sank!

³⁵ All the inhabitants of the coasts were appalled at you,
and their kings shuddered in horror! Their faces trembled!

³⁶ The merchants of the people hiss at you;
you have become a horror, and you will never again exist.”

translationWords:

- water, waters
- king

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.
- **were appalled at you** - “were shocked and terrified by what happened to you”
- **hiss at you** - “hiss out of grief for you.” Hissing was a way of expressing grief.
- **you have become a horror** - “it has become terrifying for people to think about you”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 28 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Tyre concludes in this chapter. Tyre will be destroyed because of its pride and unfair business practices. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 28:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 28:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh gave me another message. He said: ² "Son of man, give to the king of Tyre this message from me, Yahweh the Lord:

'You have very proudly claimed that you are a god,
and that you are untouchable, since you sit on a throne in a city on
an island in the sea!

You boast that you are a god,
but you are in reality only a man, not a god.

³ You think that you are wiser than Daniel was,
and you think that you can understand every secret.

ULB:

28 ¹ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, say to the ruler of Tyre, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Your heart is arrogant! You have said, "I am a god! I will sit in the seat of the gods in the heart of the seas!" Even though you are a man and not a god, you make your heart like the heart of a god; ³ you think that you are wiser than Daniel, and that no secret amazes you!

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- ruler, rulers, rule
- Tyre, Tyrians
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- heart
- arrogant
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- God
- wise, wisdom
- Daniel

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **in the heart of the seas** - See how you translated this in [27:4](#).
- **you make your heart like the heart of a god** - "you think that you have the mind of a god"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 28:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Because you were wise and shrewd in business, you have become very rich;
you have acquired much gold and silver for your treasuries.

⁵ Yes, it is true that by buying and selling wisely, you have become very rich;
and because you are rich, you have become very proud.

ULB:

⁴ You have made yourself wealthy with wisdom and skill, and obtained gold and silver in your treasuries! ⁵ By great wisdom and by your trading, you have multiplied your wealth, so your heart is arrogant because of your wealth.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- gold
- silver
- heart
- arrogant

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Tyre.
- **with wisdom and skill** - “by your wisdom and your understanding”
- **and obtained** - “and stored up”
- **treasuries** - places to store valuable objects and keep them safe

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 28:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Therefore, Yahweh the Lord says that

because you think that you are as wise as a god,

⁷ he will bring a foreign army to attack your country,

an army that causes other nations to be terrified.

They will pull out their swords to strike you,

you who think that you have marvelous wisdom,

and they will ruin all your beautiful things and make them ugly.

ULB:

⁶ Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this: Because you have made your heart like the heart of a god,

⁷ I will therefore bring foreigners against you, terrifying men from other nations. They will bring their swords against the beauty of your wisdom, and they will profane your splendor.

translationWords:

- heart
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- nation
- sword
- wise, wisdom
- profane
- splendor

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Tyre.
- **you have made your heart like the heart of a god** - See how you translated “you make your heart like the heart of a god” in [28:2](#).
- **the beauty of your wisdom** - AT: “the beautiful city that you have built with you wisdom.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 28:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ They will bring you down to your grave;

you will die violently

like those who died in the sea.

⁹ Then you will certainly not tell those who are killing you

that you are a god,

because they will know that you are not a god;

you are only a man.

¹⁰ You will die like other people die, those who are unacceptable to God,

those whom foreigners kill. That will surely happen because Yahweh has said it.”

ULB:

⁸ They will send you down to the pit, and you will die the death of those who die in the heart of the seas. ⁹ Will you truly say, “I am a god” to the face of one who kills you? You are a man and not God, and you will be in the hand of the one who pierces you. ¹⁰ You will die the death of the uncircumcised by the hand of foreigners, for I have declared it—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- pit
- death, die, dead
- face
- God
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Tyre.
- **Will you truly say, “I am a god”** - AT: “You should not dare to say, ”I am a god.” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in **5:11**.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 28:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ Yahweh also gave me this message: ¹² "Son of man, sing a sad song about the king of Tyre. Tell him that Yahweh the Lord says this to him:

'You were completely perfect,
extremely wise and handsome.

¹³ You had a wonderful life, because you were in my beautiful garden in Eden.

Your clothes were decorated with many kinds of very valuable stones—

ruby, topaz, emerald, chrysolite, onyx, jasper, sapphire, turquoise, and beryl stones.

Those stones were set in gold mountings
which I prepared for you on the day that I created you.

ULB:

¹¹ The word of Yahweh came again to me and said, ¹² "Son of man, lift up a lament for the king of Tyre and say to him, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: You were the model of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty. ¹³ You were in Eden, the garden of God. Every precious stone covered you: ruby, topaz, emerald, chrysolite, onyx, jasper, sapphire, turquoise, and beryl. Your settings and mountings were made from gold. It was on the day you were created that they were prepared.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- perfect
- Eden, garden of Eden
- gold
- create, creation, Creator

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in **1:1**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **lift up a lament** - "sing a funeral song" or "sing a song of mourning" or "sing a sad song" (UDB)
- **You were the model of perfection** - Alternate translation: "You were perfect."

- **full of wisdom and perfect in beauty** - “very wise and very handsome”
- **Every precious stone covered you** - “you wore every kind of precious stone.” This shows that the king was very wealthy.
- **ruby, topaz, emerald, chrysolite, onyx, jasper, sapphire, turquoise, and beryl** - These are all precious stones of different colors. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 28:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ I appointed you to be a strong angel to guard the people.

I placed you on my holy mountain,
and you walked among fiery stones.

¹⁵ You were completely good in all that you did
from the day that you were created,
until you started to do wicked things.

ULB:

¹⁴ I placed you on the holy mountain of God as the cherub I anointed to guard mankind. You were in the midst of the fiery stones where you walked about. ¹⁵ You had integrity in your ways from the day you were created until injustice was found within you.

translationWords:

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [God](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [anoint, anointed](#)
- [integrity](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the king of Tyre.
- **the fiery stones** - “the stones of fire.” This probably refers to the colorful and bright stones mentioned in [28:13](#).
- **from the day you were created** - AT: “since the day that I created you.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 28:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ Then you became busy buying and selling things,

you started to act violently,
and you sinned.

So I disgraced you.

You, the angel who was supposed to guard the people—I forced you
to leave my own mountain;

I forced you to leave those fiery stones.

¹⁷ You were extremely proud

because you were very handsome.

Because you loved beautiful things,

you did things that wise people do not do.

So I threw you to the ground,

and allowed other kings who saw you to laugh at you.

ULB:

¹⁶ In the large volume of your trading you were filled with violence, so you sinned. I have thrown you as defiled from the mountain of God and destroyed you, you, cherub guard, from among the fiery stones. ¹⁷ Your heart was arrogant with your beauty; you ruined your wisdom because of your splendor. I have sent you down to the earth. I have placed you before kings so they may see you.

translationWords:

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- defile, be defiled
- God
- cherubim, cherub
- heart
- arrogant
- ruin, ruins
- splendor

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the king of Tyre.
- **the fiery stones** - See how you translated this in [28:14](#).
- **before** - “in front of”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 28:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ By committing many sins

and by buying and selling things dishonestly,
you caused the places where people worshiped me to become unacceptable to me.

So I will make a fire that will burn your city down.

Your city will be burned completely,
and the people who watch it will see
that what is left of the city will only be ashes.

¹⁹ All the people who knew what your city was like previously
will be appalled.

Now your city will disappear,
and it will not exist anymore.”

ULB:

¹⁸ Because of your many sins and your dishonest trade, you have defiled your holy places. So I have made fire come out from you; it will consume you. I will turn you into ashes on the earth in the sight of all who look at you. ¹⁹ All the ones who knew you among the peoples will shudder at you; they will be horrified, and you will never exist again.”

translationWords:

- defile, be defiled
- holy, holiness
- fire
- consume

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the king of Tyre.
- **they will be horrified, and you will never exist again** - See how you translated “you have become a horror, and you will never again exist” in [27:36](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 28:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ Then Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ²¹ "Son of man, turn toward the city of Sidon, and announce the terrible things that will happen to it. ²² Give the people of Sidon this message from Yahweh the Lord. Tell them:

'I am your enemy, you people of Sidon.

By what I do to you,

I will show you how great I am,

and you will know that it is Yahweh who punishes you and judges you with justice.

You will know that I am different from you, and that I will be honored by what I do to you!

ULB:

²⁰ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ²¹ "Son of man, set your face against Sidon and prophesy against her. ²² Say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you, Sidon! For I will be glorified in your midst so your people will know that I am Yahweh when I execute justice within you. I will be shown to be holy in you.

translationWords:

- Sidon, Sidonians
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- glorify
- just, justice, justly
- holy, holiness

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in [2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **set your face against** - See how you translated this in [4:3](#).
- **prophesy against** - See how you translated this in [4:7](#).
- **Behold!** - AT: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 28:23-24**UDB:**

²³ I will send a plague on you,

and I will send enemies to come and kill you in your streets.

They will attack you from every direction,

and they will slaughter your people inside the walls of your city.

Then everyone will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.'

²⁴ No longer will people who live near the people of Israel hurt them as painful briars and sharp thorns hurt people. And then the Israelites will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do."

ULB:

²³ I will send out a plague in you and blood in your streets, and the slain will fall in your midst. When the sword comes against you from all around, then you will know that I am Yahweh. ²⁴ Then there will no longer be pricking briars and painful thorns for the house of Israel from all those around her who despise her people, so they will know that I am the Lord Yahweh!'

translationWords:

- plague
- blood
- slay, slain
- sword
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Sidon.
- **Then there will no longer be pricking briars and painful thorns for the house of Israel from all those around her who despise her people** - AT: "There will not be people anywhere around the people of Israel who wound them like briars that scratch and hurt them like thorns that cause pain and who refuse to show them any respect." (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 28:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ And this is also what Yahweh the Lord says: "I will gather them from distant countries where I have scattered them. And the other people groups will see that I am set apart and honored, when the house of Israel makes their homes in the land I gave my servant Jacob! ²⁶ My people will live safely in Israel; they will build houses and plant vineyards. And when I punish the nearby people groups that despised them, my people will know that it is I, Yahweh their God, who has done this."

ULB:

²⁵ The Lord Yahweh says this, 'When I gather the house of Israel from the peoples among whom they were scattered, and when I am set apart among them, so the nations may see. Then they will make their homes in the land I will give to my servant Jacob. ²⁶ Then they will live securely within her and build houses, plant vineyards, and live securely when I execute justice on all the ones who now despise them from all around; so they will know that I am Yahweh their God!'"

translationWords:

- [set apart](#)
- [nation](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)

translationNotes:

- **within her** - "in the land"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a prophecy against Egypt and its king, Pharaoh. Because Egypt did not fulfill its promise of protecting Judah; it will be conquered by Babylon. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [fulfill](#) and [promise](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 29:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 29:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Almost ten years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, on the twelfth day of the tenth month of that year, Yahweh gave me another message. He said to me, ² "Son of man, turn toward Egypt and proclaim the terrible things that will happen to the king of Egypt and all his people. ³ Give the king this message from me, for I am Yahweh the Lord:

'Know this, Pharaoh, king of Egypt that I, Yahweh, am your enemy.

You are like a great monster that lies in the streams of the Nile River.

You are so bold to say that the Nile River is yours,

and that you made it for yourself.

ULB:

29 ¹ In the tenth year, in the tenth month on the twelfth day of the month, the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, set your face against Pharaoh, the king of Egypt; prophesy against him and against all of Egypt. ³ Declare and say, "The Lord Yahweh says this:

Behold! I am against you, Pharaoh, king of Egypt.

You, the great sea creature that lurks in the midst of the river,

that says, "My river is my own. I have made it for myself."

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- biblical time: day
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- king
- Egypt, Egyptian
- declare, declaration
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- creature
- Nile River, River of Egypt

translationNotes:

- **In the tenth year** - AT: "In the tenth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **in the tenth month on the twelfth day of the month** - “on the twelfth day of the tenth month.” This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The twelfth day is near the beginning of January on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the word of Yahweh came** - “Yahweh spoke his word.” See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the great sea creature** - “the huge monster that lives in the water.” Yahweh begins to compare Pharaoh with a monster that lives in the water. The monster is probably a crocodile. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 29:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ But it will be as though I will put hooks in your jaws

and drag you out onto the land,

with fish sticking to your scales.

⁵ I will leave you and all those fish to die in the desert;

you will fall to the ground,

and no one will pick up your corpse to bury you,

because I declare that your body will be food for the wild animals
and birds.

ULB:

⁴ For I will place hooks in your jaw, and the fish of your Nile will cling to your scales; I will lift you up from the middle of your river along with all the fish of the river that cling to your scales.

⁵ I will throw you down into the wilderness, you and all the fish from your river.

You will fall on the open field; you will not be gathered nor lifted up.

I will give you as food to the living things of the earth and to the birds of the heavens.

translationWords:

- Nile River, River of Egypt
- desert, wilderness
- face
- life, live, living, alive
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh, comparing him with a monster in the water.
- **hooks** - sharp and bent pieces of metal or wood that people used to catch fish and other animals in the water
- **scales** - hard pieces of skin that are on fish, crocodiles, and other animals

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 29:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ When that happens, all the people of Egypt will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do what I say that I will do.

The Israelite people have trusted that you would help them. But you have been like a reed pole in their hands. ⁷ And when they leaned on that pole, it splintered and tore open their shoulders. When they leaned on you, you were like a pole that broke, and as a result you wrenched their hips and made it impossible for them to stand.'

ULB:

⁶ Then all the inhabitants of Egypt will know that I am Yahweh,
because they have been a reed stalk to the house of Israel.

⁷ When they took hold of you in their hand, you broke into splinters and
pierced their shoulder;

when they leaned on you, you shattered their legs and made their hips to
shake.

translationWords:

- **Egypt, Egyptian**

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.
- **they have been a reed stalk** - Yahweh compares the people of Egypt and Pharaoh with a reed stalk because the people of Israel relied on the Egyptians to help them in war, but the Egyptians were not strong enough to help them. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **reed** - a plant that grows near water and looks like very large grass
- **stalk** - the part of a reed that is long and like a thick stick. People can use them like sticks, but the stalks of reeds are not as strong as wood and can break suddenly.
- **took hold of you** - The word "you" refers to Pharaoh.
- **you shattered their legs and made their hips to shake** - "you injured their entire hip" God is speaking here of the harm that the Israelites experienced when they trusted in the Egyptians to defend them against Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon. (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 29:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ Therefore Yahweh the Lord says, 'I will bring Egypt's enemies to attack them with their swords; they will kill Egypt's people and animals. ⁹ Egypt will become an empty desert. Then the people of Egypt will know that it is I, Yahweh, who has the power to do what he says he will do, and that he will punish the people of Egypt for saying that the Nile River is theirs because they made it. ¹⁰ I am against you and your streams, and I will ruin Egypt and make it into an empty desert, from the city of Migdol in the north to Syene in the south, as far south as the border of Cush.

ULB:

⁸ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I will bring a sword against you; I will cut off both man and beast from you. ⁹ So the land of Egypt will become desolate and a ruin; then they will know that I am Yahweh, because the sea monster had said, "The river is mine, for I have made it." ¹⁰ Therefore, behold! I am against you and against your river, so I will give the land of Egypt over to desolation and waste, and you will become a wasteland from the Migdol to Syene and the borders of Cush.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- sword
- desolate, desolation
- ruin, ruins
- waste, wasteland
- Cush

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.
- **Behold!** - AT: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"
- **a sword against you** - The word "you" is feminine singular and refers to the nation of Egypt. Nations were often thought as if they were individual women. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#) and [Forms of You](#))
- **against you** - The word "you" is masculine singular and refers Pharaoh.
- **from the Migdol to Syene** - AT: "In all of Egypt" or "from the northern border of Egypt to the southern border of Egypt." (See: [Merism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 29:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ For forty years no one will walk through that area, and no one will live there. ¹² Egypt will be barren, and it will be surrounded by other abandoned nations. The cities of Egypt will be empty and without people for forty years, and the surrounding lands will be the same. I will scatter the people of Egypt to countries far away.'

ULB:

¹¹ No man's foot will pass through it, and no wild animal's foot will pass through it. It will not be inhabited for forty years. ¹² For I will make the land of Egypt a desolation in the midst of uninhabited lands, and its cities in the midst of wasted cities will become a desolation for forty years; then I will scatter Egypt among the nations, and I will disperse them through the lands.

translationWords:

- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [waste, wasteland](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [nation](#)
- [disperse, dispersion](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.
- **no wild animal's foot will pass through it** - "not even an animal will walk through it" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 29:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ But Yahweh the Lord also says this: 'At the end of forty years, I will enable the people of Egypt to return home again. ¹⁴ I will bring back the people of Egypt whom their enemies had captured, and I will allow them to live again in the region of Pathros in the south, where they lived previously. But Egypt will continue to be a very unimportant kingdom.

ULB:

¹³ For the Lord Yahweh says this: At the end of forty years I will gather Egypt from peoples among whom they were scattered. ¹⁴ I will restore the fortunes of Egypt and bring them back to the region of Pathros, to the land of their origin. Then they will be a lowly kingdom there.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- restore, restoration
- lowly, lowliness
- kingdom

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.
- **they were scattered** - AT: "I scattered them." (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **will restore the fortunes of Egypt** - "will give Egypt what it had lost"
- **the region of Pathros** - the southern part of Egypt between the Delta and the land of Cush. This is also called Upper Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 29:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ It will be the least important of all the nations; it will never again be greater than the nearby countries. I will cause Egypt to be very weak, and they will never again rule over other nations. ¹⁶ When that happens, the leaders of Israel will no longer think of asking Egypt to help them. When I punish Egypt, the Israelites will be reminded that they previously sinned by trusting that Egypt could help them. And the people of Israel will know that Yahweh the Lord has the power to do what he says he will do.”

ULB:

¹⁵ It will be the lowliest of the kingdoms, and it will not be lifted up any more among the nations. I will diminish them so they will no longer rule over nations. ¹⁶ The Egyptians will no longer be a reason for confidence for the house of Israel. Instead, they will be a reminder of the iniquity that Israel committed when they turned to Egypt for help. Then they will know that I am the Lord Yahweh.”

translationWords:

- [kingdom](#)
- [nation](#)
- [confidence, confident](#)
- [iniquity](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.
- **The Egyptians will no longer be a reason for confidence for the house of Israel** - “The nation of Israel will no longer trust in the Egyptians”
- **when they turned to Egypt for help** - “whenever they went to Egypt for help”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 29:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Almost twenty-seven years after we Israelites prisoners had been taken to Babylonia, on the first day of the new year, Yahweh gave me this message: ¹⁸ "Son of man, the army of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon fought very hard against Tyre, with the result that their heads were rubbed bare under their helmets, and their shoulders became raw. But Nebuchadnezzar and his army did not get any valuable things from Tyre to reward them for their hard work in that campaign.

ULB:

¹⁷ Then it came about in the twenty-seventh year on the first of the first month, that the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ¹⁸ "Son of man, Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon stationed his army to do hard work against Tyre. Every head was shaved and every shoulder was bared, but there were never any wages from Tyre for him and his army, for the hard work that he did against Tyre.

translationWords:

- [biblical time: year](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)

translationNotes:

- **in the twenty-seventh year** - AT: "in the twenty-seventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **on the first of the first month** - "on the first day of the first month." This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the beginning of April. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Son of man** - See how you translated this in [2:3](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 29:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Therefore, Yahweh the Lord says that he will enable King Nebuchadnezzar's army to conquer Egypt. They will carry away from there all the valuable things, in order that the king can give them to his soldiers. ²⁰ Yahweh says that he will enable them to conquer Egypt as payment for what they did to Tyre, because Nebuchadnezzar and his army were working for him, doing what he wanted them to do, which was to destroy Tyre."

ULB:

¹⁹ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Behold! I am giving the land of Egypt to Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, and he will take away its wealth, plunder its possessions, and carry off all he finds there; that will be his army's wages. ²⁰ I have given him the land of Egypt as the wages for the work they did for me—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)

translationNotes:

- **Behold!** - AT: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 29:21**UDB:**

²¹ Yahweh said to me, “Some day I will make Israel become a mighty nation. When that happens, I will make them listen to what you tell them. Then they will know that all this has happened because I, Yahweh, will have done this.”

ULB:

²¹ On that day I will make a horn sprout up for the house of Israel, and I make you speak in their midst, so that they will know that I am Yahweh.”

translationWords:

- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **I will make a horn sprout up for the house of Israel** - This phrase means “I will begin to restore the power of the house of Israel.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **in their midst** - “to them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 30 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Egypt and its king continues in this chapter. Babylon will destroy all the towns of Egypt and their allies will not be able to help them. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 30:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 30:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "Son of man, prophesy about what will happen to Egypt. Say that this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say:

'Weep and wail,

because terrible things will happen one day that is coming.

³ That day is near,

the day when I, Yahweh, will punish people;

it will be like a day of full of storm clouds and disaster for many nations.

ULB:

30 ¹ The word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, prophesy and say, 'the Lord Yahweh says this:

Wail, "Woe is the coming day."

³ The day is near. The day is near for Yahweh. It will be a day of clouds, a time of doom for nations.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- woe
- nation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel tells about a message that Yahweh gave him.
- **The word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in **1:1**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **Son of man** - See how you translated this in **2:3**.
- **prophesy and say** - See how you translated this in **Ezekiel 21:8-9**.
- **Wail** - "Cry out with grief" This command is to Egypt and the nations around Egypt.
- **Woe is the coming day** - "That day is very frightening" or "Very bad things will happen on that day"

- **The day is near** - It was implied that “the day” was the time when the people would wail. Alternate translation: “It will soon be the day when you will wail.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **The day is near for Yahweh** - It is implied that on that day, Yahweh will punish people. Alternate translation: “It will soon be the day when Yahweh will punish people.”
- **a day of clouds** - Alternate translations: “It will be like a day with dark clouds” or “It will be frightening like a day with dark clouds.” (See: [Metaphor](#)).
- **a time of doom for nations** - Alternate translations: “a time when terrible things will happen to the nations” or “It will be a time when the people of the nations will suffer”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 30:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ An enemy army will come to attack Egypt with their swords,
 and there will be great distress for the people in Cush.
 The enemy army will kill many people in Egypt;
 they will take away everything of value,
 and they will even tear the buildings down to their foundations.

⁵ Soldiers of Cush, Libya, Lydia, and all the foreigners in the land of Egypt, together with the Jews living in Egypt—they will all die because of war.’

ULB:

⁴ Then a sword will come against Egypt, and there will be anguish in Cush
 when the killed people fall in Egypt—
 when they take her wealth, and when her foundations are ruined.

⁵ Cush, Libya, and Lydia, and all the foreigners, together with the people belonging to the covenant—they will all fall by the sword.

translationWords:

- sword
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Cush
- foundation, founded
- ruin, ruins
- covenant

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh’s words about Egypt.
- **Then a sword will come against Egypt** - The word “sword” here refers to war or an attack. Alternate translations: “There will be war against Egypt” or “An enemy army will attack Egypt.” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **there will be anguish in Cush** - “Cush will be very sad” or “the people of Cush will be full of grief”
- **when the killed people fall in Egypt** - “when many people in Egypt are killed” or “when many people in Egypt die in the war.”

- **when they take her wealth** - “The attackers will take away the wealth of Egypt”
- **when her foundations are ruined** - “The attackers will even ruin the foundations of the buildings in Egypt”
- **Libya** - Libya is a country west of Egypt. Ezekiel called this region Put. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Lydia** - This probably refers to the kingdom of Lydia which was in what is now Turkey. Ezekiel called this region Lud.
- **the people belonging to the covenant** - Possible meanings are 1) “the Jews who live in Egypt” or 2) “the other people in the lands of Egypt’s allies.” It is unclear whether “the covenant” refers to the agreement that Yahweh made with the Israelites or to an agreement that Egypt made with other people groups.
- **will all fall by the sword** - “will all die in battle” or “will all die in the war.” This does not mean that every single person will die, but that many people from all of these countries will die.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 30:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ This is what Yahweh says:

'This army will defeat Egypt's allies,

and the power that the people of Egypt are so proud of will end.

From the city of Migdol in the north to the city of Syene in the south, they will kill the soldiers of Egypt's allies.

This is what Yahweh the Lord declares.

⁷ Egypt's allies' soldiers will be shocked, and her allies' cities will be destroyed, surrounded by ruined cities in nearby nations.

ULB:

⁶ Yahweh says this:

So the ones who support Egypt will fall, and the pride of her strength will go down.

From Migdol to Syene their soldiers will fall by the sword—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

⁷ They will be appalled in the midst of the abandoned lands, and their cities will be among all the ruined cities.

translationWords:

- proud, pride, prideful
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh says this** - "This is what Yahweh says." This sentence introduces what the Lord would say.
- **So the ones** - "In this way, the peoples" or "In this manner, the nations"
- **who support Egypt** - "who help Egypt"
- **will fall** - "will die" or "come to ruin"

- **the pride of her strength will go down** - “the strength of Egypt, which made it proud, will be gone” or “the strength that made Egypt proud will come to ruin”
- **From Migdol to Syene** - Ezekiel names towns on the borders of Egypt in order to refer to all of Egypt. Alternate translation: “In all of Egypt” or “From the northern border of Egypt to the southern border of Egypt.” (See: [Merism](#))
- **their soldiers will fall by the sword** - “Egypt’s soldiers will die by the sword.” Alternate translation: “the attacking army will kill the soldiers of Egypt in battle.”
- **They will be appalled in the midst of the abandoned lands** - “The soldiers of the allies of Egypt will be appalled when they are left surrounded by nothing but abandoned lands”
- **in the midst of** - “among” or “surrounded by”
- **their cities will be among all the ruined cities** - “their cities will be surrounded by ruined cities in nearby nations”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 30:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Then, when I cause everything in Egypt to be burn down,

and when I cause their enemies to defeat all their allies,

people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say
that I will do.

⁹ At that time, I will send messengers to go swiftly up the Nile River in boats to terrify the people of Cush, who still think they are safe. They will be horrified when they hear that Egypt has been destroyed. This will soon happen!

ULB:

⁸ Then they will know that I am Yahweh, when I set fire in Egypt, and when all of her helpers are destroyed. ⁹ In that day messengers will go out from before me in ships to terrorize a secure Cush, and there will be anguish among them on the day of Egypt's doom. For behold! It is coming.

translationWords:

- know, knowledge, make known
- fire
- terror, terrify
- Cush
- doom

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.
- **Then they** - Possible meanings are 1) "Then people" or 2) "Then the Egyptians."
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **when I set fire in Egypt** - Fire refers to the fires that often occurs in war. Alternate translation: "when I destroy Egypt with fire" or "when I send an attacking army to burn Egypt with fire." (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **all of her helpers are destroyed** - Alternate translation: "I destroy all of the allies of Egypt" or "I break all those who help Egypt." (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **messengers will go out from before me in ships to terrorize a secure Cush** - Messengers will bring the news of Egypt's destruction to Cush, who will be frightened by the news.
- **to terrorize a secure Cush** - "in order to frighten Cush, who now feels safe from danger"
- **there will be anguish among them on the day of Egypt's doom** - "the people of Cush will also have great pain when I punish Egypt"

- **behold!** - The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. It can also be translated as “indeed!”
- **It is coming** - “It” refers to the “great pain” or “great sorrow” that Cush will have when they are punished along with Egypt.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 30:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say:

By the power of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon

I will destroy very many people in Egypt.

¹¹ Nebuchadnezzar and his army, whose soldiers have no pity on anyone,

will come to destroy Egypt.

They will pull out their swords

and fill Egypt with the corpses of those whom they have killed.

ULB:

¹⁰ The Lord Yahweh says this: I will make an end of the multitudes of Egypt by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon. ¹¹ He and his army with him, the terror of nations, will be brought to destroy the land; they will draw out their swords against Egypt and fill the land with dead people.

translationWords:

- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- nation
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **The Lord Yahweh says this** - See how you translated this in [5:5](#).
- **I will make an end of the multitudes of Egypt** - Alternate translation: "I will make it so that Egypt will no longer have many people."
- **by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar** - Nebuchadnezzar will be the one who brings this punishment about.
- **He and his army with him ... will be brought to destroy the land** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "I will bring Nebuchadnezzar and his army ... to destroy the land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **He and his army with him, the terror of nations** - Yahweh calls Nebuchadnezzar "the terror of the nations" because all of the nations are greatly afraid of his army.

- **to destroy the land** - “so they will destroy the land.” Yahweh will bring Nebuchadnezzar and his people so that they will destroy the land.
- **draw out their swords against Egypt** - “fight against Egypt”
- **fill the land with dead people** - This is an exaggeration to show that the Babylonians will kill very many Egyptians. There will be so many dead Egyptians that it will seem that their dead bodies cover all of the land of Egypt. Alternate translation: “they will kill so many people that it will seem like their dead bodies are everywhere” (See: [Hyperbole](#)).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 30:12**UDB:**

¹² I will cause the streams of the Nile River to become dry,
and I will sell the nation of Egypt to evil men.
By the power of foreigners
I will ruin the land and everything that is in it.

That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it will happen.

ULB:

¹² I will make the rivers into dry ground, and I will sell the land into the hand of wicked men. I will make the land and its fullness desolate by the hand of strangers—I, Yahweh, have spoken.

translationWords:

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.
- **I will make the rivers into dry ground** - "I will dry up the rivers of Egypt"
- **I will sell the land into the hand of wicked men** - Yahweh will give the Babylonians control over Egypt just as a person who sells something gives the one who buys it control over that thing. Alternate translation: "I will give control of the land to wicked men." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will make the land and its fullness desolate by the hand of strangers** - "I will cause people from another nation to destroy the land and everything in it"
- **its fullness** - "everything in the land"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 30:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ This is also what I, Yahweh the Lord, say:

I will cause the enemy to destroy the idols
in the city of Memphis.

No longer will there be a king in Egypt,
and I will terrify everyone in the land of Egypt.

¹⁴ I will cause all people to leave the region of Pathros in southern Egypt.

I will start fires in the city of Zoan in northeast Egypt
and punish the people in the city of Thebes in southern Egypt.

ULB:

¹³ The Lord Yahweh says this: I will destroy idols, and I will bring an end to the worthless idols of Memphis. There will no longer be a prince in the land of Egypt, and I will put terror on the land of Egypt. ¹⁴ Then I will make Pathros desolate and set fire in Zoan, and I will execute acts of judgment on Thebes.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- idol, idolatrous
- prince, princess
- terror, terrify
- desolate, desolation
- fire
- judge, judgment

translationNotes:

- **The Lord Yahweh says this** - See how you translated this in 5:5.
- **bring an end to the worthless idols** - “destroy the useless idols”
- **Memphis** - Memphis was a very important city in Egypt. It was near modern-day Cairo. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **a prince in the land of Egypt** - “an important ruler in the land of Egypt”
- **I will put terror on the land of Egypt** - “I will make the people of Egypt very afraid”
- **Pathros** - This was a region in southern Egypt.
- **set fire in Zoan** - “I will burn Zoan with fire”

- **Zoan** - Zoan was another important city in Egypt.
- **Thebes** - This was the capital city of southern Egypt.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 30:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ I will punish the soldiers in the fortress of Pelusium in northern Egypt,

and I will destroy the people in Thebes.

¹⁶ I will burn Egypt with fire;

the people in Pelusium will suffer severe pain.

Enemies will conquer Thebes,

and the people in Memphis will constantly be terrified.

ULB:

¹⁵ For I will pour out my fury on Pelusium, the stronghold of Egypt, and cut off the multitude of Thebes. ¹⁶ Then I will set fire in Egypt. Pelusium will be in severe agony, and Thebes will be broken up. Memphis will have enemies every day.

translationWords:

- **stronghold, fortress, fortified**
- **Egypt, Egyptian**
- **fire**
- **adversary, enemy**

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.
- **For I will pour out my fury on Pelusium** - "For I will act in anger against Pelusium" or "Because I am so angry, I will punish Pelusium severely"
- **Pelusium** - This was an important city in northern Egypt. (See: **How to Translate Names**)
- **cut off the multitude of Thebes** - "kill the very large number of people in Thebes"
- **Thebes** - See how you translated the name of this city in **3:14**.
- **Then I will set fire in Egypt** - "I will burn Egypt with fire"
- **will be in severe agony** - "will be in great pain" or "will feel great pain"
- **Thebes will be broken up** - "Thebes will be destroyed." Alternate translation: "Enemies will conquer Thebes." (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **Memphis** - See how you translated the name of this city in **30:13**.
- **Memphis will have enemies every day** - Alternate translation: "The people of Memphis will be worried every day"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 30:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ The enemy will kill many young men in the cities of Heliopolis and Bubastis in northern Egypt, and the people who are left will have to go to Babylon.

¹⁸ It will be a dark day of destruction at the city of Tahpanhes in northeast Egypt

when I cause the power of Egypt to end;
that country will no longer be strong.

It will be as though a dark cloud will cover Egypt,

because the people of its villages will go to Babylon as prisoners.

¹⁹ That is how I will punish Egypt,

and people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

ULB:

¹⁷ The young men in Heliopolis and Bubastis will fall by the sword, and their cities will go into captivity. ¹⁸ In Tahpanhes, the day will hold back its light when I break the yoke of Egypt there, and the pride of her strength will be finished. There will be a cloud covering her, and her daughters will walk into captivity. ¹⁹ I will execute acts of judgment in Egypt, so they will know that I am Yahweh.”

translationWords:

- captive, captivity
- yoke
- judge, judgment

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh’s words about Egypt.
- **Heliopolis and Bubastis** - These were cities in northern Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **will fall by the sword** - The word “sword” is used here to refer to a battle or war. Alternate translation: “will die in battle” or “will die in the war.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **their cities will go into captivity** - “the people of their cities will become captives” or “the people will be taken away as prisoners.”

- **Tahpanhes** - This was an important city in northern Egypt.
- **the day will hold back its light** - The day is spoken of as if it were able to keep its own light from shining. AT: “the day will be dark” (See: [Personification](#))
- **when I break the yoke of Egypt there** - The word “yoke” here refers to Egypt’s power to oppress people. Alternate translation: “when I stop Egypt from oppressing people” or “when I end Egypt’s power to cruelly control other nations.”
- **the pride of her strength will be finished** - “Egypt will not be proud of being strong anymore” or “that country will no longer be proud of being strong” (UDB)
- **There will be a cloud covering her** - “A cloud will be over Egypt” or “It will be as if there is a cloud over Egypt.” Possible meanings are 1) the dark cloud represents how sad the people of Egypt will feel, or 2) there will be a cloud of dust over Egypt from everything that is destroyed.
- **her daughters** - Possible meanings are 1) the people of the Egyptian towns or 2) the daughters of the Egyptian people
- **I will execute acts of judgment in Egypt** - “I will punish Egypt in many ways”
- **so they** - “so the Egyptians”
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 30:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Almost eleven years after the Babylonians took us Israelites to their country, Yahweh gave me another message on the seventh day of the first month of that year. He said, ²¹ "Son of man, I have enabled the army of Nebuchadnezzar to defeat the army of the king of Egypt. It is as though I have broken one of the arms of the king of Egypt, and it has not been bandaged in order that it could be healed, and it has not been put in splints in order that after it heals the arm will be strong enough to hold a sword.

ULB:

²⁰ Then it came about in the eleventh year, in the first month, in the seventh day of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ²¹ "Son of man, I have broken the arm of Pharaoh, the king of Egypt. Behold! It is not bound up and able to receive medicine; no one can put a bandage on it, so it will not be strong enough to grasp a sword.

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- biblical time: day
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- king

translationNotes:

- **Then it came about** - This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **in the eleventh year** - See how you translated this in [26:1](#).
- **in the first month, in the seventh day of the month** - "in the seventh day of the first month." This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The seventh day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Son of man** - See how you translated this in [2:3](#).
- **broken the arm of Pharaoh** - Here "arm" represents the power of a king. (See: [Parables](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **Behold!** - The word "Behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
- **It is not bound up and able to receive medicine** - AT: "His arm is not wrapped up and it does not have medicine on so it can heal" (See: [Parables](#) and [Metaphor](#))

- **bandage** - a soft piece of cloth that people put on wounds so that they will heal
- **so it will not be strong enough to grasp a sword** - Here “sword” represents the power of a king in war. AT: “so his arm will not be strong enough to use a sword” (See: [Parables](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 30:22-24**UDB:**

²² Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I am the enemy of the king of Egypt. I will completely destroy Egypt's power; it is as though now I will break both of the king's arms, the good one and the broken one, and cause the sword to fall from his hand. ²³ I will scatter the people of Egypt among the nations. ²⁴ It is as though I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon and put a sword in his hand, and as though I will break the arms of the king of Egypt, and he will groan in front of the king of Babylon like a soldier who is wounded and about to die.

ULB:

²² Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Behold, I am against Pharaoh, the king of Egypt. For I will break his arm, both the strong one and the broken one, and I will make the sword fall from his hand. ²³ Then I will scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them among the lands. ²⁴ I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon and place my sword in his hand so that I might destroy Pharaoh's arms. He will groan before the king of Babylon with the groans of a dying man.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- nation
- disperse, dispersion
- Babylon, Babylonian
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **the Lord Yahweh says this** - See how you translated this in [3:11](#).
- **both the strong one and the broken one** - "both the arm that is healthy and the arm that is already broken"
- **I will make the sword fall from his hand** - "I will knock the sword out of the Pharaoh's hand"
- **scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them among the lands** - See how you translated a similar phrase in [20:23](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **lands** - "countries"
- **I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon** - "I will make the arms of the king of Babylon strong"
- **He will groan before the king of Babylon** - When the king of Babylon comes to attack Egypt, Pharaoh will groan.

- **groan** - A groan is a loud noise that people make when they have a lot of pain or are dying.
- **with the groans of a dying man** - “as a man who is dying groans” or “like a man who is dying”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 30:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ I will cause the king of Babylon to become stronger and stronger, and the king of Egypt to become completely weak. When that happens, when I make the Babylonian army strong, they will use that power to attack Egypt. ²⁶ I will scatter the people of Egypt among the nations. And when that happens, people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

ULB:

²⁵ For I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon, while Pharaoh's arms will fall. Then they will know that I am Yahweh, when I put my sword into the hand of the king of Babylon; for he will attack the land of Egypt with it. ²⁶ So I will scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them through the lands. Then they will know that I am Yahweh.”

translationWords:

- [disperse, dispersion](#)

translationNotes:

- **For I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon** - “I will make the arms of the king of Babylon strong.”
- **while Pharaoh's arms will fall** - “but Pharaoh will not be able to use his arms” or “Pharaoh's arms will be so weak that he cannot use them”
- **Then they** - The word “they” possibly refers to 1) “the Egyptians” or 2) “all people who hear what Yahweh has done.”
- **know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **for he will attack the land of Egypt with it** - “and the king of Babylon will attack the land of Egypt with my sword”
- **scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them through the lands** - See how you translated a similar phrase in [20:23](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 31 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Egypt and its king continue in this chapter. God told Egypt to remember what happened to Assyria when it became proud. This same things will now happen to Egypt. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 31:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 31:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Almost eleven years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, Yahweh gave me another message, on the first day of the third month of that year. He said, ² "Son of man, say to the king of Egypt and all of his servants,

'You think that there is no country whose power is as great as the power of your country.

ULB:

31 ¹ Then it came about in the eleventh year, in the third month, on the first day of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, say to Pharaoh, the king of Egypt, and to his servants around him,

'In your greatness, who are you like?

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- biblical time: day
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- king
- Egypt, Egyptian
- like, likeness

translationNotes:

- **it came about** - This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **in the eleventh year** - See how you translated this in [26:1](#).
- **in the third month, on the first day of the month** - "on the first day of the third month." This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. This first day is near the beginning of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Son of man** - See how you translated this in [2:3](#).
- **In your greatness, who are you like?** - "Who is as great as you are?" Yahweh uses this question to introduce a new topic. Pharaoh thought that his nation was the greatest, but God

is about to talk about another great nation. AT: “You think that there is no country whose power is as great as the power of your country.” (UDB) (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 31:3-4**UDB:**

³ You think that your country is as great as Assyria was.

Well, Assyria was like a tall cedar tree in Lebanon;
it had big beautiful branches
that provided shade for other trees in the forest.

It was very tall;
its top reached up into the clouds.

⁴ Water came to it from deep springs,
and as a result that cedar tree grew tall and very green.

Then water flowed around the base of the tree
into channels that took water to other nearby trees in the open
countryside.

ULB:

³ Behold! Assyria was a cedar in Lebanon with beautiful branches, a forested canopy, and great height.

Its tree top was among the clouds.

⁴ Many waters made it tall; the deep waters made it huge. Rivers flowed all around its area,

for their channels stretched out to all the trees in the field.

translationWords:

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- cedar
- Lebanon
- water, waters

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are God's words to Pharaoh about Assyria. God gives his message in the form of a parable about a great cedar tree. (See: [Parables](#))
- **Behold!** - AT: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

- **a forested canopy** - Possible meanings are: 1) “with so many branches that it provided good shade” or 2) “that provided shade for the other trees in the forest.”
- **and great height** - “and very tall”
- **Its tree top was among the clouds** - Possible meanings are 1) “The top of the tree was in the clouds” or 2) “Its top was above the branches of the other trees.”
- **Many waters made it tall** - “Because the cedar had a lot of water, it grew very tall”
- **the deep waters made it huge** - “the water deep in the ground made the cedar grow very big”
- **for their channels stretched out to all the trees in the field** - “and streams flowed from the rivers to all the trees of the field.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 31:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ That huge tree grew very tall,

higher than all the other trees around it.

Its branches grew very thick and long

because of the abundant water at the base of the tree.

⁶ Birds built their nests in the branches,

and wild animals gave birth to their young under those branches.

And it was as though people of all the great nations lived in the shade of that tree.

⁷ It was majestic and beautiful;

its branches spread out widely

because the roots of the tree grew down into the ground where there was a plentiful supply of water.

ULB:

⁵ Its great height was more than any of the other trees in the field, and its branches became very many;

its branches grew long because of many waters as they grew.

⁶ Every bird of the heavens nested in its branches, while every living thing of the field gave birth to its young under its foliage.

All of the many nations lived under its shade.

⁷ For it was beautiful in its greatness and the length of its branches, for its roots were in many waters.

translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- nation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

- **Its great height was more than any of the other trees in the field** - “The cedar was taller than any of the other trees of the field”
- **its branches became very many** - “it grew very many branches”
- **because of many waters as they grew** - “because it had a lot of water”
- **Every bird of the heavens nested in its branches** - “All kinds of birds that fly in the sky made nests in its branches”
- **while every living thing of the field gave birth to its young under its foliage** - “and all of the creatures that live in the field gave birth under the cedar’s branches”
- **All of the many nations lived under its shade** - “all of the powerful nations lived in its shade” or “all of the great nations lived in the shade of that tree” (UDB)
- **it was beautiful in its greatness and the length of its branches** - “It was beautiful because it was very big and its branches were very long”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 31:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ The cedar trees in my garden in Eden were not as great as that tree,

and the branches of the fir trees were not as long and thick as the branches of that cedar tree.

And the branches of the plane trees were not as long and thick, either.

No tree in my garden was as beautiful as that cedar tree.

⁹ Because I caused that tree to become very beautiful

because of its magnificent green branches,

all the leaders of other countries represented by those other trees in Eden envied the country represented by that tree.'

ULB:

⁸ Cedars in the garden of God could not equal it.

None among the cypress trees matched its branches, and the plane tree could not equal its boughs.

There was no other tree in the garden of God that was like it in its beauty.

⁹ I made it beautiful with its many branches

and all the trees of Eden that were in the garden of God envied it.

translationWords:

- Eden, garden of Eden
- envy, covet

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.
- **Cedars in the garden of God could not equal it** - Since these were God's words to Pharaoh, it can also be translated as "The cedar trees in my garden were not as great as that tree."
- **the garden of God** - This is another way of referring to "the garden of Eden."
- **None among the cypress trees matched its branches** - Yahweh was comparing how many branches the trees had. AT: "None of the cypress trees had as many branches as the cedar." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **cypress trees** - Cypress trees have very many branches. They can grow very tall.

- **the plane tree could not equal its boughs** - It was implied Yahweh was comparing the long branches of the cedar tree with the long branches of the plane tree. AT: “the plane tree did not have branches like the cedar tree.” or “no plane tree had branches as long as the branches of the cedar tree”
- **plane trees** - Plane trees are large, leafy trees with strong branches. They are similar to sycamore trees.
- **was like it in its beauty** - “was as beautiful as the cedar tree”
- **I made it beautiful with its many branches** - “I made the cedar beautiful by giving it many long branches.”
- **envied it** - “were jealous of the cedar tree”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 31:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: "That tree, which represents Assyria, grew very tall; its top was higher than the other trees, and it became very proud because it was so tall. ¹¹ Therefore, I enabled another mighty nation to conquer it, to destroy it as it deserved to be destroyed. I have already discarded it.

ULB:

¹⁰ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Because you were so tall, and because it grew tall and set its top among the clouds, ¹¹ I have given it into the hand of a mighty one of the nations, to deal with it according to what its wickedness deserves. I have thrown it out.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- heart
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- ruler, rulers, rule
- nation
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.
- **set its top among the clouds** - Possible meanings are 1) "raised his top above the branches of the other trees" or 2) "raised the top of his tree into the clouds." See how you translated a similar sentence in [3:3](#)
- **set its top** - This passage continues to refer to the king of Assyria, who was represented by the cedar tree.
- **I have given it into the hand of a mighty one of the nations** - "I put him in the power of the strongest nation." The word "handed" represents control. "I gave the strongest nation power over him." (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I have thrown it out** - "I sent the cedar away from the cedar's land because the cedar was wicked"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 31 General Notes
- Ezekiel 31 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 31:12

UDB:

¹² A foreign army, one that has caused people of other nations to be terrified, cut it down and left it. Its branches fell on the mountains and in the valleys. Some of its branches lay broken in all the ravines in the land. All the people of other nations came out from being under its shade and left it.

ULB:

¹² Foreigners who were the terror of all the nations cut it off and left it to die. Its branches fell on the mountains and all the valleys, and its boughs lie broken in all the ravines of the land. Then all the nations on earth came out from under its shade and they went away from it.

translationWords:

- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [terror, terrify](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.
- **who were the terror of all the nations** - "who made all the nations afraid"
- **cut it off** - "cut the cedar down"
- **its boughs lie broken** - "the foreigners broke the boughs of the cedar"
- **boughs** - Boughs are very large branches that grow on trees. Usually, many smaller branches grow on the boughs.
- **came out from under its shade** - "left the shade of the cedar"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 31:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Birds settled on the fallen tree, and wild animals lived among its branches. This is what other nations were like when they depended on Assyria. ¹⁴ As a result, no other tree—no other nation, even if the tree has plenty of water, will ever grow very high and become proud, or lift its top above the branches of other trees. Other nations will not become as strong as that nation did; nations will all certainly die and decay, as people die and go down to their graves.”

ULB:

¹³ All the birds of the heavens rested on its trunk
and all the beasts of the field sat on its branches.

¹⁴ This happened so that none of the other watered trees would ever grow that tall, so that they would not raise their tree tops above the foliage, for no other tree that drank up water would ever again grow that tall. For they were all given over to death down to the lowest part of the earth, in the midst of the people of mankind who go down to the pit.

translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- death, die, dead
- pit

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh’s parable about the cedar continues.
- **All the birds of the heavens** - “All the birds that fly in the sky”
- **rested on its trunk** - This can be translated as “lived on the remains of the cedar” or “lived on the dead wood from the cedar that was laying on the ground”
- **trunk** - The trunk is a very thick part of the tree that comes out of the ground and holds up the rest of the tree.
- **the beasts of the field sat on its branches** - “the wild animals lived in the branches of the cedar”
- **watered trees** - “trees that get a lot of water”
- **would not raise their tree tops above the foliage** - Possible meanings are 1) “would not grow taller than the branches of other trees” or 2) “would not put their tops in the clouds.”
- **for no other tree that drank up water would ever again grow that tall** - “and no other trees that get a lot of water will ever grow that tall again”

- **For they were all given over to death** - “For I gave them all over to death” or “For I made it so that they all will die.” Yahweh is speaking. (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **down to the lowest part of the earth** - “and I made it so that they all will go deep under the ground.” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **in the midst of the people of mankind who go down to the pit** - “to be with those people who have died and gone down to the grave”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 31:15**UDB:**

¹⁵ This is what Yahweh the Lord says: "When that great tree was cut down, it was as though the springs that watered it mourned for it, because I caused the plentiful water from the springs to dry up. It was as if I had caused the mountains in Lebanon to mourn for it, and all the trees there to weep.

ULB:

¹⁵ The Lord Yahweh says this: On the day when the cedar went down to Sheol I brought mourning to the earth. I covered the deep waters over it, and I held back the ocean waters. I kept back the great waters, and I brought mourning to Lebanon for him. So all the trees of the field mourned because of it.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [hades, sheol](#)
- [mourn, mourning](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [Lebanon](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.
- **On the day when the cedar went down to Sheol** - The phrase "went down to Sheol" means "died." AT: "On the day that the cedar died" or "On the day that the cedar was chopped down." (See: [Idiom](#))
- **I brought mourning to the earth** - "I caused the earth to mourn." It was as though Yahweh made the waters, Lebanon, and the wild trees all mourn for the cedar.
- **I covered the deep waters over it** - The word "covered" possibly refers to putting on cloths for mourning. AT: "I made the water from the springs mourn for the cedar" or "it was as though the springs that watered it mourned for it" (UDB)
- **I held back the ocean waters** - "I kept the water in the ocean from watering the earth"
- **I kept back the great waters** - "I made it so that there would not be a lot of water anymore"
- **and I brought mourning to Lebanon for him** - "and I made Lebanon mourn for the cedar"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 31 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 31 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 31:16**UDB:**

¹⁶ I caused the people of other nations to tremble when they heard that tree fall to the ground—when they heard that Assyria had been destroyed. All the other people groups had also been like beautiful, well-watered trees in Lebanon, but they were comforted when the king represented by that cedar tree arrived among them in the place where they were as dead people.

ULB:

¹⁶ I brought shuddering to the nations at the sound of his downfall, when I threw him down to Sheol with those who went down into the pit. So I comforted all the trees of Eden in the lowest parts of the earth. These had been the choicest and best trees of Lebanon; the trees that drank the waters.

translationWords:

- nation
- hades, sheol
- pit
- comfort, comforter
- Eden, garden of Eden
- earth, earthly
- Lebanon

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.
- **when I threw him down to Sheol** - "when I threw that tree down to Sheol." This phrase means, "when I killed the cedar." (See: **Idiom**)
- **with those who went down into the pit** - "with everyone else who had died and gone into the ground"
- **in the lowest parts of the earth** - "that were already deep down in the ground". This phrase means "that had already died."
- **the choicest and best trees of Lebanon; the trees that drank the waters** - "the best trees of Lebanon that everyone would want; trees that got a lot of water" These are the trees of Eden that were in the lowest parts of the earth.
- **the choicest** - This is something that everyone would want because it is very good.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 31:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ The people represented by the trees that grew in the shade of that huge tree, the allies of the great nation that the cedar tree represents, had also died and gone down to where the dead people are.

¹⁸ This parable is a warning to you people of Egypt. You think that there is no other nation that is as great and glorious as yours is. But your nation will also be destroyed, along with those other nations. Your people will be there among the other people who are not fit to worship me, people who have been killed by their enemies' swords. That is what will happen to the king of Egypt and all his servants." This is what the Lord Yahweh has declared will happen.

ULB:

¹⁷ For they also went down with it to Sheol, to the ones who had been killed by the sword. These were its strong arm, those nations who had lived in its shade. ¹⁸ Which of the trees in Eden was your equal in glory and greatness? For you will be brought down with the trees of Eden to the lowest parts of the earth among the uncircumcised; you will live with those who were killed by the sword.'

This is Pharaoh and all of his servants—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration."

translationWords:

- **hades, sheol**
- **sword**
- **Eden, garden of Eden**
- **glory, glorious**
- **earth, earthly**
- **uncircumcised, uncircumcision**
- **Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God**
- **declare, declaration**

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.
- **they also went down with it to Sheol** - "Those trees of Lebanon also died and went down to Sheol with the cedar"
- **who had been killed by the sword** - AT: "whom enemies had killed with swords" or "who had died in battle" (See: **Active or Passive** and **Metonymy**)

- **These were its strong arm** - “These trees of Lebanon were its strong arm.” The phrase “strong arm” means “power.” AT: “These trees of Lebanon were the power of the cedar” or “These trees strengthened the cedar.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Which of the trees in Eden was your equal in glory and greatness?** - “Which of these trees in Eden had as much glory as you and was as great as you?” God asks Pharaoh this question to show him that the parable applies to him and his country. It can start with “So Pharaoh” or “So Egypt.” (See” [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **For you will be brought down** - AT: “For I will bring you down”
- **with the trees of Eden** - AT: “like the other trees of Eden”
- **to the lowest parts of the earth** - “to a place deep in the ground”
- **among the uncircumcised** - AT: “where you will be with people who are not circumcised”
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Egypt and its king concludes in this chapter. Egypt will have its army destroyed, just like happened to so many other nations.

Links:

- [Ezekiel 32:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 32:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Almost twelve years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, Yahweh gave me another message, on the first day of the twelfth month of that year. He told me, ² "Son of man, sing a sad song about Pharaoh the king of Egypt. Sing this to him:

'People think that you are like a lion among the nations;

but you are like a sea monster in the river

thrashing around in the water,

churning up the water with your feet

and making all the water muddy.

ULB:

32 ¹ Then it happened in the twelfth month of the twelfth year, on the first of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, lift up a lament concerning Pharaoh the king of Egypt; say to him, 'You are like a young lion among the nations,

but you are like a monster in the seas; you churn up the water,

you stir up the waters with your feet and muddy their waters.

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- lament, lamentation
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- king
- Egypt, Egyptian
- lion
- nation
- water, waters

translationNotes:

- **Then it happened** - This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

- **in the twelfth month ... on the first of the month** - This is the twelfth and final month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the end of February. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **of the twelfth year** - AT: “of the twelfth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the word of Yahweh came** - “Yahweh spoke his word.” See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Son of man** - See how you translated this in [2:3](#).
- **You are like a young lion ... like a monster in the seas** - Possible meanings are 1) He thought he was like a lion, but he was really only a monster, or 2) he was like a lion and a monster.
- **like a young lion among the nations** - Egypt was stronger than other nations, like lions are stronger than other animals. (See: [Simile](#))
- **like a monster in the seas** - Pharaoh was powerful but he only caused trouble for others, like this description of a monster in the water. (See: [Simile](#))
- **monster** - A monster is an animal that is big and dangerous. This one might be a crocodile. See how you translated this word in [29:3](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:3-4**UDB:**

³ But I, the Lord Yahweh, say to you

that I will send many people to throw my net over you,
and that they will haul you up onto the land.

⁴ They will throw you into a field, where I will leave you to your fate.

I will allow the birds to sit on you,

and all the wild animals will eat the flesh of your corpse until their
stomachs are full.

ULB:

³ The Lord Yahweh says this:

So I will spread my net over you in the assembly of many peoples, and they
will lift you up in my net.

⁴ I will abandon you in the land. I will throw you into a field

and cause all the birds of the heavens to settle on you; the hunger of all living
animals on earth will be satisfied by you.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- assembly, assemble
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthly

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh and to compare him to a monster that lives in the water.
- **The Lord Yahweh says this** - See how you translated this in 5:5.
- **So I will spread my net over you in the assembly of many peoples** - AT: “So I will gather many peoples and throw my net over you.” (**Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **they will lift you up in my net** - AT: “using my net, the peoples will pull you up out of the water” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)

- **I will abandon you in the land** - “I will leave you helpless on the land.” The monster that was scary when it was in the water cannot do anything when it is left on dry land.
- **all the birds of the heavens** - “all the birds that fly in the sky”
- **the hunger of all living animals on earth will be satisfied by you** - AT: “I will let all the animals of the earth eat your body until they are not hungry anymore” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:5-6**UDB:**

- ⁵ I will cause them to scatter your flesh on the hills
and fill the valleys with your maggot eaten bodies.
- ⁶ I will cause them to fill the land with your blood,
and the mountains, too;
they will fill the ravines with your blood.

ULB:

- ⁵ For I will put your flesh on the mountains, and I will fill the valleys with your worm filled corpse.
- ⁶ Then I will pour your blood over the mountains,
and the stream beds will be filled with your blood.

translationWords:

- [flesh](#)
- [blood](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh and to compare him to a monster that lives in the water.
- **your worm filled corpse** - “your rotting body”
- **Then I will pour your blood over the mountains** - AT: “I will flood the land with your blood all the way to the mountains.”
- **the stream beds will be filled with your blood** - AT: “I will fill the streams with your blood” or “and they will fill the streams with your blood” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ When I get rid of you and your descendants,

I will cover the sky and not allow the stars to shine.

I will put a dark cloud in front of the sun,

and the moon will not shine.

⁸ I will cause the stars in the sky to be dark,

and there will be darkness over your entire land;

that will surely happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have said it.

ULB:

⁷ Then when I put out your lamp, I will cover the heavens and darken its stars;

I will cover the sun with clouds, and the moon will not shine.

⁸ I will darken all the glowing lights in the heavens over you,

and I will put darkness over your land—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

translationWords:

- lamp
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- light
- darkness
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues telling Pharaoh what he will do to Egypt.
- **Then when I put out your lamp** - “when I snuff out your flame.” Yahweh compares the way he will destroy Pharaoh to the way he would put out the flame of a lamp. AT: “When I destroy you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **I will cover the heavens** - Yahweh will cover the sky so that people on earth cannot see the light of the stars, sun and moon.
- **darken its stars** - “I will make the stars dark.” They will have no light.
- **I will put darkness over your land** - “I will make it dark in your land”
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ And I will terrify the people of many nations when they hear how I destroy you,
 there where I will send you,
 in countries that you have never known about.

¹⁰ I will cause many people to be shocked because of what has happened to you;

their kings will be horrified and shudder because I destroyed you,
 when I swung my sword in front of them to kill you.

At the time that you die,
 all of them will tremble,
 fearing that I will kill them, too.

ULB:

⁹ So I will terrify the heart of many peoples in lands that you do not know, when I bring about your collapse among the nations, among lands that you have not known.[1] Instead of *when I bring about your collapse among the nations*, some ancient and modern versions have *when I take you into captivity among the nations*. ¹⁰ I will shock many peoples concerning you; their kings will shudder in horror concerning you when I swing my sword before them. Every moment each one will tremble because of you, on the day of your downfall.

translationWords:

- terror, terrify
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation
- king
- sword

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh.
- **I will terrify the heart of many peoples** - AT: "I will make the hearts of many peoples afraid" or "I will cause many people to be terrified"
- **in lands that you do not know** - The way that Yahweh destroys Egypt will be so scary that even people in lands that Pharaoh never knew about will hear about it.

- **when I bring about your collapse among the nations** - AT: “when nations hear about the way I destroyed you”
- **I will shock many peoples concerning you** - “I will make many peoples horrified because of what happens to you”
- **their kings will shudder in horror concerning you** - AT: “their kings will be so scared about what happens to you that they will shake”
- **Every moment each one will tremble because of you** - AT: “Every one of them will keep shaking because of their fear”
- **on the day of your downfall** - AT: “when I destroy you”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ I, the Lord Yahweh tell you, Egypt,

that the swords of the army of the king of Babylon will strike you.

¹² I will cause the mighty soldiers of Babylonia

to kill your best soldiers—

the soldiers of Babylonia, who are more ruthless than those of any other nation.

They will cause the people of Egypt to quit being proud,

because they will kill very many of your people.

ULB:

¹¹ For the Lord Yahweh says this: The sword of the king of Babylon will come against you.

¹² I will cause your servants to fall by warriors' swords—each warrior a terror of nations.

These warriors will devastate the glory of Egypt and destroy all of its multitudes.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- sword
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- terror, terrify
- nation
- devastate, devastation
- glory, glorious
- Egypt, Egyptian

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh.
- **The sword of the king of Babylon will come against you** - The word “sword” refers here to an army. AT: “The army of the king of Babylon will attack you”

- **I will cause your servants to fall by warriors' swords** - AT: "I will cause your people to fall because of the swords of mighty men"
- **each warrior a terror of nations** - AT: "Each warrior terrifies the nations" or "each one of them makes the nations afraid"
- **and destroy all of its multitudes** - "and kill the very large number of people that live in Egypt"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ I will destroy all the cattle in Egypt,

which graze alongside the streams.

As a result, the water in those streams will never again become muddy because of people and cattle walking in them.

¹⁴ Then I will allow the streams in Egypt to become calm again

and to flow as smoothly as olive oil flows.” This is what the Lord Yahweh announces.

ULB:

¹³ For I will destroy all the livestock from beside the plentiful waters;

the foot of man will no longer stir the waters up, neither will the hooves of cattle stir them.

¹⁴ Then I will calm their waters and make their rivers run like oil—

this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

translationWords:

- livestock
- hoof, hoofed, hooves
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- oil
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking.
- **all the livestock** - Livestock are animals that people have to eat and for other reasons. Cows, sheep, and goats are all livestock.
- **from beside the plentiful waters** - “from the places where there is a lot of water”
- **the foot of man** - “the feet of people”

- **Then I will calm their waters** - Possible meanings are 1) “I will make the water calm” or 2) “I will make the water clear.” When no one stirs up the water, the dirt settles down and the water becomes clear.
- **make their rivers run like oil** - Oil flows slowly and smoothly. AT: “make the rivers run smoothly like oil” (See: [Simile](#))
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ He also says this: "When I cause Egypt to become empty,
 when I strip off everything that grows on the land,
 and when I get rid of all the people who live there,
 people will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do
 what I say that I will do.

¹⁶ That is the sad song that people will sing about Egypt.

Women of many nations will sing it;

they will chant it about Egypt and all its servants."

This will surely happen because Yahweh has said that it would happen.

ULB:

¹⁵ When I make the land of Egypt—a land that was full—a ruined place, an abandoned place;

when I attack all of her inhabitants, then they will know that I am Yahweh.

¹⁶ There will be a lament, for the daughters of the nations will lament over her; they will lament over Egypt.

They will lament over all her servants!—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration."

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- lament, lamentation
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking.
- **a land that was full** - AT: "a land that was full of living creatures" or "a land that was full of life"
- **when I attack all of her inhabitants** - "when I destroy all who live there"

- **know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **There will be a lament** - AT: “This is the song of mourning that people will sing”
- **the daughters of the nations** - Possible meanings are 1) “the women of other nations” or “people of other nations”
- **will lament over her** - The word “her” refers to the country of Egypt.
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ On the fifteenth day of that same month, Yahweh gave me another message. He said,

¹⁸ "Son of man, wail about the servants of Egypt, because I will send them to the place under the earth, where they and people of other mighty nations will be. I will send them there, along with others, down to the place where the dead are.

ULB:

¹⁷ Then it happened in the twelfth year, on the fifteenth day of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me and said,

¹⁸ "Son of man, weep for the servants of Egypt and throw them down—
her and the daughters of majestic nations—to the lowest earth with those
who have gone down to the pit.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- majesty
- nation
- pit

translationNotes:

- **Then it happened** - This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new message. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **in the twelfth year** - Possible meanings are 1) This happened in the twelfth year after the Babylonians took the Israelites to Babylon or 2) this happened in twelfth year after the Babylonians took Jehoiachin to Babylon. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in **1:1**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in **2:1**. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **weep for the servants of Egypt** - "cry loudly for the army of Egypt"
- **throw them down—her and the daughters of majestic nations** - AT: "throw Egypt and the daughters of majestic nations down"

- **the daughters of majestic nations** - Possible meanings are 1) “the people of powerful nations” or 2) “other powerful nations.”
- **the lowest earth** - “to the places under the ground.” When people died, they were put in the ground. So, “throw them down ... to the lowest earth” means “make them die.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **with those who have gone down to the pit!** - “with everyone else who had died and gone into the ground”
- **the pit** - “the pit” refers to the grave. It is the hole in the ground that people go into after they have died.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ Say to them, 'You people of Egypt, you think that you are more beautiful than the people of other nations. But you also will descend to the place where the godless dead people are. ²⁰ You will die along with many others whom their enemies have killed. Their enemies have pulled out their swords to attack, and they will drag away a huge number people of Egypt and her servants. ²¹ In the place where the dead people are, mighty leaders of other countries will make fun of you people of Egypt and your allies. They will say that you have come to lie with them, who were godless people whom their enemies killed.

ULB:

¹⁹ Ask them, 'Are you really more beautiful than anyone else? Go down and lie with the uncircumcised.'

²⁰ They will fall among those who were killed by the sword. Egypt is given to the sword; her enemies will seize her and her servants.

²¹ The strongest of the warriors in Sheol will declare about Egypt and her allies,

'They have come down here! They will lie with the uncircumcised who were killed by the sword.'

translationWords:

- **uncircumcised, uncircumcision**
- **sword**
- **Egypt, Egyptian**
- **adversary, enemy**
- **hades, sheol**
- **declare, declaration**

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.
- **Ask them** - "Ask Egypt and her army"
- **Go down** - It is implied that they go down to Sheol. AT: "Go down to Sheol." (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **They** - "Egypt and her army"
- **will fall** - "will die" (See: **Idiom**)

- **who were killed by the sword** - AT: “whom enemies killed with swords” or “who died in battle” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **Egypt is given to the sword** - AT: “Enemies will attack Egypt”
- **her enemies will seize her and her servants** - “Her enemies will drag off Egypt and her servants.”
- **her servants** - Possible meanings are 1) Egypt’s people or 2) Egypt’s army.
- **about Egypt and her allies** - AT: “about the Egyptians and those who join them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:22-23**UDB:**

²² The dead of the people of Assyria and their army will also be there. They will be surrounded by the dead of others whom their enemies killed. ²³ Their graves will be there in the deep pit, and the dead soldiers of their army will lie around their graves. The dead of all those who had terrified so many others will also be there, for their enemies will have killed them, too.

ULB:

²² Assyria is there with all her assembly. Her graves surround her;
all of them were killed by the sword.

²³ Those whose graves are set in the recesses of the pit are there, with all her assembly.
Her graves surround all of those who were killed, who fell by the sword,
those who brought terror on the land of the living.

translationWords:

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- assembly, assemble
- tomb, grave, burial place
- sword
- pit
- terror, terrify

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about nations in Sheol. Because what God is showing Ezekiel may be for future time, either the present tense (as in the ULB), or the future tense (as in the UDB) is suitable for these verses and the following verses.
- **Assyria is there with all her assembly** - AT: “The people of Assyria and all her army are there in Sheol” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **all of them were killed by the sword** - AT: “all of them died by the sword” or “all of them had died in battle.” See how you translated “who had been killed by the sword” in [31:17](#).
- **are set in the recesses of the pit** - “are in the deepest part of the pit”
- **all of those who were killed, who fell by the sword** - AT: “all those whom enemies killed with swords” or “all those who died when enemies killed them in battle (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

- **those who brought terror on the land of the living** - “those who had caused people in the land of the living to be very afraid.” AT: “those who, when they were still alive, caused people to be extremely afraid”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ Many, many people from the country of Elam will be there, too, and Elam's servants, because their enemies will have killed them. These were soldiers who had terrified people in many places. At that time they will lie there in that deep pit below the earth, and they, along with the others who have gone there, will be disgraced.

²⁵ The people of Elam and its servants will lie there among others who were slaughtered, surrounded by the graves of a huge crowd of other people. While they were alive, they caused people of other nations to be terrified; but they were godless, and now, because their enemies will have killed them, they will lie with others in that deep pit, disgraced.

ULB:

²⁴ Elam is there with all her servants. Her graves surround her; all of them were killed.

Those who fell by the sword, who have gone down uncircumcised to the lowest parts of the earth,

who brought their terrors on the land of the living and who now carry their own shame with them, together with the ones going down to the pit.

²⁵ They set a bedroll for Elam and all her servants in the midst of the slain; her graves surround her.

All of them are uncircumcised, killed by the sword, because they had brought their terrors on the land of the living.

So they carry their own shame with them, together with the ones going down to the pit among all those who have been killed, those who are going down to the pit. Elam is among all those who were killed.

translationWords:

- Elam
- tomb, grave, burial place
- sword
- uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- terror, terrify
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- pit

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about nations in Sheol.
- **Elam is there** - Here “Elam” refers to the people of that country. AT: “The people of Elam are also there in Sheol” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **her servants** - Possible meanings are 1) her many people or 2) her army.
- **Her graves surround her** - See how you translated “Her graves surround her” in [32:22](#).
- **all of them were killed** - AT: “Her enemies killed them all”
- **Those who fell by the sword** - “who fell by the sword” in [32:23](#).
- **who have gone down uncircumcised** - “who were uncircumcised when they went down”
- **to the lowest parts of the earth** - “to places deep down in the ground” or “to the land deep down in the ground.” See how you translated “in the lowest realms of the earth” in [26:20](#).
- **who brought their terrors on the land of the living** - See how you translated “brought terror on the land of the living” in [32:23](#).
- **who now carry their own shame with them** - “who feel ashamed” or “who are now disgraced”
- **They set a bedroll for Elam and all her servants** - “They gave beds to Elam and all her servants.”
- **in the midst of the slain** - “with all the other people who were killed.”
- **All of them are uncircumcised** - The Egyptians hated people who were not circumcised. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Elam is among all those who were killed** - This is very similar to the first part of the verse. AT: “The dead people gave Elam a place to lie among themselves”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ The dead of all the soldiers of the lands of Meshech and Tubal will be there, surrounded by the graves of a huge crowd of their servants. While they were alive, they also caused people in many places to be terrified. They are uncircumcised people whom their enemies will have killed. ²⁷ They will not lie there beside the uncircumcised warriors who have gone to the grave highly honored with their shields over their bodies and their swords under their heads. While they were alive, they terrified many people on the earth.

ULB:

²⁶ Meshech, Tubal, and all their servants are there! Their graves surround them.

All of them are uncircumcised, killed by the sword, because they had brought their terrors on the land of the living.

²⁷ They do not lie with the fallen warriors of the uncircumcised who have gone down to Sheol

with all their weapons of war, and with their swords placed under their heads

and their shields placed over their bones. For they were the terror of warriors in the land of the living.

translationWords:

- Meshech
- Tubal
- hades, sheol
- shield

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about nations in Sheol.
- **all their servants** - Possible meanings are 1) “all their army” or 2) “all their many people.”
- **Their graves surround them** - See how you translated “her graves around her” in [32:22](#).
- **All of them ... land of the living** - See how you translated “All of them ... land of the living” in [32:25](#).
- **their shields placed over their bones** - Unlike the other uncircumcised, the Meshech and Tubal people were given proper burials. (See: [Idiom](#))

- **For they were the terror of warriors in the land of the living** - “because, while they were still alive, they made warriors very afraid”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ You king of Egypt, I will kill you also, and you will lie there with other godless people whom their enemies will have killed.

²⁹ People of Edom will be there, along with their kings and leaders. They were powerful, but I will kill them. They will lie there in the place where the other godless people lie.

ULB:

²⁸ So you, Egypt, will be destroyed in the midst of the uncircumcised! You will lie alongside of those who were killed by the sword.

²⁹ Edom is there with her kings and all her leaders. They were powerful, but now they lie with those killed by the sword, with the uncircumcised, those who have gone down to the pit.

translationWords:

- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [king](#)
- [pit](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking.
- **will be destroyed** - AT: "I will destroy you." (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **in the midst of the uncircumcised** - AT: "along with uncircumcised people"
- **those killed by the sword** - See how you translated this in [32:25](#).
- **Edom is there with her kings and all her leaders** - "Edom is in Sheol with her kings and all her leaders." AT: "the people of Edom are in Sheol with their kings and all their leaders."
- **They were powerful** - "They had a lot of power"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:30**UDB:**

³⁰ All the rulers of countries north of Israel, including people from the city of Sidon, will be there. Because of their power, they terrified other people, but they will lie there. They were godless, and they will lie there along with others whom their enemies will have killed. They, along with everyone else who goes down into that deep pit, will be disgraced.

ULB:

³⁰ The princes of the north are there—all of them and all the Sidonians who went down with the dead! They were powerful and made others to be afraid, but now they lie there in shame, uncircumcised with those who were killed by the sword. They carry their own shame, together with the others who are going down to the pit.

translationWords:

- [prince, princess](#)
- [Sidon, Sidonians](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)

translationNotes:

- **The princes of the north** - “The princes who ruled nations in the north”
- **are there** - “are in Sheol”
- **went down** - “went down to Sheol”
- **with the dead** - “with those who were killed”
- **who were killed by the sword** - See how you translated “who had been killed by the sword” in [31:17](#).
- **They carry their own shame, together with the others who are going down to the pit** - See how you translated “they carry their own shame with them, together with the ones going down to the pit” [32:25](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 32:31-32**UDB:**

³¹ The king of Egypt and all his army will see them, and they will be comforted about the death of their servants, because they know that there were other huge groups of people whom their enemies killed. ³² While that king was living, I allowed him to terrify others in many countries, but he and his huge army will be there among other godless people whom their enemies have killed.” This will certainly surely happen because the Lord Yahweh has said that it would happen.

ULB:

³¹ Pharaoh will look and be comforted about all his servants who were killed by the sword—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration. ³² I made him cause terror in the land of the living, but he will lie down in the midst of the uncircumcised, among those killed by the sword—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- comfort, comforter
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration
- uncircumcised, uncircumcision

translationNotes:

- **Pharaoh will look** - AT: “Pharaoh will see all the dead people from other nations.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **and be comforted about all his servants** - It is implied that Pharaoh will be comforted because the armies of other great kings also died. AT “and will comfort himself that he was not the only king whose entire army died.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **who were killed by the sword** - See how you translated “who had been killed by the sword” in [31:17](#).
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **I made him cause terror in the land of the living** - AT: “While Pharaoh was still alive, I allowed him to terrify people”
- **he will lie down in the midst of the uncircumcised** - Here “lie down” refers to his body being place in the grave when he dies. AT: “his dead body will be buried with those who are not circumcised”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 33 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Repentance

God does not want sinners to die. He wants them to repent and live. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [repent](#), [repentance](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 33:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 33:1-4**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "Son of man, speak to your fellow Israelites and say this to them: 'Suppose that I bring an enemy army to attack a country, and the people of that country choose one of their own people to be a watchman. ³ And suppose that he sees the enemy army come into view, and that he blows a trumpet to warn everyone. ⁴ If anyone hears the trumpet but pays no attention, and if that person then dies because of the enemy, that person is responsible for his own death.

ULB:

33 ¹ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, declare this to your people; say to them, 'When I bring a sword against any land, then the people of that land take one man from among themselves and make him a watchman for them. ³ He looks for the sword as it comes on the land, and he blows his horn to warn the people! ⁴ If the people hear the sound of the horn but do not pay attention, and if the sword comes and kills them, then each one's blood is on his own head.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- declare, declaration
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- sword
- trumpet
- blood

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in **1:1**. (See: **Idiom**)
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in **2:1**. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **a sword against any land** - The word "sword" refers to an enemy army that attacks. (See: **Metonymy**)
- **make him a watchman** - "appoint him as a guard" or "make him guard"
- **do not pay attention** - "ignore the warning"
- **each one's blood is on his own head** - This phrase describes how God will hold them responsible for their own death. AT: "it is their own fault if they die." (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 33:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ If he had paid attention, he would have saved his own life. But as it is, he will die, and it will be his own fault.

⁶ Now suppose that the watchman sees the enemy army coming and does not blow the trumpet to warn the people. Then suppose that one of his people dies because of the enemy. That person will die because of his own mistake, but I will hold the watchman responsible for it.

ULB:

⁵ If someone hears the sound of the horn and pays no attention, his blood is on him; but if he pays attention, he will save his own life.

⁶ However, if the watchman sees the sword as it is coming, but if he does not blow the horn, with the result that the people are not warned, and if the sword comes and takes anyone's life, then that person dies in his own sin, but I will require his blood from the watchman.'

translationWords:

- [blood](#)
- [save, safe](#)
- [sword](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.
- **his blood is on him** - AT: "it will be his own fault that he dies"
- **save his own life** - "will keep himself from dying"
- **the sword as it is coming** - The word "sword" refers to an enemy army. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the sword comes and takes anyone's life** - "the sword comes and kills anyone"
- **that person dies in his own sin** - "that person dies because of his own sin"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 33:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ Son of man, this parable has a meaning for you. I have appointed you to be a watchman for the Israelites. So always listen to what I say, and warn the people for me. ⁸ When I say to some wicked person, ‘You wicked person, you will surely die because of your sins,’ you must tell him what I said. If you do not speak to that person to warn him to turn away from his sins, that wicked person will die because of his sins, but I will make you responsible for his death. ⁹ But if you warn that wicked person that he should turn away from his sins, but if he does not do so, then he will die because of his sins, but you will have saved your own life.

ULB:

⁷ Now you yourself, son of man! I have made you a watchman for the house of Israel; you will hear the words from my mouth and warn them on my behalf. ⁸ If I say to a wicked person, ‘Wicked one, you will surely die!’ but if you do not announce this so as to warn the wicked about his way, then he who is wicked will die in his sin, but I will require his blood from your hand! ⁹ But you, if you warn the wicked about his way, so that he might turn back from it, and if he does not turn back from his way, then he will die in his sin, but you yourself will have saved your own life.

translationWords:

- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- word
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- blood
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.
- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **from my mouth** - AT: “from me.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **warn them on my behalf** - “warn them as my representative” or “give them the warning from me”
- **do not announce this** - “do not say this”
- **about his way** - “the way he acts” or “the things he does.” See how you translated “your ways” in [7:3](#).

- **will die in his sin** - This implies that God will not forgive this person's sins. However, some modern versions translate "because of his sin."
- **require his blood from your hand** - See how you translated this phrase in [3:18](#).
- **does not turn back from his way** - "does not stop acting in his bad way" or "does not stop doing bad things"
- **will have saved your own life** - "will have kept yourself alive"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 33:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Son of man, say to the Israelite people, ‘This is what you all are saying: “The guilt that we feel for disobeying God’s laws and sinning is like a heavy weight on us, and our sins are hurting us, and we are slowly dying. So what can we do to continue to remain alive?”’ ¹¹ Say to them, ‘Yahweh the Lord says, “As surely as I am alive, I am not happy when wicked people die; I would prefer that they turn away from their wicked behavior and continue to live. So repent! Turn away from your evil behavior! You Israelite people, do you really want to die?”’

ULB:

¹⁰ So you, son of man, say to the house of Israel, ‘You are saying this, “Our transgressions and our sins are on us, and we are decaying in them! How can we live?”’ ¹¹ Say to them, ‘As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—I do not delight in the death of the wicked, for if the wicked repents from his way, then he will live! Repent! Repent from your wicked ways! For why should you die, house of Israel?’

translationWords:

- transgress, transgression
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration
- death, die, dead
- repent, repentance

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.
- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **You are saying this** - AT: “This is what you have said”
- **Our transgressions and our sins are on us** - Possible meanings are that they feel guilty for their transgressions and sins or 2) they realize that Yahweh is punishing them for their transgressions and sins. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **we are decaying in them** - “we are rotting away because of them.” This phrase compares the way that sin destroys people to the way that flesh rots. AT: “they are destroying us” or “they are killing us.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in them** - This implies the people know that God will not forgive them. However, some modern versions translate “because of them.”

- **How can we live?** - The people ask this question to emphasize that they have no hope of living. AT: “We have no hope of living” or “We will certainly die.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **As I live** - See how you translated this phrase in [5:11](#).
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **if the wicked repents from his way** - “if the wicked person stops doing bad things”
- **For why should you die** - Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he does not want the people of Israel to day. AT: “Do not choose to die.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 33:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Therefore, Son of man, say to your fellow Israelites that if good people start to disobey me, the fact that they were previously righteous will not keep me from punishing them. Similarly, if wicked people turn away from their wicked behavior, they will not die because of those sins. And if good people start to sin, I will not allow the fact that they had been good to keep me from punishing them now. ¹³ If I tell those who do what is right that they will surely remain alive because of all the good they do, but then if they turn away and become proud of all their good deeds, then I will ignore all the good things that they had done before. I will make sure that they will die because of the evil things that they have done.

ULB:

¹² So now you, son of man, say to your people, 'The righteousness of a righteous person will not save him if he sins! The wickedness of a wicked person will not cause him to perish if he repents from his sin! For the righteous person will not be able to live because of his righteousness if he sins. ¹³ If I say to the righteous, "He will surely live!" and if he trusts in his righteousness and then commits injustice, I will not call to mind any of his righteousness. He will die for the wickedness he committed.

translationWords:

- righteous, righteousness
- save, safe
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- perish, perishing, perishable
- repent, repentance
- life, live, living, alive
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.
- **The righteousness of a righteous person will not save him if he sins!** - AT: "If righteous people start to sin, the fact that they were righteous before will not save them"
- **if he trusts in his righteousness** - "if he depends on his righteousness." The person think that because he was righteous Yahweh will not punish him, even if he sins.
- **commits injustice** - "does what is evil" or "does wicked things"

- **for the wickedness he committed** - “because of the wicked things he has done”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 33:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ Continue to tell the people these things: if I say to some wicked person, ‘You will surely die because of your sins,’ perhaps that person will stop doing evil and start doing what is just and right. ¹⁵ For example, he might return what he took from another person to guarantee that that person would pay back what he owes, or he might return things that he has stolen, or he might obey the laws that will enable those who obey them to remain alive. If this happens, he will surely remain alive; he will not die because of the sins that he committed previously. ¹⁶ I will ignore the sins that he previously committed; he will surely remain alive.

ULB:

¹⁴ So if I say to the wicked, “You will surely die,” but if he then repents from his sins and does what is just and right—¹⁵ if he restores the loan guarantee that he wickedly demanded, or if he makes restitution for what he has stolen, and if he walks in the statutes that give life and no longer commits sin—then he will surely live. He will not die. ¹⁶ None of the sins that he has committed will be called to mind for him. He has acted justly and rightly, and so, he will surely live!

translationWords:

- just, justice, justly
- walk
- statute, statutes

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.
- **if he restores the loan guarantee** - “if he gives back the loan guarantee”
- **loan guarantee** - something a person leaves with another person to show that he will keep his promise to pay back what he has borrowed.
- **makes restitution for what he has stolen** - “returns what he has stolen” or “pays back the value of what he stole”
- **walks in the statutes that give life** - AT: “lives according to the laws that give life”
- **None of the sins that he has committed will be called to mind for him** - AT: “I will not hold any of his sins against him.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 33 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 33 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 33:17-20**UDB:**

¹⁷ Tell the people this: that they say that what I do is not fair, but that it is really what they do that is not fair. Then tell them these things, also: ¹⁸ If a good person stops doing what is good and starts to do what is evil, it is fair that he should die because of his sins. ¹⁹ And if a wicked person turns away from his wicked behavior and does what is right and fair, it is fair for him to remain alive because of doing that. ²⁰ Remind the people that they are still saying that what I do is not fair. They can talk all they want, but I will punish each of them for what they do. Tell them this.”

ULB:

¹⁷ But your people say, “The way of the Lord is not fair!” but it is your ways that are not fair! ¹⁸ When the righteous person turns away from his righteousness and commits sin, then he will die in it! ¹⁹ When the wicked turns away from his wickedness and does what is just and righteous, he will live because of those things! ²⁰ But you people say, “The way of the Lord is not fair!” I will judge each of you according to his way, house of Israel!”

translationWords:

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Lord
- righteous, righteousness
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- just, justice, justly
- judge, judgment
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.
- **your people** - These are the people of Israel. The word “your” refers to Ezekiel.
- **but it is your ways** - The word “your” refers to the people of Israel. AT: “but it is their ways.”
- **die in it** - “die because of the sin”
- **turns away from his wickedness** - AT: “stops doing wicked things” (See: **Idiom**)
- **because of those things** - “because he does what is just and righteous”
- **you people** - These are the people of Israel.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 33:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ Almost twelve years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, on the fifth day of the tenth month of that year, a man who had escaped from Jerusalem came to me in Babylon and said, “Jerusalem has been captured!” ²² The evening before that man arrived, Yahweh took control of me. So when that man arrived, Yahweh enabled me to speak again; I was no longer forced to be silent.

ULB:

²¹ It happened in the twelfth year, on the fifth day of the tenth month of our captivity, that a fugitive came to me from Jerusalem and said, “The city has been captured!” ²² The hand of Yahweh had been on me in the evening before the fugitive came, and my mouth was opened by the time that he came to me in the dawn. So my mouth was open; I was no longer mute!

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- biblical time: day
- captive, captivity
- Jerusalem
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **twelfth year** - (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **on the fifth day of the tenth month** - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifth day is near the beginning of January on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **of our captivity** - Here “our” refers to Ezekiel and the Israelites who have been in Babylon since the time the Babylonians forced King Jehoiachin to leave Jerusalem. AT: “after we became captives” or “after the Babylonians took us as captives to Babylon.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Exclusive “We”](#))
- **a fugitive came to me from Jerusalem** - “someone escaped from Jerusalem and came to me.” The Babylonians had destroyed Jerusalem and killed the people of Jerusalem, but a few people escaped.
- **The city has been captured** - AT: “The Babylonians have destroyed the city.” The phrase “the city” refers to “Jerusalem.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **The hand of Yahweh had been on me** - See how you translated “the hand of Yahweh came upon him” in [1:3](#).
- **dawn** - “Dawn” is the time early in the morning when the light of the sun first appears.
- **my mouth was opened** - AT: “Yahweh opened my mouth.” See how you translated “I will open your mouth” in [3:27](#).
- **I was no longer mute** - “I was no longer unable to speak” or “I was now able to speak.” Ezekiel had been unable to speak anything except prophetic words since [3:26](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 33:23-24

UDB:

²³ Then Yahweh gave a message to me. He said, ²⁴ "Son of man, the people who are living in the ruins in Israel are saying, 'Abraham was only one person, but Yahweh promised him that he and his descendants would possess this land. But we are many; so surely Yahweh has given us this land to possess.'

ULB:

²³ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ²⁴ "Son of man, the ones inhabiting those ruins in the land of Israel are talking and say, 'Abraham was only one person, and he inherited the land, but we are many! The land has been given to us as a possession.'

translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **those ruins** - Possible meanings are: "those ruined buildings" or "those ruined cities"
- **the land** - "the land of Israel"
- **The land has been given to us** - AT: "Yahweh has given us the land." (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **as a possession** - AT: "so that we can possess it" or "as an inheritance." They were implying that since there were so many of them, they should possess it.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 33:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ So send a message to them. Say, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: "You eat meat that still has the animal's blood in it. You still worship idols. And you still murder others. So should this land belong to you? ²⁶ You rely on using your swords to obtain things that you want. You do many detestable things. Each of you sleeps with other men's wives. So should you really possess the land of Israel?"'

ULB:

²⁵ Therefore say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: You eat blood, and you lift up your eyes towards your idols, then you pour out people's blood. Should you really possess the land? ²⁶ You have depended on your swords and have done disgusting things; each man defiles his neighbor's wife. Should you really possess the land?'

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- blood
- idol, idolatrous
- sword
- defile, be defiled
- neighbor

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about the people who were living in the ruins of Israel.
- **You eat blood** - It is implied that they eat blood by eating meat that still has blood in it. Yahweh had commanded them drain out the blood. AT: "You eat meat with blood in it." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **you lift up your eyes towards your idols** - "you look to your idols." This means "you worship your idols" (UDB). (See: [Idiom](#)).
- **you pour out people's blood** - AT: "you pour out blood." This means "you murder people."
- **Should you really possess the land?** - Yahweh used this question to rebuke the people. AT: "You should not possess this land" or "You do not deserve this land." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **You have depended on your swords** - AT: "You have used your swords to get what you want."
- **done disgusting things** - AT: "done things that I hate very much"

- **each man defiles his neighbor's wife** - It is implied that they defile their neighbor's wives by sleeping with them.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 33:27-29**UDB:**

²⁷ Send this message to them and tell them that this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say to them: 'As surely as I am alive, those who are left in the ruins in Jerusalem—their enemies will also kill them. And those who are living in the countryside—wild animals will kill them. Those who are living in forts and caves will die from disease. ²⁸ I will cause your country to become a desolate wasteland. You will no longer be proud of being a strong country. The mountains of Israel will become very desolate, with the result that no one will walk across them.' ²⁹ Then, when I have caused their country to become a desolate wasteland because of all the disgusting things that you have done, they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do."

ULB:

²⁷ You will say this to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: As I live, surely the ones in the ruins will fall by the sword, and I will give those in the fields to the living creatures as food, and those in fortresses and in caves will die of plagues. ²⁸ Then I will turn the land into a desolation and a horror, and the pride of its might will end, for the mountains of Israel will be deserted, and there will be no one to pass through them.' ²⁹ So they will know that I am Yahweh, when I make the land a desolation and a horror because of all the abominations that they have done.

translationWords:

- ruin, ruins
- life, live, living, alive
- creature
- plague
- desolate, desolation
- proud, pride, prideful
- mighty, might
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- abomination, abominable

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about the people who were living in the ruins of Israel.
- **As I live** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **fall by the sword** - See how you translated this in [5:12](#).
- **those in fortresses and in caves will die of plagues** - "plagues will kill the people who live in fortresses and caves"

- **fortresses** - A fortress is a building that people build to protect themselves from enemies who attack them.
- **caves** - Caves are natural holes in the side of a mountain or down in the ground. They are usually made of rock.
- **and a horror** - A “horror” is something that makes people very afraid when they see it. AT: “and people will be afraid because of it”
- **the pride of its might will end** - The word “it” refers to the land, which refers to the people of the land. Alternate translation: “the people of the land will not be proud anymore that they are strong.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the mountains of Israel will be deserted** - “no one will lived in the mountains of Israel”
- **there will be no one to pass through them** - “there will be no one left to travel through the land or over the mountains”
- **know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **they have done** - “the people have done”
- **all the abominations that they have done** - “all the things they have done that I hate”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 33:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ As for you, Son of man, your fellow Israelites here in Babylon stand beside the city wall or at the doors of their houses and are talking with each other. They are saying, ‘Come and listen to the message that has come from Yahweh.’ ³¹ My people come to you as they often have done, and they sit in front of you to listen to what you say. But they do not do what you tell them that they must do. With their mouths they say that they love me, but in their inner beings they are eager to acquire things by doing what is unjust.

ULB:

³⁰ So now you, son of man—your people are saying things about you beside the walls and the gates of the houses, and each says to one another—each man to his brother, ‘Let us go and listen to the prophet’s word that comes out from Yahweh!’ ³¹ So my people will come to you, as they often do, and will sit in front of you and listen to your words, but they will not obey them. Right words are in their mouths, but their hearts are going after unjust profit.

translationWords:

- gate, gate bar
- brother
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- word
- Yahweh
- obey, obedient, obedience
- heart
- profit, profitable

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.
- **that comes out from Yahweh** - AT: “that Yahweh sends” or “that Yahweh gives him”
- **Right words are in their mouths** - Possible meanings are 1) “Loving words are in their mouths” or 2) “Lustful words are in their mouths. AT: ”With their mouths they say that they love me (UDB) or “With their mouths they talk about the things they lust after.”
- **their hearts are going after unjust profit** - AT: “in their hearts they want to get their unjust profit” or “they want to get things in ways that are not just.” They might do this my stealing things or tricking people.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 33:32-33**UDB:**

³² To them, you are only a man who sings them beautiful songs and plays a musical instrument well. They hear what you say, but they do not do what you tell them to do.

³³ The terrible things that I have said will happen to them will surely happen. And then they will know that a prophet has been among them, and that you are that prophet.”

ULB:

³² For you are like a lovely song to them, a beautiful sound that is well played on a stringed instrument, so they will listen to your words, but none of them will obey them. ³³ So when all of this happens—behold! it will happen!—then they will know that a prophet has been among them.”

translationWords:

- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about the people of Israel.
- **you are like a lovely song to them** - AT: “they think that you are like a lovely song” or “they think that your words are like a lovely song”
- **a lovely song** - Possible meanings are 1) “a beautiful song” or 2) “a love song” or “a song about love.”
- **that is well played on a stringed instrument** - AT: “that someone plays very well on a stringed instrument.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **stringed instrument** - something that has strings and people use to make music
- **when all of this happens** - The word “this” refers to all of the things that had God said would happen and that Ezekiel told the people about.
- **behold!** - The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “indeed!”
- **that a prophet has been among them** - AT: “that I really sent you as a prophet.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 34 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God protects the people

God is against those who exploit others. He will protect and take care of his people. (See: [people of God, my people](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The people of Israel are compared to sheep and God and the son of David as good shepherds. This is a common metaphor in scripture. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 34:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 34:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "Son of man, speak my message against the leaders of Israel. They should be taking care of my people, like shepherds take care of their flocks. Say to them that this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have to tell them: 'You shepherds of Israel, terrible things will happen to you because you take care only of yourselves. You should certainly take care of my sheep. ³ But you are like shepherds who eat the fat sheep, who slaughter the best animals for their wool. You are not real shepherds at all.

ULB:

34 ¹ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, prophesy against the shepherds of Israel. Prophesy and say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this to the shepherds: Woe to the shepherds of Israel who are shepherding themselves. Should not shepherds guard the flock? ³ You eat the fatty portions and you dress in wool. You slaughter the fatlings of the flock. You do not shepherd at all.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- shepherd, to shepherd
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- woe
- flock, herd
- slaughter

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the shepherds of Israel** - This phrase compares the leaders of Israel that are supposed to take care of their people with shepherds who are supposed to take care of their flock. AT: "the leaders of Israel who are like shepherds. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Prophesy and say** - See how you translated this in [21:9](#).
- **are shepherding themselves** - AT "are feeding and taking care of themselves."
- **Should not shepherds guard the flock?** - Yahweh uses this question to scold the leaders for not taking care of the people. AT: "Shepherds should feed the flock and take care of it." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

- **You eat the fatty portions** - It is implied that the fatty portions come from the sheep and the goats. AT: “You eat the fatty parts of the sheep and goats” or “You eat the best parts of the sheep and goats.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **dress in wool** - “wear the wool from the sheep”
- **You slaughter the fatlings of the flock** - AT: “You kill the fatlings of the flock so that you can eat them”
- **the fatlings** - “the healthiest sheep and goats” or “the fattest sheep and goats”
- **do not shepherd at all** - “do not feed and take care of the flock”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 34:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ You have not taken care of the sick sheep; you have paid no attention to those who are wounded. You have not looked for the sheep who have wandered off. You rule over them with force and violence. ⁵ Because you did not take care of them, my people have wandered away like sheep. And while they are scattered, wild animals attack and kill them, and then eat their flesh. ⁶ My people wander like sheep all over the high hills and mountains. They are scattered all over the earth, and no one is searching for them.

ULB:

⁴ You have not strengthened those who have diseases, nor do you heal the ones who are ill. You do not bind up the ones who are broken, and you do not restore the outcasts or seek the lost. Instead, you rule over them through strength and violence. ⁵ Then they were scattered without a shepherd, and they became food for all the living beasts in the fields, after they were scattered. ⁶ My flock strays on all of the mountains and on every high hill, and it is dispersed over the entire surface of the earth. Yet no one is searching for them.

translationWords:

- heal, cure
- restore, restoration
- disperse, dispersion

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel.
- **have diseases** - Possible meanings are 1) “are sick” or 2) “are weak”
- **bind up** - “You do not wrap cloth around wounds and broken bones of”
- **the ones who are broken** - AT: “the sheep that have broken bones” or “the sheep that are injured”
- **you do not restore** - “you do not bring back”
- **the outcasts** - “the sheep that have been chased away” or “the weak sheep that stronger sheep have chased away”
- **the lost** - AT: “the sheep or goat that has gotten lost” or “the ones that have wandered away”
- **through strength and violence** - “forcefully and cruelly”
- **without a shepherd** - “because they did not have a shepherd.” AT: “because you did not do what the shepherd should do.”
- **they became food for all the living beasts in the fields** - AT: “all of the wild animals could attack and eat them”

- **it is dispersed over the entire surface of the earth** - “my flock is spread out all over the earth”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 34:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Therefore, you who should be acting like shepherds, listen to what I, Yahweh the Lord, have to say to you. ⁸ As surely as I am alive, my people are like a flock of sheep without any shepherd, and as a result it is as though wild animals have attacked my people and eaten them. You shepherds did not search for them; instead, you only wanted to provide food for yourselves.

ULB:

⁷ Therefore, shepherds, hear the declaration of Yahweh: ⁸ As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—because my flock has become plunder and food for all the beasts in the fields, because there was no shepherd and none of my shepherds sought my flock, but the shepherds guarded themselves and did not shepherd my flock.

translationWords:

- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel.
- **the declaration of Yahweh** - See how you translated “This is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration” in [5:11](#).
- **As I live** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **because my flock has become plunder and food for all the beasts in the fields** - “because the beasts in the field have been able to steal my flock and eat them”
- **plunder** - things that are stolen. AT: “easy to steal” or “easy to kill”
- **the beasts in the fields** - AT: “the wild animals”
- **because there was no shepherd** - “because they did not have a shepherd”
- **none of my shepherds sought my flock** - “none of my shepherds tried to find my flock”
- **guarded themselves** - “shepherded themselves” or “fed and cared for themselves”
- **did not shepherd my flock** - “did not feed and care for my flock”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 34:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Therefore, you who should be shepherds of my people, listen to me. ¹⁰ I am opposed to you leaders. I will punish you for mistreating my people. I will remove you from taking care of my people; you will no longer feed yourselves while ignoring them. I will rescue my people from you, and you will no longer be able to butcher them and eat them.

ULB:

⁹ Therefore, shepherds, hear the declaration of Yahweh: ¹⁰ The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against the shepherds, and I will require my flock from their hand. Then I will dismiss them from shepherding the flock; neither will the shepherds any longer shepherd themselves since I will take away my flock from their mouths, so that my flock will no longer be food for them.

translationWords:

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel.
- **Therefore, shepherds, hear the declaration of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [34:7](#).
- **Behold!** - The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Indeed!”
- **am against the shepherds** - AT: “will punish the shepherds.”
- **I will require my flock from their hand** - AT: “I will hold them responsible for all the bad things that happen to my flock” or “I will punish them for all the bad things they let happen to my flock.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **I will dismiss them from shepherding the flock** - “I will not let them shepherd the flock anymore” or “I will not let them be the shepherds of the flock anymore”
- **shepherd themselves** - “feed and take care of themselves”
- **from their mouths** - AT: “so they will not be able to eat them.”
- **my flock will no longer be food for them** - “the shepherds will no longer eat the sheep and the goats of my flock”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 34:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ I, the Lord Yahweh, tell you leaders that I myself will search for my sheep and take care of them. ¹² As a shepherd takes care of his sheep, I will rescue my people from all the places to which you scattered them, when disasters struck them and they were afraid. ¹³ I will bring them back from those countries and gather them together again in their own land. I will lead my sheep to good pastureland on the hills of Israel, in the ravines, and in the villages of Israel.

ULB:

¹¹ For the Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I myself will seek out my flock and I will look after them, ¹² like a shepherd seeking his flock on the day he is within the midst of his scattered flock. Thus I will seek my flock, and I will rescue them from all the places where they were scattered on the day of clouds and darkness. ¹³ Then I will bring them out from among the peoples; I will gather them from the lands and bring them to their land. I will put them in pastures on the mountainsides of Israel, by the streams, and in every settlement in the land.

translationWords:

- flock, herd
- shepherd, to shepherd
- darkness
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel.
- **Behold!** - The word “Behold” here alerts the shepherds to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
- **will seek out** - “will look for”
- **within the midst of his scattered flock** - “with his scattered flock”
- **scattered** - The flock is not in one place. The sheep and the goats are in many different places where they are lost and in danger.
- **on the day of clouds and darkness** - “on the cloudy and dark day.” This refers to when many disasters happened. AT: “when terrible disasters happened to them.”
- **bring them** - “bring my sheep and my goats”
- **from among the peoples** - “from the places where they lived with other peoples”
- **pastures** - land that has grass and small plants that sheep and goats can eat

- **settlement** - a place where people live. Usually they live in houses in a settlement. AT: “village”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 34:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ My sheep will graze in good pastures on the mountaintops. They will lie down in good grazing areas. ¹⁵ I myself will take care of my people and allow them to lie down and rest. This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, promise. ¹⁶ I will search for those who are lost; I will bring back the ones who have strayed away. I will bandage those who have been injured and strengthen those who are weak. But I will destroy those who are fat and powerful. I will act fairly toward my sheep, my people.

ULB:

¹⁴ I will put them in good pastures; the high mountains of Israel will be their grazing places. They will lie down there in good places for grazing, in abundant pastures, and they will graze on the mountains of Israel. ¹⁵ I myself will shepherd my flock, and I myself will make them lie down—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration— ¹⁶ I will seek the lost and restore the outcast. I will bind up the broken sheep and heal the sick sheep but the fat and the strong I will destroy. I will shepherd with justice.

translationWords:

- declare, declaration
- sheep, ram, ewe
- just, justice, justly

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel.
- **their grazing places** - “places where they can eat”
- **abundant pastures** - lands that have a lot of grass and plants
- **graze** - eat grass and other plants
- **I myself** - The word “myself” adds emphasis. God would do this because the shepherds were not doing it right.
- **will shepherd** - “will feed and take care of”
- **will make them lie down** - “will let them lie down”
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **the lost** - “those that are lost.” AT: “any sheep or goats that are lost”
- **restore the outcast** - AT: “bring back those that have been chased away”
- **bind up the broken sheep** - “wrap a cloth around any sheep’s broken bone” or “wrap a cloth around any sheep’s wound”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 34:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ And as for you, my people, my sheep, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: 'I will judge between each of you; I will separate those who are peaceful from those who are cruel and powerful. ¹⁸ You leaders, you who are like strong sheep who do evil to the others: it is bad that you keep the best pastures for yourselves. It is even worse that you trample the good grass with your feet. It is bad that you yourselves drink the clear water. It is even worse that with your feet you cause the rest of the water to become muddy. ¹⁹ You are forcing my flock to eat the grass that you have trampled and to drink the water that you have caused to become muddy!

ULB:

¹⁷ So now you, my flock—this is what the Lord Yahweh says—behold, I will be a judge between sheep and sheep and between rams and male goats. ¹⁸ Is it not enough to feed on the good pasture, that you must trample down with your feet what is left of the pasture; and to drink from clear waters, that you must muddy the rivers with your feet? ¹⁹ Must my sheep eat what you have trampled with your feet, and drink what you have muddied with your feet?

translationWords:

- flock, herd
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- judge, judgment
- sheep, ram, ewe
- goat, kid

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues to giving Ezekiel his message. Now it is to the people of Israel.
- **behold** - The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “indeed”
- **I will be a judge between sheep** - “I will judge between the sheep, rams, and goats”
- **rams and male goats** - The male sheep and goats are usually the strongest in the flock and can get whatever they want from the other animals in the flock.
- **Is it not enough ... feet** - This is the beginning of a question that God uses to scold the stronger ones because they are unkind to weaker ones. (See: **Rhetorical Question**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 34:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to you: I myself will judge between those of you who are like the fat sheep and the rest of my people, those who are like the thin sheep. ²¹ You who are like strong sheep, with your shoulders and buttocks you have shoved the others away. You butted them with your horns, until you chased them all away from the good pastureland.

ULB:

²⁰ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this to them: Behold! I myself will judge between the fat sheep and the thin ones, ²¹ for you have pushed them with your sides and shoulders, and you have gored all of the weak ones with your horns until you have scattered them away from the land.

translationWords:

- [judge, judgment](#)

translationNotes:

- **Behold!** - The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Indeed!”
- **I myself** - The word “myself” emphasizes that it is Yahweh who will judge.
- **will judge between the fat sheep and the thin ones** - “will makes sure that the fat sheep and goats and the skinny sheep and goats are treating each other fairly”
- **for you** - The word “you” refers to sheep and goats that were not treating other sheep and goats well.
- **with your sides** - “with the sides of your body”
- **have gored** - Possible meanings are 1) “have pushed” or “have shoved” 2) “have stabbed” or “have pierced”
- **scattered them** - “made them go in many different directions”
- **away from the land** - “away from the land of Israel”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 34:22-24**UDB:**

²² But I will rescue my people, and you will no longer steal from them. I will judge between one person and another. ²³ And I will appoint one leader for them, someone who will be like King David, who served me very well. That leader will take care of them and be like their shepherd. ²⁴ I, Yahweh, will be their God, and the one who is like King David will be their king. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.

ULB:

²² I will save my flock and they will no longer be plunder, and I will judge between one sheep and another! ²³ I will set over them one shepherd, my servant David. He will shepherd them, he will feed them, and he will be their shepherd. ²⁴ For I, Yahweh, will be their God, and my servant David will be a prince among them—I, Yahweh, have declared this.

translationWords:

- save, safe
- flock, herd
- shepherd, to shepherd
- servant, slave, slavery
- David
- Yahweh
- God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **plunder** - “things that are stolen.” The shepherds and wild animals have been stealing the sheep and the goats from Yahweh’s flock.
- **I will judge between one sheep and another** - See how you translated “I will be a judge among sheep” in [34:17](#).
- **I will set over them one shepherd** - “I will assign one shepherd to be in charge of my sheep and the goats”
- **my servant David** - Yahweh said “David” to refer to a descendent of David. AT: “a descendent of my servant David.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **will be their God** - See how you translated this in [11:20](#).
- **will be a prince among them** - “will be their ruler”
- **I, Yahweh, have declared this** - See how you translated this in [5:17](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 34:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ I will make a covenant with the people of Israel. I will promise to give them peace. I will promise to get rid of all the wild animals in Israel, in order that my people may live safely, even in the wilderness and in the forests. ²⁶ I will bless them, and I will bless all the region close to Mount Zion, where they will worship me in my temple. I will bless them by sending them rain showers at the right season; they will be showers to bless them. ²⁷ The fruit trees will produce fruit, and the ground will produce crops. And my people will live safely in their land. When I rescue them from people who made them slaves, they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

ULB:

²⁵ Then I will make a covenant of peace with them and remove the evil wild animals from the land, so that they will live securely in the wilderness and safely sleep in the forests. ²⁶ I will also bring blessings on them and on the places around my hill, for I will send out showers in due season. These will be showers of blessing. ²⁷ Then the trees of the field will produce their fruit, and the earth will yield its produce. My sheep will be secure in their land; then they will know that I am Yahweh, when I break the bars of their yoke, and when I rescue them from the hand of those who enslaved them.

translationWords:

- covenant
- peace, peaceful
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- desert, wilderness
- bless, blessed, blessing
- send, send out, sent
- know, knowledge, make known
- yoke
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- enslave, in bondage

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.
- **a covenant of peace** - “a covenant that brings peace”
- **the evil wild animals** - These are wild animals that could kill the sheep and the goats.

- **I will also bring blessings on them and on the places around my hill** - Some modern versions translate “I will also turn them and the places around my hill into a blessing.”
- **in due season** - “at the right time”
- **These will be showers of blessing** - “This rain will be given as a blessing”
- **the earth will yield its produce** - “the earth will grow food” AT: Food will grow on the earth
- **will be secure** - “will be safe”
- **know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **bars of their yoke** - “the bars that hold their yoke together”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 34:28-29

UDB:

²⁸ Soldiers from other nations will no longer take away their valuable possessions, and wild animals will no longer attack them. They will live safely, and no one will make them afraid. ²⁹ I will cause their land to be peaceful and to produce good crops. There will no longer be famines in the land, and people in other nations will no longer mock them.

ULB:

²⁸ They will no longer be plunder for the nations, and the wild animals on the earth will no longer devour them. For they will live securely, and no one will frighten them. ²⁹ For I will create a peaceful planting place for them so they will no longer be starved with hunger in the land, and the nations will not bring insults against them.

translationWords:

- nation
- devour
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- create, creation, Creator
- peace, peaceful

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.
- **plunder** - See how you translated “plunder” in [7:21](#).
- **a peaceful planting place** - Possible meanings are 1) “a garden where they can be in peace” or 2) “a garden that will be famous”
- **be starved with hunger** - AT: “be starved” or “be starving because of lack of food” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 34:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ Then they will know that I, Yahweh their God, am helping them, and they will know that they, the Israelite people, are my people. ³¹ It will be as though you, my people, are my sheep whom I will take care of, and I will be your God. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.”

ULB:

³⁰ Then they will know that I, Yahweh their God, am with them. They are my people, the house of Israel—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration. ³¹ For you are my sheep, the flock of my pasture, and my people! I will be your God—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **I, Yahweh their God, am with them** - AT: “I, Yahweh their God, am helping them” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **They are my people** - AT: “and that they are my people”
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **I will be your God** - AT: “I am your God”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 35 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Edom

Because the people of Edom rejoiced at the destruction of Israel, they too will be destroyed.

Links:

- [Ezekiel 35:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 35:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ² "Son of man, turn toward Edom and prophesy what will happen to its people. Say this to them: ³ 'You who live near Mount Seir in Edom, I am your enemy. I will use my power to strike you and ruin your country.

ULB:

35 ¹ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, set your face against Mount Seir and prophesy against it. ³ Say to it, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you, Mount Seir, and I will strike you with my hand and make you a desolation and a horror.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Son of Man, son of man
- face
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- desolate, desolation

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in [2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **set your face against** - See how you translated this in [4:3](#).
- **Mount Seir** - "the mountain of Seir." This refers to the people who lived in Edom because they lived in the Seir mountain range. AT: "the people of Edom" or "the people in the Seir mountains" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **to it** - "to the mountain" or "to the people of Edom"
- **Behold!** - The word "Behold" here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: "Indeed!"
- **I am against you** - See how you translated this in [21:3](#).
- **I will strike you with my hand** - AT: "I have stretched out my hand over you." This means "I am about to attack you."
- **a desolation and a horror** - See how you translated this in [33:28](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 35:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ I will destroy your cities, and everyone will leave them. When that happens, you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

⁵ You have always been enemies of the Israelite people. You rejoiced when they experienced a great disaster, when their enemies attacked them, when I was punishing them most severely for the sins that they had committed. ⁶ Therefore, I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that as surely as I am alive, I will allow your enemies to slaughter you. They will attack you again and again. You enjoyed watching other people die, so I will slaughter you.

ULB:

⁴ I will make your cities ruins, and you yourself will become desolate; then you will know that I am Yahweh. ⁵ Because you have always been hostile to the people of Israel, and because you poured them out into the hands of the sword at the time of their distress, at the time their punishment was at its greatest. ⁶ Therefore, as I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—I will prepare you for bloodshed, and bloodshed will pursue you! Since you did not hate bloodshed, bloodshed will pursue you.

translationWords:

- ruin, ruins
- desolate, desolation
- people of God, my people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- sword
- punish, punishment
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues Yahweh’s message to the people of Mount Seir.
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **you poured them out into the hands of the sword** - Possible meanings are 1) “you gave them over to their enemies who killed them with swords” or 2) “you killed them with swords” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **at the time of their distress** - “at the time when they were in a disaster”
- **as I live** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

- **this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **I will prepare you for bloodshed** - "I will prepare you to lose your blood." This refers to being wounded or killed. AT: "I will allow your enemies to brutally kill many of you" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **bloodshed will pursue you** - Yahweh presents bloodshed as a person who could chase them. AT: "your enemies will continue to slaughter you" (See: [Personification](#))
- **Since you did not hate bloodshed** - AT: "Since you did hate it when other people were killed brutally."

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 35:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ I will therefore make everyone leave Mount Seir, and I will destroy anyone who enters it or leaves it. ⁸ I will cause your mountains to be filled with the corpses of those who have been killed. The corpses of those whom your enemies have killed will lie on your hills, in your valleys, and in all your ravines. ⁹ I will cause your land to be forever without people. No one will live in your towns again. When that happens, you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

ULB:

⁷ I will make Mount Seir a complete desolation when I cut off from it anyone who passes through and returns again. ⁸ Then I will fill its mountains with its dead. Your high hills and valleys and all of your streams—those killed by the sword will fall in them. ⁹ I will make you a perpetual desolation. Your cities will not be inhabited, but you will know that I am Yahweh.

translationWords:

- desolate, desolation
- cut off
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues Yahweh’s message to the people of Mount Seir.
- **when I cut off from it anyone who passes through and returns again** - Possible meanings are 1) I will destroy anyone who enters it or leaves it” (UDB) or 2) “I will make it so that people do not travel back and forth through it.”
- **killed by the sword** - See how you translated this in [31:17](#).
- **a perpetual desolation** - “desolate forever.” This is exaggerated to emphasize the destruction. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **Your cities will not be inhabited** - This can be stated in active form. It may be an exaggeration for emphasis. AT: “People will not live in your cities” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **but you will know** - Here “you” is plural. God is speaking to the people of Mount Sier, rather than to a single mountain. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 35:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Your people said, ‘Israel and Judah will become ours. We will take over their territory!’ You said that even though I, Yahweh, was still there and protecting them. ¹¹ Therefore, I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that as surely as I am alive, I will punish you for being angry with my people, for envying them, and for hating them. And when I punish you, I will make sure that the Israelites know that it is I who have punished you.

ULB:

¹⁰ You have said, “These two nations and these two lands will become mine, and we will possess them,” even when Yahweh was present with them. ¹¹ Therefore, as I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—so I will do according to your anger and according to your jealousy that you had in your hatred of Israel, and I will show myself to them when I judge you.

translationWords:

- nation
- possess, possession
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration
- angry, anger
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- judge, judgment

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues Yahweh’s message to the people of Mount Seir.
- **You have said** - The word “You” is refers to the mountain of Seir which represents the nation of Edom.
- **and we** - The word “we” refers to the people of Edom.
- **even when Yahweh was present with them** - It is implied that Yahweh was protecting Israel and Judah. AT: “but Yahweh was there protecting Israel and Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **as I live** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **I will do according to your anger and according to your jealousy** - Possible meanings are 1) “I will punish you because of your anger and jealousy” or 2) “I will do things to you with anger like your anger and with jealousy like your jealousy.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 35:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have heard all the disgusting things that you have said about the land of Israel; you said that the land was ruined, and that you could capture it for yourselves.

¹³ You insulted me; I heard everything that you said about me.

ULB:

¹² So you will know that I am Yahweh. I have heard all the insults you spoke against the mountains of Israel, when you said, "They have been destroyed; they have been given over to us to devour."

¹³ You exalted yourselves against me with what you said, and you multiplied the words you said against me; and I heard it all.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [contempt, contemptible](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [devour](#)
- [boast, boastful](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues Yahweh's message to the people of Mount Seir.
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **they have been given over to us to devour** - AT: "the mountains of Israel are for us to devour" or "they are here for us to take control of them" or "we can take whatever we want from them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 35:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ So this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: You people who live on Mount Seir and in all the other places in Edom, when I make everyone leave your land, everyone else in the world will rejoice. ¹⁵ You were happy when the land of the Israelite people was ruined, so I will do the same thing to your land. When that happens, people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

ULB:

¹⁴ The Lord Yahweh says this: I will make you a desolation, while the entire earth rejoices. ¹⁵ As you rejoiced over the inheritance of the people of Israel because of its desolation, I will do the same to you. You will become a desolation, Mount Seir, and all of Edom—all of it! Then they will know that I am Yahweh.”

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- desolate, desolation
- rejoice
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues Yahweh’s message to the people of Mount Seir.
- **The Lord Yahweh says this** - See how you translated this in [3:11](#).
- **you a desolation** - The word “you” refers to “the mountain of Seir,” which represents the land of Edom. AT: “I will make your land desolate.”
- **I will do the same to you** - Possible meanings are 1) “I will make your land desolate” or 2) “I will rejoice when your land is desolate” or 3) “I will make other people rejoice because of your desolation”
- **Mount Seir** - See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **Then they will know** - The word “they” possibly refers to 1) “the people of the earth” or 2) “the people of Israel and Judah.”
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 35 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 35 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 36 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel restored

Israel is promised to be restored by Yahweh. Because of his honor, God will bring Israel back to their land. (See: [promise](#) and [restore, restoration](#))

New hearts

God will forgive Israel's sin and give them the desire to obey him. This is was expressed by the metonym "heart." (See: [forgive, forgiveness](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 36:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 36:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh said to Ezekiel, "Son of man, give a message to the hill country and mountains in Israel just as if they were people. Tell them to listen to my message for them. ² This is it: the enemies of Israel, those people groups who live nearby, are now very happy, because they are saying that Jerusalem has been destroyed, so the ancient mountains of Israel will now belong to them. ³ So you, Ezekiel, must tell the mountains of Israel what I, the Lord Yahweh, am saying to them: 'Armies of other nations attacked you from every direction, and everyone has left you. Those foreign armies are now in your land. They have spoken very maliciously about your people, the Israelites, and have told all kinds of lies about them.

ULB:

36 ¹ "Now you, son of man, prophesy to the mountains of Israel and say, 'Mountains of Israel, listen to the word of Yahweh. ² The Lord Yahweh says this: The enemy has said about you, "Aha!" and "The ancient high places have become our possession.'" ³ Therefore prophesy and say, "The Lord Yahweh says this: Because of your desolation and because of the attacks that came on you from all sides, you have become a possession of the other nations; you have been the subject of slanderous lips and tongues, and of people's stories.

translationWords:

- Son of Man, son of man
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- adversary, enemy
- high places
- possess, possession
- desolate, desolation
- nation
- slander, slanderer
- tongue

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel. Now his message is to the mountains of Israel.

- **son of man** - “son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in [2:1](#). AT: “mortal person” or “human”
- **prophesy to the mountains of Israel** - God wants Ezekiel to speak to the mountains as if they were people. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Aha** - This is an expression of joy. It can be translated as “I am very happy” or “This is great.”
- **The ancient high places** - This refers to the high mountains of Israel. AT: “The very old mountains.”
- **have become our possession** - “now belong to us”
- **Because of your desolation** - AT: “Because you mountains have become desolate”
- **because of the attacks that came on you from all sides** - “because you were attacked from every direction” or “because your enemies attacked you from every direction”
- **you have been the subject of slanderous lips and tongues, and of people’s stories** - AT: “People are saying bad things about you, and the nations are telling bad stories about you”
- **slanderous lips and tongues** - AT: “slanderous words” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:4-6**UDB:**

4-6 Therefore, you mountains of Israel, listen to this message from me. I, Yahweh the Lord, have something to say to you, the hills and mountains, and to you, the ravines and valleys, and to you, the towns and cities which the enemy burned down, where no one is living any longer, from where the enemy has taken everything valuable, and whose people the people groups all around are mocking. "This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare: I am very angry with the people of Edom and the other people groups; they have insulted your Israelite people and happily taken all their land as pastures. So Ezekiel must speak for me to you, the land of Israel, mountains and hills, valleys and ravines: I, Yahweh the Lord, am very angry because the enemy has insulted you.

ULB:

⁴ Therefore, mountains of Israel, listen to the word of the Lord Yahweh: The Lord Yahweh says this to the mountains and the high hills, to the streambeds and valleys, to the uninhabited desolations and the forsaken cities that have become plunder and a subject of mocking for the other nations that surround them— ⁵ therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: I have certainly spoken in the fire of my fury against the other nations, against Edom and all who took my land for themselves as a possession, against all those who had both joy in their heart and disdain in their spirit, as they seized my land that they might claim its pasturelands for themselves.' ⁶ Therefore, prophesy to the land of Israel and say to the mountains and to the high hills, to the streambeds and to the valleys, 'the Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! In my fury and in my anger I am declaring this because you have borne the insults of nations.

translationWords:

- desolate, desolation
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- nation
- fire
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- joy, joyful
- heart
- spirit, spiritual
- seize
- angry, anger
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel. It may be helpful to use a verse bridge here, as the UDB does, to arrange the text in a more logical order. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))
- **listen to the word of the Lord Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:3](#).
- **the uninhabited desolations** - "the desolate cities which have no people living in them"
- **the forsaken cities** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "the cities that people have left behind" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **that have become plunder** - "that enemies have stolen from"
- **a subject of mocking for the other nations that surround them** - "that the other, surrounding nations mock"
- **in the fire of my fury** - Yahweh loves Israel very much, so he becomes jealous and angry when other nations mock her. AT: "because of my intense jealousy" or "because of my very strong anger"
- **against Edom and all** - "and against all of Edom"
- **had both joy in their heart and disdain in their spirit** - The UDB reverses the order of these phrases. AT: "have insulted your Israelite people ... happily taken"
- **joy in their heart** - "with joy in their heart" or "while being very happy"
- **disdain in their spirit** - It is implied that their disdain is for Israel. AT "disdain in their spirit for Israel" or "while despising Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Behold!** - The word "Behold" here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: "Indeed!"
- **In my fury and in my anger** - The words "fury" and "anger" mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize the intensity of his anger. AT: "Because I am extremely angry" (See: [Doublet](#))
- **you have borne the insults of nations** - "other nations have insulted you" or "other nations have mocked you"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:7

UDB:

⁷ Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I solemnly declare I will shame the people of the nations that are around you.

ULB:

⁷ Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this: I myself will lift up my hand to swear that the nations that surround you will certainly carry their own shame.

translationWords:

- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [nation](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel.
- **I myself will lift up my hand to swear** - AT: "I will personally lift up my hand and swear." Lifting up the hand shows that he will truly do what he has sworn.
- **that the nations that surround you will certainly carry their own shame** - AT: "that people will certainly mock the nations that surround you"
- **surround you** - The word "you" refers to the mountains of Israel.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ But I say to you mountains of Israel that huge crops of fruit will grow on your trees for my Israelite people, because they will soon return home from Babylonia. ⁹ I will work to help you, and I will be kind to you. I will enable farmers to plow the ground and plant seed in you.

ULB:

⁸ But you, mountains of Israel, you will grow branches and bear fruit for my people Israel, since they will soon come back to you. ⁹ For behold, I am for you, and I treat you with favor; you will be plowed and sown with seed.

translationWords:

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [sow, sower, plant](#)
- [seed](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel.
- **you will grow branches and bear fruit** - AT: "your trees will grow will grow branches and bear fruit."
- **behold** - The word "behold" here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: "indeed."
- **I am for you** - "I want to do good things to you." The word "you" refers to the mountains of Israel.
- **and I treat you with favor** - "I will be kind to you" (UDB)
- **you will be plowed and sown with seed** - AT: "My people, Israel, will plow your ground and sow it with seed." To plow means to cut rows in the ground in order to plant seeds in them. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ I will cause the number of people who live there on you mountains and everywhere else in Israel to greatly increase. People will live in the cities and rebuild houses where there are now only ruins. ¹¹ I will cause the number of people and domestic animals to increase. People will have many children. I will enable people to live there as they did previously, and I will enable them to prosper as they did before. Then you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do what I say that I will do. ¹² I will enable my Israelite people to walk through your mountains. They will own the land on you; you will belong to them forever. You will always grow enough food for them to eat, so they will never again go hungry and die.

ULB:

¹⁰ So I will multiply on you mountains men in all the house of Israel, all of it. The cities will be inhabited and the ruins rebuilt. ¹¹ I will multiply man and beast on you mountains so that they will multiply and be fruitful. Then I will cause you to be inhabited as you previously were, and I will make you prosper more than you did in the past, for you will know that I am Yahweh. ¹² I will bring men, my people Israel, to walk on you. They will possess you, and you will be their inheritance, and you will no longer cause their children to die.

translationWords:

- house
- desolate, desolation
- walk
- possess, possession
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- children, child

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel.
- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **The cities will be inhabited and the ruins rebuilt** - AT: "Then people will live in the cities and will rebuild the ruins." (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **they will multiply and be fruitful** - "they will become very many people and have very many children"
- **you to be inhabited as you previously were** - "people to live on you mountains as they did before"
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).

- **will possess you** - The word “you” is singular and refers to “the land of Israel.” (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **you will no longer cause their children to die** - It is implied that in the past children died because there was not enough food in the land. Now the land would produce enough food. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ I, Yahweh the Lord, am telling you mountains this: It is true that people have said they could not grow many crops on you, and so they died from hunger. ¹⁴ But that will no longer happen. ¹⁵ No longer will the other people groups ridicule you mountains. No longer will they laugh at you; no longer will you mountains make your nation suffer defeat. I, the Lord Yahweh, am telling you this myself.”

ULB:

¹³ The Lord Yahweh says this: Because they are saying to you, “You devour people, and your nation’s children have died,” ¹⁴ therefore you will not consume people any longer, and you will no longer make your nation mourn their deaths. This is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration. ¹⁵ Nor will I allow you to hear the insults of the nations any longer; you will no longer have to bear the shame of the peoples or cause your nation to fall—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- devour
- nation
- declare, declaration
- shame, shameful, ashamed

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues Yahweh’s message to the mountains of Israel.
- **they are saying to you** - “other nations are saying to you mountains”
- **You devour people** - “You cause many people to die.” The word “you” is singular and refers to the “land of Israel.” (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **your nation’s children have died** - “you cause your people’s children to die.” It is implied that the mountains do this by not growing good crops. This can be made explicit as in the UDB. See ([Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **This is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **Nor will I allow you to hear the insults of the nations any longer** - AT: “I will no longer allow the other nations to insult you.”
- **you will no longer have to bear the shame of the peoples** - “the peoples will no longer cause you to feel ashamed”
- **or cause your nation to fall** - “and you mountains make your nation suffer defeat” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ¹⁷ "Son of man, when the Israelite people were living in their own land, they defiled it by the things that they did. They made it unacceptable to me. I considered that their behavior was as disgusting as the rags that women use during their monthly menstrual periods. ¹⁸ So I severely punished them, because they had murdered many people and because they had worshiped idols there. They made their entire land unacceptable to me.

ULB:

¹⁶ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ¹⁷ "Son of man, when the house of Israel inhabited their land, they defiled it with their ways and their deeds. Their ways were like the unclean menstruation of a woman before me. ¹⁸ So I poured out my fury against them for the blood that they poured out on the land and for their pollution of it by their idols.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- defile, be defiled
- works, deeds, work, acts
- unclean
- blood
- idol, idolatrous

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in [2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **with their ways and their deeds** - "by the way they lived and the things they did"
- **Their ways were like the unclean menstruation of a woman before me** - "Their ways were as disgusting to me as the unclean menstruation of a woman"
- **menstruation of a woman** - the blood that comes out of a woman every month when she is not pregnant
- **I poured out my fury against them** - "I did things to them that showed how angry I was."

- **for the blood that they poured out on the land** - AT: “because they made the blood of many people spill onto the land” or “because they murdered many people.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **and for their pollution of it by their idols** - “and because they defiled the land with their idols”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ So I made their enemies scatter them into other lands. I punished them as they deserved to be punished because they had done so many evil things. ²⁰ Wherever they went among those lands, they caused other people to mock me, when they should have honored me. Those people have been saying, ‘The Israelites belong to Yahweh, but he was not strong enough to protect them. They had to leave the land that he had given to them.’ ²¹ The people of Israel had disgraced me among the people groups to which they had to go, but I deserve that those people groups worship me instead.

ULB:

¹⁹ I scattered them among the nations; they were dispersed through the lands. I judged them according to their ways and their deeds. ²⁰ Then they went to the nations, and wherever they went, they profaned my holy name when people said of them, ‘Are these really the people of Yahweh? For they have been thrown out of his land.’ ²¹ But I had compassion for my holy name that the house of Israel had defiled among the nations, when they went there.

translationWords:

- nation
- judge, judgment
- profane
- holy, holiness
- name
- Yahweh
- compassion, compassionate
- defile, be defiled

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about Israel.
- **I scattered them among the nations; they were dispersed through the lands.** - See how you translated a similar phrase in [12:15](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **they were dispersed through the lands** - AT: “I dispersed them through the lands” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **their ways and their deeds** - AT: “the things that they have done” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **when people** - “because other people said”
- **his land** - This refers to the land of Israel.
- **I had compassion for my holy name** - “I cared about my holy name.” AT: “I wanted people to know that I am holy.”

- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in **3:1**.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:22-23**UDB:**

²² So you, Ezekiel, say to the Israelite people that I, the Lord Yahweh, am telling them this: 'You Israelite people, it is not for your sake that I am going to rescue you from your enemies. Instead, I will do this so that the people in these other lands will worship me as God. You have done your best to disgrace me wherever you have gone. ²³ I will show that these other people groups should worship me as God, even though they would never know it by watching how you act. When I prove to them that I am powerful and can do anything, then they will know that I will carry out everything that I say I will do. And they will see you honor me as the God who is holy.

ULB:

²² Therefore say to the house of Israel, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: I am not doing this for your sake, house of Israel, but for my holy name, which you have profaned among the nations everywhere you have gone. ²³ For I will make my great name holy, which you have profaned among the nations—in the midst of the nations, you profaned it. Then the nations will know that I am Yahweh—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—when you see that I am holy.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [profane](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel, and he gives him a message to Israel.
- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **for your sake** - AT: "because of you" or "in order to help you"
- **but for my holy name** - AT: "so that people will know that I am holy" or "so that people will honor me as holy"
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [06:07](#).
- **this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ I will take you out of those distant lands. I will gather you from all those places where you had to go, and I will bring you back to your own land. ²⁵ It will be as though I will sprinkle clean water on you, and then you will be clean. I will make you clean from everything that has made me reject you, and I will cause you to stop worshiping idols.

ULB:

²⁴ I will take you from the nations and gather you from every land, and I will bring you to your land. ²⁵ Then I will sprinkle pure water on you so you will be purified from all of your impurities, and I will purify you from all of your idols.

translationWords:

- [nation](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.
- **sprinkle pure water** - “make pure water drip on you” or “throw pure water”
- **all of your impurities** - “all the things that made you unclean”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:26-28**UDB:**

²⁶ I will give you a completely new way of thinking. I will enable you to stop being stubborn, and I will enable you to obey me from your inner beings. ²⁷ I will put my Spirit within you and enable you to carefully obey all my laws. ²⁸ You will again live in the land that I gave to your ancestors. You will be my people, and I will be your God.

ULB:

²⁶ I will give you a new heart and a new spirit in your innermost parts, and I will take away the heart of stone from your flesh. For I will give you a heart of flesh. ²⁷ I will set my Spirit in you and enable you to walk in my statutes and keep my decrees, so you will do them. ²⁸ Then you will inhabit the land that I gave to your ancestors; you will be my people, and I will be your God.

translationWords:

- heart
- spirit, spiritual
- flesh
- walk
- statute, statutes
- decree
- people of God, my people
- God

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.
- **a new heart and a new spirit** - See how you translated “heart” and “spirit” in [11:19](#).
- **in your innermost parts** - “within you” or “inside of you”
- **the heart of stone** - This compares the people’s stubborn hearts to hard stone. AT: “the heart that is as hard as stone.” See how you translated “stone heart” in [11:19](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **your flesh** - “your body”
- **a heart of flesh** - See how you translated this in [11:19](#). This is a heart that is not stubborn, but is willing to obey God.
- **walk in my statutes** - See how you translated this in [11:20](#).
- **keep my decrees, so you will do them** - See how you translated “will carry out my decrees and do them” in [11:20](#).
- **my people** - See how you translated this in [11:20](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:29-31**UDB:**

²⁹ I will free you from everything that made me reject you. I will cause your grain to be plentiful, and I will not send a famine to you again. ³⁰ I will cause your fruit trees to produce plenty of fruit and your ground to produce plenty of good crops, with the result that the people of other lands will not mock you because you do not have enough food. ³¹ When that happens, you will think about your previous evil behavior and wicked deeds, and you will be very displeased with yourselves for your sins and the detestable things that you did.

ULB:

²⁹ For I will save you from all of your uncleanness. I will summon the grain and multiply it. I will no longer put famine upon you. ³⁰ I will multiply the fruit of the tree and the produce of the field so that you will no longer bear the shame of famine among the nations. ³¹ Then you will think of your wicked ways and your deeds that were not good, and you will show loathing on your faces because of your own sins and your disgusting deeds.

translationWords:

- save, safe
- unclean
- grain
- famine
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- nation
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.
- **I will summon the grain** - “I will call the grain to come.” This phrase presents the grain as a servant of Yahweh. AT: “will cause there to be grain in the land of Israel.” (See: **Personification**)
- **you will no longer bear the shame of famine among the nations** - “the nations will no longer make you feel ashamed because you suffer from famine”
- **disgusting deeds** - See how you translated “disgusting actions” in **5:9**.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:32-34**UDB:**

³² But I, the Lord Yahweh, tell you this: It is not for your sake that I will do those things. You Israelite people ought to be ashamed of your behavior.

³³ I, the Lord Yahweh, also tell you this: At the time that I cleanse you from all the sins that you have committed, I will enable you to live in your cities again and to build houses where there are now only ruins. ³⁴ People who walk through your country will see that you are once again cultivating your land, and that your people are living in it again.

ULB:

³² I am not doing this for your sake—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—let this be known to you. So be ashamed and disgraced because of your ways, house of Israel. ³³ The Lord Yahweh says this: On the day that I purify you from all your iniquity, I will cause you to inhabit the cities and to rebuild the ruined places. ³⁴ For you will plow the ruined land until it is no longer a ruin before the eyes of all who pass by.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- pure, purify, purification
- iniquity
- ruin, ruins

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.
- **for your sake** - “for you”
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).
- **let this be known to you** - AT: “know this” or “you can be sure of this.” Yahweh says this to emphasize that it is not because the people are good that he will restore them. This phrase can be moved to the beginning of the verse. (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **So be ashamed and disgraced** - The words “ashamed” and “disgraced” share similar meanings. Together they emphasize the intensity of the shame. AT: “So be very ashamed.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **because of your ways** - “because of what you do”
- **house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).

- **you will plow the ruined land** - “you will farm the ruined land”
- **before the eyes of all who pass by** - AT: “and all who travel in the land will see it.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:35-36**UDB:**

³⁵ Then they will say, “This land that was ruined has become very fertile, like the garden of Eden. The cities that were piles of ruins, empty and destroyed, now have houses around them, and people are living in those cities.” ³⁶ When that happens, the people who are still left in the lands that are around you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have enabled you to rebuild what was destroyed, and to again plant crops in the fields that had nothing growing in them. I, Yahweh, have said that it will happen, and I will cause it to happen.

ULB:

³⁵ Then they will say, “This land was desolate, but it has become like the garden of Eden; the desolate cities and the uninhabited ruins that were torn down are now fortified and inhabited.” ³⁶ Then the other nations around you will know that I am Yahweh, that I built up the ruins and replanted the abandoned places. I am Yahweh. I have declared it and I will do it.

translationWords:

- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [Eden, garden of Eden](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [nation](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.
- **Then they** - The word “they” refers to the people who walk through the land of Israel.
- **the uninhabited ruins** - “the ruins that no one lived in”
- **that were torn down** - Possible meanings are 1) “that enemies had torn down” or 2) “that people could not get into.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **that I built up the ruins** - “and that I built up the cities that enemies had torn down”
- **replanted the abandoned places** - “planted crops in the desolate land”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 36:37-38

UDB:

³⁷ This is also what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Again I will answer your pleas for me to make your people become as numerous as sheep. ³⁸ I will make them as numerous as the flocks of sheep that will be needed for offerings in Jerusalem during your regular festivals. The cities that are now ruined will be filled with people, and then you will know that I, Yahweh, have done this.”

ULB:

³⁷ The Lord Yahweh says this: Again I will be asked by the house of Israel to do this for them, to increase them like a flock of people. ³⁸ Like the flock is set apart for sacrifices, like the flock in Jerusalem at her appointed feasts, so will be the ruined cities be filled with flocks of people and they will know that I am Yahweh.”

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- flock, herd
- Jerusalem
- appoint, appointed
- feast
- desolate, desolation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.
- **to increase them like a flock of people** - “to make them multiply like a flock of sheep.” Sheep multiply very quickly. AT: “to make the people multiply quickly like sheep.” (**Metaphor**)
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in **6:7**.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 37 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel restored

God will unite the two kingdoms of Israel and Judah and the Messiah will rule over them. This will come in a prophesied day of restoration. (See: [Christ, Messiah](#) and [restore, restoration](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The people are discouraged and compare themselves to skeletons; but God will cause them to become a nation again. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 37:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 37:1-3**UDB:**

¹ One day Yahweh gave me another vision. In the vision I felt the power of God on me, and by his Spirit he took me to the middle of a valley. It was full of bones of people who had been killed. ² He led me to walk back and forth among those bones. I saw that there were very many bones there, bones that were very dry. ³ He asked me, “Son of man, do you think that these bones can become living people again?”

I replied, “Yahweh my Lord, only you know if that can happen.”

ULB:

37 ¹ The hand of Yahweh was upon me, and he brought me out by the Spirit of Yahweh and set me down in the midst of a valley; it was full of bones. ² Then he made me pass through them round and round. Behold! A great many of them were in the valley. Behold! They were very dry. ³ He said to me, “Son of man, can these bones live again?” So I said, “Lord Yahweh, you alone know.”

translationWords:

- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Yahweh
- send, send out, sent
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- Son of Man, son of man
- life, live, living, alive
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel is speaking
- **The hand of Yahweh was upon me** - See how you translated “the hand of Yahweh came upon him” in 1:3.
- **in the midst** - AT: “in the middle”
- **round and round** - AT: “in every direction”
- **Behold!** - The word “Behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
- **Son of man** - “Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in 2:1. AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 37:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ Then he said to me, "Speak a message for me to these bones. Say to them, 'You dry bones, listen to what Yahweh says. ⁵ This is what Yahweh the Lord says to you bones: I am going to put my breath into each of you, and you will become alive again. ⁶ I will fasten tendons to your bones and cause your bones to be covered with flesh. I will cover the flesh with skin. Then I will breathe into you, and you will become alive. When that happens, you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.'"

ULB:

⁴ Then he said to me, "Prophecy over these bones and say to them, 'Dry bones. Listen to the word of Yahweh. ⁵ The Lord Yahweh says this to these bones: Behold! I am about to put breath into you, and you will live. ⁶ I will place sinews over you and bring flesh onto you. I will cover you with skin and put breath within you so you will live. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.'"

translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- spirit, spiritual
- flesh
- breathe, breath
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh speaks to Ezekiel.
- **Listen to the word of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [13:2](#).
- **Behold** - AT: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you."
- **sinews** - the parts of human bodies that are like hard strings and hold the bones and muscles together
- **put breath within** - Here "breath" refers to the act of breathing. AT: "I will make you able to breathe." (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **breath** - The Hebrew word translated as "breath" in these verses is translated as "spirit" by a few modern versions. It is also translated as "wind" in [37:9](#).
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 37:7-8

UDB:

⁷ So I spoke to the bones as Yahweh commanded me to speak. As I was speaking, there was a noise, a sound of shaking, and the bones came together, bones joining to each other. ⁸ While I was looking, I saw tendons fastening to them and flesh covering them, and then skin covered the flesh, but they were not breathing.

ULB:

⁷ So I prophesied as I was commanded; as I prophesied, behold, a sound came, that of shaking. Then the bones drew together—bone against bone. ⁸ I looked and, behold, sinews were now on them, and flesh grew up and skin covered them. But there was still no breath in them.

translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel is speaking
- **as I was commanded** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “as Yahweh had commanded me to speak.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **behold** - The word “behold” here shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.
- **sinews** - This refers to the parts of human bodies that are like hard strings and hold the bones and muscles together. See how you translated this in [37:6](#).
- **But there was still no breath in them** - Here “breath” refers to the act of breathing. AT: “but they were not breathing” or “But they were not alive” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 37:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Then he said to me, “Son of man, speak a message for me to the wind. Say to the wind, ‘Wind, Yahweh says to you, blow from all four directions. Breathe into these people who have been killed, in order that they can come alive again!’” ¹⁰ So I said what he commanded me to say, and then breath entered them, and they began to breathe. They became alive and stood up, like a huge army.

ULB:

⁹ Then Yahweh said to me, “Prophecy to the breath, prophecy, son of man, and say to the breath, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Breath, come from the four winds, and breathe on these who have been killed, so they may live.’” ¹⁰ So I prophesied as I was commanded; the breath came into them and they lived. Then they stood on their feet, a very great army.

translationWords:

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **the breath** - Possible meanings are: 1) “breath” or 2) “spirit” or 3) “wind.”
- **from the four winds** - AT: “from the four directions that the wind can blow in” or “from every direction”
- **these who have been killed** - AT: “these people that enemies and disasters have killed.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **as I was commanded** - AT: “as Yahweh had commanded me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 37:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Then he said to me, "Son of man, these bones represent all the Israelite people. The people say, 'It is as though our bones are dried up; we can hope for nothing good any longer; our nation is destroyed.' ¹² So speak my message to them and say, 'This is what the Lord Yahweh says: My people, it will be as though I will open your graves and cause your corpses to become alive again. I will bring you back to Israel.

ULB:

¹¹ Then Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, these bones are the entire house of Israel. Behold! They are saying, 'Our bones have dried up, and our hope is gone. We have been cut off.' ¹² Therefore prophesy and say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I will open your graves and lift you out from them, my people. I will bring you back to the land of Israel.

translationWords:

- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)

translationNotes:

- **the entire house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).
- **Behold!** - The word "Behold" here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: "Indeed!"
- **prophesy and say** - See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 21:8-9](#).
- **Behold** - AT: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 37:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Then when that happens, you my people will know that I, Yahweh have done this. ¹⁴ I will put my spirit in you, and it will be as though you will become alive again, and I will enable you to live in your own land again. Then you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who said that it would happen and who has caused it to happen. That is what I, Yahweh, declare.”

ULB:

¹³ Then you will know that I am Yahweh, when I open your graves and bring you out from them, my people. ¹⁴ I will place my Spirit within you so you will live, and I will cause you to rest in your land when you know that I am Yahweh. I declare and will do it—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [rest](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These are Yahweh’s words to the house of Israel.
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **to rest in your land** - “to live peacefully in your own land”
- **this is Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated “this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration” in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 37:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Yahweh gave me another message. He said, ¹⁶ "Son of man, take a wooden stick and write on it, 'This represents Judah and all the tribes of Judah.' Then take another one and write on it, 'This represents Israel and all the tribes of Israel.' ¹⁷ Then join them together to become as though they were one larger wooden stick in your hand.

ULB:

¹⁵ Then the word of Yahweh came to me and said, ¹⁶ "So now you, son of man, take one stick for yourself and write on it, 'For Judah and for the people of Israel, his companions.' Then take another stick and write on it, 'For Joseph, the branch of Ephraim, and for all the people of Israel, their companions.' ¹⁷ Bring both of them together into one stick, so that they become one in your hand.

translationWords:

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- companion
- Joseph (OT)
- Ephraim

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **For Judah** - AT: "Representing Judah" or "Belonging to Judah."
- **Judah** - The tribe of Judah lived in the southern kingdom of Israel which was called Judah. Here the name is used to refer to the whole southern kingdom. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the people of Israel, his companions** - This refers to the Israelites who lived in the southern kingdom of Judah. AT: "all the tribes of Judah" (UDB) or "the tribes of Israel who are part of the kingdom of Judah"
- **Ephraim** - The tribe of Ephraim lived in the northern kingdom of Israel. Here the name is used to refer to the whole northern kingdom. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **all the people of Israel, their companions** - This refers to the Israelites who lived in the northern kingdom of Israel. AT: "all the tribes of Israel" (UDB) or "the Israelites who were part of the kingdom of Israel"
- **into one stick** - "so that they become one stick"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 37:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ When your fellow Israelites ask you, ‘What does this action mean?’, ¹⁹ tell them, ‘This is what the Lord Yahweh says: One of the pieces of wood in Ezekiel’s hand represents Israel and all the tribes of Israel. I am joining it to the piece of wood that represents Judah, to form one stick in his hand.’
²⁰ Then, Son of man, hold up the pieces of wood that you have written on, in order that the people can see them.

ULB:

¹⁸ When your people speak to you and say, ‘Will you not tell us what these things of yours mean?’
¹⁹ then say to them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am taking the branch of Joseph that is in the hand of Ephraim and the tribes of Israel his companions and joining it to the branch of Judah, so that they will make one branch, and they will become one in my hand.’ ²⁰ Hold in your hand the branches that you wrote on before their eyes.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- tribe
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.
- **speak to you and say** - See how you translated “are talking and say” in [33:24](#).
- **what these things of yours mean** - AT: “what your sticks means” or “why you have these sticks”
- **Behold!** - AT: “Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”
- **the branch of Joseph** - “the stick of Joseph.” This represents the kingdom of Israel.
- **that is in the hand of Ephraim** - The word “hand” refers to power. AT: “that is in the power of Ephraim” or “that the tribe of Ephraim rules over” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the tribes of Israel his companions** - AT: “the other tribes of Israel who are his companions” or “the other tribes of Israel who are part of that kingdom”
- **the branch of Judah** - “the stick of Judah.” This represents the kingdom of Judah.
- **before their eyes** - See how you translated this in [21:6](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 37 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 37 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 37:21-23**UDB:**

²¹ Say to the people, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: I will take you Israelite people out of the countries to which you have been forced to go. I will gather you from all those lands, back to your own land. ²² And I will cause you to again be one nation in your land, on the mountains of Israel. And there will be one king to rule over all of you. Never again will you be two nations or divided into two kingdoms. ²³ No longer will you defile yourselves by worshiping idols and disgusting statues of your gods, because I will enable you to stop sinning and to stop rejecting me. You will be my people, and I will be your God.'

ULB:

²¹ Declare to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am about to take the people of Israel from among the nations where they went. I will gather them from the surrounding lands and I will bring them to their land. ²² I will make them one nation in the land, on the mountains of Israel, and there will be one king as king over all of them, and they will no longer be two nations. They will no longer be divided into two kingdoms. ²³ Then they will no longer defile themselves with their idols, their disgusting things, or any of their other sins. For I will save them from all of their faithless actions with which they have sinned, and I will purify them, so they will be my people and I will be their God.[1]Some ancient and most modern versions read in this way: *from all of their faithless actions* . However, the Hebrew text reads *from their dwelling places* , which many think makes little sense in this context.

translationWords:

- nation
- king
- kingdom
- defile, be defiled
- idol, idolatrous
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- save, safe
- faithless, faithlessness
- pure, purify, purification

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.
- **Behold!** - AT: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"
- **disgusting things** - See how you translated "hateful things" in [5:11](#).

- **they will be my people and I will be their God** - See how you translated this in [11:20](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 37:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ Someone who will be like King David, who served me well, will be the king of your descendants, and it will be as though he will be their shepherd. They will carefully obey all my laws. ²⁵ They will live in the land that I gave to Jacob, who also served me well; they will live in the land where your ancestors lived. They and their children and their grandchildren will live there forever, and the one who will be like King David will be their king forever.

ULB:

²⁴ David my servant will be king over them. So there will be one shepherd over them all, and they will walk according to my decrees and they will keep my statutes and obey them. ²⁵ They will live in the land that I have given to my servant Jacob, where your fathers had stayed. They will live in it forever—they, their children, and their grandchildren, for David my servant will be their chief forever.

translationWords:

- David
- servant, slave, slavery
- shepherd, to shepherd
- walk
- decree
- statute, statutes
- obey, obedient, obedience
- Jacob, Israel
- ancestor, father, forefather
- forever

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.
- **David my servant** - See how you translated “my servant David” in [34:23](#).
- **over them** - AT: “over the people of Israel”
- **one shepherd over them** - See how you translated this in [34:23](#).
- **will walk according to my decrees** - AT: “will live as I have commanded”
- **they will keep my statutes and obey them** - See how you translated “keeps all my statutes, and he does them” in [18:19](#).
- **had stayed** - AT: “had lived”
- **chief** - See how you translated “prince” in [Ezekiel 07:26-27](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 37:26-28**UDB:**

²⁶ I will make a covenant with them to give them peace; it will be a covenant that will last forever. I will give them that land again and cause their population to increase. And I will put my temple among them forever. ²⁷ My home, where I will live, will be among them; I will be their God, and they will be my people. ²⁸ Then, when my temple is there again among them, the people of nations will know that I, Yahweh, set apart Israel for my honor.”

ULB:

²⁶ I will establish a covenant of peace with them. It will be an everlasting covenant with them. I will establish them and multiply them and set my holy place in their midst forever. ²⁷ My dwelling place will be with them; I will be their God, and they will be my people. ²⁸ Then the nations will know that I am Yahweh who sets Israel apart, when my holy place is among them forever.”

translationWords:

- covenant
- peace, peaceful
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- holy, holiness
- people of God, my people
- set apart
- holy place, most holy place

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking about the people of Israel.
- **I will establish** - AT: “I will set up”
- **a covenant of peace** - See how you translated this in [34:25](#).
- **I will establish them** - It was implied that Yahweh would establish them in the land of Israel. AT: “I will set them in the land of Israel.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **multiply** - See how you translated “multiply” in [36:10](#).
- **my holy place** - AT: “my sanctuary” or “my temple” (UDB)
- **My dwelling place** - AT: “the place where I live”
- **I will be their God, and they will be my people** - See how you translated “they will be my people, and I will be their God” in [11:20](#).
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **my holy place** - AT: “my sanctuary” or “my temple”
- **in their midst** - AT: “among them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 38 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section prophesying against Gog. Later Gog will try to conquer Israel.

Links:

- [Ezekiel 38:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 38:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave me another message. He said to me, ² "Son of man, turn and face Magog, the country where Gog is the king. He is also the ruler of the nations of Meshech and Tubal. Announce my message about the terrible things that will happen to him. ³ Say this: "This is what the Lord Yahweh says: Gog, you who rule Meshech and Tubal, I am your enemy.

ULB:

38 ¹ The word of Yahweh came to me and said, ² "Son of man, set your face toward Gog, the land of Magog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal; and prophesy against him. ³ Say, "The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you, Gog, chief prince of Meshech and Tubal.

translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [face](#)
- [Meshech](#)
- [Tubal](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [1:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Gog** - This is the name of a leader or king who ruled in the land of Magog. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the land of Magog** - It is implied that this is the land that Gog rules over. AT: "who rules over the land of Magog." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Magog** - the name of an ancient nation that probably lived in the land that is now Turkey. Magog might be the ancient nation of Lydia.
- **the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal** - This expression occurs twice in these verses. Some modern versions, however, interpret the Hebrew expression as "the chief of Rosh, Mesheck, and Tubal."

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 38 General Notes
- Ezekiel 38 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 38:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ It will be as though I will turn you around and put hooks in your jaws and bring you to Israel—you and all of your army, including your horses and the men carrying weapons who ride those horses, and many other soldiers carrying large shields and small shields, all of them carrying swords. ⁵ Your soldiers also include armies from Persia, Ethiopia, and Put, all of them with shields and helmets—⁶ also all the soldiers from Gomer and an army from Beth Togarmah—both of these lands that are far north of Israel. Armies of many nations will come with you.'

ULB:

⁴ So I will turn you around and set hooks in your jaw; I will send you out with all your army, horses, and horsemen, all of them dressed in full armor, a great company with large shields and small shields, all of them holding swords! ⁵ Persia, Cush, and Put are with them, all of them with shields and helmets! ⁶ Gomer and all her troops, and Beth Togarmah, from the far parts of the north, and all its troops! Many peoples are with you!

translationWords:

- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [horse](#)
- [armor](#)
- [sword](#)
- [Persia, Persians](#)
- [Cush](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to Gog.
- **set hooks in your jaw** - People put hooks in the mouths of animals so that they could lead the animals wherever they wanted. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Put** - a nation that lived in what is now Libya. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Gomer** - a nation that lived north of the Black Sea
- **Beth Togarmah** - See how you translated this in [27:14](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 38 General Notes
- Ezekiel 38 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 38:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ Tell Gog this: 'Get ready, and be prepared to be the commander of all those soldiers. ⁸ At some future time, Yahweh will command you to lead those armies to attack Israel, a country whose buildings have been rebuilt after they were destroyed in wars. Their people will have been brought back from many nations to live again on the hills of Israel, where no one had been living for long time. Yahweh bring the Israelites back from other lands, and they will be living peacefully. ⁹ You and all those armies from many nations will go up to Israel, advancing like a great storm. Your army will be like a huge cloud that covers the land.

ULB:

⁷ Get ready! Yes, prepare yourself and your troops assembled with you, and be their commander. ⁸ You will be called after many days, and after some years you will go to a land that has recovered from the sword and that has been gathered from many peoples, gathered back to the mountains of Israel that had been a continuous ruin. But the land's people will be brought out of the peoples, and they will live in safety, all of them! ⁹ So you will go up as a storm goes; you will be like a cloud covering the land, you and all your troops, all the many soldiers with you.

translationWords:

- commander, command
- call, calling, called, call out
- sword
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- ruin, ruins
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to Gog.
- **You will be called** - AT: "I will call you to come for war." (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **your troops assembled with you** - "all of your troops that you have gathered to yourself" or "all of your army that you have brought together for yourself"
- **that has been gathered** - "and whose people I have gathered." (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 38 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 38 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 38:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ But this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: On that day, you will plan to do something very evil. ¹¹ You will say this to yourself: "My army will invade a country where the villages do not have walls around them. We will attack people who are peaceful and think that no one will harm them. Their towns and villages do not have walls with gates and bars. ¹² So it will be easy for us to attack these people. They are people who come back together from many countries where they had lived for many years, people who now live safely in their land with all their livestock and other possessions. They are living in the country that is in the middle of the most important countries in the world. Our soldiers will take away all their valuable possessions."

ULB:

¹⁰ The Lord Yahweh says this: it will happen on that day that plans will form in your hearts, and you will devise wicked schemes.' ¹¹ Then you will say, 'I will go up to the open land; I will go to the quiet people living in safety, all of them living where there are no walls or bars, and where there are no city gates. ¹² I will capture booty and steal plunder, in order to bring my hand against the ruins that are newly inhabited, and against the people gathered from the nations, people who are gaining livestock and property, and who are living at the center of the earth.'

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [nation](#)

translationNotes:

- **it will happen on that day that** - "at that time"
- **plans will form in your hearts** - "ideas will come to your mind"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)

- Ezekiel 38 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 38:13

UDB:

¹³ Then people of Sheba and Dedan and the merchants of Tarshish will come and say to you, “Are you gathering all your soldiers in order to attack Israel and take away all their silver and gold? Do you plan to take away their livestock and all their other valuable possessions?”

ULB:

¹³ Sheba and Dedan, and the traders of Tarshish with all their young warriors—they will all say to you, ‘Have you come to capture booty? Have you assembled your army to steal plunder, to carry off silver and gold, to take cattle and property, to capture much plunder?’

translationWords:

- [Tarshish](#)
- [gold](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to Gog.
- **Sheba** - See how you translated this in [27:22](#).
- **Dedan** - See how you translated this in [25:13](#).
- **cattle** - sheep, goats, cows

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 38:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ Therefore, Son of man, take my message about Gog and say to him, "This is what the Lord Yahweh says: At that time, when my people of Israel are living safely, you will certainly think about them. ¹⁵ You will come from your place far north of Israel, with the armies of many other nations, all riding horses, a huge army. ¹⁶ You will march toward my Israelite people, and your soldiers will cover the land like a huge cloud. Gog, I will bring your army to attack the country that belongs to me, but what I will do to you will show the people of other nations that I am holy.

ULB:

¹⁴ Therefore prophesy, son of man, and say to Gog, "The Lord Yahweh says this: On that day, when my people Israel are living securely, will you not learn about them?" ¹⁵ You will come from your place far away in the north with a great army, all of them riding on horses, a great company, a large army. ¹⁶ You will attack my people Israel like a cloud that covers the land. It will happen that in the coming days I will bring you against my land, so the nations might know me when Gog sees my holiness.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [nation](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Gog.
- **On that day ... learn about them** - Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that Gog will indeed hear about the people living in Israel. AT: "On that day, when my people Israel are living securely, you will know about them." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **might know me** - "might know who I am"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 38:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to Gog: In past years, when I gave messages to my servants, the prophets in Israel, there were messages about you. At that time, they said for many years that I would bring your armies to attack my people. ¹⁸ So this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say will happen: When your army attacks Israel, I will be very angry with you.

ULB:

¹⁷ The Lord Yahweh says this: Are you not the one of whom I spoke in former days by the hand of my servants, the prophets of Israel, who prophesied in their own time for years that I would bring you against them? ¹⁸ So it will come to be in that day when Gog attacks the land of Israel—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—my wrath will mount up in my anger.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Gog.
- **Are you not the one of whom ... them?** - Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he was the one who brought Gog to the land of Israel. AT: “You are the one of whom ... them.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **of whom I spoke** - “that I spoke about”
- **against them** - “against the people of Israel”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 38:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ I will be furious, and to show that I am angry, there will be a great earthquake in Israel, where your armies will be. ²⁰ The fish in the sea, the birds, the wild animals, and the animals that crawl on the ground, and all the people on the earth will tremble because of what I will do. Mountains will fall down, cliffs will crumble, and walls everywhere will fall to the ground.

ULB:

¹⁹ I have declared this in the heat of my anger and with the fire of my rage: there will certainly be a great earthquake on that day in the land of Israel. ²⁰ They will shake before me—the fish of the sea and the birds of the skies, the beasts of the fields, and all the creatures that crawl on the earth, and every person who is on the surface of the land. The mountains will be thrown down and the cliffs will fall, until every wall falls to the earth.

translationWords:

- [angry, anger](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog.
- **The mountains will be thrown down** - “Yahweh will make mountains fall down.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 38:21-23**UDB:**

²¹ Gog, on all the mountains in the country that belongs to me I will cause your soldiers to fight against each other. ²² I will punish you and your soldiers with plagues, and I will kill them. I will send down from the sky, on you and your troops who have come from many lands, huge amounts of rain, hail, and burning sulfur. ²³ In this way, I will cause the people of many nations to know that I am very great, and I will show them my holiness. And they will see who I am and they will know that I am Yahweh.”

ULB:

²¹ I will summon a sword against him on all my mountains—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—each man’s sword will be against his brother. ²² Then I will judge them with plague, blood, flooding rains, and hailstones of fire. I will bring rains of brimstone upon him and upon his troops and the many people with him. ²³ For I will show my greatness and my holiness and I will make myself known in the eyes of the many nations, and they will know that I am Yahweh.”

translationWords:

- sword
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- brother
- judge, judgment
- plague
- blood
- sulfur
- holy, holiness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog.
- **flooding rains, and hailstones of fire. I will bring rains of brimstone** - “and I will rain down flooding rains, hailstones, and burning sulfur”
- **hailstones** - ice that falls out of the sky
- **brimstone** - “sulfur”
- **show my greatness and my holiness** - “show that I am great and holy”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 38 General Notes
- Ezekiel 38 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 39 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter concludes the prophecy against Gog. God will destroy Gog and his army.

Links:

- [Ezekiel 39:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 39:1-3

UDB:

¹ Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, speak for me about the terrible things that will happen to Gog. Say this to him: 'Gog, I am your enemy, you who rule Meshech and Tubal. ² I will turn you around and drag you and your armies from far north of Israel and send you to fight on the mountains of Israel. ³ When you are there, I will snatch your bows from your left hands and cause your arrows to fall from your right hands.

ULB:

39 ¹ "Now you, son of man, prophesy against Gog and say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you, Gog, chief of Meshech and Tubal. ² I will turn you and lead you on; I will bring you up from the far north and bring you to the mountains of Israel. ³ Then I will knock your bow out of your left hand and make the arrows fall from your right hand.

translationWords:

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Meshech](#)
- [Tubal](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [bow and arrow](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh gives Ezekiel his message to Gog.
- **Behold!** - Alternate translation: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"
- **chief of Meshech and Tubal** - This expression occurs twice in these verses. Some modern versions, however, interpret the Hebrew expression as "prince of Rosh, Mesheck, and Tubal."
- **I will knock your bow out of your left hand and make the arrows fall from your right hand.** - AT: "I will destroy your military power." (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 39:4-6

UDB:

⁴ You and all the soldiers that are with you will die on the mountains of Israel. I will give your corpses to be food for the birds that eat dead flesh, and to the wild animals. ⁵ You will die in the open fields. This will certainly happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have said that it will happen. ⁶ I will cause many fires to burn in Magog and to all those who live safely in the areas along their coasts, and they will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do what I say that I will do.

ULB:

⁴ You will fall dead on the mountains of Israel—you and all your troops and the soldiers who are with you. I will give you to the birds of prey and the wild beasts of the fields for food. ⁵ You will fall dead on the surface of the field, for I myself declare it—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration. ⁶ Then I will send out fire on Magog and on those living in safety on the coasts, and they will know that I am Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [fire](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Gog.
- **Magog** - See how you translated this in [38:2](#).
- **will know that I am Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [6:7](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 39:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ I will enable my Israelite people to know that I am holy. I will no longer allow them to mock me, and the people groups in the other lands will know that I am Yahweh, the God whom Israel worships and honors. ⁸ I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that those things will happen soon. That day is fast approaching.

ULB:

⁷ For I will make my holy name known in the midst of my people Israel, and I will no longer allow my holy name to be profaned; the nations will know that I am Yahweh, the Holy One in Israel. ⁸ Behold! The day that I have declared is coming, and it will take place—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [name](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [profane](#)
- [nation](#)
- [Holy One](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Gog.
- **I will make my holy name known in the midst of my people Israel** - AT: "I will make my people, Israel, know my holy name." The people of Israel will have a clearer understanding of character of Yahweh. (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Behold!** - Alternate translation: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 39:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ At that time, the people who live in the cities of Israel will go out and gather the weapons from the dead soldiers, and will use them to make fires to cook their food. They will burn the small and large shields, the bows and arrows, the war clubs, and spears. There will be enough weapons to use as firewood for seven years. ¹⁰ They will not need to gather firewood in the fields or cut wood from trees in the forests, because those weapons will be all the firewood that they will need. And they will take valuable things from those who took valuable things from them, and steal things from people who stole things from them. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare will happen.

ULB:

⁹ The ones living in the cities of Israel will go out and burn the weapons, small shields, large shields, bows, arrows, the clubs and spears; they will burn them with fire for seven years. ¹⁰ They will not gather wood from the fields or cut down the forests, since they will burn the weapons; they will take from those who took from them; they will plunder those who plundered them—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- shield
- spear
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog.
- **clubs** - wooden sticks used as a weapon
- **will plunder** - See how you translated “plundered” in [23:46](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 39:11

UDB:

¹¹ At that time I will create a graveyard for you, Gog, and your soldiers, in the valley east of the Dead Sea. That graveyard will block the road that travelers usually walk on, because you, Gog and all the soldiers of your huge army will be buried there. So it will be named the Valley of Hamon Gog.

ULB:

¹¹ Then it will happen on that day that I will make a place there for Gog—a grave in Israel, a valley for those who journey to the east of the sea. It will block those who wish to cross over. There they will bury Gog with all his multitudes. They will call it the Valley of Hamon Gog.

translationWords:

- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog.
- **it will happen ... that** - an important event marker. If your language has a way for doing this, you could use it here.
- **to the east of the sea** - A few modern versions interpret the Hebrew expression here as “to the east toward the sea.”
- **It will block** - Possible meanings are 1) “the grave will block” or 2) “the dead army will block”
- **There they** - “There the house of Israel”
- **They will call it** - “People will call it”
- **Valley of Hamon Gog** - “Valley of the Great Army of Gog”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 39:12-13**UDB:**

¹² For seven months the people of Israel will be burying your corpses. It will be necessary to bury all of them, in order that the land will not be defiled because of any unburied corpses. ¹³ All the people of Israel will do the work of burying them. The day when I win that victory they will honor me, and they will remember that day forever.

ULB:

¹² For seven months the house of Israel will bury them in order to purify the land. ¹³ For all the people of the land will bury them; it will be a memorable day for them when I am glorified—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

translationWords:

- [biblical time: month](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog.
- **seven months** - “7 months” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **bury them** - “bury the people of Gog’s army”
- **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 39:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ After those seven months are ended, the Israelite people will designate men to go throughout the land to bury any remaining corpses, in order that the land might not remain defiled. ¹⁵ When they go through the land, whenever one of them sees a human bone, he will set up a marker beside it. When the gravediggers see the markers, they will pick up the bones and bury them in the Valley of Hamon Gog. ¹⁶ There will be a city there named Hamonah. And by doing this work of burying the corpses, they will cleanse the land.”

ULB:

¹⁴ All the people who pass through the land will bury those who lay on the surface of the land, in order to purify it. At the end of the seventh month they will make their search. ¹⁵ As these men pass through the land, when they see any human bone, they will put a marker by it, until gravediggers come and bury it in the Valley of Hamon Gog. ¹⁶ There will be a city there by the name of Hamonah. In this way they will purify the land.’

translationWords:

- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [face](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [biblical time: month](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog.
- **seventh month** - (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **through the land** - “through the land of Israel”
- **Hamonah** - This name means “Great Army.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 39:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say: Summon every kind of bird and wild animal. Say to them, 'Gather together from everywhere and come to the feast that Yahweh is preparing for you. It will be a great feast on the mountains of Israel. There you will eat men's flesh and drink their blood. ¹⁸ You will eat the flesh of strong soldiers and drink the blood of kings as if they were fat animals from the region of Bashan—as if they were male sheep, lambs, goats, and bulls.

ULB:

¹⁷ Now to you, son of man, the Lord Yahweh says this: Say to all the winged birds and all the wild beasts in the fields, 'Gather together and come. Gather from all around to the sacrifice that I myself am making for you, a large sacrifice on the mountains of Israel, so that you may consume flesh and drink blood. ¹⁸ You will consume the flesh of warriors and drink the blood of the princes of the earth; they will be rams, lambs, goats, and bulls, they were all fattened in Bashan.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- sacrifice, offering
- flesh
- blood
- prince, princess
- sheep, ram, ewe
- lamb, Lamb of God
- goat, kid
- Bashan

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh gives Ezekiel his message to the birds and the wild animals.
- **to the sacrifice** - "to the feast" or "to the slaughter." Yahweh means that he will give the birds and animals a very good meal and not that he is worshiping them.
- **they were all fattened in Bashan** - AT: "they all became fat while grazing in Bashan." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 39 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 39 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 39:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ At the feast that Yahweh is preparing for you, you will eat fat until your stomachs are full, and you will drink blood until it is as though you are drunk. ²⁰ It will be as though you are eating at a table that I have set up for you. You will eat all you want of the flesh of horses and their riders, strong soldiers of every kind.' That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

ULB:

¹⁹ Then you will eat fat to your satisfaction; you will drink blood until drunkenness; this will be the sacrifice that I will slaughter for you. ²⁰ You will be satisfied at my table with horse, chariot, warrior, and every man of war—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.'

translationWords:

- [horse](#)
- [chariot](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the birds and the wild animals.
- **chariot** - AT: "men who rode in chariots." (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 39:21-22

UDB:

²¹ 'I will show people of the nations that I am powerful, and all the nations will see how I punish them. ²² At that time, the Israelite people will learn that I, Yahweh their God, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

ULB:

²¹ I will set my glory among the nations, and all the nations will see my judgment that I perform and my hand that I have set against them. ²² The house of Israel will know that I am Yahweh their God from that day onward.

translationWords:

- [glory, glorious](#)
- [nation](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog.
- **I will set my glory among the nations** - "I will make the nations see my glory"
- **my judgment that I perform and my hand that I have set against them** - Both of these phrases refer to the punishment that Yahweh will inflict upon Israel. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **my hand** - Here the word "hand" refers to Yahweh's power that he exercises to bring punishment. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **against them** - "against the people of Gog's great army"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 39:23-24

UDB:

²³ And the people of the other lands will know that the Israelites had been forced to go to other countries because they sinned by not being faithful to me. I turned away from of them, and I allowed their enemies to capture them and kill many of them. ²⁴ I punished them as they deserved because of their disgusting behavior and sins, and I turned away from them.

ULB:

²³ The nations will know that the house of Israel went into captivity because of their iniquity by which they betrayed me, so I hid my face from them and gave them into the hand of their adversaries so that all of them fell by the sword. ²⁴ I did to them according to their uncleanness and their sins, when I hid my face from them.

translationWords:

- know, knowledge, make known
- captive, captivity
- iniquity
- betray, betrayer
- face
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- adversary, enemy
- sword
- unclean
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog.
- **I hid my face** - AT: "I stopped protecting them and taking care of them." (See: [Idiom](#))
- **fell by the sword** - See how you translated this in [32:23](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 39:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ Therefore, this is now what I, the Lord Yahweh say: I will now bring back from exile the descendants of Jacob; I will have mercy on all the Israelite people, and I will also make sure that they honor me. ²⁶ When the Israelite people are back in their own country, they will live safely in their land, with no one to cause them to be afraid. They will forget about the disgraceful and unfaithful things that they did previously. ²⁷ When I have brought them back from their enemies' countries and gathered them together in Israel, the people of many nations will know how holy I am because of what I did for my people.

ULB:

²⁵ Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Now I will restore the fortunes of Jacob, and I will have compassion on all the house of Israel, when I act with zeal for my holy name. ²⁶ Then they will forget their shame and all the treason in which they betrayed me. They will forget all this when they rest in their land in safety, with no one to terrify them. ²⁷ When I restore them from the peoples and gather them from the lands of their enemies, I will show myself to be holy in the sight of many nations.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- restore, restoration
- Jacob, Israel
- compassion, compassionate
- zeal, zealous
- holy, holiness
- name
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- betray, betrayer
- rest
- terror, terrify
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about the house of Israel.

- **will restore the fortunes of Jacob** - See how you translated “will restore their fortunes” in [16:53](#). However, some modern versions interpret the Hebrew expression here as “will bring Jacob back from captivity.”
- **the treason** - “the unfaithfulness”
- **I will show myself to be holy in the sight of many nations** - AT: “many nations will understand that I am holy because of what did for the house of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 39:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ The Israelite people will know that I, Yahweh, have done this. They will know that because I forced them to go to other countries, and then I gathered them together in their own country. I will not leave any of them in those countries. ²⁹ I will no longer turn away from them; I will give my Spirit to the Israelite people. This will certainly happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have said it.”

ULB:

²⁸ Then they will know that I am Yahweh their God, for I sent them into captivity among the nations, but then I gathered them back to their land. I left none of them among the nations. ²⁹ I will no longer hide my face from them when I pour out my Spirit on the house of Israel—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about the house of Israel.
- **when I pour out my Spirit on the house of Israel** - “when I fill the house of Israel full of my Spirit”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The new temple and city

In a vision, Ezekiel saw a man measuring the wall of a new temple. The next chapters will give precise measurement for the construction of a temple to be built. This was not the temple of Ezra's day. (See: [temple](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 40:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 40:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Almost twenty-five years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, on the tenth day of the first month of that year, almost fourteen years after Jerusalem had been destroyed, Yahweh grabbed hold of me with his power, and he took me in a vision to Israel. ² He set me on a very high mountain. On the south side of that mountain there were some buildings that looked like part of a city.

ULB:

40 ¹ In the twenty-fifth year of our captivity at the beginning of the year on the tenth day of the month, in the fourteenth year after the city was captured—on that same day, the hand of Yahweh was upon me and he took me there. ² In visions from God he brought me to the land of Israel. He brought me to rest on a very high mountain; to the south were what appeared to be buildings of a city.

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- captive, captivity
- biblical time: day
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Yahweh
- vision
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **twenty-fifth year ... fourteenth year** - (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **of our captivity** - Here “our” refers to Ezekiel and the Israelites who have been in Babylon since the time the Babylonians forced King Jehoiachin to leave Jerusalem. AT: “after we became captives” or “after the Babylonians took us as captives to Babylon.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Exclusive “We”](#))
- **the beginning of the year on the tenth day of the month** - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is in April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the city was captured** - AT: “the Babylonians captured the city of Jerusalem” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the hand of Yahweh** - See how you translated “the hand of Yahweh” in [1:3](#).
- **He brought me to rest** - “He put me down”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:3-4**UDB:**

³ When he took me there, I saw a man who looked as if he had been made of bronze. He was standing inside the city gate, and he was holding a linen cord and a measuring stick in his hand. ⁴ He said to me, “Son of man, look carefully at everything that I am going to show you, and pay attention to everything that I say and everything that I will show you, because that is why God brought you here. And then later you must tell the Israelite people everything that you have seen here.”

ULB:

³ Then he brought me there. Behold! A man appeared who looked like bronze. A linen cord and a measuring stick were in his hand, and he stood in the city gate. ⁴ The man said to me, “Son of man, look with your eyes and listen with your ears, and fix your mind on all that I am revealing to you, for you were brought here so I could reveal them to you. Report everything that you will see to the house of Israel.”

translationWords:

- bronze
- gate, gate bar
- Son of Man, son of man
- mind
- reveal, revelation
- report
- house

translationNotes:

- **he brought me there** - “Yahweh brought me to the place that had the buildings”
- **Behold** - The word “behold” here shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.
- **linen cord** - “a rope made of linen.” This is a tool for measuring very long distances.
- **linen** - See how you translated this in [9:2](#).
- **measuring stick** - This is a tool for measuring shorter distances.
- **Son of man** - “Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in [2:1](#). AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”
- **fix your mind on** - AT: “pay attention to” or “think about.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ In the vision I saw that there was a wall that completely surrounded the temple area. The measuring stick in the man's hand was three and one-tenth meters long. He measured the wall and it was three and one-tenth meters thick and three and one-tenth meters high.

⁶ Then he went to the gate in the temple wall on the temple's east side. He climbed the steps and measured the gateway that faced outward; it was three and one-tenth meters deep. ⁷ Next, there were alcoves for the temple guards, each being three and one-tenth meters long and deep. The distance of the wall between each alcove was two and three-quarter meters. The gateway that faced inward, which led to the temple portico, was also three and one-tenth meters deep.

ULB:

⁵ There was a wall surrounding the temple complex, and there was a measuring stick in the man's hand, six cubits in length—each “long” cubit equaling a cubit and a handbreadth. The man measured the width of the wall—one stick—and the height—one stick. ⁶ Then he went to the temple gate that faced east and up its steps. He measured the threshold of the gate—one stick in depth.[1]After *one stick in depth*, the Hebrew text reads in addition: *one threshold one stick in depth*. Many modern versions, however, leave this expression out, because it seems to be a repetition of preceding text. ⁷ The guard chambers were each one stick long and one stick wide; there were five cubits between any two of the chambers, and the threshold of the temple gate by the temple portico was one stick deep.

translationWords:

- temple
- gate, gate bar
- threshold

translationNotes:

- **surrounding the temple complex** - “going all the way around the temple area”
- **six cubits in length** - “six cubits long.” This was about 3.2 meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **each “long” cubit equaling a cubit and a handbreadth** - Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UDB does. AT: “these were the long cubits, which were the length of a regular cubit plus a handbreadth” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **handbreadth** - “the width of a hand.” This was about 8 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **the width of the wall** - “how wide the wall was.” The wall was hollow like a building.
- **one stick** - “it was one stick wide.” This was about 3.2 meters.

- **the height—one stick** - AT: “and one stick high”
- **up its steps** - “and he went up the steps of the gate”
- **in depth** - “from the front edge of the threshold to the back edge”
- **The guard chambers** - These were rooms that were built inside of the gate where guards stayed to protect the gate.
- **five cubits** - about 2.7 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **between any two of the chambers** - “between the rooms”
- **portico** - See how you translated this in [8:16](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:8-10

UDB:

⁸ Then he measured the portico that was after the gate; it was three and one-tenth meters long. ⁹ He also measured the depth, which was three and one-tenth of a meter. The doorposts on either side were one meter thick. This was the portico attached to the temple gate on the gate's inner side, facing the temple. ¹⁰ Inside the east gate there were three alcoves for guards on each side of the gate. They all had the same length and depth. And the distance of wall between them was the same.

ULB:

⁸ He measured the portico of the gate; it was one stick long. ⁹ He measured the portico of the gate. It was one stick deep. The doorposts were two cubits wide. This was the portico of the gate facing the temple. ¹⁰ There were three guard chambers at the gate and they were on either side of the gate. They all measured the same. The wall separating them all from each other also measured the same.

translationWords:

- [doorpost](#)

translationNotes:

- **portico** - See how you translated this in [8:16](#).
- **one stick** - See how you translated this in [40:5](#).
- **two cubits** - About one meter. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **measured the same** - “were the same size”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ Then he measured the opening of the gate; it was five and two-fifth meters wide, and the entrance from the gate was seven meters long. ¹² Running along in front of the alcoves was a low wall one-half meter high. Each of the alcoves was three and one-tenth meters long on all sides. ¹³ Then the man measured the gateway's width from the roof of the alcove on one side, to the roof of the alcove on the other side. The distance was 13 and one-half, from one alcove's entrance to that of the other.

ULB:

¹¹ Then the man measured the width of the gateway entrance—ten cubits; and he measured the length of the gateway entrance—thirteen cubits. ¹² He measured the wall that was bordering the front of the chambers—one cubit high. The chambers measured six cubits on each side. ¹³ Then he measured the gateway from the roof of one chamber to that of the next chamber—twenty-five cubits, from the entrance of the first chamber to that of the second.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **gateway entrance** - “the opening which was the entrance of the gate”
- **ten cubits** - about 5.4 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **thirteen cubits** - about 7 meters
- **the chambers** - “the alcoves” or “the rooms”
- **six cubits** - about 3.2 meters
- **one cubit** - “54 centimeters” or “about one-half meter” (UDB)
- **twenty-five cubits** - about 13.5 meters
- **that of the second** - “the entrance of the second niche”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ Then the man measured along the wall that separated the alcoves from each other; it was thirty-two meters long. He measured them as far as the gate's portico. ¹⁵ The distance from the entrance of the gate to the far end of its portico was twenty-seven meters. ¹⁶ There were narrow windows in the walls of all the alcoves, and also in the inner walls between the alcoves. The portico also had these same windows on its inner side. The wall that ran between the alcoves was decorated with carvings of palm trees.

ULB:

¹⁴ Then he measured the wall that went between the guard chambers—sixty cubits long; he measured as far as the gate's portico. ¹⁵ The entrance from the front of the gate to the other end of the gate's portico was fifty cubits. ¹⁶ There were narrow windows in the chambers, and in the walls that separated them all around; it was the same for the portico, and all the windows were on the inner side. There were carvings of palm trees on the walls.

translationWords:

- [palm](#)

translationNotes:

- **guard chambers** - See how you translated this in [40:7](#).
- **sixty cubits** - about thirty-two meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **portico** - See how you translated this in [8:16](#). However, modern versions translate this word in different ways; its meaning is not clear.
- **fifty cubits** - about twenty-seven meters
- **separated them** - “separated the guard's niches”
- **all the windows were on the inner side** - “the windows were all around on the inside”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ Then the man brought me to the temple's outer courtyard. There I saw some rooms, and a stone pavement in the courtyard. There were thirty rooms facing the courtyard. ¹⁸ The stone pavement was all around the courtyard, and it extended out from the walls into the courtyard for the same distance as the gate entrances. That was the lower pavement. ¹⁹ Then the man measured the distance across the outer courtyard of the temple, between the outer gate and inner courtyard; it was fifty-four meters on the east side, and the same distance on the north side of the courtyard.

ULB:

¹⁷ Then the man brought me to the outer courtyard of the temple. Behold, there were rooms, and there was pavement in the courtyard, with thirty rooms next to the pavement. ¹⁸ The pavement went up to the side of the gates, and its width was the same as the gates' length. This was the lower pavement. ¹⁹ Then the man measured the distance from the front of the lower gate to the front of the inner gate; it was one hundred cubits on the east side, and the same on the north side.

translationWords:

- [courtyard, court](#)

translationNotes:

- **outer courtyard** - See how you translated this in [10:5](#).
- **Behold** - The word "behold" here shows us that Ezekiel saw something interesting.
- **pavement** - a flat floor that is made out of rocks
- **with thirty rooms next to the pavement** - AT: "and there were thirty rooms all around the pavement." (See: [Numbers](#))
- **went up to** - "went all the way to"
- **one hundred cubits** - About fifty-four meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **cubits** - See how you translated these "long" cubits in [40:05](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Then he measured how long and how wide was the gateway on the north side, which was an entrance into the outer courtyard of the temple complex. ²¹ There were three alcoves for guards on each side of that gateway. From the gateway to the end of its portico was twenty-seven meters, and they were thirteen and one-half meters wide.

ULB:

²⁰ Then he measured the length and width of the gate that was at the north of the outer court. ²¹ There were three chambers on either side of that gate, and the gate and its portico measured the same as the main gate—fifty cubits in total length and twenty-five cubits in width.

translationWords:

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)

translationNotes:

- **chambers** - See how you translated this in [40:7](#).
- **portico** - See how you translated this in [8:16](#).
- **measured the same** - “had the same measurement”
- **fifty cubits** - about twenty-seven meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **twenty-five cubits** - about 13.5 meters
- **the main gate** - the gate that was on the eastern side of the temple

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:22-23**UDB:**

²² It had the same windows, portico, guard alcoves, and palm tree decorations as the east gate had. Like the east gate, there were seven steps leading up to it and its portico. ²³ Across the outer courtyard from the north gate was a gate leading to the inner courtyard, just as there was on the east side. The man measured the distance from the north gate to the gate leading to the inner courtyard; it was fifty-four meters in distance.

ULB:

²² Its windows, portico, chambers, and its palm trees corresponded to the gate that faced east. Seven steps went up to it and to its portico. ²³ There was a gate to the inner courtyard in front of the gate facing north, just as also there was a gate to the east; the man measured from one gate to the other gate—one hundred cubits in distance.

translationWords:

- [palm](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ezekiel continues to describe the vision of the temple and of the man who looked like bronze.
- **Its windows** - The word “its” refers to the gate that was at the north of the outer court.
- **chambers** - See how you translated this in [40:7](#).
- **corresponded to the gate that faced east** - “were like those at the gate that faced east”
- **inner courtyard** - See how you translated this in [8:16](#).
- **in front of the gate facing north** - “directly across from the gate facing north” or “across the outer courtyard from the north gate” (UDB)
- **just as also there was a gate to the east** - “just as there was a gate to the inner courtyard in front of the gate facing east”
- **one gate to the other gate** - “from the outer gate on the north to the inner gate on the north”
- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **one hundred cubits** - about fifty-four meters

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 40 General Notes
- Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 40:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ Then he brought me through the south gateway into the inner courtyard, and he measured the entrance. It measured the same as the other gateways. Its alcoves, its walls between the alcoves, and its entry room measured the same as the ones on the other sides. ²⁵ The gateway and its portico had narrow windows along the walls, as on the other sides. The gateway and its portico measured twenty-five meters long and thirteen and one-half wide.

ULB:

²⁴ Next the man brought me to the gate of the southern entrance, and its walls and portico measured the same as the other outer gate. ²⁵ There were narrow windows in the gateway and its portico just as at that gate. The south gate and its portico measured fifty cubits in length and twenty-five cubits in width.

translationWords:

- [gate, gate bar](#)

translationNotes:

- **as the other outer gate** - AT: “as those of the northern and eastern gates”
- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **fifty cubits** - About twenty-seven meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **twenty-five cubits** - About 13.5 meters.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ There were seven steps leading up to that gate and its portico. It also had carvings of palm trees on the walls that were between the rooms. ²⁷ Across the outer courtyard from the south gate was a gate opening onto the inner courtyard. The man measured from that gateway to the entrance on the south side of the outer courtyard; it was also fifty-four meters in distance.

ULB:

²⁶ There were seven steps up to the gate and its portico, and there were carvings of palm trees on the walls on either side. ²⁷ There was a gate to the inner courtyard on the southern side, and the man measured from that gate to the gate of the south entrance—one hundred cubits in distance.

translationWords:

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [palm](#)

translationNotes:

- **portico** - See you translated this in [8:16](#)
- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **one hundred cubits** - About fifty-four meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:28-31**UDB:**

²⁸ Then the man brought me through the south entrance into the inner courtyard, and he measured the south entrance. It measured the same as the other gates. ²⁹ He measured its alcoves, its walls, and its portico with the same measuring standards he had been using. The gate and its portico had windows all around. The gate and its portico measured twenty-seven meters long and thirteen and one-half wide. ³⁰ The porticos of the inner gates, which led to the inner courtyard, were about thirteen and one-half meters long and two and three-quarter meters wide. ³¹ The portico's entrance faced the outer courtyard. Carvings of palm trees decorated the walls, and there were eight steps leading up to it.

ULB:

²⁸ Then the man brought me to the inner courtyard by way of its southern gate, which had the same measurements as the other gates. ²⁹ Its chambers, walls, and porticos measured the same as the other gates; there were windows all around in the portico. The inner gate and its portico measured fifty cubits long and twenty-five cubits wide. ³⁰ There were also porticos all around the inner wall; these were twenty-five cubits long and five cubits wide. ³¹ This portico faced the outer courtyard with carved palm trees on its walls and eight steps going up to it.

translationWords:

- courtyard, court
- gate, gate bar
- face

translationNotes:

- **inner courtyard** - See how you translated this in 8:16.
- **chambers** - See how you translated this in 40:7.
- **porticos** - See how you translated this in 8:16.
- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in 40:05.
- **fifty cubits** - about 27 meters. (See: **Biblical Distance**)
- **twenty-five cubits** - about 13.5 meters
- **five cubits** - about 2.7 meters
- **This portico faced the outer courtyard** - “the portico was toward the outer courtyard.” People could go in and out of it from the courtyard. (See: **Idiom**)
- **with carved palm trees** - “and it had carvings of palm trees”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:32-34

UDB:

³² Then the man led me to the east side of the inner courtyard, and he measured the gate. It had the same measurements as the other gates. ³³ Its alcoves, walls, and portico measured the same as the others. The gate and its portico had windows all around. The gate and its portico measured twenty-seven meters long and thirteen and one-half wide. ³⁴ Its portico faced the outer courtyard. It also had carvings of palm trees decorating the walls, and it had eight steps leading up to it.

ULB:

³² Then the man brought me to the inner courtyard by the eastern way and measured the gate, which had the same measurements as the other gates. ³³ Its chambers, walls, and portico measured the same as the other gates, and there were windows all around. The inner gate and its portico measured fifty cubits long and twenty-five cubits wide. ³⁴ Its portico faced the outer courtyard; it had palm trees on either side of it and eight steps going up it.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **fifty cubits** - about twenty-seven meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **twenty-five cubits** - about 13.5 meters

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:35-37

UDB:

³⁵ Then he led me to the entrance on the north side and measured it. It measured the same as the other entrances. ³⁶ And its alcoves and walls between them and the entry room all had small windows in the walls. It all measured the same as the other gates. The gate and its portico measured twenty-seven meters long and thirteen and one-half meters wide. ³⁷ Its portico faced the outer courtyard. It also had carvings of palm trees decorating the walls, and it had eight steps leading up to it.

ULB:

³⁵ Next the man brought me to the northern gate and measured it; it measured the same as the other gates. ³⁶ Its chambers, walls, and portico measured the same as the other gates, and there were windows all around. The gateway and its portico measured fifty cubits long and twenty-five cubits wide. ³⁷ Its portico faced the outer courtyard; it had palm trees on either side of it and eight steps going up it.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **fifty cubits** - about twenty-seven meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **twenty-five cubits** - about 13.5 meters

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:38-39**UDB:**

³⁸ In each of the inner entrances there was a room with a door. They were rooms where the carcasses of the animals that were to be completely burned on the altar were washed. ³⁹ In each portico were two tables, one on either side. On those tables would be slaughtered the animals that were to be completely burned, also the animals for offerings of sins that people had committed, and offerings that acknowledged their guilt for having sinned against other people.

ULB:

³⁸ There was a room with a door by each of the inner gateways. This was where they rinsed the burnt offerings. ³⁹ There were two tables on either side of each portico, on which the burnt offering was slaughtered, and also the sin offering and the guilt offering.

translationWords:

- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [sin offering](#)
- [guilt offering](#)

translationNotes:

- **by each of the inner gateways** - “in each of the inner gates”
- **they rinsed the burnt offerings** - The word “they” refers to people or priests who were bringing an offering.
- **either side** - “on both sides”
- **the burnt offering was slaughtered** - AT: “they slaughtered the burnt offering” or “they killed the animals that they would burn as an offering.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:40-41**UDB:**

⁴⁰ Just outside the inner courtyard, to the left of the steps leading up to its north gate, there were two tables, and to the right of the steps were two more tables. ⁴¹ There were four tables on the outer side of each inner courtyard gate, and there were also four tables on the inner side. The animals to be sacrificed were slaughtered on these tables.

ULB:

⁴⁰ By the wall of the courtyard, going up to the gate to the north, there were two tables. Also on the other side there were two tables at the gate's portico. ⁴¹ There were four tables on either side by the gate; they slaughtered animals on the eight tables.

translationWords:**translationNotes:****Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:42-43**UDB:**

⁴² There were also four tables of cut stone for the preparation of the offerings that were to be completely burned, four-fifths of a meter long on each side and one-half meter high. The priests would put on those stone tables the tools for slaughtering all the animals. ⁴³ The meat for the offerings would be placed on those stone tables. There were hooks on which the meat was hung, each with two prongs, each eight centimeters long, fastened to the walls of the porticos.

ULB:

⁴² There were four tables of cut stone for the burnt offerings, one and a half cubits long, one and a half cubits wide, and one cubit tall. On them they laid the tools with which they slaughtered the burnt offerings for the sacrifices. ⁴³ Two-pronged hooks a handbreadth long were fastened in the portico all around, and the flesh of the offerings would be put on the tables.

translationWords:

- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [flesh](#)

translationNotes:

- **of cut stone** - “that were made out of stone that had been cut”
- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **one and a half cubits** - About 0.8 meter. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **one cubit** - about one-half meter
- **Two-pronged hooks a handbreadth long were fastened in the portico all around** - AT: “All around the portico, people had attached hooks that were a handbreadth long and had two prongs each” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Two-pronged hooks** - something that has two long curved points, which people can hang things on
- **a handbreadth long** - about eight centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#)).
- **the flesh of the offerings would be put on the tables** - AT: “they would put the flesh of the offerings on the tables”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)

- Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 40:44-45**UDB:**

⁴⁴ Outside two of the inner gateways, on the inner courtyard side, there were rooms for those who led in singing during the worship, one on the north side and one on the south side. ⁴⁵ The man said to me, "The room whose door faces south is for the priests who are working in the temple.

ULB:

⁴⁴ Near the inner gate, in the inner courtyard, were singers' chambers. One of these rooms was on the north side, and one on the south. ⁴⁵ Then the man said to me, "This room facing south is for the priests who are on duty in the temple.

translationWords:

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [temple](#)

translationNotes:

- **the inner gate** - This is the inner gate on the north.
- **singers' chambers** - "rooms for singers" However, some ancient and modern versions read only "chambers," leaving out the idea of singers.
- **This room facing south** - This phrase means "The room that has its main entrance on the south side." (See: [Idiom](#))
- **who are on duty in the temple** - AT: "who are working in the temple" (UDB) or "who are responsible for guarding the temple"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:46-47**UDB:**

⁴⁶ The room whose door faces north is for the priests who are in charge of the work at the altar. They are the descendants of Zadok; they are the only descendants of Levi who are permitted to approach Yahweh while they work for him.”

⁴⁷ Then he measured the courtyard; it was square, fifty-four meters long and fifty-four meters wide. The altar was in front of the sanctuary.

ULB:

⁴⁶ The room facing north was for the priests on duty at the altar. These are the sons of Zadok who come near to Yahweh to serve him; they are among the sons of Levi.” ⁴⁷ Next he measured the courtyard—one hundred cubits long and one hundred cubits wide in a square, with the altar in front of the house.

translationWords:

- altar
- son, son of
- Zadok
- Yahweh
- serve, service
- Levite, Levi
- house

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The man continues speaking to Ezekiel in the vision.
- **room facing north** - “that had its main entrance on the north side”
- **he** - “the man”
- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **one hundred cubits** - About fifty-four meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **with the altar** - “and the altar was”
- **the house** - This refers to the temple.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 40:48-49**UDB:**

⁴⁸ Then he brought me to the portico of the sanctuary and measured the doorposts and their walls on each side of the entrance; they were about two and three-quarter meters thick. The doorway was seven meters wide, and the sides on each side of it were one and three-fifth meters wide. ⁴⁹ The portico was eleven meters wide, and its depth was six meters on each side. There were steps leading up to it, and there were columns on each side of the portico.

ULB:

⁴⁸ Then the man brought me to the portico of the house and measured its doorposts—they were five cubits thick on either side. The entryway itself was fourteen cubits wide, and the walls on each side of it were three cubits wide.[1]Instead of *the walls on each side of it were three cubits wide* , the Hebrew text reads *the entrance was three cubits wide* , but this seems to be a mistake, judging from the preceding words in this verse. ⁴⁹ The sanctuary’s portico was twenty cubits long, and its depth was eleven cubits. There were steps that went up to it and columns that stood on either side of it.[2]Instead of *steps* , some ancient and modern versions read *ten steps* . [3]Instead of *eleven cubits* , some ancient and modern versions read *twelve cubits* .

translationWords:

- [doorpost](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

translationNotes:

- **portico** - See how you translated this in [8:16](#).
- **its doorposts** - “the doorposts of the house”
- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **five cubits** - about 2.7 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **fourteen cubits** - about 7.5 meters
- **three cubits** - about 1.6 meters
- **twenty cubits** - About eleven meters
- **eleven cubits** - About six meters
- **columns** - pieces of stone that are tall and narrow and support buildings

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)

- Ezekiel 40 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 41 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. This chapter focused on the courtyard of the temple. (See: [temple](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 41:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 41:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then in the vision the man brought me to into the holy place in the temple and measured the doorposts on either side of the entrance; they were each three and one-tenth meters wide. ² The entrance was five and two-fifth meters wide, and the walls of each side of it were two and three-quarter meters long. He also measured the holy place. It was twenty-two meters long and eleven meters wide.

ULB:

41 ¹ Then the man brought me into the temple's holy place and measured the doorposts—six cubits wide on either side.[¹After *six cubits wide on either side* , most ancient copies and some modern versions add *the width of the tent* . ² The width of the doorway was ten cubits; the wall on each side was five cubits long. Then the man measured the dimensions of the holy place—forty cubits long and twenty cubits wide.

translationWords:

- [temple](#)
- [holy place, most holy place](#)
- [doorpost](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The man in Ezekiel's vision ([40:3](#)) continues to show Ezekiel around the temple.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 41:3-4**UDB:**

³ Then he entered the inner room of the temple, the very holy place, and measured the walls to either side of the entrance; each was one meter wide. The doorway was three and one-tenth meters wide, and each of the walls on each side of the entrance was three and four-fifth meters long. ⁴ Then he measured the inner room; it was eleven meters long and eleven meters wide. Then he said to me, “This is the very holy place.”

ULB:

³ Then the man went into the very holy place and measured the posts of the doorway—two cubits, and the doorway was six cubits wide. The walls on either side were seven cubits wide. ⁴ Then he measured the room’s length—twenty cubits. Its width—twenty cubits to the front of the temple hall. Then he said to me, “This is the most holy place.”

translationWords:

- [holy place, most holy place](#)

translationNotes:

- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **to the front of the temple hall** - “like the width of the holy place” or “matching the width of the holy place”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 41:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ Then he measured the wall of the temple; it was three and one-tenth meters thick. There was a row of rooms along the outside wall of the temple. Each of those rooms was two meters wide. ⁶ There were three stories of rooms, with thirty rooms on each story. There were ledges all around the wall of the temple that were supports for the side rooms above. There were no extra supports built into the sanctuary wall. ⁷ Each of the side rooms was wider than the one below it. The most narrow rooms were built first, at the bottom. Then a wider set of rooms was built over it, and the widest set was at the top. A set of stairs was built from the lowest level through the middle level to the highest level.

ULB:

⁵ Then the man measured the wall of the house—it was six cubits thick. The width of each side room around the house was four cubits wide. ⁶ There were side rooms on three levels, one room above another, thirty rooms on each level. There were ledges around the wall of the house, to support all of the side rooms, for there was no support put in the wall of the house. ⁷ So the side rooms widened and went around going up, for the house went around higher and higher all around; the rooms widened as the house went up, and a stairway went up to the highest level, through the middle level.

translationWords:

- [house](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 41:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ I saw that there was a terrace around the temple. The terrace was the foundation for those side rooms; it was three and one-tenth meters high. ⁹ The outer wall of those side rooms was two and three-quarter meters thick. All around the sanctuary there was an open area between those side rooms.

ULB:

⁸ Then I saw a raised part all around the house, the foundation for the side chambers; it measured a full stick in height—six cubits. ⁹ The width of the wall of the side rooms on the outside was five cubits. There was an open space to the outside of these rooms in the sanctuary.

translationWords:

- [sanctuary](#)

translationNotes:

- **a full stick** - See how you translated “stick” in [40:5](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 41:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ The open areas were near the priests' rooms that were surrounding the courtyard; there was a distance of eleven meters between the two sets of side rooms all around the sanctuary. ¹¹ There were two doors from those side rooms into another open area; one faced north and one faced south. This open area was two and three-quarter meters wide.

ULB:

¹⁰ On the other side of this open space were the priests' outer side rooms; this space was twenty cubits wide all around the sanctuary. ¹¹ There were doors into the side rooms from another open space—one doorway was on the north side, and the other on the south side. The width of this open area was five cubits all around.

translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

translationNotes:

- **the priests' outer side rooms** - "the side rooms of the priests that were further out from the sanctuary"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 41:12-14**UDB:**

¹² There was a large building on the west side of the temple area. It was thirty-eight meters wide, and it had a wall two and three-quarter meters thick and forty-nine meters long.

¹³ Then the man measured the temple. It was fifty-four meters long, and the temple courtyard, where the large building was, was fifty-four meters wide. The building and its wall measured the same. ¹⁴ The courtyard on the east side of the temple, across the front of the temple, was also fifty-four meters wide.

ULB:

¹² The building that faced the courtyard on the west side was seventy cubits wide. Its wall measured five cubits thick all around, and it was ninety cubits long. ¹³ Then the man measured the sanctuary—one hundred cubits long. The separated building, its wall, and the courtyard also measured one hundred cubits in length. ¹⁴ The width of the front of the courtyard in front of the sanctuary was also one hundred cubits.

translationWords:

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

translationNotes:

- **faced** - See how you translated this in [40:31](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 41:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Then he measured the building on the west side. Including its walls, it was also fifty-four meters long.

The outer walls of the holy place, of the very holy place, and the portico, ¹⁶ the inner walls above and below the narrow windows, and the galleries on all the storys—all these things were covered with thin panels of wood. ¹⁷ All the walls inside the temple were decorated with carvings of winged creatures and palm trees; between each figure of a winged creature was a carving of a palm tree.

ULB:

¹⁵ Then the man measured the length of the building behind the sanctuary, to its west, and the galleries on either side—one hundred cubits. The holy place and the portico, ¹⁶ the inner walls and the windows, including the narrow windows, and the galleries all around on three levels, were all paneled in wood. ¹⁷ Above the entryway to the inner sanctuary and spaced along the walls there was a measured pattern.

translationWords:

- [sanctuary](#)
- [holy place, most holy place](#)

translationNotes:

- **the galleries** - “the balconies.” The balconies were places that were built higher up than the rest of the building. People could go into balconies and look down on the main floor of the building.
- **the portico** - See how you translated this in [8:16](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 41:18-20

UDB:

18-19 Each winged creature had two faces. One face was the face of a human, and one was the face of a lion. Those figures were carved on the walls all around the inside of the temple, and each face looked at the carving of a palm tree. ²⁰ They covered all the walls, from the floor to the wall above the entryway.

ULB:

¹⁸ It was decorated with cherubim and palm trees; with a palm tree between each cherub, and each cherub had two faces: ¹⁹ the face of a man looked toward a palm tree on one side, and the face of a young lion looked toward a palm tree on the other side. They were carved all around the entire house. ²⁰ From the ground to above the doorway, cherubim and palm trees were carved on the outer wall of the house.

translationWords:

- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [palm](#)
- [lion](#)

translationNotes:

- **decorated** - to make something beautiful usually by putting something on it
- **the house** - “the sanctuary”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 41:21-24

UDB:

²¹ At the entrance to the main room of the temple there were square doorposts, all the same in appearance. ²² In front of the very holy place there was a wooden altar. It was one and three-fifth meters high and one meter wide on all four sides. Its corners and base and sides were all made of wood. The man said to me, “This is the table that is in the presence of Yahweh.” ²³ The holy place and the very holy place had folding doors. ²⁴ Each door consisted of two parts that swung on hinges.

ULB:

²¹ The gate posts of the holy place were square and they all looked like each other. ²² The wooden altar in front of the holy place was three cubits high and two cubits long on each side. Its corner posts, base, and frame were made of wood. Then the man said to me, “This is the table that stands before Yahweh.” ²³ There were double doors for the holy place and the most holy place. ²⁴ These doors had two hinged door panels each, two panels for one door and two panels for the other.

translationWords:

- [holy place, most holy place](#)
- [altar](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **There were double doors for the holy place and the most holy place** - “the holy place and the most holy place both had two doors”
- **These doors had two hinged door panels each** - “Each door had two parts that were on hinges.” Hinges connect doors to the wall and allow the doors to swing.
- **two panels for one door and two panels for the other** - “both of the doors for both the holy place and the most holy place had two parts”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 41:25-26

UDB:

²⁵ On these doors there were carvings of winged creatures and palm trees. There was also a wooden roof over the front portico of the sanctuary. ²⁶ On the side walls of the portico were narrow windows with figures of palm trees carved on the sides of the windows. The side rooms around the temple also had projecting roofs.

ULB:

²⁵ Carved on them—on the doors of the holy place—were cherubim and palm trees just as the walls were decorated, and there was a wooden roof over the portico at the front. ²⁶ There were narrow windows and palm trees on either side of the portico. These were the side rooms of the house, and they also had overhanging roofs.

translationWords:

- [house](#)

translationNotes:

- **just as the walls were decorated** - “just as the walls also had carvings of cherubim and palm trees”
- **portico** - See how you translated this in [8:16](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 42 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. This chapter focused on the storerooms for keeping the holy things of the temple. (See: [temple](#) and [holy, holiness](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 42:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 42:1-3

UDB:

¹ Then in the vision the man led me out of the inner courtyard, through the gate on the north side. We entered the outer courtyard and came to rooms that were facing the northern outer wall. ² The building with those rooms was fifty-four meters long and twenty-seven meters wide. ³ In that building there was one group of rooms that faced the inner courtyard. The distance between those rooms and the sanctuary, the main temple building, was eleven meters. These rooms were built on three stories. Each set of rooms had a walkway over the set of rooms below it. There were rooms that overlooked the open area of the outer courtyard.

ULB:

42 ¹ Next the man sent me out to the outer courtyard on the north side, and he brought me to rooms in front of the outer courtyard and the northern outer wall. ² Those rooms were one hundred cubits along their front and fifty cubits wide. ³ Some of those rooms faced the inner courtyard and were twenty cubits away from the sanctuary. There were three levels of rooms, and the ones above looked down on the ones below and were open to them, having a walkway. Some of the rooms looked out onto the outer courtyard.

translationWords:

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

translationNotes:

- **the outer courtyard** - See how you translated this in [10:5](#).
- **inner courtyard** - See how you translated this in [8:16](#).
- **and were open to them** - “and looked out onto the inner courtyard”
- **having a walkway** - “because there was a place that you could walk along the rooms”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 42:4-6

UDB:

⁴ To one side of the rooms was a walkway that was five and two-fifth meters wide and fifty-four meters long. All the doors of the rooms were on their north side. ⁵ Each set of rooms was narrower than the set of rooms below them, because each upper sets had a walkway in front . ⁶ The rooms on the upper levels had no pillars to support them as there were in the courtyard, because those rooms were supported by the walls of the rooms below.

ULB:

⁴ A passage ten cubits wide and one hundred cubits long ran in front of the rooms. The rooms' doors were toward the north.[1]Some ancient versions and many modern versions read *one hundred cubits* . Ancient Hebrew copies and some modern versions read *one cubit* . ⁵ But the upper halls were smaller, for the walkways took away from them more space than they did in the lowest and middle levels of the building. ⁶ For the halls on the third story had no columns, unlike the courtyards, which did have columns. So the highest level's rooms were smaller in size compared to the rooms in the lowest and middle levels.

translationWords:

- [pillar, column](#)

translationNotes:

- **smaller in size compared to the rooms** - “smaller than the rooms”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 42:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ The outer wall ran parallel to the rooms that faced the outer courtyard; this part of the outer wall was twenty-seven meters long. ⁸ The row of rooms that was along the outer courtyard was twenty-seven meters long, and the row of rooms that faced the temple was fifty-four meters long. ⁹ The bottom story had an entrance on its east side, coming from the outer courtyard.

ULB:

⁷ The outside wall ran along the rooms toward the outer courtyard, the courtyard that was in front of the rooms. That wall was fifty cubits long. ⁸ The length of the rooms of the outer courtyard was fifty cubits, and the rooms facing the sanctuary were one hundred cubits long. ⁹ There was an entrance to the lowest rooms from the east side, coming from the outer courtyard.

translationWords:

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

translationNotes:

- **facing** - See how you translated this in [40:9](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 42:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ On the eastern side, along the outer wall of the outer courtyard, next to the temple courtyard, there was also a set of rooms. ¹¹ There was a walkway in front of them. These rooms were like the rooms on the north side. They had the same length and width, and also the same kind of entrances. ¹² There were also doorways into rooms on the south side that were similar to what was on the north side. There was an inside passage with an outer door; the passage had doors into all the rooms. At the east end of the passage was an outside door leading into it.

ULB:

¹⁰ Along the wall of the outer courtyard on the eastern side of the outer courtyard, in front of the sanctuary's inner courtyard, there were also rooms.[1]Hebrew and some modern versions read *on the eastern side* . However, some ancient copies and most modern versions read *on the southern side* . ¹¹ The walkway in front of them was the same in length and width as the rooms along the northern side. They also had the same number of entrances. ¹² On the south side were doors into rooms that were just the same as on the north side. A passage on the inside had a door at its head, and the passage opened into the various rooms. On the east side there was a doorway into the passage at one end.

translationWords:

- [sanctuary](#)

translationNotes:

- **at its head** - "at its beginning"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 42:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Then the man said to me, "The rooms on the northern and southern sides that overlook the temple sanctuary are only for Yahweh's special purposes. Here the priests who offer sacrifices to Yahweh will eat their portions of those offerings. Because these rooms are special, they will be used to store the offerings for Yahweh: The flour for the flour offerings, for the offerings for the sins that people have committed, and for the offerings that people make for their sins. ¹⁴ When the priests leave the temple, they will not be allowed to immediately enter the outer courtyard. First they must remove the clothes that they had been wearing inside the holy place, because those clothes are special, reserved for their work. They must put on other clothes before they enter the parts of the temple area where the other people gather."

ULB:

¹³ Then the man said to me, "The northern rooms and the southern rooms that are in front of the outer courtyard are holy rooms where the priests who work nearest to Yahweh may eat the most holy food. They will put the most holy things there—the food offering, the sin offering, and the guilt offering—for this is a holy place. ¹⁴ When the priests enter there, they must not go out of the holy place to the outer court, without laying aside the clothes in which they served, since these are holy. So they must dress in other clothes before going near the people."

translationWords:

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sin offering](#)
- [guilt offering](#)

translationNotes:

- **the food offering** - This was an offering grain or flour. People offered "food offerings" to show that they were thankful to God.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 42:15

UDB:

¹⁵ When the man had finished measuring the inside of the temple area, he led me out through the east entrance and measured all the surrounding area.

ULB:

¹⁵ The man completed measuring the inner house and then took me out to the gate that faced the east and measured all the surrounding area there.

translationWords:

- [house](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [face](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 42:16-19**UDB:**

16-19 He measured the four sides of the area. There was a wall around the area that was two-hundred and seventy meters long on each side.

ULB:

¹⁶ He measured the east side with a measuring stick—five hundred cubits with the measuring stick.[1]Instead of *five hundred cubits* , which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads *five hundred measuring sticks* , which seems to be an error. ¹⁷ He measured the north side—five hundred cubits with the measuring stick.[2]Instead of *five hundred cubits* , which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads *five hundred measuring sticks* , which seems to be an error. ¹⁸ He also measured the south side—five hundred cubits with the measuring stick.[3]Instead of *five hundred cubits* , which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads *five hundred measuring sticks* , which seems to be an error. ¹⁹ He also turned and measured the west side—five hundred cubits with the measuring stick.[4]Instead of *five hundred cubits* , which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads *five hundred measuring sticks* , which seems to be an error.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **He measured** - The word “he” refers to the man who looked like bronze. (See: [40:3](#))
- **measuring stick** - See how you translated this in [40:5](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 42:20

UDB:

²⁰ That wall separated the area which was sacred from the areas that were not sacred.

ULB:

²⁰ He measured it on four sides, its wall with it all around had a length of five hundred cubits and a width of five hundred cubits to separate between the holy and the not holy.

translationWords:

- [holy, holiness](#)

translationNotes:

- **its wall with it all around had a length** - This can be translated as a new sentence, "The house had a wall all around it that had a length."

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 43 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. God entered the temple. He told the people not to defile the temple by being idol worshipers or by having the funerals of their kings in the temple courtyard. He also told them what offerings to make each day. (See: [temple](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 43:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 43:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then the man brought me to the entrance on the east side. ² Suddenly I saw the glory of the God of Israel coming from the east. The sound of his coming was like the roar of a rushing river, and all that area shone with his glory.

ULB:

43 ¹ The man then brought me to the gate that opened to the east. ² Behold! The glory of the God of Israel came from the east; his voice was like the sound of many waters, and the earth shone with his glory.

translationWords:

- gate, gate bar
- glory, glorious
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- voice

translationNotes:

- **Behold!** - The word “Behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
- **like the sound of many waters** - See how you translated “Like the noise of rushing water” in [1:24](#).
- **the earth shone** - “the earth was full of bright light”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 43:3-5

UDB:

³ What I saw in this vision was like what I had seen in my earlier visions, first by the Chebar Canal and later when God came to destroy Jerusalem. I prostrated myself on the ground. ⁴ The glory of Yahweh entered the temple through the east entrance, ⁵ and then the Spirit lifted me up and brought me into the inner courtyard, while the glory of Yahweh filled the temple.

ULB:

³ It was like the vision that I saw when he had come to destroy the city, and like the vision that I saw at the Chebar Canal—and I fell to my face.[1] Instead of *when he came*, which some Hebrew copies and some ancient and many modern versions read, Hebrew reads *when I came*. ⁴ So the glory of Yahweh came to the house by way of the gate that opened to the east. ⁵ Then the Spirit lifted me up and brought me into the inner court. Behold! The glory of Yahweh was filling the house.

translationWords:

- [vision](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)

translationNotes:

- **It was like** - The word “It” refers to the vision of the glory of God coming from the east.
- **when he had come to destroy the city** - Possible meanings are 1) “when the God of Israel had come to destroy the city” or 2) “when I had come to see the God of Israel destroy the city.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 43:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ Then, while the man was standing beside me, I heard someone speak to me from inside the temple. ⁷ He said, "Son of man, this is my temple, the place where I sit on my throne and where I rest my feet. This is where I will live with the Israelite people forever. The Israelite people and their kings will never again disgrace me by worshiping other gods at their hilltop places of idol worship, or by building lifeless idols of their past kings. ⁸ Your people placed their altars near mine, and the doorposts of their temples were next to the doorposts of my temple. There was only a wall between them. And they disgraced me by the detestable things that they did. So I was angry and destroyed them.

ULB:

⁶ The man was standing beside me, and I heard someone else speaking to me from the house. ⁷ He said to me, "Son of man, this is the place of my throne and the place for the soles of my feet, where I will live in the midst of the people of Israel forever. The house of Israel will no longer profane my holy name—they or their kings—with their faithlessness or with the corpses of their kings at their high places. ⁸ They will no longer profane my holy name by putting their threshold next to my threshold, and their gateposts next to my gateposts, with nothing but a wall between me and them. They profaned my holy name with their disgusting actions, so I consumed them with my anger.

translationWords:

- Son of Man, son of man
- throne
- life, live, living, alive
- people of God, my people
- forever
- profane
- holy, holiness
- name
- king
- faithless, faithlessness
- threshold
- angry, anger

translationNotes:

- **the corpses of their kings'** - Here "corpses" refers to the idols that the people's kings worshiped. The idols are called corpses because they are not alive. (See: **Metaphor**)

- **They profaned** - “The house of Israel profaned”
- **disgusting actions** - See how you translated this in [5:9](#).
- **consumed them with my anger** - This phrase means “I completely destroyed them because I was angry.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 43:9**UDB:**

⁹ Now they must stop this disgusting worship of idols and these rituals to honor kings' idols. If they stop doing those things, I will live among them forever.

ULB:

⁹ Now let them remove their faithlessness and the corpses of their kings from before me, and I will live in their midst forever.

translationWords:

- [faithless, faithlessness](#)

translationNotes:

- **the corpses of their kings** - Here "corpses" refers to the idols that the people's kings worshiped. The idols are called corpses because they are not alive. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 43:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Son of man, describe to the Israelite people what this temple that I have shown you in a vision is like, in order that they will be ashamed of the sins. ¹¹ If they are ashamed of all the evil things that they have done, tell them all about the temple that I showed you: Its design, the exits and entrances, and everything else about it. And tell them all my laws and regulations about worshiping me there. Write all these things down while they watch you, in order that they will be able to faithfully obey them.

ULB:

¹⁰ Son of man, you yourself must tell the house of Israel about this house so they will be ashamed of their iniquities. They should think about this description. ¹¹ For if they are ashamed of all that they have done, then reveal to them the design of the house, its details, its exits, its entrances, and all its designs, all its decrees and rules. Then write this down before their eyes so they will keep to all its design and all its rules, so as to obey them.

translationWords:

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [reveal, revelation](#)
- [decree](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)

translationNotes:

- **this description** - “this pattern” or “this plan”
- **before their eyes** - See how you translated this in [21:6](#).
- **will keep to all its design** - “will keep the pattern”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 43:12**UDB:**

¹² And this is the supreme law about the temple: All of the area on top of the hill where the temple will be built must be kept sacred and holy.

ULB:

¹² This is the regulation for the house: From the peak of the hill to all the surrounding border around it, it will be most holy. Behold! This is the regulation for the house.

translationWords:

- [holy, holiness](#)

translationNotes:

- **the regulation** - “the instruction” or “the rule”
- **the surrounding border** - The word “border” probably refers to the wall that goes all the way around the temple.
- **most holy** - “absolutely holy”
- **Behold!** - The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. It can also be translated as “Indeed!”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 43:13-14

UDB:

¹³ These are the measurements of the altar, using the same kind of measuring stick that was used for the temple area: There is a gutter around the altar that is one-half meter deep and one-half meter wide. There is a rim around it that is twenty-three centimeters wide. This will compose the base for the rest of the altar. ¹⁴ The lower part of the gutter is one meter high to the lower ledge that surrounds the altar. The lower ledge is one-half meter wide. From that ledge to the upper ledge, it is two meters. That ledge is also one-half meter wide.

ULB:

¹³ These will be the measurements of the altar in long cubits—each long cubit being a regular cubit and a handbreadth long. So the gutter around the altar will be a cubit deep, and its width will also be a cubit. The border around its surrounding edge will be one span. This will be the base of the altar. ¹⁴ From the gutter at the ground level up to the lower ledge of the altar is two cubits, and that ledge itself is one cubit wide. Then from the small ledge up to the large edge of the altar, it is four cubits, and the large edge is a cubit wide.

translationWords:

- altar

translationNotes:

- **The border around its surrounding edge** - “The border going around its edge”
- **This will be the base of the altar** - “These will be the measurements of the base of the altar.”
- **the base of the altar** - “the bottom supporting the altar” or “the foundation of the altar”
- **ledge** - a narrow and flat surface that sticks out from a wall

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 43:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ The hearth at the top of the altar is another two meters high, and there is a hornlike projection that juts up from each of the four corners. ¹⁶ That place at the top of the altar is square, six and one-half meters long on each side. ¹⁷ The upper ledge that borders the hearth is also a square, seven and three-fifth meters long on each side, and has a rim all around that is twenty-seven centimeters wide. There is a gutter measuring one-half meter at the bottom of the altar. There are steps leading up to the east side of the altar.”

ULB:

¹⁵ The hearth on the altar for the burnt offerings is four cubits high, and there are four horns pointing upward on the hearth. ¹⁶ The hearth is twelve cubits long and twelve cubits wide, a square. ¹⁷ Its border is fourteen cubits long and fourteen cubits wide on each of its four sides, and its rim is a half cubit wide. The gutter is a cubit wide all around with its steps facing east.”

translationWords:

- altar

translationNotes:

- **The hearth** - the place where sacrifices were either cooked or burnt up with fire
- **horns** - The horns were the parts of the altar at the four corners of the altar that stuck up above the rest of the altar.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 43:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ Then the man said to me, "Son of man, this is what Yahweh the Lord says: These are the regulations for sacrificing offerings that will be completely burned and for sprinkling the blood against the sides of the altar when it is built: ¹⁹ You must present to the priests a young bull to be an offering for the sins of the priests, the descendants of Levi, from the clan of Zadok, who come near to the altar to serve me.

ULB:

¹⁸ Next he said to me, "Son of man, the Lord Yahweh says this: These are the regulations for the altar on the day they make it, for raising the burnt offering onto it, and for sprinkling blood on it. ¹⁹ You will give a bull from the cattle as a sin offering for the Levitical priests who are the descendants of Zadok, those who come near to me to serve me—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- blood
- sin offering
- Levite, Levi
- priest, priesthood
- descendant, descended from
- Zadok
- serve, service
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **he said** - "Yahweh said"
- **Son of man** - "Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is powerful and lives forever, but people are not. Translate as in [2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"
- **regulations** - "rules" or "instructions"
- **You will** - The word "you" is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 43 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 43 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 43:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ You must take some of the blood from the bull and smear it on the four projections of the altar and on the four corners of the upper ledge, and all around the rim, so I will accept the altar, and to make the altar belong only to me. ²¹ You must burn that bull outside the temple in the part of the temple area designated for that purpose.

ULB:

²⁰ Then you will take some of its blood and place it on the altar's four horns and the four sides of its edge and on the surrounding rim; you will cleanse it and make atonement for it. ²¹ Then take the bull for the sin offering and burn it in the appointed part of the temple area outside of the sanctuary.

translationWords:

- [blood](#)
- [altar](#)
- [clean, cleanse](#)
- [atonement, atone](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

translationNotes:

- **Then you will take** - See how you translated “you” in [43:19](#).
- **four horns** - See how you translated “you” in [43:15](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 43:22-24

UDB:

²² The next day you must offer a male goat that has no defects, to be an offering, so I will accept the altar. Then you must purify the altar again, as you did with the bull that was sacrificed. ²³ When you have finished doing all that, you must offer a young bull and a ram, both of them without any defects. ²⁴ You must offer them to me, Yahweh. The priests must sprinkle salt on them and burn them completely on the altar as a sacrifice to me.

ULB:

²² Then on the second day you will offer a male goat without blemish from the goats as a sin offering; the priests will cleanse the altar just as they cleansed it with the bull. ²³ When you finish its cleansing, offer an unblemished bull from the cattle and an unblemished ram from the flock. ²⁴ Offer them before Yahweh; the priests will throw salt onto them and raise them up as a burnt offering to Yahweh.

translationWords:

- goat, kid
- sin offering
- priest, priesthood
- clean, cleanse
- sheep, ram, ewe
- flock, herd
- Yahweh
- burnt offering, offering by fire

translationNotes:

- **on the second day you** - See how you translated “You” in [43:19](#).
- **Offer them before Yahweh** - The altar on which they will sacrifice the bull and ram, is in front of the Temple where the presence of Yahweh dwells.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 43:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ Then, each day for seven days you must bring to the priest a male goat to be sacrificed for an offering, so I will accept the altar. You must also sacrifice a young bull and a ram, each without any defect, that the priests will provide. ²⁶ For seven days the priests will consecrate the altar, so I will accept the altar. By doing that they will set it apart for my honor. ²⁷ At the end of those seven days, starting on the following day, the priests will continue to put on the altar offerings to be completely burned and offerings to promise friendship with me. Then I will accept you. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.”

ULB:

²⁵ You must prepare a male goat as a sin offering daily for seven days, and the priests must also prepare an unblemished bull of the cattle and unblemished ram from the flock. ²⁶ They must atone for the altar for seven days and purify it, and in this way they must consecrate it. ²⁷ They must complete these days, and on the eighth day and onward it will come about that the priests will prepare your burnt offerings and your peace offerings on the altar, and I will accept you—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

translationWords:

- atonement, atone
- pure, purify, purification
- consecrate
- priest, priesthood
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- peace offering
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

translationNotes:

- **You** - See how you translated “You” in [43:19](#).
- **it will come about that** - This phrase is used here to mark an important part of the instructions. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **your burnt offerings ... your peace offerings ... accept you** - The words “yours” and “you” are second person plural and refer to the people of Israel in general. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#) and [Forms of You](#))
- **will accept you** - “will receive you with favor” or “will be pleased with you”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 44 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. Foreigners and the Levites who have worshiped idols are not allowed in the temple. The priests alone will do the temple work. (See: [temple](#) and [priest, priesthood](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 44:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 44:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Then the man brought me back to the outer entrance to the temple area, the one on the east side, but the gate was shut. ² Yahweh said to me, "This gate must remain shut. It must not be opened by anyone; no one will be permitted to enter it. It must remain shut because I, Yahweh, the God of Israel, made it to be special to me when I came in through it. ³ Only the ruler of Israel will be permitted to sit inside this entrance to eat food in my presence. He must enter and leave the temple area through this gate."

ULB:

44 ¹ Then the man brought me back to the outer sanctuary gate that faced east; it was closed tightly. ² Yahweh said to me, "This gate has been sealed shut; it will not be opened. No man will go through it, for Yahweh, the God of Israel, has come through it, so it has been closed tightly. ³ The ruler of Israel will sit in it to eat food before Yahweh. He will enter by way of the gate's portico and go out the same way."

translationWords:

- [sanctuary](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [face](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)

translationNotes:

- **that faced east** - See how you translated this in [40:6](#).
- **it will not be opened** - AT: "no one will open it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the God of Israel** - See how you translated this in [8:4](#).
- **portico** - See how you translated this in [8:16](#).
- **before Yahweh** - "in front of Yahweh" or "in the presence of Yahweh"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 44:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Then the man brought me through the north entrance to the front of the temple. I looked and saw that the glory of Yahweh filled his temple, and I prostrated myself on the ground.

⁵ Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, look carefully, and listen carefully to everything that I tell you about all the regulations concerning the temple. Note carefully the temple entrance and all the exits.

ULB:

⁴ Next he brought me by way of the northern gate that faces the house. So I looked and behold, the glory of Yahweh filled the house of Yahweh, and I fell on my face. ⁵ Then Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, set your heart and look with your eyes and listen with your ears to all that I am declaring to you, to all the statutes of the house of Yahweh and all its regulations. Think about the house's entrance and exits.

translationWords:

- [house](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [heart](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)

translationNotes:

- **Next he** - Possible meanings are 1) "Next the man" or 2) "Next Yahweh".
- **behold** - The word "behold" here shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.
- **the glory of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [3:12](#).
- **I fell on my face** - See how you translated this in [1:28](#).
- **set your heart** - See how you translated "fix your mind on" in [40:4](#).
- **all its regulations** - "all the instructions about the house of Yahweh"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 44:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Say this to the rebellious Israelite people: "This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: You Israelite people, I will no longer endure the detestable things that you do! ⁷ In addition to all the other detestable things that you do, you brought into my temple foreign men who had not been circumcised and who knew nothing about how to honor me. By doing that, you caused my temple to be an unacceptable place to worship me, while you offered food and fat and blood, and you disobeyed my covenant with you.

ULB:

⁶ Then say to the rebellious ones, the house of Israel, "The Lord Yahweh says this: Let all of your disgusting actions be enough for you, house of Israel— ⁷ that you brought foreigners with uncircumcised hearts and uncircumcised flesh to be in my sanctuary, profaning my house, while you were offering me food, fat and blood—you have broken my covenant by all your disgusting actions.

translationWords:

- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- flesh
- sanctuary
- profane
- bread
- blood
- covenant

translationNotes:

- **Let all of your disgusting actions be enough for you** - "Your disgusting actions have been more than enough for you" or "You have done far too many disgusting deeds"
- **disgusting actions** - See how you translated this in [5:9](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)

- Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions

Ezekiel 44:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Instead of doing what I commanded you to do in regard to my holy things, you appointed foreigners to be in charge of my temple. ⁹ But this is what I, Yahweh, have said: No foreigners, no men who are not circumcised, no godless people are permitted to enter my temple, not even foreigners who live among you Israelites permanently.

ULB:

⁸ You have not carried out your duties regarding my holy things, but you appointed others to take up your duties, and you assigned them to care for my holy place. ⁹ The Lord Yahweh says this: No foreigner, uncircumcised in heart and flesh, from any of those who live among the people of Israel, may enter my holy place.

translationWords:

- [holy place, most holy place](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [heart](#)
- [flesh](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 44:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ Many of the descendants of Levi deserted me along with most of the Israelite people, and started to worship idols. I will punish them for their sin. ¹¹ I will permit them to work in my temple and to be in charge of the temple gates. They will be able to slaughter the animals that will be completely burned on the altar, and to burn other sacrifices for the people, and they will be able to help the people. ¹² But because they helped the people to worship idols and caused many of the people of Israel to sin by worshiping idols, I swear that I will punish them for their sin.

ULB:

¹⁰ Yet the Levites went far from me—they wandered away from me, going after their idols—but they will pay for their sin. ¹¹ They are servants in my sanctuary, watching the gates of the house and serving in the house and they slaughter the burnt offerings and the people's sacrifices, and they will stand before the people and serve them. ¹² But because they performed the sacrifices before their idols, they became stumbling blocks for sin for the house of Israel. Therefore I will lift up my hand to swear an oath against them—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—they will bear their punishment.

translationWords:

- Levite, Levi
- idol, idolatrous
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- servant, slave, slavery
- house
- serve, service
- slaughter
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- sacrifice, offering
- stumbling block, stone of stumbling
- oath, swear, swear by
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.
- **are servants in my sanctuary** - “will be the servants in my temple”
- **watching the gates of the house** - “performing guard duty at the gates of the house”

- **they will stand before the people and serve them** - “these Levites will stand before the people, so that they can serve the people”
- **I will lift up my hand to swear an oath** - See how you translated “I raised my hand to swear an oath” in [20:6](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 44:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ They must not come near me to serve as priests. They must not come near any sacred things or the holy offerings. They will be ashamed of the things that they did, of which they are guilty. ¹⁴ But I will still put them in charge of the work in the temple, and allow them to do all the work that needs to be done there.

ULB:

¹³ They will not come near me to act as my priests or to approach any of my holy things, the most holy things. Instead, they will bear their reproach and their guilt for the disgusting actions that they have done. ¹⁴ But I will place them as keepers of the work in the house, for all of its duties and everything that is done in it.

translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [reproach](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.
- **They** - “These Levites”
- **They will not come near** - See how you translated “come near” in [40:46](#).
- **will bear their reproach and their guilt** - “will be ashamed and suffer the consequences for”
- **disgusting actions** - See how you translated this in [5:9](#).
- **keepers** - a person whose job is to guard or take care of something or someone
- **that is done in it** - AT: “that they need to do in it.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 44:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ But the priests who are descended from Levi and from the clan of Zadok faithfully worked in my temple when the other Israelites deserted me. So they must come near to me to work for me. They will stand in my presence to offer sacrifices of animals' fat and blood. ¹⁶ They are the only ones who are permitted to enter my temple. They are the only ones who are permitted to come near my altar to serve me and do what I tell them to do.

ULB:

¹⁵ Then the Levitical priests, those sons of Zadok who fulfilled the duties of my sanctuary when the people of Israel were wandering away from me—they will come near me to worship me. They will stand before me to offer me the fat and the blood—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration. ¹⁶ They will come to my sanctuary; they will approach my table to worship me and to fulfill their duties to me.

translationWords:

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [fulfill](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [worship](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.
- **those sons of Zadok who fulfilled** - “who are descendants of Zadok and fulfilled”
- **were wandering away from me** - This phrase means “stopped listening and obeying me.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **will come near me** - “will approach me”
- **this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 44 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 44:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ When they enter the gateway into the inner courtyard, they must wear white linen clothes. They must not wear any clothes made of wool while they do their work at the gates of the inner courtyard or inside the temple. ¹⁸ They must wear white linen turbans on their heads and linen undergarments around their waists. They must not wear anything that would cause them to perspire.

ULB:

¹⁷ So it will be that when they come to the gates of the inner courtyard, they will have to dress in linen clothes, for they must not come in wool inside the gates of the inner court and its house. ¹⁸ There should be linen turbans on their heads and linen underclothes on their hips. They must not dress in clothes that make them sweat.

translationWords:

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.
- **So it will be that** - “So”
- **the inner courtyard** - See how you translated this in [8:16](#).
- **linen** - See how you translated this in [9:2](#).
- **wool** - cloth or clothing made of the soft hair of sheep
- **turbans** - A turban is a head covering that is that is made of a long cloth wrapped around the head.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 44:19**UDB:**

¹⁹ Before they go out into the courtyard where other people are, they must take off the clothes that they have been wearing and leave them in the sacred rooms, and put on other clothes, in order that the people are not consecrated by touching the sacred clothes.

ULB:

¹⁹ When they go out to the outer courtyard, to the outer courtyard in order to go to the people, they must take off the clothes they wore when they served; they must take them off and lay them down in a holy room, so they do not make other people holy by contact with their special clothing.

translationWords:

- [serve, service](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.
- **outer courtyard** - See how you translated this in [10:5](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 44:20-22

UDB:

²⁰ The priests must not shave their heads or let their hair become long; but they must keep their hair trimmed. ²¹ Priests must not drink wine before they enter the inner courtyard. ²² Also, priests must not marry widows of men who were not priests or women who have been divorced. They are permitted to marry only virgins or widows of other priests.

ULB:

²⁰ Also they must neither shave their heads nor allow their hair to hang loosely, but they must trim the hair of their heads. ²¹ No priest may drink wine when he comes to the inner court, ²² nor take a widow or a divorced woman as a wife for himself, but only a virgin from the line of the house of Israel or a widow who was previously married to a priest.

translationWords:

- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [divorce](#)
- [virgin](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.
- **shave** - cut a person's hair so short that the it is easy to see the skin of the person
- **trim the hair of their heads** - "cut the hair on their heads so that it is neither too long nor too short"
- **widow** - a woman whose husband has died
- **from the line of the house of Israel** - "who is a descendant of the people of Israel"
- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 44:23-24**UDB:**

²³ They must teach the people the difference between things that are holy and things that are not, and teach them how to know what things are acceptable to me and what things are not.

²⁴ If there is a dispute between people, the priests are the ones who must serve as judges and decide matters according to my laws. They must obey all my laws and decrees concerning the sacred festivals, and they must treat my Sabbath days as special for me.

ULB:

²³ For they will teach my people the difference between the holy and the profane; they will make them know the unclean from the clean. ²⁴ In a dispute they will stand to judge with my decrees; they must be just. They will keep my law and my statutes in every feast, and they will celebrate my holy Sabbaths.

translationWords:

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [profane](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [clean, cleanse](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [decree](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [feast](#)
- [Sabbath](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.
- **a dispute** - “an argument”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 44:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ Priests are permitted to go near the corpse of a father or mother or son or daughter or brother or unmarried sister. But they must not defile themselves by going near a corpse of anyone else. ²⁶ If a priest touches the corpse of a close relative, he must perform the rituals to become acceptable to serve me again. After he performs those rituals, he must wait seven days. ²⁷ Then, on the day that he enters the inner courtyard again to serve me in the temple, he must give an offering to remove his guilt for having sinned. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

ULB:

²⁵ They will not go to a dead person so as to become unclean, unless it is their father or mother, son or daughter, brother or a sister who has not slept with a man; otherwise, they will become unclean. ²⁶ After a priest has become unclean, people will count seven days for him. ²⁷ Before the day he comes to the holy place, to the inner courtyard to serve in the holy place, he must bring a sin offering for himself—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [holy place, most holy place](#)
- [sin offering](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.
- **this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 44:28-29

UDB:

²⁸ The priests will not own any land. They will have only what I provide for them. ²⁹ They will eat the offerings made from flour, offerings to remove people's guilt for having sinned, and offerings made when people fail to give to me the things that they are required to give. Everything else in Israel that is dedicated to me will belong to the priests.

ULB:

²⁸ This will be their inheritance: I am their inheritance, and you must give them no property in Israel; I will be their property! ²⁹ They will eat the food offerings, the sin offerings, the guilt offerings, and everything devoted to Yahweh in Israel, will be theirs.

translationWords:

- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [sin offering](#)
- [guilt offering](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.
- **and you** - The word "you" refers to the people of Israel.
- **property** - land that a person owns and uses to provide for the needs of his family
- **in Israel** - "in the land of Israel"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 44:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ The best fruits of the first part of each harvest and all the other special gifts will belong to the priests. You must give them the first part of your ground flour, in order that I will bless the people who live in your house. ³¹ Priests must not eat the flesh of any bird or animal that is found dead or that has been killed by wild animals.

ULB:

³⁰ The best of the firstfruits of all things and every contribution, anything from all of your contributions will belong to the priests, and you will give the best of your meal offerings to the priests so that blessing may rest on your house. ³¹ The priests will not eat any carcass or animal torn by a beast, whether bird or beast.

translationWords:

- [firstfruits](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [meal offering, grain offering](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [house](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.
- **firstfruits** - Here “firstfruits” probably means the best things among all the offerings set aside to give to God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and every contribution, anything from all of your contributions** - “and every gift of whatever kind from all your gifts” or “and all gifts of every sort of all of your gifts”
- **so that blessing may rest on your house** - This phrase means “so that I will bless your family and everything that belongs to you.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **or animal torn by a beast, whether bird or beast** - AT: “or any creature that a bird or a wild animal has torn apart.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 45 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. There should be an area around the temple complex for the homes of the priests and Levites who work at the temple. People should celebrate the festivals. (See: [temple](#) and [priest, priesthood](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 45:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 45:1-2

UDB:

¹ When the land of Israel is divided among the twelve tribes, you must present to Yahweh one part of the land to be a sacred district. It will be thirteen and one-half kilometers long and five and two-fifth kilometers wide. This entire area will be reserved for Yahweh. ² Part of that area, a square about 270 meters long on each side will be left empty all around the temple area. An additional strip of ground, about twenty-seven meters wide, will be left empty all around the temple area.

ULB:

45 ¹ When you cast lots to divide up the land as an inheritance, you must make an offering to Yahweh; this offering will be a holy part of the land, twenty-five thousand long cubits in length, and ten thousand long cubits wide. It will be holy, all its area round about.[1]Instead of *ten thousand*, which the Hebrew text and some modern versions have, some ancient copies and many modern versions have *twenty thousand*. ² From this there will be a five hundred cubits by five hundred cubits square surrounding the holy place, with a surrounding border fifty cubits wide.

translationWords:

- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.
- **all its area round about** - “all of the area inside of the borders that go around it”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 45:3-5

UDB:

³ Inside the sacred district, measure a section thirteen and one-half kilometers long and five and two-fifth kilometers wide. ⁴ It will be the sacred portion of the land for the priests who work in the temple, those who come near to Yahweh to serve him. It will be a place very special for Yahweh, for the priests' houses, as well as for the temple. ⁵ An area thirteen and one-half kilometers long and five and two-fifth kilometers wide will be for the descendants of Levi who work in the temple. That area will belong to them, and they can build towns there to live in.

ULB:

³ From this area you will measure a portion that is twenty-five thousand cubits long and ten thousand wide; it will be a holy place for you; a most holy place. ⁴ It will be a holy place in the land for the priests who serve Yahweh, who come near Yahweh to serve him. It will be a place for their houses and a holy area for the holy place. ⁵ So it will be twenty-five thousand cubits long and ten thousand wide, and it will be for towns for the Levites who serve in the house.

translationWords:

- [holy place, most holy place](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.
- **this area** - the temple and the border surrounding it
- **a portion** - “a portion of land”
- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 45:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Alongside this sacred area will be a section of land that is thirteen and one-half kilometers long and two and three-quarter kilometers wide. It will be for a city where anyone in Israel may live.

⁷ The ruler of Israel will have the land that is on each side of the area formed by the temple district and the city. It will extend to the west from the western end of those areas, and to the east from the eastern end of those areas. The far eastern and far western borders of the king's land will measure the same as the parallel borders of those other tracts.

ULB:

⁶ You will designate an area for the city, five thousand cubits wide and twenty-five thousand long, that will be next to the area reserved for the holy place; this city will belong to all the house of Israel. ⁷ The prince's land will be on both sides of the area reserved for the holy place and the city. It will be to their west and to their east. The length will correspond to the length of one of those portions, from the west to the east.

translationWords:

- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [prince, princess](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.
- **reserved for the holy place** - AT: "that you gave for the holy place." (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **The length will correspond to the length of one of those portions** - It is implied that Ezekiel is comparing the prince's land with the size of the land given to each of the tribes. AT: "The length will be the same as the length of one of the portions given to the tribes." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **from the west to the east** - It is implied that these are the western and eastern borders of the land of Israel. AT: "from the border of Israel on the sea" or "from the border of Israel on the west."

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 45:8**UDB:**

⁸ This portion of land will belong to the ruler. So the rulers will no longer have any excuse for oppressing my people and stealing their land. They will assign the remaining parts of the land in Israel to each tribe, to be divided up among the people.

ULB:

⁸ This land will be property for the prince in Israel. My princes will no longer oppress my people; instead, they will give the land to the house of Israel, for their tribes.

translationWords:

- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [tribe](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.
- **This land will be property for the prince in Israel** - “In the land, this will be the property of the prince among the people of Israel”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 45:9-12**UDB:**

⁹ This is what Yahweh the Lord says: You rulers of Israel must stop acting violently and oppressing the people! You must do what is fair and right. Stop taking land from the people; stop forcing them off their land! ¹⁰ Also, you must use accurate scales and accurate containers for measuring things. ¹¹ The baskets for measuring dry things and containers for measuring liquids must be the same size; each must hold twenty-two liters—called an ephah (for dry measure) and a bath (for liquid measure). ¹² When you weigh things, you must use weights that everyone accepts as being correct. The shekel is to be divided into twenty gerahs, and a mina will be worth sixty shekels.

ULB:

⁹ The Lord Yahweh says this: It is enough for you, princes of Israel! Remove violence and strife; do justice and righteousness! Quit your evictions of my people!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration. ¹⁰ You must have accurate scales, accurate ephahs, and accurate baths! ¹¹ The ephah and the bath will be the same amount, so that a bath will be a tenth of a homer; the ephah will be a tenth of a homer. Their measure will be corresponding to the homer. ¹² The shekel will be twenty gerahs; sixty shekels will make a mina for you.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- people of God, my people
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **It is enough for you** - “You have done far too much of this” or “You have been acting this way for far too long”
- **scales** - an instrument that was used to weight things that people sold or bought
- **so that a bath will be a tenth of a homer** - “so that ten baths will be the same amount as a homer”
- **homer** - about 220 liters (See: [Biblical Volume](#))
- **shekel** - about 11 grams (See: [Biblical Weight](#))
- **gerahs** - about 0.55 grams (See: [Biblical Weight](#))
- **mina** - about 660 grams (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 45:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ You must present to the ruler one measure of wheat or barley for every sixty measures that you harvest. ¹⁴ You must give him one measure of olive oil for every one hundred measures that you produce. ¹⁵ Also, Yahweh declares that you must take one sheep or goat from every two hundred in your flocks in the lush pastures of Israel. You must offer a sheep or a goat for various offerings: burnt offerings and offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh, offerings to atone for the people's sins. "This is the Lord Yahweh's command."

ULB:

¹³ This is the contribution that you must present: a sixth of an ephah for every homer of wheat, and you will give a sixth of an ephah for every homer of barley. ¹⁴ The regulation offering of oil will be a tenth of a bath for every cor (which is ten baths), or for every homer, since a homer is also ten baths. ¹⁵ One sheep or goat from the flock for every two hundred animals from the watered regions of Israel will be used for any burnt offering or peace offering to make atonement for the people—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- wheat
- oil
- sheep, ram, ewe
- goat, kid
- flock, herd
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- peace offering
- atonement, atone
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.
- **for every homer of wheat** - It is implied that this is the amount of wheat that the people harvest. AT: "for every homer of wheat from the harvest." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **The regulation offering of oil will be** - "This is the rule about the oil, about the bath of oil"
- **the watered regions of Israel** - "the parts of Israel that get a good amount of water"
- **will be used for** - AT: "You will use these contributions for." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 45:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ All the people in the land must join in bringing these offerings to the ruler of Israel. ¹⁷ The ruler must provide the animals to be completely burned on the altar, flour for the offerings made from grain, and wine for the sacred festivals that Yahweh has appointed for the people Israel—including the festivals to celebrate the new moons, and the offerings for the Sabbath days. He must provide the animals for the offerings for the people to become acceptable to God, offerings of flour made from grain, offerings to be completely burned, and offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh, to atone for the sins of the people of Israel.”

ULB:

¹⁶ All the people of the land will give this contribution to the prince in Israel. ¹⁷ It will be the prince’s responsibility to furnish animals for the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the drink offerings at the festivals and the new moon celebrations, and on the Sabbath days—all the fixed festivals of the house of Israel. He will provide for the sin offerings, the grain offerings, the burnt offerings, and the peace offerings for atonement on behalf of the house of Israel.

translationWords:

- prince, princess
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- grain offering
- drink offering
- festival
- new moon
- Sabbath
- peace offering
- atonement, atone

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.
- **the fixed festivals** - “the appointed festivals”
- **the house of Israel** - See how you translated this in [3:1](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 45 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 45 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 45:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ This is also what the Lord Yahweh declares: "On the first day of the first month of each year you must take one young bull that has no defects and sacrifice it to purify the temple. ¹⁹ The priest must take some of the blood of the offering to atone for the people's sins, and he must smear it on the temple doorposts, on the four corners of the upper ledge surrounding the altar, and on the gateposts of the inner courtyard. ²⁰ You must do the same thing on the seventh day of the month for any people who sin accidentally or without knowing that they sinned. By doing that you will purify the temple.

ULB:

¹⁸ The Lord Yahweh says this: In the first month, on the first day of the month, you will take an unblemished bull from the herd and perform a sin offering for the sanctuary. ¹⁹ The priest will take some of the blood of the sin offering and place it on the doorposts of the house and on the four corners of the border of the altar, and on the doorposts of the gate to the inner court. ²⁰ You will do this on the seventh of the month for each person's sin by accident or ignorance; in this way you will atone for the temple.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- biblical time: day
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- flock, herd
- sin offering
- sanctuary
- priest, priesthood
- blood
- doorpost
- house
- altar
- gate, gate bar
- courtyard, court
- atonement, atone
- temple

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

- **In the first month, on the first day of the month** - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the end of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **you will take** - The word “you” is singular and refers to whomever is the prince in Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **on the seventh of the month** - “on the seventh day of the first month” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **for each person’s sin by accident** - “for each person who had sinned without meaning to” or “for each person who had sinned by accident”
- **or ignorance** - “or had sinned because he did not know any better” or “or had sinned because he did not know what was right”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 45:21-22

UDB:

²¹ In the first month of each year, on the fourteenth day of the month, you must start to celebrate the Passover festival. The festival will last for seven days. During that time you must not eat any bread made with yeast. ²² On the first day, the ruler must provide a bull as an offering for himself and for the other people of the country.

ULB:

²¹ In the first month on the fourteenth day of the month, there will be for you a festival, a seven day festival. You will eat unleavened bread. ²² On that day, the prince will prepare for himself and for all the people of the land a bull as a sin offering.

translationWords:

- [biblical time: day](#)
- [festival](#)
- [unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [sin offering](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.
- **In the first month on the fourteenth day of the month** - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fourteenth day is near the beginning of April. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **for you** - The word “you” is plural and refers to the prince and the rest of the people of the house of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 45:23-24**UDB:**

²³ And every day during those seven days he must provide seven bulls and seven rams that have no defects, to be an offering to make it possible for God to accept the people. ²⁴ He must also provide twenty-two liters of flour as an offering with each bull, and the same amount of flour with each ram, and also four liters of olive oil with each offering of flour.

ULB:

²³ For the seven days of the festival, the prince will prepare a burnt offering for Yahweh: seven bulls and seven unblemished rams each day for seven days, and a male goat each day as a sin offering. ²⁴ Then the prince will perform a food offering of an ephah for each bull and an ephah for each ram with a hin of oil for each ephah.

translationWords:

- burnt offering, offering by fire
- sheep, ram, ewe
- goat, kid
- grain offering
- oil

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.
- **food offering** - This is also called a “grain offering.”
- **seven bulls and seven unblemished rams** - “seven bulls and seven rams that are completely healthy”
- **ephah** - You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: “twenty-two liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))
- **hin** - You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: “four liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 45:25**UDB:**

²⁵ During the seven days of the festival celebrating when the Israelites lived in tents during the exodus from Egypt, which starts on the fifteenth day of the seventh month of each year, the ruler must provide the same things for offerings to make it possible for God to accept the people, for offerings to be completely burned, for offerings of things made from grain, and for offerings of olive oil.

ULB:

²⁵ In the seventh month on the fifteenth day of the month, at the festival, the prince will perform offerings on these seven days: sin offerings, burnt offerings, food offerings, and offerings of oil.

translationWords:

- [biblical time: day](#)
- [sin offering](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.
- **In the seventh month on the fifteenth day of the month** - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifteenth day is near the beginning of October. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **at the festival** - This is a different festival than the festival Ezekiel was describing before.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 46 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. This chapter focuses on many of the temple's rules. (See: [temple](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 46:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 46:1-2**UDB:**

¹ This is also what Yahweh the Lord declares: 'The east gateway of the inner courtyard must be shut during the six days you work each week, but on the Sabbath days and on the days when there is a new moon, the gateway must be open. ² The ruler must enter the courtyard through the entry room of the gateway, and stand alongside the gateposts of the inner courtyard. Then the priests must sacrifice the animal that will be completely burned on the altar, and also his offering to promise friendship with me. The ruler must worship me at the entrance of the inner gateway, and then he must leave. But the gate will not be shut until that evening.

ULB:

46 ¹ The Lord Yahweh says this: The gate of the inner courtyard, facing east, will be shut for the six days of work, but on the Sabbath it will be opened, and on the day of the new moon it will be opened. ² The prince will enter the outer courtyard by the way of the gate and its portico from outside, and he will stand before the doorposts of the inner gate while the priests perform his burnt offering and peace offering. Then he will worship at the threshold of the inner gate and go out, but the gate will not be shut until evening.

translationWords:

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- gate, gate bar
- courtyard, court
- face
- Sabbath
- new moon
- prince, princess
- doorpost
- priest, priesthood
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- peace offering
- worship
- threshold

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.
- **inner courtyard** - See how you translated this in **8:16**.
- **facing east** - See how you translated this in **11:1**.

- **inner gate** - See how you translated this in [40:19](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 46:3-5

UDB:

³ On the Sabbath days and on the days when there is a new moon, the people also must worship me at the entrance of this gate. ⁴ The offering that the ruler brings to be completely burned on the Sabbath day must be six male lambs and one ram, all with no defects. ⁵ The offering that he gives with the ram is twenty-two liters of flour, and the flour that he offers with the lambs should be as much as he pleases, along with one liter of olive oil for every twenty-two liters of flour .

ULB:

³ The people of the land will also worship before Yahweh at the entrance to this gate on the Sabbaths and new moons. ⁴ The burnt offering that the prince offers to Yahweh on the Sabbath day will be six unblemished lambs and an unblemished ram. ⁵ The grain offering with the ram will be an ephah, and the grain offering with the lambs will be what he wishes to give, and a hin of oil with each ephah of grain.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [oil](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.
- **before Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [43:24](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 46:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ Then each day that there is a new moon, he must offer a young bull, six lambs and a ram, all with no defects. ⁷ He must also provide twenty-two liters of flour with the bull, the same amount of flour with the ram, and as much flour as he wants with the lambs, along with one liter of olive oil with every twenty-two liters of flour. ⁸ When the ruler enters the temple area, he must enter through gate and its entry room, and he must go out by the same way.

ULB:

⁶ On the day of the new moon you must offer an unblemished bull from a herd, six lambs, and an unblemished ram. ⁷ He must make a grain offering of an ephah for the bull and an ephah for the ram, and what he wishes to give for the lambs, and a hin of oil for every ephah of grain. ⁸ When the prince enters by the way of the gate and its portico, he must leave by the same way.

translationWords:

- [new moon](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [grain](#)
- [prince, princess](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.
- **portico** - See how you translated this in [40:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 46:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ When the people come to worship me at the festivals that I, Yahweh, have commanded, those who enter the temple area through the north gateway must go out through the south gateway. And those who enter through the south gateway must go out through the north gateway. People must not go out through the gateway through which they entered; they must go out through the opposite gateway. ¹⁰ The ruler must go in when the other people go in, and go out when the people go out.

ULB:

⁹ But when the people of the land come before Yahweh at the appointed festivals, anyone entering through the north gate to worship must leave through the south gate; and anyone entering through the south gate must leave through the north gate. No one may turn back to the gate through which he entered, for he must go out straight ahead. ¹⁰ The prince must be in their midst; when they go in, he must go in, and when they leave, he must leave.

translationWords:

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [worship](#)

translationNotes:

- **before Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [44:3](#).
- **appointed festivals** - See how you translated “appointed feasts” in [36:37](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 46:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ During the festivals that you hold for me, the king must present twenty-two liters of flour along with a bull or a ram, and as much flour as he wants to with the lambs, along with one liter of olive oil with every twenty-two liters of flour. ¹² When the ruler gives an offering that is not required, either one to be completely burned or an offering to celebrate fellowship with me, the gate on the east side must be opened for him. He must then present his offerings like he does on the Sabbath days. Then he will go out, and after he goes out, they must shut the gateway.

ULB:

¹¹ At the festivals, the grain offering must be an ephah of grain for the bull and an ephah for the ram, and whatever he wishes to give with the lambs, and a hin of oil for every ephah. ¹² When the prince gives a freewill offering, either a burnt offering or a peace offering to Yahweh, he must open the gate facing east for it, and perform his burnt offering and his peace offering as he does it on the day of the Sabbath; then he must go out and shut the gate after he has gone out.

translationWords:

- [festival](#)
- [freewill offering](#)

translationNotes:

- **for it** - “for himself”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 46:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ In the morning of every day, someone must provide a one year old lamb with no defects to be an offering to me, one that the priests will completely burn. ¹⁴ Someone must also provide each morning an offering of flour. It must be three and one-half liters of flour mixed with one liter of olive oil. You must never stop presenting these offerings of flour and olive oil to me, Yahweh, each day. ¹⁵ The lamb and the offering of flour and olive oil must be presented to me every morning, to be completely burned on the altar.

ULB:

¹³ In addition, you will give an unblemished lamb one year old as a burnt offering to Yahweh daily; you will do this morning after morning. ¹⁴ You will give a grain offering with it morning after morning, a sixth of an ephah and a third of a hin of oil to moisten the flour of the grain offering for Yahweh, according to a permanent statute. ¹⁵ They will prepare the lamb, the grain offering, and the oil morning after morning, a permanent burnt offering.

translationWords:

- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.
- **to moisten** - “which will soak”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 46:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ This is what Yahweh the Lord declares: If the ruler gives some of his land to one of his sons, to belong to him permanently, it will then eventually belong to his son's descendants. ¹⁷ However, if he gives some of his land to one of his servants, the servant is allowed to keep that land until the year of the celebration of Jubilee. Then the ruler must take possession of it again. But if the ruler gives land to his sons, that land will belong to them permanently. ¹⁸ The ruler must not take any land that the people own and force them to live somewhere else. The land that he gives to his sons must be from his own property, not from anyone else's property, in order that none of my people will be separated from his own property.”

ULB:

¹⁶ The Lord Yahweh says this: If the prince gives a gift to any of his sons, it is his inheritance. It will be the property of his sons, it is an inheritance. ¹⁷ But if he gives a gift from his inheritance to one of his servants, then it will be that servant's until the year of liberty, and then it will return to the prince. His inheritance will certainly be for his sons. ¹⁸ The prince will not take the people's inheritance away from their own property; he must provide for his sons from his own property so that my people will not be scattered, each man from his own property.”

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [son, son of](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [free, freedom, liberty](#)

translationNotes:

- **year of liberty** - This is the year that a servant gains freedom. This is also called the “Year of Jubilee.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 46:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Then, in the vision, the man brought me through the entrance alongside the gateway to the sacred rooms on the north side, the rooms that belonged to the priests, and he showed me a place at the western end. ²⁰ He said to me, “This is the place where the priests will cook the meat of the offerings that people make because they failed to do what they promised Yahweh that they would do, and offerings to cause people to become acceptable to God, and where they will bake bread made with the flour brought as offerings. They will cook those things in their rooms in order to avoid bringing them into the outer courtyard to cook them there, lest someone might be consecrated by touching them.”

ULB:

¹⁹ Next the man brought me through the entrance at the gate to the holy rooms for the priests, which faced north and behold! There was a place toward the west. ²⁰ He said to me, “This is the place where the priests must boil the guilt offering and the sin offering and where they must bake the grain offering. They must not bring the offerings into the outer courtyard, for then the people would be consecrated.”

translationWords:

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [face](#)
- [guilt offering](#)
- [sin offering](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [consecrate](#)

translationNotes:

- **which faced north** - “which had their main entrances to the north”
- **behold!** - The word “behold” here shows that Ezekiel saw something interesting.
- **outer courtyard** - See how you translated this in [10:5](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)

- **Ezekiel 46 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 46:21-24

UDB:

²¹ Then the man brought me to the outer courtyard and led me around to its four corners. In each corner I saw an enclosed area; ²² each was twenty-two meters long and sixteen meters wide. ²³ Around the inside of each of these enclosed areas was a stone ledge, with places to make fires all around under the ledge. ²⁴ The man said to me, “These are the kitchens where the descendants of Levi who work in the temple will cook the sacrifices that the people bring.”

ULB:

²¹ Then he brought me to the outer courtyard and he led me past the four corners of that courtyard, and I saw that in at every corner of the courtyard there was a another court. ²² In the four corners of the outer courtyard there were four small courtyards, forty cubits long and thirty wide. There the same dimensions for all four of the courtyards.[1]The Hebrew word translated here as *small* is unclear. It is translated in this way by some ancient and some modern versions. However, other modern versions translate it differently. ²³ There was a row made of stone all around the four of them, and cooking hearths were under the stone row. ²⁴ The man said to me, “These are the places where the temple servants will boil the people’s sacrifices.”

translationWords:

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [temple](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

translationNotes:

- **outer courtyard** - See how you translated this in [10:5](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 47 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. There was a river flowing from the temple. The land was to be divided among the tribes. The landscape of Jerusalem will have changed in a significant way. (See: [temple](#))

Links:

- [Ezekiel 47:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 47:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then in the vision, the man brought me back to the entrance of the temple. There I saw water coming out from under the entrance and flowing toward the east. The water was flowing down the south side of the entrance, to the right of the altar. ² Then he brought me out through the north gate and led me around to the eastern gate at its exterior side.

ULB:

47 ¹ Then the man took me back to the entrance to the temple, and there was water flowing out from under the temple threshold of the house toward the east—for the front of the temple faced east—and the water was flowing down the south side of the temple, to the right of the altar. ² So he brought me out through the northern gate and led around to the gate facing east, and there the water was flowing from this gate on its south side.

translationWords:

- [temple](#)
- [threshold](#)
- [house](#)
- [face](#)
- [altar](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)

translationNotes:

- **faced east** - See how you translated this in [40:6](#).
- **to the right of the altar** - This is the right side of the altar when a person looks at it while they are facing east. So, it is on the south side of the altar. AT: “on the south side of the altar.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 47:3-5**UDB:**

³ As the man continued walking toward the east, I saw that he had a measuring line in his hand. He measured off 540 meters and then led me through water that covered my ankles. ⁴ Then he measured off another 540 meters and led me through water that was up to my knees. Then he measured off another 540 meters and led me through water that was up to my waist. ⁵ Then he measured off another 540 meters and led me through water that was now a river that I could not cross, because the water was so deep; to continue farther would have required me to swim.

ULB:

³ As the man was going toward the east, there was a measuring line in his hand; he measured off one thousand cubits and brought me through the water to ankle-deep water. ⁴ Then he measured one thousand cubits again and brought me through the water to knee-deep water; and he measured another thousand cubits and brought me to hip-deep water. ⁵ Next he measured off one thousand cubits farther, here it was a river that I was not able to pass, it was so deep. One could only swim it.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **measuring line** - a string or a rope that people use to measure longer distances

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 47:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ Then he asked me, “Son of man, think about this carefully.” Then he led me onto the bank of the river

⁷ and back along it toward in the direction from where we had come. There I saw many trees growing on each side of the river. ⁸ He said to me, “This water flows east and goes down into the Dead Sea. And when the water enters the Dead Sea, it stays fresh and restores the water of the Sea and makes it fresh again.

ULB:

⁶ The man said to me, “Son of man, do you see this?” and he brought me out and had me walk back along the riverbank. ⁷ As I walked back, there the riverbank had many trees on this side and also the other side. ⁸ The man said to me, “This water is going out to the eastern territory and down to the Arabah; this water flows into the Salt Sea and will make it fresh.

translationWords:

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [Arabah](#)
- [Salt Sea, Dead Sea](#)

translationNotes:

- **Son of man** - See how you translated this in [2:3](#).
- **do you see this** - AT: “Pay attentions to this” or “think about this carefully” (UDB). See how you translated this in [8:15](#). (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 47:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Swarms of fish will live in the water wherever the river flows. There will be many fish in the Dead Sea, because the water that flows into it will cause the salt water to become fresh water. Wherever the river flows, everything alongside it will flourish. ¹⁰ Fishermen will stand along the riverbank to catch fish. From En Gedi on the western side to En Eglaim there will be places to spread fishing nets. There will be many kinds of fish, as there are in the Great Sea.

ULB:

⁹ Every living creature which swarms where the water goes; there will be many fish for these waters flow there. It will make the salt water fresh. Everything will live wherever the river goes. ¹⁰ Then it will happen that fishermen of En Gedi will stand by the water, and there will be a place to dry out the fishing nets by En Eglaim. There will be many kinds of fish in the Salt Sea, like the fish in the Great Sea for their abundance.

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [fishermen, fishers](#)
- [kind, kinds](#)
- [the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea](#)

translationNotes:

- **Then it will happen** - See how you translated this in [21:7](#).
- **En Gedi** - a very large spring on the western side of the Salt Sea
- **to dry out** - “for people to dry out”
- **En Eglaim** - a large spring on the eastern side of the Salt Sea

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 47:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ But the swamps and marshes along the shore will not become fresh; they will be left to make salt.

¹² Many kinds of fruit trees will grow on both sides of the river. Their leaves will not wither, and they will always have fruit. They will bear new fruit every month, because the water that comes from the temple flows continually to the trees. Their fruit will be good to eat and their leaves will be good for healing.”

ULB:

¹¹ But the Salt Sea’s swamps and marshes will not be made fresh; they will be for providing salt. ¹²

Beside this river on its banks, on both sides, all kinds of edible tree will grow. Their leaves will not wither, and their fruit will never stop appearing. The trees will bear fruit for each month, since their water come from the Sanctuary. Their fruit will be food, and their leaves will be medicine.

translationWords:

- [Salt Sea, Dead Sea](#)
- [kind, kinds](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

translationNotes:

- **swamps** - places that have water but are also muddy
- **marshes** - places that have shallow water

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 47:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ In the vision, Yahweh also said this to me: "Here is a list of the twelve tribes of Israel and the territory that each tribe is to receive. The descendants of Joseph will receive two portions. ¹⁴ Divide the land equally among all of the tribes. I lifted up my arm to swear to your ancestors that I would give them this land to own permanently.

ULB:

¹³ The Lord Yahweh says this: This will be the way that you divide the land up for the twelve tribes of Israel: Joseph will have two portions. ¹⁴ You, each man and brother among you, will inherit it. As I lifted up my hand to swear to give it to your fathers, in the same way this land has become your inheritance.

translationWords:

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [brother](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)

translationNotes:

- **Joseph will have two portions** - AT: "the descendants of Joseph will receive two areas of land." (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **each man and brother among you** - This phrase means "each person receiving an equal amount of land." (See: [Idiom](#))
- **I lifted up my hand to swear** - See how you translated "I raised my hand to swear" in [20:6](#).
- **in the same way this** - "so, indeed, this"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 47:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ These will be the boundaries of the land:

- On the north side, it will extend from the Mediterranean Sea east along the road to Hethlon, and then on to Zedad,
- ¹⁶ to Berothah, and then on to Sibraim, which is on the border between Damascus and Hamath. The boundary will run as far as Hazer Hatticon, which is on the border of the region of Hauran. ¹⁷ So the boundary will extend from the Mediterranean Sea to Hazar Enan on the border between Hamath to the north and Damascus to the south. That will be the northern boundary.
-

ULB:

¹⁵ This will be the boundary of the land on the north side from the Great Sea by way of Hethlon, and then to Zedad.[1]The Hebrew text reads *by way of Hethlon, and then to Zedad* , but some modern versions imitate 48:1 and add *Lebo Hamath* . ¹⁶ Then the boundary will go to Berothah, to Sibraim, which is between Damascus and Hamath, and then to Hazer Hatticon, which is beside the boundary of Hauran. ¹⁷ So the boundary will go from the sea to Hazar Enon on the border with Damascus and Hamath to the north. This will be the north side.

translationWords:

- the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea
- Damascus
- Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites

translationNotes:

- **Hethlon** - the name of a place that was probably a little ways north and east of Tripoli. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Zedad** - the name of a city in Lebanon that was probably in the same place that Sadad is today. Sadad is about 53 kilometers northeast of where Lebo Hamath probably was.
- **Berothah** - a place in Lebanon that is a little bit south of where Baalbek is
- **Sibraim** - a place between Damascus and Hamath
- **Hazer Hatticon** - a place that was probably between Damascus and Hauran
- **Hauran** - This is a place east of the Sea of Galilee. It was probably close to where Es Suwayda is.
- **Hazar Enon** - a place in Syria. It was probably in the same place as Al Quaryatayn, which is about 113 kilometers northeast of Damascus.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 47:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ On the east side, the boundary will extend between Hauran and Damascus, south along the Jordan River between the region of Gilead and the territory of Israel, along the Dead Sea as far as Tamar. That will be the eastern boundary.

- ¹⁹ On the south side, the boundary will extend from Tamar to the springs near Meribah Kadesh. Then it will extend west along the brook of Egypt to the Great Sea. That will be the southern boundary.
- ²⁰ On the west side, the boundary will be the Mediterranean Sea, north to a point near Lebo Hamath.

ULB:

¹⁸ On the east side, between Hauran and Damascus and between Gilead and the land of Israel will be the Jordan River. You must measure from the border to the eastern sea; all of this will be the eastern border.[1]The Hebrew text reads *You must measure from the border to the eastern sea* . However, some ancient and modern versions read *to the eastern sea as far as Tamar* . ¹⁹ Then the south side: south of Tamar to the waters of Meribah Kadesh, the brook of Egypt to the Great Sea, and the southern side toward the south. ²⁰ Then the western boundary will be the Great Sea to where it goes opposite Hamath. This will be the western side.

translationWords:

- [Gilead](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh](#)
- [the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea](#)

translationNotes:

- **Tamar** - a city about thirty-two kilometers southwest from the southern part of the Salt Sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Meribah Kadesh** - a place on the border between Israel and Egypt, halfway between the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea
- **the brook of Egypt** - a very large ravine in the northeast part of the Sinai

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- Ezekiel 47 General Notes
- **Ezekiel 47 Translation Questions**

Ezekiel 47:21-23

UDB:

²¹ You must distribute this land among yourselves, among the tribes of Israel. ²² You must assign the land as a permanent possession for yourselves and also for any foreigners who are living and raising their children among you. You must consider them to be like native born Israelites, and they must be assigned land among the tribes of Israel. ²³ Wherever foreigners are living, you must give them some land to belong to them permanently.' That is what the Lord Yahweh declares."

ULB:

²¹ In this way you will divide this land for yourselves, for the tribes of Israel. ²² So you will distribute the inheritances for yourselves and for the foreigners in your midst, those who have given birth to children in your midst and who are, with you, like the native born people of Israel. You will throw lots for inheritances among the tribes of Israel. ²³ Then it will happen that the foreigner will be with the tribe among whom he is living. You must give him an inheritance—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration."

translationWords:

- [twelve tribes of Israel](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

translationNotes:

- **for yourselves** - The word "yourselves" is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **Then it will happen that** - See how you translated this in [21:7](#).
- **this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 48 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. There is more dividing of the land between the tribes in this chapter as well.

Links:

- [Ezekiel 48:01 Notes](#)

Ezekiel 48:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Here is a list of the tribes of Israel and the territory that each tribe is to receive. The northern boundary of Israel will start at the Mediterranean Sea and go east to the city of Hethlon, then to Lebo Hamath, and farther on to Hazar Enan, which is south of Damascus, and it will continue to Hamath. Each tribe will receive land that will extend from the eastern boundary of Israel west to the Great Sea.

The tribe of Dan will receive land alongside the northern border of Israel.

² South of their area will be the territory for the tribe of Asher.

³ South of Asher's land will be territory for the tribe of Naphtali.

ULB:

48 ¹ These are the names of the tribes. The tribe of Dan will receive one portion of land; its boundary will run along the northern boundary of Israel by way of Hethlon and Lebo Hamath. Its boundary will go on to Hazar Enan and along the border with Damascus to the north and then on to Hamath. Dan's boundary will go from east all the way to the Great Sea. ² To the south of Dan's border will be the land of Asher—one portion of land, going from the east to the west. ³ South of the border with Asher will be the one portion of Naphtali, extending from the east side to the west side.

translationWords:

- tribe
- Dan
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Damascus
- Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites
- the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea
- Asher
- Naphtali

translationNotes:

- **one portion of land** - "one piece of the land that you will distribute"
- **Hethlon ... Lebo Hamath ... Hazar Enan** - See how you translated these in [47:15-17](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 48:4-7**UDB:**

⁴ South of Naphtali's land will be territory for the tribe of Manasseh.

⁵ South of Manasseh's land will be territory for the tribe of Ephraim.

⁶ South of Ephraim's land will be territory for the tribe of Reuben.

⁷ South of their land will be territory for the tribe of Judah.

ULB:

⁴ South of the border with Naphtali will be the one portion of Manasseh, extending from the east side to the west side. ⁵ South of the border of Manasseh from the eastern side to the west side will be Ephraim—one portion. ⁶ South of the border of Ephraim from the eastern side to the west side will be Reuben—one portion. ⁷ Beside the border with Reuben from the eastern side to the west side will be Judah—one portion.

translationWords:

- [Naphtali](#)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [Judah](#)

translationNotes:

- **one portion** - See how you translated “one portion of land” in [48:1](#).
- **extending from the east side to the west side** - See how you translated this in [48:3](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 48:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ South of Judah's land will be an area that the entire nation will give to me; you will set it apart for special use. The temple will be in the center of this area. It will be as long as any of the portions of land assigned a tribe of Israel.

⁹ This special area will be thirteen and one-half kilometers long and five and two-fifth kilometers wide. This is what you will give to Yahweh.

ULB:

⁸ The offering of land that you will make will be along the border with Judah and extend from the east side to the west side; it will be twenty-five thousand cubits wide. Its length will correspond to one tribe's portion from the east side to the west side, and the temple will be in the middle of it. ⁹ This land that you will offer up to Yahweh will be twenty-five thousand cubits long and ten thousand cubits in width.

translationWords:

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.
- **cubits** - See how you translated these "long" cubits in [40:05](#).
- **wide** - "from north to south"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 48:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ Within this special area, these will what you will assign to the priests: you will assign them an area of land measuring thirteen and one-half kilometers on the northern and southern side; and five and two-fifth kilometers on the western and eastern sides. The temple of Yahweh will be in the middle of this special area. ¹¹ The temple area will be for the priests, those set apart for my honor, who are descendants of Zadok. They are ones who served me faithfully and did not turn away from Yahweh as the descendants of Levi did. ¹² When the land is distributed, you will offer that special area to me, for it to be the priests' special portion; it is land that you will treat as very special to me. Next to the priests' territory will be where the other descendants of Levi will live.

ULB:

¹⁰ These will be the assignments of this holy portion of land: the priests will have land assigned to them measuring twenty-five thousand cubits in width on the north side; ten thousand cubits in width on the west side; ten thousand cubits in width on the east side; and twenty-five thousand cubits in length on the south side, with the holy place of Yahweh in the middle of it. ¹¹ This will be for the consecration of the priests of the line of Zadok, who have served me faithfully and who did not go astray when the people of Israel went astray, as the Levites did. ¹² The offering for them will be a portion of this most holy land, extending to the border of the Levites.

translationWords:

- holy, holiness
- priest, priesthood
- holy place, most holy place
- consecrate
- Zadok
- serve, service
- faithful, faithfulness
- astray, go astray, led astray, stray
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Levite, Levi

translationNotes:

- **The offering for them will be a portion of this most holy land** - "This smaller portion within the holy portion of the land will belong to these priests, a portion that is more holy than the rest of the holy portion of the land"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 48:13-14

UDB:

¹³ The land that you will assign to the descendants of Levi will be the same size as the land that the priests will receive. So together, these two portions of land will be thirteen and one-half kilometers long and about eleven kilometers wide. ¹⁴ None of this special land, this best land, may ever be sold or traded or used by other people, because it belongs to Yahweh. It is set apart for him.

ULB:

¹³ The Levites' land along the border with the priests' land will be twenty-five thousand cubits long and ten thousand cubits wide. The entire length of the two tracts of land will be twenty-five thousand cubits long and twenty thousand cubits wide. ¹⁴ They must not sell it or exchange it; none of this firstfruits of the land of Israel must ever be separated from these tracts, for it all is holy to Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [firstfruits](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

translationNotes:

- **this firstfruits** - "this land which is the firstfruits." Here "firstfruits" probably means the best things among all the offerings set aside to give to God. This land is spoken of in that way, as land set aside for Yahweh's use. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 48:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Another strip of land thirteen and one-half kilometers long and about two and three-quarter kilometers wide will be allotted for other people living in the special area to use. There they may build homes and have pasturelands, and there will be a city in the middle of this area. ¹⁶ The city will be square, two and two-fifth kilometers long on each side.

ULB:

¹⁵ The remaining land, five thousand cubits wide and twenty-five thousand cubits long, will be for the collective use of the city, the houses, and the pastureland; the city will be in its midst. ¹⁶ These will be the city's measurements: the north side will be 4,500 cubits long; the south side will be 4,500 cubits long; the east side will be 4,500 cubits long; and the west side will be 4,500 cubits long.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **will be for the collective use of the city** - "will be an area that is shared among the people of the city"
- **the houses, and the pastureland** - "as a place for houses and for an open space"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 48:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ There will be an open area around the city, within the special area, that will be about 135 meters deep in each direction. ¹⁸ Outside the city there will be a farming area that will extend five and two-fifth kilometers on the east side and five and two-fifth kilometers on the west side. Men who work there will produce food for the people who work in the city.

ULB:

¹⁷ There will be pasture for the city toward the north, 250 cubits deep; to the south, 250 cubits deep; to the east, 250 cubits deep, and to the west, 250 cubits deep. ¹⁸ The remaining area of the holy offering will stretch for ten thousand cubits to the east and ten thousand cubits to the west. It will stretch along the border of the holy offering, and its produce will be food for those working in the city.

translationWords:

- [holy, holiness](#)

translationNotes:

- **its produce** - “the things grown there”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 48:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Those who come from the various tribes to work in the city may also work in this farmland. ²⁰ This entire special area, including the land given for Yahweh's use and the city, will be a square that is thirteen and one-half kilometers long on each side.

ULB:

¹⁹ The people who work in the city, people belonging to all the tribes of Israel, will farm that land. ²⁰ All the land offering will measure twenty-five thousand cubits by twenty-five thousand cubits. In this way you will make the holy offering of land, together with the land for the city.

translationWords:

- [twelve tribes of Israel](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.
- **In this way you will make the holy offering of land, together with the land for the city.**
- "You will offer the holy offering and also the property of the city"
- **you** - This is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **the holy offering** - the land that the people of Israel gave to Yahweh for the Levites, the priests, and the temple

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 48:21-22

UDB:

²¹ The tracts of land to the east and to the west of Yahweh's area and the city will belong to the ruler. One area will extend east to the eastern boundary of Israel, and the other will extend west to the Great Sea. Yahweh's area, which contains the temple, will be in the middle. ²² The area that belongs to the ruler will be between the tribe of Judah to the north and the tribe of Benjamin to the south.

ULB:

²¹ The rest of the land on either side of the holy offering and the city area will be for the prince. The prince's tract of land to the east will extend for twenty-five thousand cubits from boundary of the holy offering to the eastern border—and his tract to the west will extend for twenty-five thousand cubits to the western border. In the middle will be the holy offering, and the holy place of the temple will be in its midst. ²² The land extending from the property of the Levites and the area of the city in its midst will be for for the prince; it will be between the border of Judah and the border of Benjamin—this land will be for the prince.

translationWords:

- [prince, princess](#)
- [holy place, most holy place](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

translationNotes:

- **the holy offering** - See how you translated this in [48:18](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 48:23-26

UDB:

²³ South of Yahweh's area, each of the other tribes will receive one portion of land that extends from the eastern boundary of Israel west to the Great Sea.

Just south of Yahweh's area will be territory for the tribe of Benjamin.

²⁴ South of Benjamin's land will be the land for the tribe of Simeon.

²⁵ South of Simeon's land will be the land for the tribe of Issachar.

²⁶ South of Issachar's land will be the land for the tribe of Zebulun.

ULB:

²³ As for the remaining tribes, their portions will also run from the eastern side to the west side. Benjamin will receive one portion. ²⁴ To the south of Benjamin's boundary, running from the east side to the west, will be the land of Simeon—one portion. ²⁵ To the south of Simeon's boundary, running from the east side to the west, will be the land of Issachar—one portion. ²⁶ To the south of Issachar's boundary, running from the east side to the west side, will be the land of Zebulun—one portion.

translationWords:

- [tribe](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Simeon](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [Zebulun](#)

translationNotes:

- **one portion** - See how you translated "one portion of land" in [48:1](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 48:27-29**UDB:**

²⁷ South of Zebulun's land will be the land for the tribe of Gad.

²⁸ The southern boundary of Gad's land will extend south from En Gedi to the springs at Meribah Kadesh, and then to the west along the brook of Egypt to the Great Sea.

²⁹ This is a description of the land that you must assign to the tribes of Israel, for it to belong to them permanently.' That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

ULB:

²⁷ To the south of Zebulun's boundary, running from the east side to the west side, will be the land of Gad—one portion. ²⁸ The southern boundary of Gad will extend from Tamar to the waters of Meribah Kadesh, and farther to the brook of Egypt, and then to the Great Sea. ²⁹ This is the land for which you will cast lots; it will be the inheritance of the tribes of Israel. These will be their portions. This is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

translationWords:

- Zebulun
- Gad
- Tamar
- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh
- the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea
- lots, casting lots
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- twelve tribes of Israel
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.
- **Tamar ... Meribah Kadesh ... the brook of Egypt** - See how you translated these in [47:19](#).
- **you** - This is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **cast lots** - See how you translated this in [45:1](#).
- **This is the Lord Yahweh's declaration** - See how you translated this in [5:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 48:30-32

UDB:

³⁰ Here are the city gates: On the north side, which is two and two-fifth kilometers long, ³¹ there will be three gates. Each gate will have the name of one of the tribes of Israel. The first one will be named for Reuben, the next for Judah, the next for Levi.

³² On the east side, also two and two-fifth kilometers long, will be gates named for Joseph, Benjamin, and Dan.

ULB:

³⁰ These will be the exits from the city: on the north side, which will measure 4,500 cubits in length, ³¹ will be three gates, named for tribes of Israel: one gate for Reuben, one gate for Judah, and one gate for Levi. ³² On the east side, which will measure 4,500 cubits in length, will be three gates: one gate for Joseph, one gate for Benjamin, and one gate for Dan.

translationWords:

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Dan](#)

translationNotes:

- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **4,500 cubits** - about 2.4 kilometers. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 Translation Questions](#)

Ezekiel 48:33-35

UDB:

³³ On the south side, also two-fifths of a kilometer long, will be gates named for Simeon, Issachar, and Zebulun.

³⁴ On the west side, also two-fifths of a kilometer long, will be gates named for Gad, Asher, and Naphtali.

³⁵ The distance around the city would be nine and three-quarter kilometers.

From that time on, the name of the city will be “Yahweh is there.”

ULB:

³³ On the east side, which will measure 4,500 cubits in length, will be three gates: one gate for Simeon, one gate for Issachar, and one gate for Zebulun. ³⁴ On the west side, which will measure 4,500 cubits, will be three gates: one gate for Gad, one gate for Asher, and one gate for Naphtali.

³⁵ The distance around the city will be eighteen thousand cubits; from that day on, the city’s name will be “Yahweh is There.”

translationWords:

- [Simeon](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [Zebulun](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [name](#)

translationNotes:

- **cubits** - See how you translated these “long” cubits in [40:05](#).
- **4,500 cubits** - about 2.4 kilometers. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 Translation Questions](#)

translationQuestions

Ezekiel 1

Q? Among whom was Ezekiel living when he had visions of God?

A. Ezekiel was living among the captives in the land of the Chaldeans when he had visions of God. [1:1-3]

Q? What was in the middle of the great cloud Ezekiel saw coming from the north?

A. In the middle of the cloud was the likeness of four living creatures, each with four faces and four wings. [1:4-6]

Q? How did the creatures move?

A. The creatures did not turn as they went but each one went straight forward. [1:9]

Q? What appearances did the living creatures have on their faces?

A. Their faces had the appearance of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle. [1:10]

Q? What was directing the movement of the four living creatures?

A. The Spirit was directing the movement of the four living creatures. [1:12]

Q? As the four living creatures moved back and forth, what did they look like?

A. As they moved, the four living creatures looked like lightning. [1:14]

Q? What were the four wheels beside the four living creatures able to do?

A. The four wheels were able to go in any direction without turning. [1:17]

Q? Why did the wheels go wherever the living creatures went?

A. The wheels followed the living creatures because the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels. [1:20-21]

Q? What was over the heads of the living creatures?

A. An expansive dome was over the heads of the living creatures. [1:22]

Q? What did the living creatures do with their wings?

A. Each one of the creature's wings stretched out straight and touched another creature's wings and each of the living creatures also had a pair of wings to cover his own body. [1:23]

Q? What does Ezekiel say the creatures' wings sounded like?

A. The creatures' wings sounded like rushing water, like the voice of the Almighty, like a rainstorm, and like an army. [1:24]

Q? What was above the dome, which was over the creatures' heads?

A. Above the dome was a throne, and on the throne was the appearance of one who looked like a man. [1:26]

Q? As what did the bright figure appear to Ezekiel?

A. The bright figure appeared as the likeness of the glory of Yahweh. [1:28]

Q? What did Ezekiel do when he saw the bright figure?

A. When he saw the bright figure, Ezekiel fell on his face. [1:28]

Ezekiel 2

Q? What did the Spirit do to Ezekiel as the Spirit spoke to Ezekiel?

A. The Spirit stood Ezekiel on his feet as he spoke to Ezekiel. [2:2]

Q? To whom did the Spirit send Ezekiel?

A. The Spirit sent Ezekiel to the people of Israel. [2:3]

Q? According to the Spirit, what kind of people were the descendants of Israel?

A. The descendants were a stubborn, hardhearted and rebellious people. [2:4-5]

Q? What was Ezekiel to say to the people of Israel?

A. Ezekiel was to say, "This is what the Lord Yahweh says," to the people of Israel. [2:4]

Q? What would the people of Israel know because of Ezekiel's speaking to them?

A. The people of Israel would know that a prophet had been among them. [2:5]

Q? What did the Spirit tell Ezekiel not to do as he spoke to the people of Israel?

A. The Spirit told Ezekiel not to be afraid of the people of Israel as he spoke to them. [2:6]

Q? How was Ezekiel supposed to be different than the people of Israel?

A. Ezekiel was not to be rebellious like the people of Israel. [2:8]

Q? What was spread out before Ezekiel?

A. A written scroll was spread out before Ezekiel. [2:9]

Q? What was written on the scroll?

A. On the scroll were written lamentations, mourning, and woe. [2:10]

Ezekiel 3

Q? What did the Spirit give to Ezekiel and what did Ezekiel do with it?

A. The Spirit gave Ezekiel a scroll and Ezekiel ate it. [3:1-3]

Q? What did the Spirit tell Ezekiel to go and do?

A. The Spirit told Ezekiel to go and speak the Spirit's words to the house of Israel. [3:4]

Q? According to the Spirit, if Ezekiel had been sent to a foreign people, how would they have responded to Ezekiel's words?

A. If Ezekiel had been sent to a foreign people, they would have listened to Ezekiel's words. [3:6]

Q? According to the Spirit, how would the house of Israel respond to Ezekiel's words?

A. The house of Israel would not be willing to listen to Ezekiel's words. [3:7]

Q? How has the Spirit made Ezekiel so that he will not be fearful or discouraged?

A. The Spirit has made Ezekiel stubborn, and his brow like a diamond. [3:8-9]

Q? What did the great sound behind Ezekiel say to him?

A. The great sound said, "Blessed be the glory of Yahweh from his place!" [3:12]

Q? What did Ezekiel then do for seven days, and what was his condition?

A. Ezekiel stayed with the captives for seven days, overwhelmed in amazement. [3:15]

Q? What did Yahweh say he had made Ezekiel for the house of Israel?

A. Yahweh said he had made Ezekiel a watchman for the house of Israel. [3:17]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to Ezekiel if he did not warn the wicked about their evil deeds?

A. If Ezekiel did not warn the wicked, Yahweh would require their blood from Ezekiel's hand. [3:20]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to Ezekiel if he did warn the wicked about their evil deeds?

A. If Ezekiel did warn the wicked, then Ezekiel would rescue himself. [3:19]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to Ezekiel if he did not warn the righteous man who turns and acts unjustly?

A. If Ezekiel did not warn the righteous man who turns, Yahweh would require his blood from Ezekiel's hand. [3:20]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to the righteous man who turns and acts unjustly?

A. Yahweh said the righteous man who turns and acts unjustly would die in his sin. [3:20]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to Ezekiel if he did warn the righteous man who turns and acts unjustly?

A. If Ezekiel did warn the righteous man who turns, then Ezekiel would rescue himself. [3:21]

Q? What did Ezekiel do when he saw the glory of Yahweh in the plain?

A. When Ezekiel saw the glory of Yahweh, he fell on his face. [3:23]

Q? What did the Spirit tell Ezekiel to go and do?

A. The Spirit told Ezekiel to go and shut himself up in his house. [3:24]

Q? What did the Spirit say Ezekiel would not be able to do by his own words?

A. The Spirit said Ezekiel would not be able to rebuke the house of Israel by his own words. [3:26]

Q? What did the Spirit say Ezekiel would be able to do when the Spirit spoke to him?

A. The Spirit said Ezekiel would be able to open his mouth and say, “Thus says the Lord Yahweh,” when the Spirit spoke to him. [3:27]

Ezekiel 4

Q? What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to do with a brick?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to carve the city of Jerusalem on a brick and then lay siege against it. [4:1-3]

Q? Why did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to do this with a brick?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to do this as a sign to the house of Israel. [4:3]

Q? Why did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to lie on his left side?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to lie on his left side to carry the sin of the house of Israel. [4:4]

Q? Why was Ezekiel to lie on his left side for 390 days?

A. Ezekiel was to lie on his left side for 390 days to represent 390 years of punishment for the house of Israel. [4:5]

Q? Why was Ezekiel to lie on his right side?

A. Ezekiel was to lie on his right side to carry the sin of the house of Israel. [4:6]

Q? Why was Ezekiel to lie on his right side for 40 days?

A. Ezekiel was to lie on his right side for 40 days to represent 40 years of punishment for the house of Israel. [4:6]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to eat and drink while he lay on his side?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to eat barley cakes and to drink water. [04:9,11,12]

Q? Why did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to bake using human excrement within the sight of the house of Israel?

A. Ezekiel was to bake using human excrement as a sign that the food the people of Israel would eat among the nations would be unclean. [4:12-13]

Q? Why did Yahweh then allow Ezekiel to use cow dung instead of man's dung to bake?

A. Yahweh allowed cow dung because Ezekiel had never eaten anything unclean in his life. [4:14-15]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen in Jerusalem regarding food and drink?

A. Yahweh said that bread and water would be rationed. [4:16]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to the people of Jerusalem during this time?

A. Yahweh said the people of Jerusalem would be dismayed and would melt away. [4:17]

Ezekiel 5

Q? What was Ezekiel do to with each third of his hair?

A. Ezekiel was to burn a third in the city, strike a third with the sword around the city, and scatter a third to the wind. [5:2]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do after Ezekiel was finished?

A. Yahweh said he would draw out a sword to chase after the people. [5:2]

Q? According to Yahweh, where is Jerusalem?

A. Jerusalem is in the midst of the nations. [5:5]

Q? Why does Yahweh say he has surrounded Jerusalem with other lands?

A. Jerusalem rejected Yahweh's decrees and did not walk in his statutes (laws). [5:6]

Q? What does Yahweh say he will do because of the nation of Israel's behavior?

A. Yahweh says he will act against the nation of Israel and execute judgments within its midst. [5:8]

Q? What horrible things will the people of Israel do because of Yahweh's judgment on them?

A. Fathers will eat their children, and sons will eat their fathers. [5:10]

Q? Why does Yahweh say he is not going to spare the people of Israel?

A. Yahweh says will not spare them because they defiled Yahweh's sanctuary. [5:11]

Q? What will Yahweh do with each third of the people?

A. A third will die by plague, a third will fall by the sword, and a third will be scattered. [5:12]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do after the thirds of the people were judged?

A. Yahweh said he would draw out a sword to chase after the people. [5:12]

Q? What does Yahweh say he will do with his wrath after this judgment?

A. Yahweh says his wrath will be completed after this judgment. [5:13]

Q? What will other people say about Jerusalem after Yahweh's judgments?

A. Other people will condemn and mock Jerusalem after Yahweh's judgments. [5:15]

Ezekiel 6

Q? What did Ezekiel prophesy against the high places of Israel?

A. Ezekiel prophesied that the Lord Yahweh would destroy the high places of Israel with a sword. [6:2-3]

Q? What will happen before the idol altars of Israel?

A. The Lord Yahweh will lay the dead bodies of the people of Israel before the altars. [6:5]

Q? What will happen to the cities of Israel?

A. The cities of Israel will be laid waste. [6:6]

Q? As a result of all the destruction, what will the people of Israel know?

A. The people of Israel will know that the Lord is Yahweh. [6:7]

Q? What will the remnant who escapes do after they are scattered?

A. The remnant will remember Yahweh and will show loathing on their face for their wickedness. [6:8-9]

Q? Why is Yahweh bringing sword, famine, and plague to the house of Israel?

A. Because of all the evil wickedness of the house of Israel, Yahweh is bringing sword, famine, and plague. [6:11]

Q? What were the people of Israel doing on the mountain peaks and under the trees?

A. The people of Israel were offering soothing fragrances to all their idols. [6:13]

Q? What will happen to the land when Yahweh strikes?

A. The land will be a desolate and a waste when Yahweh strikes. [6:14]

Ezekiel 7

Q? According to the word of Yahweh, what was coming to the land of Israel?

A. According to the word of Yahweh, an end was coming to the land of Israel. [7:1-2]

Q? Yahweh will judge Israel according to what?

A. Yahweh will judge Israel according to its ways. [7:3]

Q? What time has come for Israel?

A. The time of Israel's doom and destruction has come. [7:7]

Q? What is Yahweh pouring out and filling up against Israel?

A. Yahweh is pouring out his fury and filling up his wrath against Israel. [7:8]

Q? What will not last in Israel?

A. None of the multitude, none of their wealth, and none of their importance will last. [7:11]

Q? Why should the buyer not rejoice and the seller not mourn in Israel?

A. The buyer should not rejoice and the seller not mourn because Yahweh's anger is upon the entire multitude. [7:12]

Q? How will those in the city die?

A. Those in the city will die by famine and plague. [7:15]

Q? To where will the survivors escape?

A. The survivors will escape to the mountains. [7:16]

Q? What will not be able to deliver the people of Israel?

A. Their silver and gold will not be able to deliver the people of Israel. [7:19]

Q? What will happen to all the jeweled ornaments of the people of Israel?

A. The ornaments will be given into the hands of strangers and the wicked as plunder. [7:21]

Q? What will happen to Yahweh's cherished place?

A. Bandits will enter Yahweh's cherished place and defile it. [7:22]

Q? What will the people of Israel seek, but not find?

A. The people of Israel will seek peace, but there will be none. [7:25]

Q? What will happen when the people seek a vision from the prophet?

A. When the people seek a vision, the Law and counsel will perish. [7:26]

Q? How will the king and the people respond when Yahweh's judgment comes?

A. When judgment comes, the king will mourn and the people will tremble in fear. [7:27]

Ezekiel 8

Q? Where was Ezekiel when the hand of the Lord Yahweh fell on him?

A. Ezekiel was sitting in his house, with the elders of Judah sitting before him. [8:1]

Q? Where did the Spirit take Ezekiel, and what did he see there?

A. The Spirit took Ezekiel to the inner Northern Gate in Jerusalem, where he saw the idol that provokes jealousy. [8:3]

Q? What did the Spirit say he was being forced to do because of the great abominations (wickedness) of the house of Israel?

A. The Spirit said he was being forced to go far from his own sanctuary. [8:6]

Q? After Ezekiel dug into the wall and saw a door, what did the Spirit tell Ezekiel to do?

A. The Spirit told Ezekiel to, "Go and see the wicked abominations that they are doing here." [8:9]

Q? What were the elders saying about Yahweh as they worshiped their idols?

A. The elders were saying that Yahweh does not see them and that Yahweh had forsaken the land. [8:12]

Q? What did Ezekiel see the women doing at the gate on the north side of Yahweh's house?

A. The women were sitting there mourning for Tammuz. [8:14]

Q? What did Ezekiel see in the inner courtyard of Yahweh's house?

A. There were twenty-five men with their faces to the east worshiping Shamesh. [8:16]

Q? Because of the abominations of the house of Israel, what did the Spirit say he was going to do?

A. The Spirit said that he would act and not spare them, nor have compassion even though they cry with a loud voice. [8:18]

Ezekiel 9

Q? Who did the Spirit call to come up to the city?

A. The Spirit called six men with weapons of destruction, and one man with a scribe's equipment. [9:1-2]

Q? From where did the glory of the God of Israel move, and to where did it go?

A. The glory of the God of Israel moved from the cherubim where it had been to the threshold of the house. [9:3]

Q? What did Yahweh tell the scribe to do?

A. Yahweh told the scribe to make a mark on the foreheads of the men who groaned and sighed about the abominations being performed in the city. [9:4]

Q? What did Yahweh tell the six men with weapons of destruction to do?

A. Yahweh told the six men to kill all of the people except those with the mark on their heads. [9:6]

Q? What question did Ezekiel ask Yahweh as he saw the six men striking the city?

A. Ezekiel asked Yahweh if all the remnant of Israel would be destroyed by Yahweh's wrath. [9:8]

Q? What was Yahweh's answer to Ezekiel's question?

A. Yahweh answered that the iniquity of the house of Israel and Judah was great, and that he would not spare them. [9:9-10]

Q? What did the scribe report?

A. The scribe reported that he had done all Yahweh had commanded him. [9:11]

Ezekiel 10

Q? What did Yahweh tell the man dressed in linen to do?

A. Yahweh told the man dressed in linen to fill both his hands with fiery coals and to scatter them over the city. [10:2]

Q? What did the glory of Yahweh then do?

A. The glory of Yahweh then rose up and stood over the threshold of the house, filling the house with a cloud and the courtyard with brightness. [10:4]

Q? How did the man dressed in linen receive the fire which was among the cherubim?

A. The man dressed in linen went in, and a cherub lifted up the fire and placed it into the hands of the man. [10:7]

Q? What was the likeness of the wheels that were beside the cherubim?

A. The wheels that were beside the cherubim were like a wheel intersecting another wheel. [10:10]

Q? What covered the cherubim and the four wheels?

A. Eyes covered the cherubim and the four wheels. [10:12]

Q? What was the name given to the four wheels?

A. The four wheels were called "Whirling". [10:13]

Q? What did the wheels do as the cherubim moved?

A. The wheels would go beside the cherubim when the cherubim moved. [10:16-17]

Q? To where did the glory of Yahweh, the cherubim, and the wheels move?

A. The glory of Yahweh, the cherubim, and the wheels moved to the eastern entrance of Yahweh's house. [10:18-19]

Q? Where had Ezekiel seen the same living creatures before?

A. Ezekiel had seen the same living creatures before by the Chebar canal. [10:20-22]

Ezekiel 11

Q? What did Ezekiel see when the Spirit brought him to the eastern gate of Yahweh's house?

A. Ezekiel saw twenty-five men, with the leaders of the people among them. [11:1]

Q? Of what did God say the twenty-five men were guilty?

A. God said the men were guilty of devising iniquity and deciding wicked plans in the city. [11:2]

Q? With what had the twenty-five men filled the streets?

A. The twenty-five men had filled the streets with the people they had killed. [11:6]

Q? What did the twenty-five men fear, and what did Yahweh say he would bring?

A. The twenty-five men feared the sword, and Yahweh said he would bring the sword upon them. [11:8]

Q? Into whose hands was Yahweh going to put the twenty-five men?

A. Yahweh was going to put the twenty-five men into the hands of foreigners. [11:9]

Q? Where were the twenty-five men to be judged and because of Yahweh's judgment upon them, what would the twenty-five men know?

A. The twenty-five men were to be judged within the borders of Israel and because of Yahweh's judgment against them, the men would know that the Lord is Yahweh. [11:9-10]

Q? What decrees had the twenty-five men carried out?

A. The twenty-five men had carried out the decrees of the nations surrounding them. [11:12]

Q? What was Ezekiel afraid that Yahweh would do to Israel?

A. Ezekiel was afraid that Yahweh would completely destroy the remnant of Israel. [11:13]

Q? What promise did Yahweh give Israel despite his judgments upon them?

A. Yahweh promised to gather Israel from the peoples, and to assemble them in the land of Israel. [11:17]

Q? What did Yahweh promise to take from the people of Israel, and to give to them instead?

A. Yahweh promised to take from them their stone heart, and to give to them a heart of flesh. [11:19]

Q? How would the people of Israel then walk?

A. The people of Israel would then walk in Yahweh's statutes and decrees. [11:20]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do for those who walk with affection towards their detestable things?

A. Yahweh said he would bring their conduct on their own heads. [11:21]

Q? From where did the glory of Yahweh leave and to where did the glory of Yahweh go?

A. The glory of Yahweh left the midst of the city and stood on the mountain east of the city. [11:23]

Q? What did Ezekiel do when the Spirit brought him into Chaldea?

A. Ezekiel declared to the exiles all the things of Yahweh he had seen. [11:25]

Ezekiel 12

Q? Where did Yahweh say Ezekiel lived?

A. Yahweh said Ezekiel lived in the midst of a rebellious house. [12:2]

Q? What was Ezekiel to do in the sight of the people of Israel?

A. Ezekiel was to prepare for exile, going out in their sight to another place. [12:3]

Q? How did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to go out?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to dig a hole through the wall and go out through it. [12:5]

Q? According to Yahweh, what was the purpose of Ezekiel's exile?

A. Yahweh said that Ezekiel's exile was a sign to the house of Israel. [12:6]

Q? What question was the house of Israel asking Ezekiel as he came out of his house?

A. The house of Israel was asking, "What are you doing?" [12:9]

Q? Who did Ezekiel's prophetic action concern?

A. Ezekiel's prophetic action concerned the prince in Jerusalem and all the house of Israel. [12:10]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to the prince in Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh said that the prince in Jerusalem would go out through the wall, but would be caught and taken to Babylon where he would die without sight. [12:12-13]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to the army of the prince in Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh said the army would be scattered, and he would send out a sword after them. [12:14]

Q? What two reasons did Yahweh give for sparing a few men?

A. Yahweh said he would spare a few men so they could record the abominations of Israel, and so they would know that the Lord is Yahweh. [12:16]

Q? How did Yahweh say the the people of the land of Israel would eat and drink?

A. Yahweh said the people would eat their bread with trembling and drink their water while shaking. [12:19]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to the cities and the land?

A. Yahweh said the cities would be desolate and the land would be a wasteland. [12:20]

Q? What did the people of Israel think about prophetic visions?

A. The people thought that every prophetic vision was prolonged and failed. [12:22]

Q? What did Yahweh say there would no longer be within the house of Israel?

A. Yahweh said there would no longer be any false visions or favorable divination within the house of Israel. [12:24]

Q? When did the house of Israel think the prophetic vision of Ezekiel would be fulfilled?

A. The house of Israel had said, 'The vision that he sees is for many days from now, and he prophesies of far off times.' [12:27]

Q? What did Yahweh say about the fulfillment of Ezekiel's vision.

A. Yahweh said his words would no longer be delayed but the word that Yahweh had spoken would be done. [12:28]

Ezekiel 13

Q? From where were the false prophets of Israel getting their prophecies?

A. The false prophets in Israel were getting their prophecies from their own minds and spirits. [13:2-3]

Q? What had the false prophets failed to do?

A. The false prophets had failed to repair the breaks in the wall around the house of Israel. [13:5]

Q? What were the false prophets saying, even though Yahweh had not sent them?

A. The false prophets were saying, "Such and such is Yahweh's declaration," even though Yahweh had not sent them. [13:6-7]

Q? What declaration did Yahweh make against the false prophets of Israel?

A. Yahweh declared that his hand was against the false prophets, and they would not be enrolled in the record of the house of Israel. [13:8-9]

Q? What would the people know when Yahweh destroys the false prophets?

A. The people would know that the Lord is Yahweh. [13:14]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do to the wall and those who whitewashed it?

A. Yahweh said he would annihilate the wall and those who whitewashed it. [13:15]

Q? What were the false prophets prophesying to the people concerning Jerusalem?

A. The false prophets were prophesying peace for Jerusalem. [13:16]

Q? What was the “son of man” told to do about the daughters of his people who prophesy out of their own minds?

A. The “son of man” was told to prophesy against them. [13:17]

Q? What were the magic charms and the veils the women made used for?

A. The magic charms and veils the women made were used to hunt down people. [13:18]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do for his people who are trapped?

A. Yahweh said he would let his people who are trapped go free. [13:20-21]

Q? What were the false prophets doing to the righteous and the wicked person?

A. The false prophets were discouraging the righteous and encouraging the wicked person. [13:22]

Q? What did Yahweh say the false prophets would no longer have?

A. Yahweh said the false prophets would no longer have false visions or continue to make false predictions. [13:23]

Ezekiel 14

Q? Who came to Ezekiel to inquire of him?

A. The elders of Israel came to Ezekiel to inquire of him. [14:1]

Q? Why did Yahweh question if he should be inquired of by these men?

A. Yahweh questioned because the elders had taken their idols into their hearts. [14:3]

Q? How did Yahweh say he would answer those who take idols into their hearts?

A. Yahweh said he would answer those who take idols into their hearts according to the number of their idols. [14:4]

Q? What did Yahweh call the house of Israel to do?

A. Yahweh called the house of Israel to repent and turn away from its idols. [14:6]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do to every man who worships idols and then seeks to inquire from a prophet of Yahweh?

A. Yahweh said he would make that man a sign and a proverb by cutting him off from the people of Israel. [14:7-8]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do to every deceived prophet?

A. Yahweh said he would deceive that prophet and destroy him. [14:9]

Q? What relationship did Yahweh say he wanted with the people of Israel?

A. Yahweh said he wanted the people to be his people, and for him to be their God. [14:11]

Q? When Yahweh brought judgment, what would be all that even the most righteous in the land could do?

A. When Yahweh brought judgment, even the most righteous in the land could only deliver their own souls. [14:14]

Q? Who did Yahweh use as examples of some of the most righteous men in history?

A. Yahweh used as examples of some of the most righteous men in history Noah, Daniel, and Job. [14:14,16,18,20]

Q? When Yahweh brought judgment, who would the most righteous in the land not be able to deliver?

A. When Yahweh brought judgment, the most righteous in the land would not be able to deliver their sons or daughters. [14:16,18,20]

Q? What four punishments did Yahweh say he would send to Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh said he would send the four punishments of famine, sword, wild animals, and plague. [14:21]

Q? After Yahweh's judgment, who would be left?

A. After Yahweh's judgment, a remnant would be left who would go out with sons and daughters. [14:22]

Q? What would cause Ezekiel to be comforted?

A. When Ezekiel saw the ways and actions of the remnant of survivors, he would be comforted. [14:23]

Ezekiel 15

Q? What two things in the forest does Yahweh compare?

A. Yahweh compares the vine to any tree with branches. [15:2]

Q? What did the Lord Yahweh say he had given the vine for?

A. The Lord Yahweh said he had given the vine as fuel for fires. [15:6]

Q? How does Yahweh say the inhabitants of Jerusalem are like the vine?

A. Yahweh says the inhabitants of Jerusalem are like the vine in that both are given as fuel for fires. [15:6]

Q? What will all know when Yahweh destroys the inhabitants of Jerusalem with fire?

A. All will know that the Lord is Yahweh. [15:7]

Q? Why will Yahweh make the land into an abandoned wasteland?

A. Yahweh will make the land into an abandoned wasteland because the inhabitants of Jerusalem have committed sin. [15:8]

Ezekiel 16

Q? Where did Yahweh say Jerusalem had its beginning and birth?

A. Yahweh said Jerusalem had its beginning and birth in the land of Canaan. [16:3]

Q? What was done with Jerusalem on the day it was born?

A. Jerusalem was thrown out into the open field on the day it was born. [16:5]

Q? What did Yahweh do for Jerusalem after its birth?

A. Yahweh made Jerusalem grow like a plant in a field after its birth. [16:7]

Q? What did Yahweh do for Jerusalem when it reached the age of maturity?

A. Yahweh spread his robe over Jerusalem, and brought it into covenant with him. [16:8]

Q? Why did Jerusalem's fame go out among the nations?

A. Jerusalem's fame went out among the nations because of its beauty. [16:14]

Q? How did Jerusalem act after its fame went out among the nations?

A. Jerusalem acted like a prostitute after its fame went out among the nations. [16:15-16]

Q? What did Jerusalem do with its sons and daughters born for Yahweh?

A. Jerusalem sacrificed its sons and daughters to the images. [16:20]

Q? What did Jerusalem make in every public place?

A. Jerusalem made a shrine in every public place. [16:24]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would cut off because of Jerusalem's prostitution?

A. Yahweh said he would cut off Jerusalem's food because of its prostitution. [16:27]

Q? What did Yahweh say is the difference between Jerusalem and every prostitute?

A. Yahweh said the difference is that prostitutes are paid for their acts, but Jerusalem pays its lovers and bribes them. [16:33-34]

Q? Who did Yahweh say he would gather against Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh said he would gather all of Jerusalem's lovers against her on every side. [16:37]

Q? How will Yahweh's attitude toward Jerusalem change after it is punished?

A. After Jerusalem is punished, Yahweh will no longer be angry with Jerusalem. [16:42]

Q? Yahweh said that Jerusalem had done more evil than what other two places?

A. Yahweh said that Jerusalem had done more evil than Sodom and Samaria. [16:48]

Q? Who did Sodom refuse to help?

A. Sodom refused to help the poor and needy. [16:49]

Q? What did the people all around Jerusalem think about the city?

A. The people around Jerusalem despised it and made it an object of scorn. [16:57]

Q? Yahweh said he would treat Jerusalem as he would treat anyone who did what?

A. Yahweh said he would treat Jerusalem as he would treat anyone who despised their oath and broke a covenant. [16:59]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would call to mind and establish?

A. Yahweh said he would call to mind his covenant with Jerusalem and establish an everlasting covenant with it. [16:60]

Q? What will Jerusalem's reaction be when Yahweh forgives it for all it has done?

A. Jerusalem will be ashamed and will not longer speak because of its shame. [16:63]

Ezekiel 17

Q? What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to present and speak to the house of Israel?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to present a riddle and speak a parable to the house of Israel. [17:2]

Q? In the parable, where did the large eagle plant the tips of the cedar tree branches?

A. The large eagle planted the tips of the cedar tree branches in the land of Canaan in a city of merchants. [17:3-4]

Q? In the parable, where did the large eagle plant the seed of the land, and how did it grow?

A. The large eagle planted the seed beside a large body of water, and the vine produced branches and sent out shoots. [17:5-6]

Q? In the parable, what did the vine do when the other great eagle came?

A. The vine turned its roots towards the other great eagle. [17:7]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to the vine in the parable?

A. Yahweh said that the vine would completely wither away in its plot. [17:9-10]

Q? What did the king of Babylon do with the king of Jerusalem?

A. The king of Babylon took the king of Jerusalem to Babylon. [17:12]

Q? What did the king of Babylon do with the royal descendant of the king of Jerusalem?

A. The king of Babylon made a covenant with the royal descendant of the king of Jerusalem. [17:13]

Q? How did Yahweh say the land of Israel would survive?

A. Yahweh said the land of Israel would survive by the king of Jerusalem keeping his covenant with the king of Babylon. [17:14]

Q? How did the king of Jerusalem violate the covenant he made with the king of Babylon?

A. The king of Jerusalem rebelled and sent ambassadors to Egypt to acquire horses and an army. [17:15]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to the king of Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh said the king of Jerusalem would die in the middle of Babylon. [17:16]

Q? According to Yahweh, whose covenant did the king of Jerusalem actually break?

A. According to Yahweh, the king of Jerusalem actually broke his covenant with Yahweh. [17:19]

Q? What did Yahweh declare would happen to the armies of the king of Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh declared the armies of the king of Jerusalem would fall by the sword. [17:21]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do with the tender branches of the cedar tree?

A. Yahweh said he would plant the tender branches on a high mountain. [17:22]

Q? What will the tender branches that Yahweh plants become?

A. The tender branches Yahweh plants will become a majestic cedar where every winged bird will live. [17:23]

Ezekiel 18

Q? What does Yahweh declare will happen to every person who sins?

A. Yahweh declares that every person who sins will die. [18:4]

Q? Who does a righteous man help?

A. A righteous man gives his food to the hungry and covers the naked with clothes. [18:7]

Q? What does a righteous man walk in and keep?

A. A righteous man walks in Yahweh's laws and keeps Yahweh's decrees. [18:9]

Q? What does Yahweh declare will happen to a righteous man?

A. Yahweh declares a righteous man will live. [18:9]

Q? If a righteous man has a son who oppresses the poor and needy, what does Yahweh declare will happen to him?

A. Yahweh declares the unrighteous son will not live. [18:12-13]

Q? If a son does not walk in his father's sins, will a son die for his father's sins?

A. If a son carries out Yahweh's decrees and walks according to Yahweh's statutes, then he will not die for his father's sin. [18:17]

Q? Why does the righteous son not bear the iniquity of his father?

A. The righteous son does not bear the iniquity of the father because he carries out justice and righteousness. [18:19]

Q? What does Yahweh declare will happen to a wicked person who turns away from all his sins?

A. Yahweh declares that a wicked person who turns away from all his sins will certainly live. [18:21-22]

Q? What does Yahweh declare will happen to a righteous person who turns and commits sins and practices wickedness?

A. Yahweh declares that a righteous person who turns and commits iniquity will die in the sins that he commits. [18:24]

Q? How does Yahweh say he will judge each man?

A. Yahweh says he will judge each man according to his ways. [18:30]

Q? What does Yahweh call the house of Israel to do?

A. Yahweh calls the house of Israel to repent and turn away from all its sins. [18:30]

Q? What does Yahweh call the house of Israel to make for themselves?

A. Yahweh calls the house of Israel to make a new heart and a new spirit for themselves. [18:31]

Ezekiel 19

Q? What was Ezekiel told to lift up?

A. Ezekiel was told to lift up a lamentation against the leaders of Israel. [18:1]

Q? In the parable of the lions, what did one of the cubs learn to do?

A. One of the cubs learned to tear his victims and devour men. [18:3]

Q? When the nations heard about this cub, what did they do?

A. The nations trapped the cub and brought him to the land of Egypt. [18:4]

Q? After the first cub was gone, what did the second young lion learn to do?

A. The second young lion learned to tear his victims and devour men. [18:6]

Q? What did the nations do with the second young lion?

A. The nations trapped the young lion and brought him to the king of Babylon. [18:9]

Q? What was Israel's mother once like?

A. Israel's mother was once like a fruitful vine planted beside the water. [18:10]

Q? For what were her strong branches to be used?

A. Her strong branches were to be used for ruler's scepters. [18:11]

Q? What happened to the vine?

A. The vine was uprooted, thrown down, and dried out by an eastern wind. [18:12]

Q? Where is the vine?

A. The vine is in the wilderness. [18:13]

Q? What does the vine no longer have?

A. The vine no longer has strong branches or a scepter to rule. [18:14]

Ezekiel 20

Q? Who came to Ezekiel and why did they come?

A. The elders of Israel came to Ezekiel to inquire of Yahweh. [20:1]

Q? What was Yahweh's response to those who came to Ezekiel?

A. Yahweh said that he would not be inquired of by the elders of Israel. [20:3]

Q? What did Yahweh swear he would do for Israel when they were in the land of Egypt?

A. Yahweh swore that he would bring them into a land flowing with milk and honey. [20:6]

Q? What command did Yahweh give the people of Israel in the land of Egypt?

A. Yahweh commanded the people to throw away their idols of Egypt. [20:7]

Q? How did the people of Israel respond to Yahweh's command?

A. The people rebelled against Yahweh and were unwilling to listen. [20:8]

Q? Why did Yahweh say he acted to bring the people of Israel out of the land of Egypt?

A. Yahweh said he acted for his name's sake so that it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations. [20:9]

Q? What did Yahweh give the people of Israel in the wilderness?

A. Yahweh gave the people his statutes, decrees, and Sabbaths. [20:11-12]

Q? How did the people of Israel respond to what Yahweh gave them in the wilderness?

A. The people rebelled against Yahweh and rejected his decrees. [20:13]

Q? What did Yahweh then swear he would not do for the people of Israel because they rejected his decrees?

A. Yahweh then swore he would not bring them into the land he was going to give them. [20:15]

Q? How did the sons and daughters of Israel respond when Yahweh commanded them to walk in his decrees?

A. The sons and daughters of Israel rebelled against Yahweh and did not keep his decrees. [20:21]

Q? What did Yahweh then swear to do to the sons and daughters of Israel?

A. Yahweh then swore to scatter them among the nations. [20:23]

Q? What did Yahweh tell the people they would be able to do if they obeyed his decrees?

A. Yahweh told the people they would be able to live if they obeyed his decrees. [20:11,13,21]

Q? How did the fathers of Israel blaspheme and betray Yahweh?

A. The fathers of Israel blasphemed and betrayed Yahweh by offering sacrifices to idols on the high places. [20:27-29]

Q? What were the people of Israel doing with their sons?

A. The people of Israel were causing their sons to pass through the fire. [20:31]

Q? What thought was in the minds of the people of Israel?

A. The people of Israel were thinking they wanted to be like the other nations, worshiping wood and stone. [20:32]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do to the people of Israel in order to judge them face to face?

A. Yahweh said he would gather the people of Israel out of the countries where they were scattered into the wilderness of the peoples. [20:34-35]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would purge from among the people of Israel?

A. Yahweh said he would purge the rebellious and transgressing ones from among the people of Israel. [20:38]

Q? After Yahweh gathered the house of Israel on his holy mountain, how would Israel treat Yahweh?

A. After Yahweh gathered the house of Israel on his holy mountain, Israel would treat Yahweh as holy in the sight of the nations. [20:40-41]

Q? What would the house of Israel think of themselves as they called to mind their past evil ways?

A. The house of Israel would hate themselves for all the evil actions they committed. [20:43]

Q? What declaration did Yahweh make against the forest of the Negev?

A. Yahweh declared that he would kindle a fire that would burn every face from south to north. [20:46-47]

Q? What were the people of Israel saying about Ezekiel?

A. The people of Israel were saying Ezekiel was a mere teller of parables. [20:49]

Ezekiel 21

Q? Against whom did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to speak?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to speak against the sanctuaries; against the land of Israel. [21:2]

Q? Who did Yahweh say he would cut off from the land of Israel?

A. Yahweh said he would cut off both the righteous and wicked person from the land of Israel. [21:3]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to do before the eyes of the people?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to groan before the eyes of the people. [21:6]

Q? Why did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to act this way before the eyes of the people?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to act this way to show what it would be like for them when Yahweh brought the sword against them. [21:7]

Q? Who was the sharpened and polished sword to be given to?

A. The polished and sharpened sword were to be given into the hand of a killer. [21:11]

Q? On whom would that sword come?

A. That sword would come on Yahweh's people and the leaders of Israel. [21:12]

Q? What would come to rest after the great slaughter?

A. After the great slaughter, Yahweh's fury would come to rest. [21:17]

Q? What were the destinations of the two roads assigned for the king of Babylon?

A. The two destinations were Rabbah of the Ammonites, and Judah and Jerusalem. [21:20]

Q? How would the king of Babylon determine which road to take?

A. The king of Babylon would obtain a prophetic message from divination to determine which road to take. [21:21]

Q? Of what would the king of Babylon accuse Israel in order to attack them?

A. The king of Babylon would accuse Israel of violating their treaty in order to attack them. [21:23]

Q? What did Yahweh tell the wicked ruler of Israel to do, and why?

A. Yahweh told the wicked ruler of Israel to remove his turban and crown, because the crown would no longer exist. [21:25-27]

Q? When did Yahweh say he would restore the crown in Israel?

A. Yahweh said he would restore the crown in Israel when one came who had a right to it. [21:27]

Q? What do the prophets of Ammon do for the people of Ammon?

A. Ammon's prophets see empty visions for the people of Ammon, while they perform rituals to come up with lies for the people of Ammon. [21:28-29]

Q? Who was the Lord Yahweh going to give the people of Ammon over to?

A. The Lord Yahweh was going to give the Ammonites into the hand of cruel men, craftsmen of destruction. [21:31]

Ezekiel 22

Q? What name does Yahweh give the city of Jerusalem that he is judging?

A. Yahweh calls the city of Jerusalem the city of blood. [22:2-3]

Q? What two sins does Yahweh name that have made the city guilty?

A. The city is guilty of the blood it has poured out, and is made unclean by the idols it has made. [22:4]

Q? What reputation will the city have after Yahweh judges it?

A. The reputation known everywhere will be that it is a city of confusion. [22:5]

Q? Which three groups of people have been mistreated by the rulers of Israel?

A. Fathers and mothers have been dishonored, foreigners have been oppressed, and orphans and widows have been mistreated. [22:7]

Q? What three sexual sins are being committed by men in the city?

A. Men are committing sins with their neighbor's wife, are making their daughters-in-law unclean, and are abusing their sisters. [22:11]

Q? What does Yahweh declare he is going to do to the people because of their sins?

A. Yahweh declares he is going to scatter the people among the nations. [22:13,15]

Q? What will the people know after Yahweh strikes them?

A. The people will know the Lord is Yahweh. [22:16]

Q? In his parable, to what does Yahweh liken the house of Israel?

A. In his parable, Yahweh likens the house of Israel to dross. [22:17]

Q? Where does Yahweh say he will gather the dross?

A. Yahweh says he will gather the dross into the midst of Jerusalem. [22:19]

Q? What will Yahweh do to the dross as he pours out his fury?

A. Yahweh will pour out the dross and melt it down as he pours out his fury. [22:20-22]

Q? What are the priests of the land failing to distinguish and failing to teach?

A. The priests are failing to distinguish between holy and profane things, and failing to teach the difference between the unclean and the clean. [22:26]

Q? What are the prophets of the land doing?

A. The prophets of the land are painting with whitewash, seeing false visions and making false predictions. [22:28]

Q? What did Yahweh look for and not find?

A. Yahweh looked for a man who would build up a wall and stand before him in its breach for the land, but he did not find one. [22:30]

Ezekiel 23

Q? In Yahweh's parable, what do the two daughters do in Egypt?

A. The two daughters act as prostitutes in Egypt. [23:2-3]

Q? What does the older daughter represent and what does the younger daughter represent?

A. The older daughter represents Samaria and the younger daughter represents Jerusalem. [23:4]

Q? What did the older daughter do even though she was Yahweh's?

A. The older daughter gave herself as a prostitute to Assyria's men. [23:5-7]

Q? What did the older daughter's lovers do to her when Yahweh gave her over to them?

A. The older daughter's lovers stripped her naked, took her sons and daughters, and killed her. [23:9-10]

Q? What did the younger daughter do when she saw what happened to the older daughter?

A. The younger daughter acted like a prostitute even more than her sister. [23:11]

Q? Because of their prostitution, how did Yahweh's attitude change toward the two sisters?

A. Because of their prostitution, Yahweh turned away his soul from the two sisters. [23:18]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do to the younger sister because of her prostitution?

A. Yahweh said he would turn her lovers against her. [23:22]

Q? What does Yahweh say will happen to the younger sister and her descendants?

A. The younger sister will have her nose and ears cut off, and her descendants will be devoured by fire. [23:25]

Q? What will be revealed when the younger sister is given into the hand of the ones she hates?

A. The naked shame of the younger sister's prostitution will be revealed. [23:29]

Q? What will the younger sister become to those around her?

A. The younger sister will become a laughingstock and a subject for moking to those around her. [23:32]

Q? Because of their prostitution, what does Yahweh put into the hands of the younger and older sister?

A. Because of their prostitution, Yahweh puts a cup of punishment into the hands of the younger and older sister. [23:30-31]

Q? What were the two sisters doing with their sons born for Yahweh?

A. The two sisters were passing their sons born for Yahweh through the fire to be consumed. [23:37]

Q? What did the two sisters do on the same day they slaughtered their children?

A. On the same day they slaughtered their children, the two sisters came to Yahweh's sanctuary to defile it. [23:38-39]

Q? What does Yahweh say righteous men will do to the prostitutes?

A. Yahweh says righteous men will condemn the prostitutes to punishment for adultery. [23:45]

Q? What will the company do that Yahweh raises up against the prostitutes?

A. The company that Yahweh raises up will stone the prostitutes with stones and cut them down with their swords. [23:47]

Q? What will the prostitutes know when they bear the guilt of their sins with their idols?

A. When they bear the guilt of their sins with their idols, the prostitutes will know that the Lord is Yahweh. [23:49]

Ezekiel 24

Q? What did Yahweh say was happening on the exact day he spoke to Ezekiel?

A. Yahweh said that the king of Babylon was attacking Jerusalem on that exact day. [24:2]

Q? In Yahweh's parable, what does Yahweh tell the people of Jerusalem to do?

A. Yahweh tells them to pour water into the cooking pot, fill it with the best bones, and boil it thoroughly. [24:3-5]

Q? What is wrong with the cooking pot of Jerusalem that will not come out of it?

A. The cooking pot of Jerusalem has rust in it that will not come out of it. [24:6]

Q? What has Jerusalem done to exact vengeance from Yahweh?

A. Jerusalem has not covered the blood that is in her midst. [24:7-8]

Q? Why set the empty pot on the fire?

A. Set the empty pot on the fire in order to heat and scorch its bronze, so its uncleanness within it will be melted, its corrosion consumed! [24:11]

Q? What has not been removed from Jerusalem by the fire?

A. The corrosion of Jerusalem has not been removed by the fire. [24:12]

Q? According to Yahweh, by what will the people of Jerusalem be judged?

A. The people of Jerusalem will be judged by their ways and their activities. [24:14]

Q? What did Yahweh say he was taking from Ezekiel?

A. Yahweh said he was taking Ezekiel's wife from him. [24:16-17]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel not to do?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel not to mourn or weep for having lost his wife. [24:16-17]

Q? What did Yahweh say was the meaning of the events which happened to Ezekiel?

A. Yahweh said that the desire of the people's eyes was defiling the sanctuary, so their sons and daughters would fall by the sword. [24:19-21]

Q? What would the people of Jerusalem do when they suffered their loss?

A. The people would do exactly as Ezekiel did, and not mourn or weep. [24:22-23]

Q? As what did Ezekiel serve for the people of Jerusalem?

A. Ezekiel served as a sign for the people of Jerusalem. [24:24]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen on the day the temple was captured?

A. Yahweh said that on the day the temple was captured, a refugee would come to Ezekiel to give him the news. [24:25-26]

Q? On the day the temple was captured, what would the people of Jerusalem know?

A. On the day the temple was captured, the people of Jerusalem would know that the Lord is Yahweh. [24:27]

Ezekiel 25

Q? Who did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to prophesy against?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to prophesy against the people of Ammon. [25:2]

Q? What did the people of Ammon do when the sanctuary was profaned and the house of Judah went into exile?

A. When the sanctuary was profaned and the house of Judah went into exile, the people of Ammon said, "Aha!" [25:3]

Q? What will Yahweh do to the people of Ammon because of what they said when the house of Judah went into exile?

A. Yahweh will give the people of Ammon to a people in the east. [25:4]

Q? What will Yahweh do to Ammon that will cause them to know that Yahweh is Lord?

A. Yahweh will cut Ammon off from the other peoples and destroy them. [25:7]

Q? What did Moab and Seir say when the house of Judah went into exile?

A. When the house of Judah went into exile, Moab and Seir said that the house of Judah was like every other nation. [25:8]

Q? What will no longer be remembered among the nations?

A. The people of Ammon will no longer be remembered among the nations. [25:10]

Q? What had Edom done against the house of Judah?

A. Edom had exacted vengeance against the house of Judah. [25:12]

Q? What will Yahweh do to Edom because of what Edom did to the house of Judah?

A. Yahweh will destroy every person and animal in Edom. [25:13]

Q? What had the Philistines done against the house of Judah?

A. The Philistines had taken vengeance with disdain against the house of Judah. [25:15]

Q? What will Yahweh do to the Philistines because of what the Philistines did to the house of Judah?

A. Yahweh will destroy the Philistines. [25:16]

Ezekiel 26

Q? What were the people of Tyre saying against Jerusalem?

A. The people of Tyre were saying they would be filled up as Jerusalem was ruined. [26:2]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do to Tyre?

A. Yahweh said he would raise up many nations against Tyre, who would destroy its walls and towers. [26:4]

Q? What did Yahweh say would be done at the place Tyre once stood?

A. Yahweh said that nets would be dried out at the place Tyre once stood. [26:5]

Q? Who did Yahweh say he was bringing against Tyre?

A. Yahweh said he was bringing Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, against Tyre. [26:7]

Q? How did Yahweh say the walls of Tyre would be broken down?

A. Yahweh said the walls of Tyre would be broken down with Nebuchadnezzar's battering rams. [26:9]

Q? Where did Yahweh say the stone and wood of Tyre's houses would be laid?

A. Yahweh said the stone and wood of Tyre's houses would be laid in the midst of the waters. [26:12]

Q? What will the chiefs of the sea do when the terrible slaughter occurs in Tyre?

A. The chiefs of the sea will come down from their thrones, lay aside their robes, strip off their colorful clothing, and sit on the ground trembling. [26:16]

Q? Where do the chiefs of the sea lament that the famous city of Tyre is now?

A. The chiefs of the sea lament that the famous city of Tyre is now in the sea. [26:17]

Q? To where did Yahweh say the people of Tyre would be brought down?

A. Yahweh said the people of Tyre would be brought down into the pit. [26:20]

Q? According to Yahweh, when would Tyre be found again?

A. According to Yahweh, Tyre would never be found ever again. [26:21]

Ezekiel 27

Q? For what trade were the people of Tyre famous?

A. The people of Tyre were famous for being merchants of peoples to many islands. [27:3]

Q? What had Tyre said about itself?

A. Tyre had said about itself that it was perfect in beauty. [27:3]

Q? Of what were the ship decks of Tyre made?

A. The ship decks of Tyre were made with cypress wood overlaid with ivory. [27:6]

Q? Who were the ship pilots of Tyre?

A. The ship pilots were the sages of Tyre. [27:8]

Q? What were the ships of Tyre carrying?

A. The ships of Tyre were carrying merchandise for trade. [27:9]

Q? Why was Tarshish a client of Tyre?

A. Tarshish was a client of Tyre because of the multitude of every kind of wealth. [27:12]

Q? In what was Tyre dealing with Javan, Tubal, and Meshech?

A. Tyre was dealing in men's lives and in items of bronze. [27:13]

Q? With what items did Judah and the land of Israel trade with Tyre?

A. Judah and the land of Israel traded with wheat, millet, honey, oil, and balsam. [27:17]

Q? With what items did Sheba trade with Tyre?

A. Sheba traded with spices, precious gems, and gold. [27:22]

Q? What did Yahweh say would happen to the wealth of Tyre on the day of its destruction?

A. Yahweh said the wealth of Tyre would fall into the depths of the sea on the day of its destruction. [27:27]

Q? What will the cities at the sea do when they hear the sound of their pilot's cry?

A. The cities at the sea will tremble at the sound of their pilot's cry. [27:28]

Q? What would the kings of the coasts do when they saw Tyre's destruction?

A. The kings of the coasts would shudder in horror and tremble when they saw Tyre's destruction. [27:35]

Q? When did Yahweh say Tyre would again exist?

A. Yahweh said Tyre would never again exist. [27:36]

Ezekiel 28

Q? What did the ruler of Tyre say about himself?

A. The ruler of Tyre said about himself, "I am a god!" [28:2]

Q? Why was the heart of the ruler of Tyre arrogant?

A. The ruler's heart was arrogant because of his wealth. [28:5]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do to the ruler of Tyre because of his arrogance?

A. Yahweh said he would bring foreigners against the ruler of Tyre. [28:7]

Q? How did Yahweh say the ruler of Tyre would die?

A. The ruler of Tyre would die the death of the uncircumcised by the hand of foreigners. [28:10]

Q? What did Yahweh say the king of Tyre once was?

A. Yahweh said the king of Tyre was once the model of perfection, full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty. [28:12]

Q? According to Yahweh, where was the king of Tyre when he was created?

A. The king of Tyre was in Eden, the garden of God. [28:13]

Q? Where did Yahweh place the king of Tyre, and what responsibility did the king of Tyre have?

A. The king of Tyre was on the holy mountain of God as the cherub anointed to guard mankind. [28:14]

Q? What was later found within the king of Tyre?

A. Injustice was later found within the king of Tyre. [28:15]

Q? Because of the sin of the king of Tyre, what did Yahweh do to him?

A. Yahweh threw the king of Tyre down as defiled from the mountain of God and destroyed him. [28:16]

Q? What will the ones who knew the king of Tyre do when they see his destruction?

A. The ones who knew the king of Tyre will shudder at him and will be horrified. [28:19]

Q? What did Yahweh say he was sending out to Sidon?

A. Yahweh said he was sending out a plague and blood in the streets of Sidon. [28:23]

Q? According to Yahweh, what were the peoples around Israel like for the house of Israel?

A. The peoples around Israel were like pricking briars and painful thorns. [28:24]

Q? After Yahweh executes justice on the ones who despise Israel, what will happen to Israel?

A. Israel will live securely, build houses, and plant vineyards in the land Yahweh will give to his servant Jacob. [28:25-26]

Ezekiel 29

Q? Who did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to prophesy against?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to prophesy against Pharaoh, king of Egypt. [29:2]

Q? What animal does Yahweh say the king of Egypt is like?

A. Yahweh says the king of Egypt is like a great sea creature that lies in the midst of the river. [29:3]

Q? Where does Yahweh say he is going to throw the king of Egypt?

A. Yahweh says he is going to throw the king of Egypt down into the wilderness. [29:5]

Q? What plant does Yahweh say Egypt is like to the house of Israel?

A. Yahweh says Egypt is like a reed stalk to the house of Israel. [29:6]

Q? What had Egypt done when the house of Israel leaned on Egypt?

A. Egypt shattered Israel's legs and made their hip shake when Israel leaned on Egypt. [29:7]

Q? To what does Yahweh say the land of Egypt will be given over?

A. Yahweh says the land of Egypt will be given over to desolation and waste. [29:10]

Q? For how long does Yahweh say the land of Egypt will not be inhabited?

A. Yahweh says the land of Egypt will not be inhabited for forty years. [29:11-12]

Q? What does Yahweh say Egypt will be after they return from being scattered?

A. Yahweh says Egypt will be a lowly kingdom after they return from being scattered. [29:14]

Q? What wages did Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon receive for all the hard work he did against Tyre?

A. Nebuchadnezzar received no wages for all the hard work he did against Tyre. [29:18]

Q? What will Yahweh give Nebuchadnezzar in return for all the hard work he did against Tyre?

A. Yahweh will give Nebuchadnezzar the land of Egypt as the wages for all the hard work he did against Tyre. [29:19-20]

Q? On that day, what will Yahweh make Ezekiel do?

A. On that day, Yahweh will make Ezekiel speak in the midst of the house of Israel. [29:21]

Q? On that day, what will the house of Israel know?

A. On that day, the house of Israel will know that the Lord is Yahweh. [29:21]

Ezekiel 30

Q? According to Yahweh, what kind of day and time is the coming day of Yahweh?

A. The coming day of Yahweh is a day of clouds, a time of doom for nations. [30:2-3]

Q? On the day of Yahweh, what will happen to Egypt, Cush, Libya, Lydia, and the people belonging to the covenant?

A. On the day of Yahweh, they will all fall by the sword. [30:4-5]

Q? What will the people know when Egypt and her helpers are destroyed?

A. The people will know that the Lord is Yahweh. [30:8]

Q? Who's hand will Yahweh use to destroy the land of Egypt?

A. Yahweh will use the hand of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, to destroy the land of Egypt. [30:10]

Q? To what will Yahweh bring an end in Memphis?

A. Yahweh will destroy and bring an end to the worthless idols of Memphis. [30:13]

Q? What will happen to the survivors in the Egyptian cities when Yahweh brings destruction?

A. The survivors will walk into captivity when Yahweh brings destruction. [30:17-18]

Q? What did Yahweh say he had done to Pharaoh's arm, and what would Pharaoh now not be able to do?

A. Yahweh said he had broken the arm of Pharaoh, so it was not strong enough to grasp a sword. [30:21]

Q? After Egypt is destroyed, what will Yahweh do to Egypt among the nations?

A. Yahweh will scatter and disperse Egypt among the nations. [30:23]

Q? Whose arms will Yahweh strengthen?

A. Yahweh will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon. [30:25]

Q? What will happen to arms of Pharaoh?

A. Pharaoh's arms will fall. [30:25]

Ezekiel 31

Q? To whom did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to prophesy?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to prophesy to Pharaoh, king of Egypt. [31:2]

Q? To what kind of plant did Yahweh liken Assyria?

A. Yahweh likened Assyria to a great cedar in Lebanon. [31:3]

Q? In Yahweh's parable of Assyria as a tree, what lived in and around the great cedar?

A. Every bird of the heavens nested in the cedar's branches, and every living thing of the field gave birth under its foliage. [31:6]

Q? What was the great cedar of Assyria greater than?

A. The great cedar of Assyria was greater than all the trees in the garden of God. [31:8-9]

Q? Why did Yahweh grasp Assyria and drive it away?

A. Yahweh grasped Assyria and drove it away because its heart was lifted up (proud) and it was wicked. [31:10-11]

Q? After the cedar of Assyria was abandoned, what did Yahweh say would never happen again?

A. Yahweh said that no other tree would ever again grow that tall. [31:14]

Q? What did Yahweh bring to the earth on the day when Assyria went down to sheol?

A. On that day Yahweh brought mourning to the earth [31:15]

Q? To where did Yahweh throw the great cedar of Assyria?

A. Yahweh threw the great cedar of Assyria down to Sheol. [31:16]

Q? What happened to those nations that had lived in the shade of the great cedar of Assyria?

A. Those nations that had lived in the shade of Assyria also went down to Sheol. [31:17]

Q? Who does Yahweh declare will be brought down to the lowest parts of the earth?

A. Yahweh declares that Pharaoh and his servants will be brought down to the lowest parts of the earth. [31:18]

Ezekiel 32

Q? What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to lift up concerning Pharaoh?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to lift up a lament concerning Pharaoh. [32:2]

Q? What two animals did Yahweh say Pharaoh was like?

A. Yahweh said Pharaoh was like a young lion and like a monster in the seas. [32:2]

Q? When Yahweh throws the sea monster into a field, what will happen to it?

A. When the sea monster is thrown into a field, the birds and animals will eat it. [32:4]

Q? What will happen in the heavens when Yahweh puts out the lamp of Egypt?

A. The stars will be darkened, clouds will cover the sun, and the moon will not shine. [32:7]

Q? How will the people of the nations react when they see Egypt's collapse?

A. The people of the nations will be terrified and will shudder in horror. [32:9-10]

Q? Who will come against Egypt and devastate it?

A. The king of Babylon will come against Egypt and devastate it. [32:11]

Q? What does Yahweh declare will happen to man and animal in Egypt?

A. Neither man nor animal will stir the waters of Egypt. [32:13]

Q? What will the people of Egypt know when they are attacked and destroyed?

A. The people of Egypt will know that the Lord is Yahweh. [32:15]

Q? To where will the servants of Egypt and the daughters of majestic nations be thrown?

A. They will be thrown down to the lowest earth with those who have gone down to the pit. [32:18]

Q? What will the warriors in Sheol declare about Egypt and her allies?

A. They will declare that Egypt and her allies have come down here and will lie with the uncircumcised killed by the sword. [32:21]

Q? What did Elam do on the land of the living?

A. Elam brought their terrors on the land of the living. [32:24]

Q? What do the princes of the north and all the Sidonians who went down with the dead, carry?

A. They carry their own shame. [32:30]

Q? In Sheol, what will comfort Pharaoh?

A. In Sheol, Pharaoh will be comforted about all his servants who were killed by the sword. [32:31]

Ezekiel 33

Q? What does the watchman do for the people of the land?

A. The watchman looks for the sword coming on the land, and blows his horn to warn the people. [33:3]

Q? What happens if the people do not pay attention to the watchman?

A. If the people do not pay attention, the sword kills the people and each one's blood is on his own head. [33:4]

Q? What happens to the watchman if he does not warn the people?

A. If the watchman does not warn the people, his blood will be required by Yahweh. [33:6]

Q? Who did Yahweh make a watchman for the house of Israel?

A. Yahweh made Ezekiel a watchman for the house of Israel. [33:7]

Q? In what does Yahweh say he does not delight?

A. Yahweh says he does not delight in the death of the wicked. [33:11]

Q? What does Yahweh call the wicked to do?

A. Yahweh calls the wicked to repent so they will live. [33:11]

Q? What does Yahweh say will happen to a righteous person who then commits injustice?

A. Yahweh says the righteous person who then commits injustice will die in the wickedness that he has committed. [33:12-13]

Q? What does Yahweh say will happen to a wicked person who repents and does what is just and right?

A. Yahweh says the wicked person who repents and does what is just and right will surely live. [33:14-16]

Q? According to Yahweh, whose ways are not fair?

A. According to Yahweh, the ways of the people of Israel are not fair. [33:17]

Q? How does Yahweh say he will judge each person of the house of Israel?

A. Yahweh says he will judge each person according to his way. [33:20]

Q? What message did the fugitive bring to Ezekiel?

A. The fugitive brought the message that the city of Jerusalem had been captured. [33:21]

Q? What were the people of Israel saying about the land that Abraham inherited?

A. The people of Israel were saying the land that Abraham inherited was their possession. [33:24]

Q? Why does Yahweh question whether or not the people of Israel should really possess the land?

A. Yahweh questions whether or not they should possess the land because they had depended on their swords and had done disgusting things. [33:25-26]

Q? What does Yahweh say he will do to the land because of the things the people of Israel have done?

A. Yahweh says he will turn the land into a desolation and a horror because of the things the people of Israel have done. [33:28-29]

Q? What will the people of Israel do with the words of Ezekiel?

A. The people of Israel will listen to the words of Ezekiel, but they will not obey them. [33:30-31]

Q? What will the people of Israel know when everything comes to pass?

A. The people of Israel will know that a prophet has been among them when everything comes to pass. [33:33]

Ezekiel 34

Q? What accusation does Yahweh make against the shepherds of Israel?

A. Yahweh accuses the shepherds of Israel of not shepherding at all, but of slaughtering the best animals of the flock. [34:2-3]

Q? How did the shepherds of Israel rule over the flock?

A. The shepherds of Israel ruled over the flock with strength and violence. [34:4]

Q? What then happened to the flock?

A. The flock was then scattered and became food for all the living beasts in the fields. [34:5-6]

Q? Who were the shepherds of Israel actually guarding?

A. The shepherds of Israel were actually guarding themselves. [34:8]

Q? What does Yahweh say he will do to the shepherds of Israel?

A. Yahweh says he will dismiss the shepherds of Israel and take away the flock from their mouths. [34:10]

Q? From where does Yahweh say he will gather his flock?

A. Yahweh says he will rescue them from all the places where they were scattered on the day of clouds and darkness. Then he will bring them out from among the peoples, he will gather them from the lands. [34:12-13]

Q? How does Yahweh say he will shepherd?

A. Yahweh says he will shepherd with justice. [34:16]

Q? Among what three groups does Yahweh say he will judge?

A. Yahweh says he will judge among the sheep, rams, and goats. [34:17]

Q? What has been done to the weak and thin sheep?

A. The weak and thin sheep have been pushed and gored until they have been scattered. [34:21]

Q? Who does Yahweh say he will raise up to shepherd the flock?

A. Yahweh says he will raise up his servant David to shepherd the flock. [34:23-24]

Q? When Yahweh raises up his shepherd, what will Yahweh do so the sheep will live securely?

A. Yahweh will make a covenant of peace with the sheep and remove the evil wild animals from the land. [34:25]

Q? What will the nations no longer be able to do to the sheep?

A. The nations will no longer be able to plunder the sheep or bring insults against them. [34:28-29]

Q? What will the house of Israel then know?

A. The house of Israel will then know that Yahweh their God is with them. [34:30]

Q? What does Yahweh declare to the sheep, the house of Israel?

A. Yahweh declares that he is the God of the house of Israel, and that they are his people. [34:31]

Ezekiel 35

Q? Who does Yahweh tell Ezekiel to prophesy against?

A. Yahweh tells Ezekiel to prophesy against Mount Seir. [35:2]

Q? What does Yahweh say he will do to Mount Seir?

A. Yahweh says he will make Mount Seir a desolation and a horror. [35:3]

Q? What did the people of Mount Seir do that is bringing the judgment of Yahweh upon them?

A. The people of Mount Seir were hostile to the people of Israel, and poured them out into the hands of the sword. [35:5]

Q? According to Yahweh, what will pursue the people of Mount Seir, and why?

A. Bloodshed will pursue the people of Mount Seir because they did not hate bloodshed. [35:6]

Q? What will fill the mountains in the area of Mount Seir?

A. The mountains in the area of Mount Seir will be filled with its dead. [35:8]

Q? For how long will the desolation of Mount Seir last?

A. The desolation of Mount Seir will be a perpetual desolation. [35:9]

Q? What did the people of Mount Seir say about the two nations of Yahweh's people Israel?

A. The people of Mount Seir said that the two nations would become theirs. [35:10]

Q? What did Yahweh hear the people of Mount Seir saying against him?

A. Yahweh heard the people of Mount Seir boasting against Yahweh and saying many things against him. [35:13]

Q? What did the people of Mount Seir do when the people of Israel were desolated?

A. The people of Mount Seir rejoiced when the people of Israel were desolated. [35:15]

Q? What will the entire earth do when the people of Mount Seir are desolated?

A. The entire earth will rejoice when the people of Mount Seir are desolated. [35:14-15]

Q? Yahweh declares that all of what area will become a desolation?

A. Yahweh declares that Mount Seir and all of Edom will become a desolation. [35:15]

Q? What will the people of Mount Seir and Edom know when Yahweh judges them?

A. The people of Mount Seir and Edom will know that the Lord is Yahweh when Yahweh judges them. [35:15]

Ezekiel 36

Q? To what did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to prophesy?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to prophesy to the mountains of Israel. [36:1]

Q? What was the enemy saying about the mountains of Israel?

A. The enemy was saying that the ancient high places had become their possession. [36:2]

Q? Against whom did Yahweh speak in the fire of his fury?

A. Yahweh spoke in the fire of his fury against Edom and all who took the land of Israel. [36:5]

Q? What did Yahweh swear concerning the nations that surrounded Israel?

A. Yahweh swore that the nations surrounding Israel would carry their own shame. [36:7]

Q? Who did Yahweh say would soon be coming back to the mountains of Israel?

A. Yahweh said the people of Israel would soon be coming back to the mountains of Israel. [36:8]

Q? What will be multiplied on the mountains of Israel?

A. Man and beast will be multiplied on the mountains of Israel. [36:10-12]

Q? Why had Yahweh poured out his fury against Israel?

A. Yahweh had poured out his fury against Israel because Israel had polluted the land by their idols. [36:18]

Q? What did the people of Israel do when they went to the nations?

A. When they went to the nations, the people of Israel profaned Yahweh's holy name. [36:20]

Q? Why does Yahweh say he is going to bring back the house of Israel to the mountains of Israel?

A. Yahweh says he is going to bring the house of Israel back for the sake of his holy name. [36:22]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do to the house of Israel to enable them to walk in his statutes and keep his decrees?

A. Yahweh said would set his Spirit in them and enable them to walk in his statutes and keep his decrees, so they would do them. [36:27]

Q? After Yahweh saves the house of Israel, what will the house of Israel think of their previous wicked ways?

A. The house of Israel will hate themselves because of their previous wicked ways. [36:31]

Q? What does Yahweh say will happen to the cities and ruined places of Israel?

A. Yahweh says the cities will be inhabited and the ruined places will be rebuilt. [36:33]

Q? Like what place will the land of Israel become?

A. The land of Israel will become like the garden of Eden. [36:35]

Q? What will the other nations know when they see the inhabited cities and rebuilt ruins of Israel?

A. The nations will know that the Lord is Yahweh, and that Yahweh rebuilt Israel. [36:35-36]

Q? Yahweh says that the number of the people of Israel will become like what?

A. The number of the people of Israel will become like the flocks in Jerusalem at her appointed feasts. [36:38]

Ezekiel 37

Q? Where did the Spirit of Yahweh set Ezekiel down, and what was there?

A. The Spirit of Yahweh set Ezekiel down in the midst of a valley full of bones. [37:1]

Q? What question did Yahweh ask Ezekiel?

A. Yahweh asked Ezekiel if the dry bones could live again. [37:3]

Q? What did Ezekiel prophesy would happen to the dry bones?

A. Ezekiel prophesied that the dry bones would have flesh and live again. [37:5-6]

Q? What happened to the bones when Ezekiel prophesied to them the first time?

A. When Ezekiel prophesied to them the first time, the dry bones drew together and flesh and skin covered them. [37:7-8]

Q? What happened to the bones when Ezekiel prophesied to them the second time?

A. When Ezekiel prophesied to the bones the second time, the Spirit came into them and they lived. [37:9-10]

Q? According to Yahweh, who did the valley of dry bones represent?

A. According to Yahweh, the valley of dry bones represented the entire house of Israel. [37:11]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do for Israel, which was represented by the dry bones coming back to life?

A. Yahweh said he would lift the people of Israel from their graves and bring them back to the land of Israel. [37:12]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to do with the two sticks?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to write a name on each stick, Judah and Joseph, and then bring both sticks together. [37:16-17]

Q? What did Yahweh say was the meaning of Ezekiel's two sticks?

A. Yahweh said he was joining the two branches of Joseph and Judah so that they would be one in his hand. [37:19]

Q? What did Yahweh say he was about to do for the people of Israel?

A. Yahweh said he was about to gather the people of Israel on the mountains of Israel as one nation with one king. [37:21-22]

Q? Who did Yahweh say would be king over the united nation of Israel?

A. Yahweh said that his servant David would be king over the united nation of Israel. [37:24]

Q? According to Yahweh, how long would the king of Israel be their chief?

A. According to Yahweh, the king of Israel would be their chief forever. [37:25]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would establish with Israel, and for how long?

A. Yahweh said he would establish a covenant of peace with Israel for eternity. [37:26]

Q? Where did Yahweh say he would live forever?

A. Yahweh said he would live forever in the midst of the people of Israel. [37:27-28]

Ezekiel 38

Q? Against whom did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to prophesy?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to prophesy against Gog from the land of Magog. [38:2]

Q? With what does Yahweh say he will send out Gog?

A. Yahweh says he will send out Gog with all his army, horses, and horsemen. [38:4]

Q? Who is the commander of all the troops from Persia, Cush, Put, Gomer, and Beth Togarmah?

A. Gog is the commander of all these troops assembled with him. [38:7]

Q? To which land will Gog be called to go?

A. Gog will go to a land that has recovered from the sword and that has been gathered from many peoples to the mountains of Israel. [38:8]

Q? What will be the wicked scheme that Gog devises?

A. Gog will devise a scheme to capture booty and steal plunder from the quiet people living in safety. [38:11-12]

Q? At what part of the earth are the people who have been gathered from the nations living?

A. The people gathered from the nations are living at the center of the earth. [38:12]

Q? From what direction does Gog and his great army come?

A. Gog and his great army come from a place far away in the north. [38:15]

Q? Through whom had Yahweh spoken that Gog would come against Israel?

A. Yahweh had spoken through the prophets of Israel that Gog would come against Israel. [38:17]

Q? How will Yahweh respond when Gog attacks the land of Israel?

A. When Gog attacks the land of Israel, Yahweh will respond with fury in his nostrils. [38:18]

Q? What great event does Yahweh say will happen on the day Gog attacks Israel?

A. Yahweh says that there will be a great earthquake on the day Gog attacks Israel. [38:19-20]

Q? With what will Yahweh judge Gog and his troops on that day?

A. Yahweh will judge Gog and his troops on that day with plague, blood, flooding rains, hailstones of fire, and rains of brimstone. [38:22]

Q? In that day, what will Yahweh show in the eyes of many nations?

A. In that day, Yahweh will show his greatness and holiness in the eyes of many nations. [38:23]

Ezekiel 39

Q? To where does Yahweh say he will bring Gog, chief of Meshech and Tubal?

A. Yahweh says he will bring Gog to the mountains of Israel. [39:2]

Q? Where will Gog fall dead?

A. Gog will fall dead on the mountains of Israel. [39:4]

Q? What will Yahweh do to Magog and to those living in safety on the coasts?

A. Yahweh will send out fire to Magog and to those living in safety on the coasts. [39:6]

Q? What does Yahweh say he will no longer allow?

A. Yahweh says he will no longer allow his holy name to be profaned. [39:7]

Q? Why will the ones living in the cities of Israel not need to gather wood for seven years?

A. They will not need to gather wood for seven years because they will burn the weapons of Gog. [39:9-10]

Q? Where will Gog and all his multitudes be buried?

A. Gog and all his multitudes will be buried in the Valley of Hamon Gog. [39:11]

Q? What will the house of Israel have to do in order to purify the land?

A. The house of Israel will have to bury Gog and all his multitudes for seven months in order to purify the land. [39:12]

Q? What large sacrifice is Yahweh making on the mountains of Israel?

A. Yahweh is making a large sacrifice of the flesh of warriors and the blood of princes of the earth on the mountains of Israel. [39:17-18]

Q? What will all the nations see when Yahweh makes his large sacrifice on the mountains of Israel?

A. All the nations will see Yahweh's judgment and his hand. [39:21]

Q? Why did the house of Israel go into captivity?

A. The house of Israel went into captivity because of their sins. [39:23]

Q? What will Yahweh do for the house of Israel when he acts in zeal for his holy name?

A. Yahweh will restore the fortunes of Jacob and have compassion on the house of Israel. [39:25]

Q? What will the house of Israel forget when they rest in their land in safety?

A. The house of Israel will forget their shame and all the treason in which they betrayed Yahweh. [39:26]

Q? What does Yahweh declare he will do when he pours out his Spirit on the house of Israel?

A. Yahweh declares that when he pours out his Spirit on the house of Israel he will no longer hide his face from them. [39:29]

Ezekiel 40

Q? For how many years had Ezekiel been a captive of the Babylonians?

A. Ezekiel had been a captive of the Babylonians for twenty-five years. [40:1]

Q? How many years ago had the city of Jerusalem been captured?

A. The city of Jerusalem had been captured fourteen years ago. [40:1]

Q? To where did God bring Ezekiel in visions?

A. God brought Ezekiel to the land of Israel in visions. [40:2]

Q? What was Ezekiel told to report to the house of Israel?

A. Ezekiel was told to report everything that he saw to the house of Israel. [40:4]

Q? In Ezekiel's vision, what was surrounding the temple complex?

A. In Ezekiel's vision, a wall surrounded the temple complex. [40:5]

Q? What did the man who looked like bronze measure the width of the gateway entrance to be?

A. The man measured the width of the gateway entrance to be ten cubits. [40:11]

Q? What did Ezekiel see carved on the walls?

A. Ezekiel saw carvings of palm trees on the walls. [40:16]

Q? Where did the man who looked like bronze take Ezekiel after measuring in the area of the gate?

A. The man took Ezekiel to the outer courtyard of the temple. [40:17]

Q? Through what did a person have to go in order to enter the inner courtyard?

A. A person had to go through a gate in order to enter the inner courtyard. [40:23]

Q? How did the gates to the inner courtyard compare in size?

A. The gates of the inner courtyard all had the same measurements. [40:28-29]

Q? For what were the rooms with doors by each of the inner gateways used?

A. The rooms with doors by each of the inner gateways were used to rinse the burnt offerings. [40:38]

Q? For what were the four tables on either side of each gate used?

A. The four tables on either side of each gate were used for slaughtering animals. [40:41]

Q? Whose sons were serving as priests in the temple?

A. The sons of Zadok were serving as priests in the temple. [40:46]

Q? How large was the inner courtyard?

A. The inner courtyard was one hundred cubits long and wide in a square. [40:47]

Q? What stood on either side of the sanctuary's portico?

A. Columns stood on either side of the sanctuary's portico. [40:49]

Ezekiel 41

Q? To where did the man bring Ezekiel?

A. The man brought Ezekiel into the temple's holy place. [41:1]

Q? Where did the man go next?

A. The man went next into the very holy place. [41:3]

Q? How would someone get to the highest level of the house?

A. To get to the highest level of the house, there was a stairway that went up through the middle level. [41:7]

Q? What was the size of the sanctuary and the width of the front of the courtyard in front of the sanctuary?

A. The sanctuary and the front of the courtyard were both one hundred cubits. [41:13-14]

Q? What was above the entryway to the inner sanctuary?

A. Above the entryway to the inner sanctuary there was a measured pattern. [41:17]

Q? What two faces did each cherub have?

A. Each cherub had the face of a man and the face of a young lion. [41:19]

Q? What did the man say about the wooden altar in front of the holy place?

A. The man said that the wooden altar was the table that stood before Yahweh. [41:22]

Q? What was carved on the doors of the holy place?

A. Cherubim and palm trees were carved on the doors of the holy place. [41:25]

Ezekiel 42

Q? To which part of the temple did the man send Ezekiel?

A. The man sent Ezekiel to the outer courtyard on the north side. [42:1]

Q? For what did the man say the northern and southern rooms in front of the outer courtyard were used?

A. In those rooms the priests ate the most holy food, and put the most holy things. [42:13]

Q? What were the most holy things of the priests?

A. The most holy things of the priests were the food offering, the sin offering, and the guilt offering. [42:13]

Q? What kind of place did the man say the northern and southern rooms were?

A. The man said the northern and southern rooms were holy places. [42:13]

Q? What did the priests have to do before going near the people?

A. The priests had to dress in other clothes before going near the people. [42:14]

Q? What was the length of each side; north, south east and west?

A. Each side was five hundred cubits long [42:16-19]

Q? What two things did the east gate separate between?

A. The east gate separated between the holy and the not holy. [42:20]

Ezekiel 43

Q? To which place did the man then bring Ezekiel?

A. The man then brought Ezekiel to the gate that opened to the east. [43:1]

Q? What did Ezekiel see and from what direction did it come?

A. Ezekiel saw the glory of the God of Israel come from the east. [43:2]

Q? How did Ezekiel get to the inner court?

A. The Spirit lifted Ezekiel up and brought him to the inner court. [43:5]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do in the inner court?

A. Yahweh said he would place his throne there and would live in the midst of the people of Israel there forever. [43:7]

Q? In what way would the people of Israel no longer profane Yahweh's holy name?

A. The people of Israel would no longer profane Yahweh's holy name by putting the thresholds of their shrines next to Yahweh's. [43:8]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to do about the house he had seen in the vision?

A. Yahweh told Ezekiel to tell the house of Israel about the house he had seen in the vision. [43:10]

Q? What would Israel have to do in order for Ezekiel to reveal to them the design of the house?

A. Israel would have to be ashamed of their sins in order for Ezekiel to reveal to them the design of the house. [43:10-11]

Q? What did Yahweh say was the regulation for the house?

A. Yahweh said the regulation for the house was that it would be most holy. [43:12]

Q? For what would the hearth on the altar be used?

A. The hearth on the altar would be used for the burnt offerings. [43:15]

Q? What things pointed upward on the hearth?

A. There were four horns pointing upward on the hearth. [42:15]

Q? What did Yahweh say would be the sin offering for the Levitical priests on the first day?

A. Yahweh said a bull from the cattle would be a sin offering for the Levitical priests on the first day. [43:19]

Q? Whose descendants would serve as the Levitical priests at this altar?

A. The descendants of Zadok would serve as Levitical priests at this altar. [43:19]

Q? What would placing the blood on the altar do for it?

A. Placing the blood on the altar would cleanse it and make atonement for it. [43:20]

Q? What did Yahweh say would be the sin offering for the Levitical priests on the second day?

A. Yahweh said a male goat without blemish would be a sin offering for the Levitical priests on the second day. [43:22]

Q? What would the priests have to do for seven days in order to atone for the altar?

A. The priests would have to prepare an unblemished bull and an unblemished ram as a burnt offering to atone for the altar. [43:25-26]

Q? On the eighth day and onward, what did Yahweh declare he would do?

A. On the eighth day and onward, Yahweh declared he would accept them. [43:27]

Ezekiel 44

Q? To where did the man bring Ezekiel?

A. The man brought Ezekiel back to the outer sanctuary gate that faced east. [44:1]

Q? What had been done to the east gate, and why?

A. The east gate had been sealed shut, because Yahweh the God of Israel had come through it. [44:1-2]

Q? About what was Ezekiel told to think regarding the house of Yahweh?

A. Ezekiel was told to think about the house of Yahweh's entrance and exits. [44:5]

Q? What disgusting actions had the house of Israel done to profane Yahweh's sanctuary?

A. The house of Israel had brought foreigners with uncircumcised hearts and flesh to the sanctuary. [44:7]

Q? Why did the house of Israel allow foreigners into Yahweh's sanctuary?

A. The house of Israel allowed foreigners into Yahweh's sanctuary because Israel gave the duty of caring for the sanctuary to them. [44:8]

Q? What had the Levites done who wandered away from Yahweh?

A. The Levites who had wandered away from Yahweh had performed sacrifices before their idols. [44:10-12]

Q? What did Yahweh say the Levites who wandered away from him would not be allowed to do?

A. Yahweh declared that the Levites who wandered away from him would not come near him to act as his priests or to approach any of his holy things, the most holy things. [44:13]

Q? Where was Yahweh going to place the Levites who wandered away from him?

A. Yahweh said he would place them as keepers of the work in the house, for all of its duties and everything that is done in it. [44:14]

Q? Why did Yahweh declare that the sons of Zadok would come near to him and would stand before him?

A. The sons of Zadok would come near and stand before Yahweh because they fulfilled the duties of Yahweh's sanctuary when the people of Israel wandered away. [44:15]

Q? What kind of clothes were the priests to wear when they came to the gates of the inner courtyard, and why?

A. The priests were to wear linen clothes when they came to the gates of the inner courtyard so that they did not sweat. [44:17-18]

Q? Who was the priest allowed to marry?

A. The priest was allowed to marry a virgin from the line of the house of Israel, or a widow who was married to a priest. [44:22]

Q? Between what would the priests teach the people the difference?

A. The priests would teach the people the difference between the holy and the profane, the unclean from the clean. [44:23]

Q? What was the priest's role in a dispute between Israelites?

A. The priest stood to judge between the people with Yahweh's decrees, and had to be just. [44:24]

Q? Why did the priests not receive any property or inheritance in the land of Israel?

A. The priests did not receive any property or inheritance in the land of Israel because Yahweh was their inheritance and property. [44:28]

Q? In short what were the priest to eat?

A. The priests were to eat the food offerings. [44:29]

Q? What were the priests not to eat?

A. The priests were not to eat any carcass or animal torn by a beast, whether bird or beast. [44:31]

Ezekiel 45

Q? What offering were the people to make to Yahweh when they cast lots to divide up the land?

A. The people were to make an offering of a holy part of the land when they cast lots to divide up the land. [45:1]

Q? The holy part of the land would be a place for what?

A. The holy part of the land would be a place for the houses and towns of the priests. [45:4-5]

Q? To whom would the area of the city belong?

A. The area of the city would belong to all the house of Israel. [45:6]

Q? Whose land would be on both sides of the holy place and the city?

A. The land of the princes of Israel would be on both sides of the holy place and the city. [45:7]

Q? What does Yahweh tell the princes of Israel to stop doing?

A. Yahweh tells the princes of Israel to stop evicting Yahweh's people, and to remove violence and strife. [45:9]

Q? What does Yahweh say must be made accurate?

A. Yahweh says the balances, ephahs, and baths must be made accurate. [45:10]

Q? How much oil from ten baths would be the regulation offering of oil?

A. A tenth of a bath for every ten baths would be the regulation offering of oil. [45:14]

Q? To whom would the people of the land give their contributions?

A. The people of the land would give their contributions to the prince in Israel. [45:16]

Q? Who would be responsible to furnish animals for the offerings at the festivals of the house of Israel?

A. The prince in Israel would be responsible to furnish animals for the offerings. [45:17]

Q? When were the priests to offer an unblemished bull as a sin offering for the sanctuary?

A. The priests were to offer an unblemished bull as a sin offering on the first day of the first month. [45:18]

Q? When would there be a seven day festival of unleavened bread?

A. On the fourteenth day of the first month there would be a seven day festival of unleavened bread. [45:21]

Q? What offerings were to be given on the fifteenth day of the seventh month?

A. On the fifteenth day of the seventh month, sin offerings, burnt offerings, food offerings, and offerings of oil were to be given. [45:25]

Ezekiel 46

Q? When did Yahweh say the east gate of the inner courtyard would be opened?

A. Yahweh said the east gate of the inner courtyard would be opened on the Sabbath and on the day of the new moon. [46:1]

Q? Where would the prince of Israel worship?

A. The prince of Israel would worship at the threshold of the inner gate. [46:2]

Q? What would be the burnt offering of the prince on the Sabbath day?

A. The prince would offer six unblemished lambs and an unblemished ram. [46:4]

Q? What did Yahweh say was the rule about how the prince must leave after he worships?

A. Yahweh said the rule was that the prince must leave by the same way he came in to worship. [46:8]

Q? What did Yahweh say was the rule about how the people must leave after they worship?

A. Yahweh said the rule was that the people must leave by going out straight ahead from where they came in. [46:9]

Q? What would the prince have to do at a festival when he gave a freewill offering?

A. The prince would have to open the east gate for the offering, and then go out and shut the gate after him. [46:12]

Q? What did Yahweh say would be given as a burnt offering every morning?

A. Yahweh said an unblemished lamb one year old would be given as a burnt offering every morning. [46:13]

Q? According to Yahweh, who would receive the inheritance of the prince?

A. The inheritance of the prince would be received by his sons. [46:17]

Q? Why did Yahweh say the prince must not take the people's inheritance away?

A. The people's inheritance must not be taken away so they are not scattered from their own property. [46:18]

Q? Why were the priests not to bring the guilt, sin, and grain offerings out to the outer courtyard?

A. The priests were not to bring the offerings out to the outer courtyard and so consecrate the people. [46:20]

Q? What would be done in the cooking hearths at the corners of the outer courtyard?

A. In the cooking hearths at the corners of the outer courtyard, the temple servants would boil the people's sacrifices. [46:24]

Ezekiel 47

Q? Which direction did the temple face in Ezekiel's vision?

A. The temple faced east. [47:1]

Q? What did Ezekiel see at the gate facing east?

A. Ezekiel saw water flowing from the gate facing east, on its south side. [47:2]

Q? How deep did the water become that Ezekiel saw?

A. The water became a river that was too deep to pass without swimming. [47:5]

Q? What were on both sides of the river?

A. On both sides of the river, the riverbank had many trees. [47:7]

Q? To where did this water flow, and what did it do there?

A. This water flowed to the Salt Sea and would restore it to freshness. [47:8]

Q? What would not be made fresh at the Salt Sea?

A. The swamps and marshes would not be made fresh at the Salt Sea. [47:11]

Q? What kind of trees would grow on the riverbanks, and how would they grow?

A. Edible trees would grow on the riverbanks, bearing fruit each month and never withering. [47:12]

Q? Who would receive two portions of land among the tribes of Israel?

A. Joseph would receive two portions of land among the tribes of Israel. [47:13]

Q? The northern boundary of the land would reach to the border of what city?

A. The northern boundary of the land would reach to the border of Damascus. [47:16-17]

Q? What would be the eastern border of the land?

A. The eastern border of the land would be the Jordan River. [47:18]

Q? What brook would be part of the southern border of the land?

A. The Brook of Egypt would be part of the southern border of the land. [47:19]

Q? What would be the western border of the land?

A. The western border of the land would be the Great Sea. [47:20]

Q? How were the Israelites to determine the inheritances for each person in the land?

A. The Israelites were to throw lots to determine the inheritance for each person in the land. [47:22]

Q? Who were to be treated just like the native born people of Israel?

A. Foreigners living in the midst of the Israelites were to be treated just like the native born people of Israel. [47:22]

Ezekiel 48

Q? Which tribe would be given the land on the northern border of Israel?

A. The tribe of Dan would be given the land on the northern border of Israel. [48:1]

Q? Which tribe would be south of the border of the tribe of Dan?

A. The tribe of Asher would be south of the border of Dan. [48:2]

Q? Which tribe would be south of the border of the tribe of Asher?

A. The tribe of Naphtali would be south of the border of Asher. [48:3]

Q? In order, which four tribes would be south of the tribe of Naphtali?

A. In order, the four tribes south of Naphtali would be Manasseh, Ephraim, Reuben, and Judah. [48:4-7]

Q? What would be in the middle of the land located along the border with Judah?

A. The temple would be in the middle of the land located along the border with Judah. [48:8]

Q? Who would live on the land surrounding the sanctuary of Yahweh?

A. The priests of the line of Zadok would live on the land surrounding the sanctuary of Yahweh. [48:11]

Q? Who would live on the land bordering the priests' land?

A. The Levites would live on the land bordering the priests' land. [48:13]

Q? For what would the remaining area of the holy offering of land be used?

A. The remaining area of the holy offering of land would be used to produce food for those working in the city. [48:18]

Q? For whom would be the land on the eastern and western borders of the holy offering of land?

A. The land on the eastern and western borders of the holy offering of land would be for the prince. [48:21]

Q? What was to be the southern boundary of Gad?

A. The southern boundary of Gad was to extend from Tamar to the waters of Meribah Kadesh, and farther to the brook of Egypt, and then to the Great Sea. [48:28]

Q? How many gates were to be on the north side of the city, and what were they to be named for?

A. There would be three gates on the north side of the city, with one being named for Reuben, one for Judah, and one for Levi. [48:30-31]

Q? What would be the city's name?

A. The city's name would be "Yahweh is There". [48:35]

translationWords

twelve tribes of Israel

Definition:

The term, “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham’s grandson. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes are slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include: lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by, “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “is an abomination to” could include: “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as, “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [Daniel](#), [desecrate](#), [desolate](#), [desolation](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father”
- “Abraham” means, “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- While living in the land of Canaan, when they were very old, Abraham and his wife Sarah had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [chaldea](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#), [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **[05-04]** Then God changed **Abram**’s name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham**’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[06-01]** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[06-04]** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **[21-02]** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that involves a married person having sexual relations with someone who is not his spouse. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or the person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term “adulterous” is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as, “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When “adulterous” is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God’s view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of “adulterous” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “immoral” or “like an unfaithful spouse.”

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [covenant](#), [fornication](#), [sexual immorality](#), , [have sex with](#), [have relations with](#), [sleep with](#), [lovemaking](#), [unfaithful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-06]**”Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **[28-02]** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **[34-07]**”The religious leader prayed like this, ”Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.””

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- An adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- A nation can be called an “adversary” when it fights against another nation.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Almighty

Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful”; in the Bible, it always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles, “Almighty God” or “God Almighty” or “Lord Almighty” or “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include, “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living nearby the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **[13-09]** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **[16-06]** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions express how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have expressions to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be, “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include: “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ambassador, representative

Definition:

An ambassador is a person who is chosen to officially represent his country in relating to foreign nations. It is also used in a figurative sense and is sometimes translated more generally as “representative.”

- An ambassador or representative gives people messages from the person or government that sent him.
- The more general term “representative” refers to someone who has been given the authority to act and speak on behalf of the person he he is representing.
- The apostle Paul taught that Christians are Christ’s “ambassadors” or “representatives” since they represent Christ in this world and teach others his message.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “official representative” or “appointed messenger” or “chosen representative” or “God’s appointed representative.”
- A “delegation of ambassadors” could be translated as “some official messengers” or “group of appointed representatives” or “official party of people to speak for all people.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [messenger](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as, “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Balaam](#), [curse](#), [cursed](#), [Jordan River](#), [Lot](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one" which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall in height.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites" which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices that were included in that.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-07] Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- [15-08] In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- [15-09] God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- [15-10] God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

angry, anger

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

anoint, anointed

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle, were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in, “appointed to eternal life.” This means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include, “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as, “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as, “be chosen.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Arabah

Facts:

The Old Testament term “Arabah” often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The “Sea of the Arabah” could also be translated as, “sea located in the Arabah desert region.” This sea is often referred to as the “Salt Sea” or the “Dead Sea.”
- The term “arabah” can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [Red Sea](#), [Sea of Reeds](#), [Jordan River](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Arabia, Arabian

Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term “Arabian” is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham’s son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Esau](#), [Galatia](#), [Ishmael](#), [Shem](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Aram, Aramean, Aramaic

Definition:

“Aram” is the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as “Arameans” and spoke “Aramaic.” Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem’s sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name, “Syria.”
- The term “Paddan Aram” means “plain of Aram” and was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham’s relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in “Paddan Aram.”
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms “Aram” and “Paddan Aram” refer to the same region.
- The term “Aram Naharaim” may mean “Aram of Two Rivers.” This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of “Paddan Aram.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Mesopotamia](#), [Aram Naharaim](#), [Paddan Aram](#), [Rebekah](#), [Shem](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

armor**Definition:**

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means, “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: [faith](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [salvation](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

arrogant**Definition:**

The term “arrogant” means to be proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

- An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
- To be arrogant usually includes thinking that other people are not as important or talented as oneself.
- People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.

(See also: [acknowledge](#), [boast](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Asher

Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel which was also called “Asher.”

- Asher’s mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
- His name means “happy” or, “blessed.”
- Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [israel](#), [twelvetribeisrael](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

assembly, assemble

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” where the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers is sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

(See also: [council](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-02]** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-03]** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **[20-04]** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

astray, go astray, led astray, stray

Definition:

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as, “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as, “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

atonement, atone**Definition:**

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserved because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include, “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: [atonement lid](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [propitiation](#), [reconcile](#), [reconciliation](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

avenge, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression, “to avenge” someone could also be translated as “to right a wrong” or “to get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by, “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Babylon, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- In the New Testament, the term “Babylon” is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase “Babylon the Great” or “great city of Babylon” refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [Babel](#), [Chaldea](#), [Chaldean](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **[20-07]** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **[20-11]** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

barren**Definition:**

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel’s wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [oak](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Benjamin

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Rachel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

betray, betrayer

Definition:

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [religious leaders](#), [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-11]** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **[38-02]** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **[38-03]** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **[38-06]** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” ... Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **[38-13]** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **[38-14]** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **[39-08]** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

biblical time: day

Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judgment day](#), [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

biblical time: month**Definition:**

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

Bible References:

Waiting

biblical time: year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [biblical time: month](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as, to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include, “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [slander](#), [slanderer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ble**ss**, ble**ss**ed, ble**ss**ing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-07] God saw that it was good and he **ble**ss**ed** them.
- [01-15] God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **ble**ss**ed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- [01-16] So God rested from all he had been doing. He **ble**ss**ed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- [04-04]”I will make your name great. I will **ble**ss**** those who **ble**ss**** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **ble**ss**ed** because of you.”
- [04-07] Melchizedek **ble**ss**ed** Abram and said, ”May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **ble**ss**** Abram.”
- [07-03] Isaac wanted to give his **ble**ss**ing** to Esau.
- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **ble**ss**ed** him.

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

bloodshed

Definition:

The term “bloodshed” refers to the death of human beings due to murder, war, or some other violent act.

- This term literally means “shedding of blood,” which refers to when blood comes out of a person’s body from an open wound.
- The term “bloodshed” is often used to refer to widespread killing of people.
- It is also used as a general reference to the sin of murder.

Translation Suggestions:

- “the bloodshed” could be translated as, “the killing of people” or “the many people who were killed.”
- “through bloodshed” could also be translated as, “by killing people.”
- “innocent bloodshed” could be translated as “killing innocent people.”
- “bloodshed follows bloodshed” could be translated as, “they keep killing people” or “the killing of people goes on and on” or “they have killed many people and continue to do that” or “people keep killing other people.”
- Another figurative use, “bloodshed will pursue you” could be translated as, “your people will continue to experience bloodshed” or “your people will keep being killed” or “your people will continue to be at war with other nations and people will keep dying.”

(See also: [blood slaughter](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

boast, boastful

Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle, Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in ones’ work, family, or country.

Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as, “to restrain” or “to prevent” or “to keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase, “bond of peace” means, “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as, “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as, “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translate as, “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bow and arrow**Definition:**

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

Waiting

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means, “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term, “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#), [yeast](#), [leaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

breathe, breath

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as, “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include, “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as, “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as, “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as, “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: [Adam](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bribe

Definition:

To “bribe” means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus’ empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, “bribe” could be translated as “dishonest payment” or “payment for lying” or “price for breaking the rules.”
- “To bribe” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “to pay to influence (someone)” or “to pay to have a dishonest favor done” or “to pay for a favor.”

Bible References:

Waiting

bronze**Definition:**

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term “burial” is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means, “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

call, calling, called, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray](#), [prayer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink }}

camel**Definition:**

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food, but not the Israelites because God had said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ham](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-05]** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **[04-09]** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **[05-03]** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **[07-08]** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

captive, captivity**Definition:**

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression “to take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [exile](#), [the Exile](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cedar

Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: [fir](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Chaldea, Chaldean

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), [Shinar](#), [Ur](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

chariot

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-10]** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.
- Rome, Romaning in his **chariot**.

cherubim, cherub

Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [angel](#), other)

Bible References:

Waiting

chief**Definition:**

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), spirit, spiritual, believer, beloved other)

Bible References:

Waiting

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proved he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [anoint](#), [anointed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-07]** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **[17-08]** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.

- [21-01] From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- [21-05] The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- [21-06] God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- [21-09] The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- [43-07] "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, "You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave."
- [43-09] "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- [46-06] Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

clan

Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- Clan could be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: [family](#), [Jethro](#), [Reuel](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

clean, cleanse

Definition:

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

comfort, comforter

Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [encouragement](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

command, to command, commandment

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

commander, command

Definition:

the term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- To “command” an army means to lead and be in charge of the army.
- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term “to command” an army could be translated as “to lead” or “to be in charge of.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [centurion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

companion

Facts:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with.”

Bible References:

Waiting

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

Waiting

condemn, condemnation

Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

confidence, confident

Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [believer](#), [bold](#), [boldly](#), [boldness](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [hope](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:19-22
- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- Job 04:4-6
- Philippians 01:25-27
- Proverbs 14:26-27
- Romans 05:1-2

consecrate

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or “to make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

consume

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See: [devour](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

contempt, contemptible

Facts:

The term “contempt” refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called “contemptible.”

- A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called “contemptible” and could be translated as “greatly disrespectful” or “completely dishonorable” or “deserving scorn.”
- To “hold in contempt” means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
- The following expressions have a similar meaning: “have contempt for” or “show contempt for” or “be in contempt of” or “treat with contempt.” These all mean to “strongly disrespect” or “strongly dishonor” something or someone by what is said and done.
- When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had “shown contempt for” God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

corrupt, corruption

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to corrupt” could be translated as “to influence to do evil” or “to cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term corruption could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

counsel, counselor, advice, advisor**Definition:**

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, “to counsel” could be translated as “to advise” or “to make suggestions” or “to exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: [exhort](#), [exhortation](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

courtyard, court

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

covenant

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example when God established his covenant with mankind, promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: , [New Covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-09]** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **[05-04]** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **[06-04]** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.

- [07-10] The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- [13-02] God said to Moses and the people of Israel, ”If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- [13-04] Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- [15-13] Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

cow, calf, bull, cattle

Definition:

The term , “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow”, the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [heifer](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [yoke](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

create, creation, Creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something, or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news “to all creation” means to preach the good news “to all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase, “Let all creation rejoice” means, “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as, “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as, “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as, “God, who created you.”

(See: [God](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

se, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world was created.

Waiting

creature**Definition:**

The term “creature” refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing “living creatures” in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term “creation” has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term “creature” only includes living things.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “creature” could be translated as, “being” or “living being” or “created being.”
- The plural, “creatures” could be translated as “all living things” or “people and animals” or “animals” or “human beings.”

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

crown, to crown**Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Cush

Facts:

Cush was the oldest son of Noah's son Ham. He was also the ancestor of Nimrod. Two of his brothers were named Egypt and Canaan.

- In Old Testament times, "Cush" was the name of a large region of land south of Israel. It is probable that the land was named after Ham's son Cush.
- The ancient region of Cush covered an area of land that may have at different times included parts of the modern-day countries of Sudan, Egypt, Ethiopia, and possibly, Saudi Arabia.
- Another man named Cush is mentioned in the Psalms. He was a Benjamite.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Ethiopian](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cut off**Definition:**

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

Waiting

Cyprus

Facts:

Cyprus is an island in the Mediterranean Sea, about 64 kilometers south of the modern-day country of Turkey.

- Barnabas was from Cyprus so it is probable that his cousin John Mark was also from there.
- Paul and Barnabas preached together on the island of Cyprus at the beginning of their first missionary journey. John Mark came along to help them on that trip.
- Later on, Barnabas and Mark visited Cyprus again.
- In the Old Testament, Cyprus is mentioned as being a rich source of cypress trees.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Barnabas](#), [John Mark](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Damascus

Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future. more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [believer](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Dan

Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel. The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

- During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
- Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
- The term, “Danites” refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Jerusalem](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Daniel

Facts:

Daniel was an Israelite prophet who as a young man was taken captive by the Babylonian king Nebuchadnezzar around 600 BC.

- This was during the time that many other Israelites from Judah were held captive in Babylon for 70 years.
- Daniel was given the Babylonian name Belteshazzar.
- Daniel was an honorable and righteous young man who obeyed God.
- God enabled Daniel to interpret several dreams or visions for the Babylonian kings.
- Because of this ability and because of his honorable character, Daniel was given a high leadership position in the Babylonian empire.
- Many years later, Daniel's enemies tricked the Babylonian king Darius into making a law forbidding the worship of anyone except the king. Daniel continued to pray to God, so he was arrested and thrown into a den of lions. But God rescued him and he was not harmed at all.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well-known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[17-03]** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **[17-04]** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **[17-05]** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **[17-06]** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[17-09]** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

Description:

The Old Testament term “day of Yahweh” is used to refer to a specific time(s) when God would punish people for their sin.

- The New Testament term “day of the Lord” usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection, is also sometimes referred to as the “last day.” This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word “day” in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a “time” or “occasion” that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a “pouring out of God’s wrath” upon those who do not believe.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “day of Yahweh” could include, “time of Yahweh” or “time when Yahweh will punish his enemies” or “time of Yahweh’s wrath.”
- Other ways to translate “day of the Lord” could include “time of the Lord’s judgment” or “time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people.”

(See also: [biblical time: day, judgment day, Lord, resurrection, Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}}

declare, declaration

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by, “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as, “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase, “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as, “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

decree

Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as, "to order" or "to command" or "to formally require" or "to publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [declare](#), [declaration](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

defile, be defiled

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [unclean](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

descendant, descended from

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in, “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as, “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] ”The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- [04-09] ”I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- [05-10] ”Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- [17-07] ”Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- [18-13] The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- [48-13] God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

desecrate

Definition:

The term “desecrate” means to damage or contaminate a sacred place or object in such a way that it is unacceptable for use in worship.

- Often desecrating something involves showing great disrespect for it.
- For example, pagan kings desecrated special dishes from God’s temple by using them for parties at their palace.
- Bones from dead people were used by enemies to desecrate the altar in God’s temple.
- This term could be translated as, “cause to be unholy” or “dishonor by making impure” or “disrespectfully profane” or “cause to be impure.”

(See: altar, defile, be defiled, dishonor, dishonorable, profane, pure, purify, purification, temple, unholy)

Bible References:

Waiting

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

Waiting

desolate, desolation

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [devastate](#), [devastation](#), [ruin](#), [ruins](#), [waste](#), [wasteland](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

devastate, devastation

Definition:

The term “devastated” or “devastation” refers to having one’s property or land ruined or destroyed. It also often includes destroying or capturing the people living on that land.

- This refers to a very severe and complete destruction.
- For example, the city of Sodom was devastated by God as punishment for the sins of the people living there.
- The term “devastation” can also include causing great emotional grief resulting from the punishment or destruction.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “devastate” could be translated as “completely destroy” or “completely ruin.”
- Depending on the context, “devastation” could be translated as “complete destruction” or “total ruin” or “overwhelming grief” or “disaster.”

Bible References:

Waiting

devour**Definition:**

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: other)

Bible References:

Waiting

discipline, self-discipline

Definition:

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as, “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun, “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

Bible References:

Waiting

dishonor, dishonorable

Definition:

The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as “to not honor” or “to treat with no respect.”
- The noun, “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
- Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: [disgrace](#), [disgraceful](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

disperse, dispersion

Definition:

The terms “disperse” and “dispersion” refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about “dispersing” people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term “dispersion” is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase “the dispersion” could be translated as “believers in many different places” or “the people who moved away to live in different nations.”
- The term “disperse” could be translated as, “send away into many different places” or “scatter abroad” or “cause to move away to live in different countries.”

(See also: [believer](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer**Definition:**

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [magic](#), [magician](#), [sorcery](#), [sorcerer](#), [witchcraft](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

divorce**Definition:**

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term “to divorce” means to formally and legally separate from one’s spouse in order to end the marriage.

- The literal meaning of the word for “to divorce” is “to send away” or “to formally separate from.” Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
- A “certificate of divorce” could be translated as, a “paper stating that the marriage has ended.”

Bible References:

Waiting

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

doom

Definition:

The term “doom” refers to a judgment of condemnation with no possibility of appeal or escape.

- As the nation of Israel was being taken captive into Babylon, the prophet Ezekiel said, “doom has come upon them.”
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “disaster” or “punishment” or “hopeless ruin.”

Bible References:

Waiting

doorpost

Definition:

The “doorpost” is a vertical beam on either side of a door, which supports the top of the door frame.

- Just before God helped the Israelites escape from Egypt, he instructed them to kill a lamb and put its blood on their doorposts.
- In the Old Testament, a slave who desired to serve his master the rest of his life would place his ear on the doorpost of his master’s house to have a nail hammered through his ear into the doorpost.
- This could also be translated as “wooden post on either side of a door” or “sides of a wooden doorframe” or “wood beams on the sides of a doorway.”

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Passover](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

u

dove, pigeon

Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as “a small grayish brown bird called a dove” or “a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)”.
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [olive](#), [innocent](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be, "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as, "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [grain offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include, “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

eagle

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See: [Daniel](#), [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

earth, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Eden, garden of Eden

Facts:

In ancient times, Eden was a region that had a garden where God placed the first man and woman to live.

- The garden where Adam and Eve lived was only part of Eden.
- The exact location of the region of Eden is not certain, but the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers were flowing through it.
- The word “Eden” comes from a Hebrew word meaning “to take great delight in.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Adam](#), [Euphrates River](#), [Eve](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [birthright](#), [Esau](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [patriarchs](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **[08-08]** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **[08-11]** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **[08-14]** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **[09-01]** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Elam

Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites” and they lived in a region was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located to the southeast of the Tigris River, in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Noah](#), [Shem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

elder

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

Waiting

enslave, in bondage

Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To “enslave” also means to take away a person’s freedom.
- Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- In a figurative way, human beings are “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to envy someone to the point of strongly desiring to have something that person has.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even, someone else’s spouse.

(See also: [jealous](#), [jealousy](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ephraim

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

everlasting, eternal, eternity

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include, “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include, “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **[28-01]** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **[28-10]** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

exalt, exaltation**Definition:**

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include, “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts, it could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glorify](#), [boast](#), [boastful](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

exile, the Exile

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian Exile” (or “the Exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to exile” could also be translated as, “to send away” or “to force out” or “to banish.”
- The term “the Exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include, “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ezekiel

Facts:

Ezekiel was a prophet of God during the exile period when many Jews were taken to Babylon.

- Ezekiel was a priest living in the kingdom of Judah when he and many other Jews were captured by the Babylonian army.
- For over twenty years, he and his wife lived in Babylon near a river, and the Jews came there to hear him speak messages from God.
- Among other things, Ezekiel prophesied about the destruction and restoration of Jerusalem and the temple.
- He also prophesied about the future kingdom of the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [exile](#), [the Exile](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

face

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means, “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as, “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression, “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression, “hide his face from” could be translated as, “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as, “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression, “say it to their face” could be translated as, “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression, “on the face of the land” could also be translated as, “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

Waiting

faithful, faithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- [14-12] Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- [15-13] The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- [17-09] David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- [18-04] God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- [35-12]”The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’
- [49-17] But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- [50-04] If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

faithless, faithlessness

Definition:

The term “faithless” means to not have faith or to not believe.

- This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God, which is seen by the immoral way they act.
- The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
- They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “faithless” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “unbelieving” or “disobedient to God” or “not believing.”
- The term “faithlessness” could be translated as “unbelief” or “unfaithfulness” or “rebellion against God.”

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

false god, foreign god, god, goddess

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Asherah poles](#), [Ashtoreth](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [Moloch](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.
- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**.”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **[18-13]** But most of Judah’s kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

false prophet

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies destroying crops.
- In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as, “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

Waiting

ancestor, father, forefather

Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as, “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4, “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as, “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” refers to doing something to benefit someone who is regarded positively. Something that is “favorable” is positive, approving, or beneficial.

- The term “favoritism” means to act favorably toward some people but not others. Often favoritism is The term “favoritism” means acting favorably toward some people, but not others. shown toward people who are rich or are considered
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” means that someone is approved of by someone else.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as, “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

“find favor” “increased in favor” “won the favor of”

Bible References:

Waiting

fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

feast

Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as, “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

festival

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
 - Passover
 - Festival of Unleavened Bread
 - Firstfruits
 - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
 - Festival of Trumpets
 - Day of Atonement
 - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: [feast](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fire**Definition:**

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as, “cause you to experience suffering in order to purify you.”

(See also: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fir**Definition:**

The term “fir” refers to a kind of tree that stays green all year long and that has cones containing seeds.

- Fir trees are also referred to as “evergreen” trees.
- In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
- Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born. Usually the firstborn

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “firstborn” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [son](#), [son of](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

firstfruits**Definition:**

The term “first fruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “first fruits” of all believers in him who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “first fruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fishermen, fishers**Definition:**

Fishermen are men who catch fish from the water as a means of earning money. In the New Testament, the fishermen used large nets to catch fish. The term “fishers” is another name for fishermen.

- Peter and other apostles worked as fishermen before being called by Jesus.
- Since the land of Israel was near water, the Bible has many references to fish and fishermen.
- This term could be translated with a phrase such as, “men who catch fish” or “men who earn money by catching fish.”

Bible References:

Waiting

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [Euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

Bible References:

Waiting

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [kid](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [pig](#), [swine](#), [pork](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

flood

Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action as in, “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include, “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison, “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor as in, “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don’t let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The figurative expression, “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears soak my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: [ark](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

foreigner, foreign, alien**Definition:**

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from your own.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not only refer to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

Waiting

forever

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

forgive, forgiveness

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against a person who did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean, “cancel” as in the expression, “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as, “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”

(See: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [07-10] But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- [13-15] Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- [17-13] David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- [21-05] In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- [29-01] One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”
- [29-08] I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- [38-05] Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

sexual immorality

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterer](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [prostitute](#), [harlot](#), [unfaithful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

forsake, forsaken, forsook**Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, it means they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, it means he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used as past tense as in “he has forsaken you” or to refer to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- The project language may find it more clear to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text is talking about forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

Waiting

foundation, founded

Definition:

The verb “founded” means to be built on or based on something. A foundation is the base on which something is built.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

free, freedom, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression, “to set someone free” or “to free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression “to set free” could be translated as “to cause to be free” or “to rescue from slavery” or “to release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

freewill offering

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [Ezra](#), [feast](#), [grain offering](#), [guilt offering](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [sin offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fruit, fruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions and thoughts. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces,” that is, children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural
- , “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression, “fruit of the land” could also be translated as, “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as, “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elisabeth says to Mary, “blessed is the fruit of your womb” she means, “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression, “fruit of the vine” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”

- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as, “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression, “fruitful labor” could be translated as, “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in you.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#)[Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fulfill

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as, “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill” as in “fulfill your ministry” could include, “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#), [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[24-04]** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **[40-03]** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **[42-07]** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **[43-05]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **[43-07]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **[44-05]** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Gad

Facts:

Gad is the name of one of the sons of Jacob, that is, Israel.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The cities, Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written, "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [census](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

gate, gate bar**Definition:**

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be, “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase, “bars of the gate” could be translated as, “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

Waiting

gift

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as, “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gilead

Definition:

Gilead is the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river, where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region is also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Jephthah](#), [Manasseh](#), [Reuben](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glorify

Definition:

The term “glorify” means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means “give glory.”

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son’s perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as, “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [exalt](#), [exaltation](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

goat, kid

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
 - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
 - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
 - A sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from the herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of their tendency to wander away from the one taking care of them.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second live goat and send it into the desert as a symbol of the animal bearing the people’s sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [herd](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#).)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

governor, govern, proconsul, government

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. The word “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage people.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” is made up of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for king or emperor, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [province](#), [provincial](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

grain

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- The heads of grain are the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [guilt offering](#) , [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sin offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

grape

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate “to be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, “to be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

ULB exs: take away the guilt of your sin, take away your guilt, guilt offering, punish your guilt, no guilt for murder will attach to him, carry his own guilt, wash away his guilt, be in great guilt, our guilt grows to the heavens

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#)[punish](#), [punishment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#).)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **[39-11]** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty!**”
- **[40-04]** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **[49-10]** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

guilt offering

Definition:

The guilt offering was an offering or sacrifice that God required the Israelites to make if they had accidentally did something wrong such as disrespecting God or damaging another person's property.

- This offering involved the sacrifice of an animal and paying a fine, with silver or gold money.
- In addition, the person at fault was responsible to pay for any damage that was done.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sin offering](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

hades, sheol

Definition:

The terms “hades” and “sheol” are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

- The Hebrew term “sheol” is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
- In the New Testament, the Greek term “hades” refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going “down” to hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going “up” to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
- The term “hades” is coupled with the term “death” in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term “sheol” could be translated as “place of the dead” or “place for dead souls.” Some translations translate this as “the pit” or “death,” depending on the context.
- The New Testament term “hades” could also be translated as “place for unbelieving dead souls” or “place of torment for the dead” or “place for the souls of unbelieving dead people.”
- Some translations keep the word “sheol” or “hades,” spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to the term to explain it, for example, “sheol, place where dead people are” or “hades, place of death.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#), [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites

Facts:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son, Canaan.

- The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
- Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
- King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, which caused them to be on good terms.
- Hamath was one of Solomon's storehouse cities where provisions were kept.
- The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
- The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "people from Hamath."

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Syria](#), [Zedekiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hand, right hand, to hand over

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says, “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: **Metonymy**)
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
 - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
 - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
 - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
 - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
 - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as, “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Haran

Facts:

Haran was a younger brother of Abraham and the father of Lot.

- Haran was also the name of the town where Abram and his family lived for awhile on their journey from the city of Ur to the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Haran was a son of Caleb.
- A third man in the Bible named Haran was a descendant of Levi.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Caleb](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [Lot](#), [Terah](#), [Ur](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hard, hardness, harden

Definition:

The term “hard” has several different meanings depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions, “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as, “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include, “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as, “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as, “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as, “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby. See the link to “labor pains” below.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [heart](#), [labor pains](#), [in labor](#), [stiff-necked](#), [stubborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

head

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in, “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as, “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression, “no razor will ever touch his head” means “ he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person as in, “this gray head” referring to an elderly person or “the head of Joseph” referring to Joseph. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as, “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See: [grain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)

- This chunk : review-publish | publish-current
- Next chunk: publish-current

heal, cure

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases such as leprosy do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-14]** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **[21-10]** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **[26-06]** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **[26-08]** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **[32-14]** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **[44-03]** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **[49-02]**] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

heart

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

high places

Definition:

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- When a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel continuing to worship idols.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars are located.

(See also: [altar](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Esau](#), [foreigner](#), [foreign](#), [alien](#), [Ham](#), [mighty](#), [might](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-16] He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- [09-12]”You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- [13-02]”If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- [13-05]”Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- [22-05]”So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- [50-02] As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Holy One

Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is, “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as, “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase, “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as, “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

holy place, most holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to the both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It can also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as, “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term, “most holy place” could be translated as, “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include, “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [bread](#), [consecrate](#), [courtyard](#), [court](#), [curtain](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include, “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-01]** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **[24-08]** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **[42-10]** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-03]** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **[43-08]** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**"
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

Honey is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever the bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Jonathan](#), [Philistines](#), [Samson](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hoof, hoofed, hooves

Facts:

These terms refer to the hard material covering the bottom of the feet of certain animals such as camels, cattle, deer, horses, donkeys, pigs, oxen, sheep, and goats.

- An animal's hooves protect its feet when walking.
- Some animals have hooves that are split into two parts and others do not.
- God told the Israelites that animals which had split hooves and chewed a cud were considered clean to eat. This included cattle, sheep, deer, and oxen.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [camel](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [donkey](#), [mule](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [pig](#), [swine](#), [pork](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hope

Definition:

The term “hope” refers to expecting and strongly desiring something to happen. It can also mean to not be certain that it will happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust” as in, “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULB translates the term “hope” as “confidence,” especially in the New Testament in contexts that refer to the assurance of receiving what God has promised to people who believe in Jesus as their Savior.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to hope” could also be translated as “to wish” or “to desire” or “to expect.”
- The expression, “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as, “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression, “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as, “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as, “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

~review~DISCUSSION~~

horror, horrified

Definition:

The term “horror” refers to a very intense feeling of fear or terror. The person who is feeling horror is said to be “horrified.”

- Horror is more dramatic and intense than ordinary fear.
- Usually when someone is horrified they are also in shock or stunned.

(See also: [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [terror](#), [terrify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

horse

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house

Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as, “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as, “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include, “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house of God](#), [Yahweh’s house](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as, "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as, "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

humble, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand our weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- If a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as, “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-02] David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- [34-10] ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

humiliate, humiliation

Facts:

The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced. This is usually done publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”

- When God humbles someone it means that he causes a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different than humiliating someone which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include, “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”

(See also: [disgrace](#), [disgraceful](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [shame](#), [shameful](#), [ashamed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **[13-12]** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- **[14-03]** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.”
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [God](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image of God](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that are burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made from mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include, “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [frankincense](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
 - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
 - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
 - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [transgress](#), [transgression](#), [trespass](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

inquire

Facts:

The term “inquire” means to ask someone for information. The expression “inquire of” is often used to refer to asking God for wisdom or help.

- The Old Testament records several instances where people inquired of God.
- The word can also be used of a king or government official making a search through official written records.
- Depending on the context, “inquire” could be translated as “ask” or “ask for information.”
- The expression “inquire of Yahweh” could be translated as “ask Yahweh for guidance” or “ask Yahweh what to do.”
- To “inquire after” something could be translated as “ask questions about” or “ask for information about.”
- When Yahweh says, “I will not be inquired of by you” this could be translated as, “I will not allow you to ask me for information” or “you will not be permitted to seek help from me.”

Bible References:

Waiting

integrity

Definition:

The term “integrity” refers to being honest, with strong moral principles and behavior.

- Having integrity also means choosing to do what is honest and right even when nobody else is watching.
- Certain characters in the Bible, such as Joseph and Daniel, showed integrity when they refused to do evil and chose to obey God.
- The book of Proverbs says that it is better to be poor and have integrity than to be rich and corrupt or dishonest.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “integrity” could also be translated as, “honesty” or “moral uprightness” or “behaving truthfully” or “acting in a trustworthy, honest manner.”

(See also: [Daniel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Issachar's land was bordered by Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
- It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Manasseh](#), [Naphtali](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Zebulun](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning, "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means, "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him, so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[07-01]** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **[07-07]** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **[07-08]** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **[07-10]** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **[08-01]** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include, “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as, “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#), [covet](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jehoiachin

Facts:

Jehoiachin was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Jehoiachin became king when he was 18 years old. He only reigned three months and after that he was captured by the Babylonian army and taken to Babylon.
- During his short reign, Jehoiachin did evil things like his grandfather King Manasseh and his father King Jehoiakim had done.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Jehoiakim](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Manasseh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of present-day Israel.

- The name, “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem”, “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it was located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-05] David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- [18-02] In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- [20-12] So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- [38-02] After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- [42-08] ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”

- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Job

Facts:

Job was a man who is described in the Bible as blameless and righteous before God. He is best known for persevering in his faith in God through times of terrible suffering.

- Job lived in the land of Uz, which was located somewhere east of the land of Canaan, possibly near the region of the Edomites.
- It is thought that he lived some time during the time of Esau and Jacob because one of Job's friends was a "Temanite," which was a people group named after Esau's grandson.
- The Old Testament book of Job tells about how Job and others responded to his suffering. It also gives God's viewpoint as the sovereign creator and ruler of the universe.
- After all the disasters, God eventually healed Job and gave him more children and wealth.
- The book of Job says that he was very old when he died.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Esau](#), [flood](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Noah](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jordan River

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on the west from Jordan on the east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. Because it was too deep, God miraculously stopped the water from flowing so they could go across.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Genesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-02]** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **[19-14]** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-02]** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **[08-04]** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **[08-07]** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **[08-09]** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **[09-02]** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

joy, joyful

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or with a phrase that means, “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” **Metonymy**)

(See also: [rejoice](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **[34-04]**”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern part of the nation.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

just, justice, justly

Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-09] David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- [18-13] Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- [19-16] They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

Facts:

The names Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, and Meribah Kadesh all refer to an important city in Israel's history which was located in the southern part of Israel, near the region of Edom.

- The city of Kadesh was an oasis, a place where there was water and fertile soil in the middle of a desert named Zin.
- Moses sent twelve spies into the land of Canaan from Kadesh Barnea.
- Israel also encamped at Kadesh during the wandering in the wilderness.
- Kadesh Barnea was where Miriam died.
- It was at Meribah Kadesh where Moses disobeyed God and hit a rock to get water for the Israelites, instead of speaking to it as God had told him to do.
- The name “kadesh” comes from the Hebrew word meaning “holy” or “set apart.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [Edom](#), [Edomite](#), [Idumea](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

kind, kinds

Definition:

The terms “kind” and “kinds” refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include, “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”
- The word “species” would *not* be an accurate translation of this term, since “kind” is a more general category, with several species within it.

Bible References:

Waiting

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- [18-08] The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- [21-08] A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

kingdom of Israel

Facts:

The term “kingdom of Israel” refers to the northern part of the nation of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many of Isaelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [kingdom](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-11]** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God.
- **[20-02]** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-04]** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.

Judah, kingdom of Judah

Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah, kingdom](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-07]** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-13]** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.
- **[20-05]** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.
- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.

- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

king

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

know, knowledge, make known

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to the young of a sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “the young of a sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-07]** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **[24-06]** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **[45-08]** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.

- **[48-08]** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **[48-09]** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

lament, lamentation

Definition:

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to lament” could be translated as, “to deeply mourn” or “to wail in grief” or “to be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

Bible References:

Waiting

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- Ordinary oil lamps were usually made out of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval-shaped, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament.
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was also thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#), [fir](#), [Phoenicia](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Levite, Levi

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple, Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

light

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light,” and there is no darkness in him.
- Light and darkness are completely opposite. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he is “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world, by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

like, likeness

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression, “the likeness of” could be translated as, “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression, “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as, “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or “to be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as “to be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [perish](#), [perishing](#), [perishable](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lion

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

livestock

Facts:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used for production of products such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This could also be translated as, “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [donkey](#), [mule](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [horse](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#),

Bible References:

Waiting

loins

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: [Euphemism](#))
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as, “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [gird](#), [offspring](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Lord

Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

Facts:

In the Old Testament, “Lord Yahweh” is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

- The term “Lord” is a divine title and “Yahweh” is God’s personal name.
- “Yahweh” is also often combined with the term “God” to form “Yahweh God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If some form of “Yahweh” is used for the translation of God’s personal name, the terms “Lord Yahweh” and “Yahweh God” can be translated literally. Also consider how the term “Lord” is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
- Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as “Yahweh Lord.” Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title “Lord” come before or after “Yahweh”?
- “Yahweh God” could also be rendered as “God who is called Yahweh” or “God who is the Living One” or “I am, who is God.”
- If the translation follows the tradition of rendering “Yahweh” as “Lord” or “LORD,” the term “Lord Yahweh” could be translated as “Lord God” or “God who is the Lord.” Other possible translations could be, “Master LORD” or “God the LORD.”
- The term “Lord Yahweh” should *not* be rendered as “Lord LORD” because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lots, casting lots

Definition:

A “lot” is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. “Casting lots” referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

- Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
- Some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
- As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
- The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus’ robe.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “drawing lots” or “rolling lots.” Make sure the translation of “cast” does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- Depending on the context, the term “lot” could also be translated as “marked stone” or “pottery piece” or “stick” or “piece of straw.”
- If a decision is made “by lot” this could be translated as, “by drawing (or throwing) lots.”

(See also: [Elizabeth](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

love

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, ”**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08]”The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, ”This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10]”Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

lowly, lowliness

Definition:

The terms “lowly” and “lowliness” refer to being poor or having low status. This term can also have the meaning of being humble.

- Jesus humbled himself to the lowly position of becoming a human being and serving others.
- His birth was lowly because he was born in a place where animals were kept, not in a palace.
- Having a lowly attitude is the opposite of being proud.
- Ways to translate “lowly” could include, “humble” or “of low status” or “unimportant.”
- The word “lowliness” could also be translated as “humility” or “little importance.”

(See also: [humble](#), [humility](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lust

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually refers to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term is used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could also be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or “to strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase “to lust after” could also be translated as “to wrongly desire” or “to think immorally about” or “to immorally desire.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lute, lyre

Definition:

The lute and the lyre are small, stringed, musical instruments that were used by the Israelites to worship God.

- A lyre looks like a small harp, with an open frame that the strings are strung across.
- A lute is very similar to a modern day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which the strings are strung.
- To play a lute or a lyre, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The lute, lyre, and harp are all played by strumming or plucking the strings.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

magic, magician

Definition:

The term “magic” refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A “magician” is someone who practices magic.

- In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh’s magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
- Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
- God commands his people to not do any of these practices of magic or divination.
- A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.

(See also: [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [sorcery](#), [sorcerer](#), [witchcraft](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

majesty

Definition:

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as, “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Manasseh

Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

- Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
- Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.

- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.
- King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.

- Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
- One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [Dan](#), [Ephraim](#), [Ezra](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [pagan](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

meal offering, grain offering

Definition:

A “meal offering” or “grain offering” was a sacrifice to God in the form of grain or bread made out of grain flour.

- The term “meal” refers to grain that has been ground up into flour.
- The flour was mixed with water or oil to make a flat bread. Sometimes oil was spread on top of the bread.
- This kind of offering was usually offered together with a burnt offering.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [grain](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

Facts:

In the Bible, the “Great Sea” or “western sea” refers to what is now called the “Mediterranean Sea,” which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the “western sea.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [prosper](#), [prosperity](#), [prosperous](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Meshech

Facts:

Meshech is the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One Meshech was a son of Japheth.
- The other Meshech was a grandson of Shem.
- Meshech was also the name of a region of land, which was probably named after one of these men.
- The region of Meshech may have been located in part of what is now the country of Turkey.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Japheth](#), [Noah](#), [Shem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mind

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Moab, Moabite, Moabites

Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabites" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as, "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Judea](#), [Lot](#), [Ruth](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mock, ridicule, scoff at**Definition:**

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-12] Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- [39-05] The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- [39-12] The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- [40-04] Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- [40-05] The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Mount Hermon

Facts:

Mount Hermon is the name of the tallest mountain in Israel at the southern tip of the Lebanon mountain range.

- It is located north of the Sea of Galilee, at the northern border between Israel and Syria.
- Other names given to Mount Hermon by other people groups were “Mount Sirion” and “Mount Senir.”
- Mount Hermon has three major peaks. The tallest peak is around 2,800 meters high.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mourn, mourning

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively, to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

name

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Sometimes the name Naphtali is used to refer to the land where the tribe lived. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. It was also on the western border of the Sea of Chinnereth.
- This tribe is mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asher](#), [Dan](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- The term “nation” usually includes the idea of a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” can be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” is used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” is also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as, “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. This "Babylonian Exile" lasted 70 years.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted dreams that King Nebuchadnezzar had.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Meshael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [arrogant](#), [Azariah](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Hananiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Mishael](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **[20-06]** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **[20-08]** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **[20-09]** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that this southern region is not the same location as the present day Negev Desert.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and became his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Beersheba](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Kadesh](#), [Kadesh-Barnea](#), [Meribah Kadesh](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Simeon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

neighbor

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

new moon**Definition:**

The term “new moon” in the Bible refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth.

- In ancient times, the new moon was used to mark the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this period of time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: [biblical time: month, earth, earthly, festival, horn, horns, sheep, ram, ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Nile River, River of Egypt

Facts:

The Nile is a very long and wide river in northeastern Africa. It is especially well-known as the main river of Egypt.

- The Nile River flows north through Egypt and into the Mediterranean Sea.
- Crops grow well in the fertile land on either side of the Nile River.
- Most Egyptians live near the Nile River since it is an important source of water and food crops.
- The Israelites lived in the land of Goshen which was very fertile because it was located along the Nile River.
- When Moses was a baby, his parents placed him in a basket among the reeds of the Nile to hide him from Pharaoh's men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Goshen](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the **Nile River**.
- **[09-04]** Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the **Nile River**.
- **[09-06]** When the boy's parents could no longer hide him, they put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the **Nile River** in order to save him from being killed.
- **[10-03]** God turned the **Nile River** into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

Noah

Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic boat in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic boat, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the boat, Noah and his family were kept safe and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **[03-04]** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[03-13]** Two months later God said to **Noah**, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.” So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

oak

Definition:

An oak is a tall, shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks for elderly people.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunk of certain oak trees could be as wide around as 6 meters.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many translations will have to say “oak tree” rather than just “oak.”
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, this could be translated as “an oak, which is a large shade tree like...,” then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
- See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oath, swear, swear by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- Often in a court of law, a witness gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together as in, “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day use of the word “swear” means to use foul language. This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated by “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include, “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

obey, obedient, obedience

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#), [principle](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

oil**Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oppress, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated by, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include, “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ox, oxen**Definition:**

An “ox” refers to a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen are depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Oxen working together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase “to be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [yoke](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

palm

Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Jerusalem](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

parable

Definition:

The term “parable” usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth.

- Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
- A parable could be used to reveal truth to his disciples while hiding that truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in Jesus.
- The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
- The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus’ comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus’ teachings.

(See also: [Parables](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

peace offering

Facts:

A “peace offering” was one of several sacrificial offerings that God commanded the Israelites to make. It is sometimes called the “thanksgiving offering” or “fellowship offering.”

- This offering involved sacrificing an animal that had no defects, sprinkling the animal’s blood on the altar, and burning the animal’s fat, as well as the rest of the animal separately.
- Added to this sacrifice was an offering of both unleavened and leavened bread, which was burned on top of the burnt offering.
- The priest and offerer of the sacrifice were permitted to share in eating the food that was offered.
- This offering symbolizes the fellowship of God with his people.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [fellowship](#), [fellowship offering](#), [grain offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase, “the people of” could be translated as, “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as, “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as, “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-02]** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **[21-02]** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **[42-08]** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **[42-10]** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **[48-11]** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **[50-03]** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term, “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says, “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- Other ways to translate “my people” when God says it, could include, “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

perfect

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault.” or “not having any faults.”

Bible References:

Waiting

perish, perishing, perishable

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Persia, Persians

Definition:

Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called “Persians.”
- Under King Cyrus’ decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: [Ahasuerus](#), [Artaxerxes](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Cyrus](#), [Esther](#), [Ezra](#), [Nehemiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as, “Pharaoh.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[08-08]****Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **[09-02]** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **[09-13]**”I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt’s gods.

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Ashkelon](#), [David](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pillar, column

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- AS a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [founded](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pit**Definition:**

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

plague

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as, “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [hail](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pledge

Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- “To pledge” could be translate as, “to formally commit to” or “to strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

possess, possession

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as, “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The terms “possess” could also be translated as, “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase, “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as, “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#),, [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [22-05] The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- [26-01] After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- [32-15] Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- [42-11] Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- [43-06] “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- [44-08] Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him".
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like, "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-07] "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- [19-07] So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- [21-07] An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

prince, princess

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

profane

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb “to profane” could be translated as “to treat as unholy” or “to be irreverent toward” or “to dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

profit, profitable

Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

refers to something good that is gained. Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

Bible References:

Waiting

promise

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as, “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as, “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-15]** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”?
- **[03-16]** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **[08-15]** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **[17-14]** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **[50-01]** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

prostitute, harlot, whore

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [sexual immorality](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression, “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as, “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as, “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as, “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression, “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as, “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-02]** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **[34-10]** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

proverb

Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate “proverb” could include, “wise saying” or “true word.”

(See also: [Solomon](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

province, provincial

Facts:

A province is a division or part of a nation or empire. The term “provincial” describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

- For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
- During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
- Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a “provincial official” or “provincial governor.”
- The terms “province” and “provincial” could also be translated as “region” and “regional.”

(See also: [Asia](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [EstherGalatia](#), [Galilee](#), [Galilean](#), [Judea](#), [Macedonia](#), [Medes](#), [Media](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

provoke

Facts:

The term “provoke” means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

- To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as “to cause to become angry” or “to anger.”
- When used in a phrase such as, “do not provoke him,” this could be translated as, “do not anger him” or “do not cause him to be angry” or “do not make him angry with you.”

(See also: [angry](#), [anger](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

punish, punishment

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **[48-06]** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- [49-11] Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as, “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as, “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase, “provided purification for sins” could be translated as, “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include, “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

queen

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- The term “queen mothAthaliaher” usually refers to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence, as was seen in the case of Athaliah who influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: [Ahasuerus](#), [Athaliah](#), [Esther](#), [king](#), [Persia](#), [Persians ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Sheba](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

quench

Definition:

The term “quench” means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

- This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term “quench” in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not “quench the Holy Spirit.” This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit to produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means to do something that prevents the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people.

(See also: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Rabbah

Definition:

Rabbah was the most important city of the Ammonite people.

- In battles against the Ammonites, the Israelites often attacked Rabbah.
- Israel's King David captured Rabbah as one of his last conquests.
- The modern-day city Amman Jordan is now where Rabbah used to be located.

(See also: [Ammon](#), [Ammonites](#), [Ammonites](#), [David](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

raise, rise, risen, arise, arose

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase, “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase, “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose” and “arose” are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen”!

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” can be translated as “to lift up” or “to make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as, “to cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead,” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as, “provide” or “appoint” or “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [exalt](#), [exaltation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-14] The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- [41-05] "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- [43-07] "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- [44-05] "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- [48-04] This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- [49-02] He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- [49-12] You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

rebel, rebellious, rebellion

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term “to rebel” could also be translated as “to disobey” or “to revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

:(See also: [authority](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [14-14] After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- [18-09] Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- [18-13] Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- [20-07] But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- [45-03] Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

rebuke

Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent the one who committed the wrong from involving themselves further in sin.
- This could be translated by, “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by, “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as, “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also [admonish](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reign

Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule as a king over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term ”reign is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel when they rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king” or “governing as king.”

(See also: [king](#), [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reject

Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by, “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression, “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as, “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of the people rejecting God’s commandments, this could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [stiff-necked](#), [stubborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rejoice

Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

remnant**Definition:**

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “leftover” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who survived attacks from outsiders and lived to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as, “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

Waiting

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means, “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term, “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as, “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “to turn away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [16-02] After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- [17-13] David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- [19-18] They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- [24-02] Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- [42-08] “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- [44-05] “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

report

Definition:

The term “to report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A report can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression, “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include, “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Waiting

shows the interruption of thought and

shows the interruption of thought and

reproach

Definition:

To reproach someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior. A reproach is the negative comment about the person.

- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.
- The word “reproach” can also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- “To reproach” could also be translated as, “to rebuke” or “to accuse” or “to criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [rebuke](#), [shame](#), [shameful](#), [ashamed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rest

Definition:

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animal rests, it can mean that they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as, “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- When God says, “they will not enter my rest,” this could be translated as, “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored, has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people are restored to their home country it means they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include: “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- An expression for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it means it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration,” could be translated as, “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Reuben

Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Leah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reveal, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- In the Bible, the term “reveal” is often used to describe how God has made himself known to people.
- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul says that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- The New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealing events that will happen in the end times. He revealed this to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include, “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be, “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in this word.
- The phrase, “where there is no revelation” could be translated as, “when God does not reveal himself to people” or “when God has not spoken to people” or “among people whom God has not communicated to.”

(See also: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

robe**Definition:**

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by both men and women. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short in length.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: [royal](#), [tunic](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rod

Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that is used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms, “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod is also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

royal

Definition:

The term “royal” describes people and things which are associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that can be called “royal” include a king’s clothing, palace, throne, or crown.
- A king or queen usually lives in a royal palace.
- A king wears special clothing, sometimes called “royal robes.” Often a king’s robes were colored purple, which was a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus are called a “royal priesthood.” Other ways to translate this could include, “priests who serve God the King” or “called to be priests for God the King.”
- The term “royal” could also be translated as “kingly” or “belonging to a king.”

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), [robe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ruin, ruins**Definition:**

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, “to ruin” could be translated as “to destroy” or “to spoil” or “to make useless” or “to break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Waiting

ruler, rulers, rule

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [rest](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **[26-02]** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **[41-03]** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made out of goat hair or camel hair.

- Clothing made out of sackcloth was uncomfortable for the person wearing it. It was worn as a way of showing mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could also be translated as, “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as, “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [ash](#), [ashes](#), [dust](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [mourn](#), [mourning](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- [05-06] "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- [05-09] God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- [17-06] David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- [48-06] Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- [48-08] But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- [49-11] Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Salt Sea, Dead Sea

Facts:

The Salt Sea (also called the Dead Sea) was located between southern Israel on the west and Moab on the east.

- The Jordan River flows south into the Salt Sea.
- Because it is smaller than most seas, this could be called “Salt Lake.”
- This sea has a high concentration of minerals (or “salts”) which means that nothing can live in its waters. That is where the name “Dead Sea” came from.
- In the Old Testament, this sea is also called the “Sea of Arabah” and the “Sea of Negev” because of its locations near the regions of Arabah and Negev.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ammon](#), [Ammonites](#), [Ammonites](#), [Arabah](#), , [Jordan River](#), [Moab](#), [Moabite](#), [Moabites](#), [Negev](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on the west and the Jordan River on the east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region and moved them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on the north and the region of Judea on the south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Galilee](#), [Galilean](#), [Judea](#), [Sharon](#), [Plain of Sharon](#), [kingdom of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-04]** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **[27-08]** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **[27-09]** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **[45-07]** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

sanctuary

Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” is often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as, “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used as a tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern day church.

(See also: [Biblical Money](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [sacred](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [tax](#), [taxes](#), [temple](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

sandal**Definition:**

A sandal is a simple flat-soled shoe held onto the foot with straps around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- A sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property by one man taking off a sandal and giving it to the other.
- Removing one's shoes or sandals was also a sign of respect and reverence, especially in God's presence.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which would have been the task of a lowly servant or slave.

Bible References:

Waiting

save, safe

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-08]** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **[12-05]** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **[16-17]** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **[44-08]** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **[47-11]** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

scepter

Definition:

The term “scepter” refers to an ornamental rod or staff held by a ruler, such as a king.

- Scepters were originally a branch of wood with carved decorations. Later scepters were also made of precious metals such as gold.
- The scepter was a symbol of royalty and authority which symbolized the honor and dignity associated with a king.
- In the Old Testament, God is described as having a scepter of righteousness. This is related to God ruling as king over his people.
- An Old Testament prophecy refers to the Messiah as a symbolic scepter that would come from Israel to rule over all nations.
- This could also be translated as, “ruling rod” or “king’s rod.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [king](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

scribe, expert in the Jewish law

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible to write or copy important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term “scribes” is also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees” and the two groups are frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [Pharisee](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

scroll

Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading it, people rolled it up using rods on the ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. This would prevent anyone else from opening the scroll and writing on it.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: [seal](#), [to seal](#), [synagogue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

seed

Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man or woman that combine to cause a baby to grow inside the woman.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared seeds to the Word of God being planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [offspring](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

seize**Definition:**

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” It could also be translated as, “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated as “overcome” or “suddenly come upon.”
- This term could also be translated as, “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression, “seized and slept with her” could be translated as, “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

send, send out, sent

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean “to cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as “send word” or “send a message” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently uses the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as, “commissioned me” or “caused me to come” or “appointed me to go.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **[29-03]** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **[35-06]** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **[47-04]** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **[50-04]** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

serve, service**Definition:**

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”¹[comment_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940](#)
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means to be separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose.

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- The term “sanctify” means to set apart a person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include, “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

shame, shameful, ashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sheba

Facts:

In ancient times, Sheba was an ancient civilization or region of land that was located somewhere in southern Arabia.

- The region or country of Sheba was probably located near what is now the present-day country of Yemen or Ethiopia.
- Its inhabitants were probably descendants of Ham.
- The Queen of Sheba came to visit King Solomon when she heard the fame of his riches and wisdom.
- There are also several men named “Sheba” listed in genealogies in the Old Testament. It is possible that the name of the region of Sheba came from one of these men.
- The city of Beersheba is shortened to Sheba one time in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), [Beersheba](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Ethiopian](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sheep, ram, ewe

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. The male sheep is called a “ram.” The female sheep is called a “ewe.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially males and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[17-02]** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **[30-03]** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **[38-08]** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

shepherd, to shepherd

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- In the Old Testament, God is called the “shepherd” of his people because he takes care of all their needs and protects them. He also leads and guides them.
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus calls himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also refers to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” is used to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The term “pastor” is the same word as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as, “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include, “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The expression, “to shepherd (a flock)” could be translated as, “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-11] Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- [17-02] David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- [23-06] That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- [23-08] The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- [30-03] To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

shield

Definition:

A shield is an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. "To shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval in shape and were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal that were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Paul also talks about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that believing in Jesus, and living out that faith in obedience to God, will protect believers from spiritual attacks from Satan.

(See also: [faith](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sidon, Sidonians

Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The “Sidonians” were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and the immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Noah](#), [Phoenicia](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Tyre](#), [Tyrians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

siege, besiege**Definition:**

The term “siege” refers to when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from being able to receive any supplies of food and water. To “besiege” a city means to cause that city to be under a siege.

- When Babylon came to attack Israel, they used a siege tactic on Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege attack, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- The expression “lay siege” means to perform a siege. It has the same meaning as “besiege.”
- The term “besieged” has the same meaning as the expression “under siege.” Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

Bible References:

Waiting

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can be reminders of something that was promised:
 - The rainbow God created in the sky was a sign to remind people that he would never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - An angel told shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The miracles done by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
 - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as, “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Simeon

Facts:

In the Bible, there are several men named Simeon.

- In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) and Leah was named Simeon. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Simeon occupied the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan, an area that was part of Judah's inheritance.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [dedicate](#), [dedication](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- * **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- * **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- * **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- * **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- * **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- * **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- * **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- * **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- * **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

sin offering

Definition:

The “sin offering” was one of several sacrifices that God required the Israelites to offer.

- This offering involved sacrificing a bull, burning its blood and fat on the altar, and taking the rest of the animal’s body and burning it on the ground outside the Israelite camp.
- The complete burning up of this animal sacrifice shows how holy God is and how terrible sin is.
- The Bible teaches that in order for there to be a cleansing from sin, blood must be shed to pay the cost for the sin that was committed.
- Animal sacrifices could not permanently bring about forgiveness of sin.
- Jesus’ death on the cross paid the penalty for sin, for all time. He was the perfect sin offering.

(See also: [altar](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sister

Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the New Testament, “sister” is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase, “brothers and sisters” is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book, Song of Songs, “sister” refers to a lover or a spouse.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include, “sister in Christ” or “spiritual sister” or “woman who believes in Jesus” or “fellow woman believer.”
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for “believer,” this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of “loved one” or “dear one.”

(See also: [brother in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, spirit, spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

slay, slain**Definition:**

The term “slay” means to kill a person or animal. Often it means to kill in a forceful or violent way.

- When referring to an animal or to a large number of people, the term “slaughter” is another term that is often used.
- The word “kill” could also be used to translated this term.
- The phrase “the slain” could also be translated as “the slain people” or “the people who were killed.”

(See also: [slaughter](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

slander, slanderer

Definition:

To slander means to say negative, defaming things about another person.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- Some of the words translated as “slander” mean: “speak against” or “spread an evil report” or “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: [blasphemy](#), [blaspheme](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

slaughter

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it.

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter where 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies. because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression, “the slaughter was very great” could also be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include, “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [slay](#), [slain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well-watered and fertile, so that is where Lot chose to live when he first settled in Caanan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gomorrah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

son, son of

Definition:

The term “son” refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone’s male offspring or to an adopted son.

- “Son” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes “sons of God” is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning, “having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include, “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah, son of Zadok” and “Azariah, son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **[04-09]** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **[09-07]** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **[11-06]** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **[26-04]** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Son of Man, son of man

Definition:

The title, “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” can be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It can also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addresses Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he says, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man,” this could be translated as, “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in, “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus is talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as, “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

sow, sower, plant

Definition:

To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively as in, “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result. And if a person does good to others, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term “sow” could also be translated as “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include, “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words depending on what is being planted.
- The expression, “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as, “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [reap](#), [reaper](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

spear

Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the “javelin” or “lance.”
- Make sure that the translation of “spear” is different from the translation of “sword,” which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: [prey, to prey on](#), [Rome, Roman](#), [sword](#), [warrior](#), [soldier](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-03]** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **[40-07]** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **[45-05]** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **[48-07]** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

splendor

Definition:

The term “splendor” refers to extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word “splendor” can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor, referring to their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of the people, including rich clothing, gold and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as, “magnificent beauty” or “amazing majesty” or “kingly greatness.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [majesty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

staff

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, which was different from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

statute, statutes

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” or ” command” or “law” or “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stone, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. The term “stoning” refers to throwing stones and larger rocks at a person in order to kill him.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- The New Testament tells of a time that Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed because of testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [crime](#), [criminal](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stronghold, fortress, fortified

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses are manmade structures with defensive walls. They can also be natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortify strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that make it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” refers to something that someone wrongly trusts in for security, such as a false god or other thing that is worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as, “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stumbling block, stone of stumbling

Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- In the New Testament, this word literally referred to a stick or other object that would trigger a trap or snare to snap shut on an animal that stumbled over it.
- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as, “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See: [stumble](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sulfur

Definition:

Sulfur is a yellow-colored substance that becomes a burning liquid when it is set on fire.

- Sulfur also has a very strong smell that is like the odor of rotten eggs.
- In the Bible, burning sulfur is a symbol of God's judgment on ungodly and rebellious people.
- During the time of Lot, God rained down fire and sulfur on the evil cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.
- In some English Bible versions, sulfur is referred to as "brimstone," which literally means "burning stone."

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of this term could include, "yellow stone that burns" or "burning yellowish rock."

(See: [Gomorrah](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [Lot](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#), [Sodom](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sword

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Tamar

Facts:

Tamar is the name of several women in the Old Testament. It is also the name of several cities or other places in the Old Testament.

- Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.
- One of King David's daughters was also named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
- Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
- A city called "Hazezon Tamar" is the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a "Baal Tamar." There are also general references to a place called "Tamar" which may be different from the cities.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Amnon](#), [David](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Tarshish

Facts:

Tarshish was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a city.

- One of Japheth's grandsons was named Tarshish.
- Tarshish was also the name of one of the wise men of King Ahashuerus.
- The city of Tarshish was a very prosperous port city, whose ships carried valuable products to buy, sell, or trade.
- This city was associated with Tyre and is thought to have been a Phoenician city that was somewhat distant from Israel, perhaps on the southern coast of Spain.
- The Old Testament prophet Jonah boarded a ship bound for the city of Tarshish instead of obeying God's command to go preach to Nineveh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Esther](#), [Japheth](#), [Jonah](#), [Nineveh](#), [Ninevite](#), [Phoenicia](#), [wise men](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” refers to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it refers only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- During the reign of King Solomon he built the Temple, which was the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- When it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations will translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it clear what is being referred to.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [court Zion](#), [Mount Zion house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-06] David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- [18-02] In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.

- [20-13] When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- [25-04] Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- [40-07] When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

terror, terrify**Definition:**

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” (or “terrors”) is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include, “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

threshold

Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as, “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), [gate bar](#), [tent](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

throne

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a king sits to decide important matters and to listen to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a king has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the king, his reign, or his power. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God is often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus is described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tomb, grave, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the word for a tomb or a grave can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include, “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [buried](#), [burial](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[32-04]** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **[37-06]** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **[37-07]** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **[40-09]** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **[41-04]** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **[41-05]** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

tongue

Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of “tongue” in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- The expression, “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire.
- In the expression “my tongue rejoices,” the term “tongue” refers to the whole person. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The phrase “lying tongues” refers to a person’s voice or speech. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated by “language” or “spiritual language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as, “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as, “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as, “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as, “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The terms “transgress” and “transgression” refer to breaking a command, rule, or moral code.

- Figuratively, “transgression” can also be described as “crossing a line,” that is, going beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression”, “sin”, “iniquity”, and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- “To transgress” could be translated as “to sin” or “to disobey” or “to rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance. (See: [parallelism](#))

(See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trial**Definition:**

The term “trial” refers to a situation in which something or someone is “tried” or tested.

- A trial can be a judicial hearing in which evidence is given to prove whether a person is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
- The term “trial” can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Other words for this are “testing” or “temptation.”
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: [tempt](#), [temptation](#), [test](#), [innocent](#), [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tribe

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tribute**Definition:**

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and good relations between their nations.

- A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers might pay a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include other things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: [gold](#), [king](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [tax](#), [taxes](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trumpet

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [earth](#), [earthly](#), [horn](#), [horns](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

The term “trust” refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A “trustworthy” person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include, “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as, “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: , [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Tubal

Facts:

There are several men in the Old Testament who had the name “Tubal.”

- One man named Tubal was one of the sons of Japheth.
- A man named “Tubal-Cain” was the son of Lamech and descendant of Cain.
- Tubal is also the name of a people group mentioned by the prophets Isaiah and Ezekiel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cain](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Ezekiel](#), [Isaiah](#), [Japheth](#), [Lamech](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

turn, turn away, turn back

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called “Tyrians.”

- Part of the city was also located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the coast.
- Because of its location and valuable natural resources such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers for building a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also gave King Solomon wood and skilled laborers for building the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Phoenicia](#), [Sidon](#), [Sidonians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression, “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include, “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unclean

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unholy](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Definition:

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as, “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as, “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as, “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unjust, unjustly, injustice

Definition:

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair, and often, harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise. The “Festival of Unleavened Bread” is part of the Passover celebration.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- For this reason, the week leading up to Passover is called the “Festival of Unleavened Bread.”
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [yeast](#), [leaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vain, vanity

Definition:

The term “vain” describes something that is useless or has no purpose. Vain things are empty and worthless.

- The term “vanity” refers to worthlessness or emptiness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
- In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
- If something was done “in vain,” it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything.
- To “believe in vain” means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty” or “useless” or “hopeless” or “worthless” or “meaningless.”
- The phrase “in vain” could be translated as, “without result” or “with no result” or “for no reason” or “with no purpose.”
- The term “vanity” could be translated as, “pride” or “nothing worthwhile” or “hopelessness.”

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [worthy](#), [worth](#), [unworthy](#), [worthless](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

veil

Definition:

The term “veil” usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to cover the head or face so that it cannot be seen.

- Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
- In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
- The verb “to veil” means to cover something with a veil.
- In some English versions, the word “veil” is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But “curtain” is a more accurate term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “veil” could also be translated as, “thin, cloth covering” or “cloth covering” or “head covering.”
- In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: [Moses](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means, “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as, “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

virgin

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Mary](#), [the mother of Jesus](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-09]** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **[22-04]** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **[22-05]** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **[49-01]** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

vision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as, “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as, “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like, “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

voice

Definition:

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as, “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#), [splendor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

VOW**Definition:**

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

- After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
- The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
- Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
- But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
- This word should be translated differently than "oath."

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

walk

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

waste, wasteland

Definition:

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a “wasteland” or a “waste” refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term “waste away” is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To “lay waste” a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a “wasteland” could be “desert” or “wilderness.” But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

Bible References:

Waiting

watchtower, tower

Definition:

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [watch](#), [watchman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

water, waters

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as, “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as, “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), [chaff](#), [grain](#), [seed](#), [thresh](#), [threshing](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-05] She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- [18-01] When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- [23-09] Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

woe**Definition:**

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says, “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression, “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “(The people in) that city will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression, “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

Waiting

wolf, wolves, wild dogs

Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

- Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
- In the Bible, the term “wolves” is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
- This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

Translation Suggestion

- This term could be translated as “wild dog” or “wild animal.”
- Other names for wild dogs could be “jackal” or “coyote.”
- When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as, “evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep.”

(See also: [believer](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [false prophet](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [teach](#), [teaching](#), [teacher](#), [taught](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

womb**Definition:**

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [Euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

Waiting

word**Definition:**

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, ”The seed is the **word of God**.

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

worship

Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally, “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [praise](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **[14-02]** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, “**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.””
- **[26-02]** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **[47-01]** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as, “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase, “is worth more than” could be translated as, “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as, “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See: [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-14]** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **[13-05]** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

yoke

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zadok

Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [David](#), [Jotham](#), [Nehemiah](#), [reign](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

zeal, zealous**Definition:**

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Zebulun

Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel

- The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
- Sometimes the name “Zebulun” is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Leah](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

translationAcademy

First, Second or Third Person

This answers the question: What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*
- *Pronouns*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you”.

Description

Definitions

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people uses the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “*Your servant* used to keep *his* father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
”... Do you have an arm like *God’s*? Can you thunder with a voice like *him*? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful. Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to *my Lord*, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *his* brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first or second person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
 - **But David said to Saul, “*Your servant* used to keep *his* father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
 - But David said to Saul, “*I, your servant*, used to keep *my* father’s sheep.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”).
 - **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like *God’s*? Can you thunder with a voice like *him*?”** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
 - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like *mine*? Can you thunder with a voice like *me*?”
 - **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *his* brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
 - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *your* brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Forms of You*

Abstract Nouns

This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

Reason this is a translation issue: The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness* with *contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - ”Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - ”But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - ”Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
 - ”Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”
- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.**
(1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

Active or Passive

This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built by my father in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

Apostrophe

This answers the question: What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Mountains of Gilboa, Let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling the mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Description

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Reason this is a translation issue: Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to.

Examples from the Bible

Come now, you who are rich, cry out loud because of the miseries coming upon you.
(James 5:1 ULB)

James wrote to the church, which was made up of poor people, as if rich people could hear him, showing his anger about what rich people were doing.

The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, '... on you they will burn men's bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Have the speaker express his feelings toward the thing or idea without speaking directly to it.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, you may preserve the meaning of the apostrophe and let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him.

- **The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, ' ... on you they will burn men's bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)**
 - "The man of God said, "This is what Yahweh says *about this altar*' ... They will burn men's bones on *it*."

Double Negatives

This answers the question: What are double negatives?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21)

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Most languages express the negative near the verb or at the beginning or end of the sentence. Some languages also have prefixes or suffixes that express the negative as in “*unhappy*,” “*impossible*,” and “*useless*.” Some languages can also express the negative with pronouns like “none,” “nothing,” and “no one,” with adverbs like “nowhere,” and with prepositions like “without.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did *not* happen *without* the taking of an oath, (Hebrews 7:20 ULB)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” It emphasizes the negative, and means “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages a double negative simply means a positive. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is attractive.”
- In some language the double negative weakens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is a little bit attractive.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative often strengthens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is very attractive.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
 - **For we do *not* have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
 - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses”
 - **so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
 - “so that they may be fruitful”
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “certainly.”
 - **Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished*** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
 - “Be sure of this—wicked people will *certainly* be punished”
 - **All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)

- "All things were made through him. He made *absolutely* everything that has been made."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Verbs*

Doublet

This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- ”You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- ”King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- ”a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

Ellipsis

This answers the question: What is ellipsis?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
 - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

Euphemism

This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
 - “whether we are alive or dead”

Order of Events

This answers the question: Why are the events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Writing Styles*
- *Verbs*

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just wrote about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

Examples from the Bible

But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULB)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)

This sounds like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULB)

The seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.

2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See: the section on Aspect on [Verbs](#))
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

- **²⁰ But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. ²¹ Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized.** (Luke 3:20-21 ULB)
 - ²⁰ "But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. ²¹ *Before John was put in prison, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.*"
- **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULB)
 - "Who is worthy to open the scroll *after* breaking its seals?"

2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

- **⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)
 - ⁸ "Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...¹⁰ But Joshua *had commanded* the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."

3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

- **⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)
 - ⁸⁻¹⁰ "Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets..."
- **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULB)

- “Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?”

You may also want to watch the 6 minute video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/Fp9qgVoTwss>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AljK2GUdXxc>).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Background Information*
- *Connecting Words*
- *Introduction of a New Event*
- *Verse Bridges*

Exclamations

This answers the question: What are ways of translating exclamations?

In order to understand this, it would be good to read

- [Sentence Types](#)

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULB and UDB, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULB)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue: Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence shows strong emotion.

Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULB)

The word "Ah" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULB)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULB)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”
2. Use a word word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

- **You worthless person!** (Matthew 5:22 ULB)
 - “You *are* such a worthless person!”
- **Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!** (Romans 11:33 ULB)
 - “Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God *are* so deep!”

2. Use an exclamation word from from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word “wow” below shows that they were astonished. The expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

- **They were absolutely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.”** (Mark 7:36 ULB)
 - “They were absolutely astonished, saying, “*Wow!* He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.” ”
- **Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
 - “*Oh no,* Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

- **Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
 - Lord Yahweh, *what will happen to me?* For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”
 - *Help,* Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!

4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

- **How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering!** (Romans 11:33 ULB)
 - “His judgements are *so* unsearchable and his ways are *far* beyond discovering!”

4. Tell how the person felt.

- **Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
 - "Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. *He was terrified* and said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULB)

Exclusive “We”

This answers the question: What is exclusive “we”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but *not* you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow



highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we”. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

Forgive *us our* sins (Luke 11:4 ULB)

God has no sins to forgive; so languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Inclusive “We”*

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

When Masculine Words Include Women

This answers the question: How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*
- *Generic Noun Phrases*

In some parts of the Bible, the words “men,” “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. In other parts of the Bible, those words include both men and women. When the writer meant both men and women, translators need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can be used to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says ‘brothers’ when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or women. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes *his* father rejoice
but a foolish child brings grief to *his* mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that.

Examples from the Bible

The wise *man* dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)

This verse does not contrast men and women. What it says is true of both men and women.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, *he* must deny *himself*, take up *his* cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULB)

Jesus was not talking about only men. What he said was true of both men and women.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, 'If a *man* dies, having no children, *his brother* must marry *his* wife and have a child for *his brother*.' (Matthew 22:24 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

- **The wise *man* dies just like the fool dies.** (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)
 - "The wise *person* dies just like the fool dies."
 - "Wise *people* die just like fools die."

2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

- **For we do not want you to be ignorant, *brothers*, about the troubles we had in Asia** (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
 - "For we do not want you to be ignorant, *brothers and sisters*, about the troubles we had in Asia" (2 Corinthians 1:8)

3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

- **If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.** (Matthew 16:24 ULB) - English speakers can change the singular pronouns “he” “himself” and “his” to plural pronouns “they” “themselves” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.
 - "If people want to follow me, *they* must deny *themselves*, take up *their* cross, and follow me."

Hendiadys

This answers the question: What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Parts of Speech*

Hendiadys is when a speaker makes a single idea more forceful by connecting two nouns or adjectives with “and” when one of the words actually describes the other.

Description

Hendiadys is when a speaker expresses a single idea by connecting two words with “and” when one of the words actually describes the other.

his own *kingdom and glory* (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a kingdom of glory or a glorious kingdom.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys has an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Some languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that one word describes the other.

Examples from the Bible

for I will give you *words and wisdom* (Luke 21:15 ULB)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

if you are willing and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - "For I will give you *wise words*"
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory***. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own glorious kingdom*."

2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - "For I will give you *words of wisdom*"
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory***. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom of glory*."

3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

- **if you are *willing and obedient*** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)
 - "if you are *willingly obedient*"

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

- **if you are *willing and obedient*** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB) - The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."
 - "if you *obey willingly*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Doublet*

Hyperbole

This answers the question: What is hyperbole?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
 - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

Hypothetical Situations

This answers the question: What is a hypothetical situation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Writing Styles*

“If the sun stopped shining...” “What if the sun stopped shining...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...” “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they’ll understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

1. Hypothetical situation in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent.

2. Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that people do not mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, *if* he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

3. Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

4. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

The Israelites said to them, “*If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.* For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. *I wish that you were either cold or hot!* (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus' wished that the people were either hot or cold. He was rebuking them.

Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

Also watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/GfFX1wWjJhA>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/jIbY2ikNtHU>).

Idiom

This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
 - “I am crying my eyes out”

Inclusive “We”

This answers the question: What is inclusive “we”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.”

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let *us* now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to *us*.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let *us* go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/PrMC2jdqY0A>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/2K2gFIPMFVk>).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Exclusive “We”*

Irony

This answers the question: What is irony and how can I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which a person pretends to say what he really believes, when in fact he is saying what someone else believes, and he does it in a way that shows that other belief is wrong. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief is foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous. He was speaking to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous and who were criticizing him for welcoming sinners. Jesus implied that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will not realize that the speaker is ridiculing the idea.

Examples from the Bible

After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "*Prophecy! Who is the one who hit you?*" (Luke 22:64ULB)

The fact that the soldiers were beating Jesus shows us that they did not believe that he was a prophet. They knew that other people thought that Jesus was a prophet, and they may have also thought that Jesus himself claimed to be a prophet. When they told him to prophesy, they were using irony. They were mocking him and implying that if he really was a prophet, then he should be able to tell who hit him without seeing them.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had any knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not even speak, but he did this to mock the idols and rebuke the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
 Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
"the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrase above emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many many years later.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here is another strategy.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is *not* found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)
 - "After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "You call yourself a prophet. Then prophesy! Who hit you?"
 - "After blindfolding him, they said to him, "Prophesy! If you were really a prophet, you would be able to tell us who hit you."
- **I did not come to call *righteous people* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
 - "I did not come to call *people who think that they are righteous* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance."

2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)

- “After blindfolding him, they said to him, *”You are not a prophet because you cannot even tell us who struck you!”* ”
- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)
 - ” ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols *cannot bring us their own arguments or even come forward to declare to us what will happen*. We cannot hear them because *they cannot speak* to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

***Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!*** (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

- ”Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? *You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation!*”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Litotes*

Litotes

This answers the question: What is litotes?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Description

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who speak some languages do not use litotes and would fail to understand that the statement is strengthened. They might think that it is weakened or even canceled.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very worthwhile.

All things were made through him. *Without him was not one thing* made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using litotes John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very concerned.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are *not the least* among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*,** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
 - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you *did much good*."
- **Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
 - "Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
 - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter."

Merism

This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

Metaphor

This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

Metonymy

This answers the question: What is a metonymy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
 - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

Nominal Adjectives

This answers the question: How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*

Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds, (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last; (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

...the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and *the poor* must not give less.
(Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use adjectives this way.
- Readers may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about many people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are *the meek* (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

“The meek” here are people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.
 - **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
 - "The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *righteous people*."
 - **Blessed are *the meek*** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
 - "Blessed are *people who are meek*"

Parables

This answers the question: What is a parable?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A parable is a short story that makes truth easy to understand and hard to forget.

Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach a truth. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach a truth. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often have figures of speech such as simile and metaphor.

Then he also told them a parable. “Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?” (Luke 6:39 ULB)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

Examples from the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULB)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULB)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

Translation Strategies

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown things in it, you can replace the unknown things with things that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown things in it, you can replace the unknown things with things that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same.

- **Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand”.** (Mark 4:21 ULB) - If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.
 - Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a *high shelf*.”
- **Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”** (Matthew 13:31-32) - To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.
 - “Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and *planted* in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” ”

2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

- **Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand”.** (Mark 4:21 ULB)
 - *”Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly. “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand.” ”* (Mark 4:21 ULB)
- **He said, “To what can we compare the kingdom of God and what parable can we use to explain it? It is like a mustard seed, which when it is sown it is the smallest of all the seeds sown that lay upon the ground. Yet when it is sown, it grows up and becomes greater than all the garden plants. It puts out great branches, so even the birds of heaven can make their nests under its shade.”** (Mark 4:30-32 ULB)

- *”He told them a story about how the Kingdom of God grows. “To what can we compare the kingdom of God and what parable can we use to explain it? It is like a mustard seed, which when it is sown it is the smallest of all the seeds sown that lay upon the ground. Yet when it is sown, it grows up and becomes greater than all the garden plants. It puts out great branches, so even the birds of heaven can make their nests under its shade.”*

Parallelism

This answers the question: What is parallelism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

Personification

This answers the question: What is personification?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- ”sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Pronouns

This answers the question: What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*

Pronouns are words that people use instead of a noun to refer to someone or something. Some examples are I, you, he, it, this, that, himself, someone.

Description

Pronouns are words that people use instead of a noun to refer to someone or something. There are six different types of pronouns.

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give.

Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
 - Inclusive “We”
 - Exclusive “We”
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
 - Forms of You
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

- **John saw *himself* in the mirror.** - The word “himself” refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- ***Who* built the house?**

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house *that* John built.** The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- **I saw the man *who* built the house.** The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen *this* here?**
- **Who is *that* over there?**

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to *anyone*.**
- ***Someone* fixed it, but I do not know *who*.**

Rhetorical Question

This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

Simile

This answers the question: What is a simile?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
 - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
 - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Synecdoche

This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
 - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

Forms of You

This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular*
- *Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural “you” for computer (see <http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc>).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular to a Crowd*

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal ‘You’ on the **computer** or on the **tablet/phone**. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- *Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal*

Biblical Distance

This answers the question: How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Decimal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

Original Measure	Centimeters	Meters
handbreadth	8 centimeters	.08 meters
span	23 centimeters	.23 meters
cubit	46 centimeters	.46 meters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters	.54 meters
stadia	-	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)

1. Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half kubits*; its width will be *one kubit and a half*; and its height will be *one kubit and a half*."

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*; its width will be *0.7 meter*; and its height will be *0.7 meter*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *3 3/4 feet*; its width will be *2 1/4 feet*; and its height will be *2 1/4 feet*."

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half cubits (one meter)*; its width will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*; and its height will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*¹; its width will be *0.7 meter*²; and its height will be *0.7 meter*." The footnotes would look like:
 - ^[1] one meter two and a half cubits
 - ^[2] one cubit and a half

Biblical Money

This answers the question: How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The one owed *five hundred denali*, and the other owed *fifty denali*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

- "The one owed *five hundred silver coins*, and the other owed *fifty silver coins*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

- "The one owed *five hundred days' wages*, and the other owed *fifty days' wages*."

4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*."² (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:

- ^[1] five hundred days's wages
- ^[2] fifty day's wages

5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
 - ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Copy or Borrow Words](#)
- [Translate Unknowns](#)

Biblical Volume

This answers the question: How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Decimal Numbers*

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain).

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	kor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	letheke	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

- **For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULB)

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one *bat*, and one *homer* of seed will yield only an *efa*."

2. Use the measurements given in the UDB. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *twenty-two liters*, and *ten baskets* of seed will yield only *one basket*."
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *twenty-two liters* and *220 liters* of seed will yield only *twenty-two liters*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and *six and a half bushels* of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *one bath (six gallons)*, and *one homer (six and a half bushels)* of seed will yield only *an ephah (twenty quarts)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in footnotes.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only twenty-two liters²." The footnotes would look like:

- ^[1]one bath
- ^[2]one home
- ^[3]one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULB and UDB, add the word “measure.”

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty measures* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty measures* of wine, there were only *twenty*.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty measures* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty measures* of wine, there were only *twenty*.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
 - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
 - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty amounts* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty amounts* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
 - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty baskets* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty jars* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

- "whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty liters* of grain, there were only *ten liters*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty liters* of wine, there were only *twenty liters*."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Fractions*
- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

Biblical Weight

This answers the question: How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The exact weights are uncertain, but the approximate amounts are:

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	-	0.57 kilograms
mina	50 shekels	570 grams	0.57 kilograms
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

- **The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents and 2,400 shekels*.** (Exodus 38:29 ULB)

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents and 2,400 sekels*."

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *2,400 kilograms*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *5,300 pounds*"

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents and 2,400 shekels*.¹" The footnote would look like:
 - ^[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Decimal Numbers](#)
- [Fractions](#)

Fractions

This answers the question: What are fractions and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Numbers*

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to parts of a thing or to groups within a larger group of people or things. Some languages do not have this kind of number.

Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

For the drink offering, you must offer *a third* of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULB)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to divide a hin container into three parts and fill up only one part and offer that.

a third of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULB)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have “-th” added to the end of the number.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
four	fourth
ten	tenth
one hundred	one hundredth
one thousand	one thousandth

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
two	half
three	third
five	fifth

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they don’t use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

Now to *one half* of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given them an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other *half*, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULB)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “one half of the tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill *a third* of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULB)

If all the people were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare *a fourth* of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULB)

They were to divide a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare one of them.

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UDB.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

- ***A third of the ocean became red like blood*** (Revelation 8:8 ULB)
 - ”It was like they *divided* the ocean *into three parts*, and *one part* of the ocean became blood.”
- ***then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.*** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
 - ”then you must *divide* an ephah of fine flour *into ten parts* and mix *three of those parts* with half a hin of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.”

2. For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- ***two thirds of a shekel*** (1 Samuel 13:21 ULB)
 - *"eight grams of silver"* (1 Samuel 13:21 UDB)
- ***three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.*** (Numbers 15:9, ULB)
 - *"6.5 liters of finely ground flour mixed with about two liters of olive oil."* (Numbers 15:9 UDB)

3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

- ***three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.*** (Numbers 15:9, ULB)
 - *"six quarts of fine flour mixed with two quarts of oil."*

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Decimal Numbers*

Hebrew Months

This page answers the question: What are the Hebrew months?

In order to understand this page, it would be good to read

- [Ordinal Numbers](#)

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months they use.
2. Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
3. Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
4. The scripture may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile) - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in *the month of Abib*. (Exodus 13:4 ULB)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day *in the first month of the year*, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULB)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

1. Tell the the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- **At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of Abib*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.** (Exodus 23:15 ULB)
- **It will always be a statute for you that in *the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work** (Leviticus 16:29 ULB)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the first month of the year*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."

2. Use the months that people know.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of March*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."
- "It will always be a statute for you that *on the day I choose in late September* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

3. State clearly what season the month occurred.

- "It will always be a statute for you that *in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work"

4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

- "It will always be a statute for you that in *the day I choose in early autumn* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

How to Translate Names

This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Paul*”¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
 - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) *
 “But __Saul__, who is also called __Paul__, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” * **It came about in Iconium that __Paul__ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue**
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

Numbers

This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents),* and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived *130* years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived *930* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Ordinal Numbers

This answers the question: What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Numbers*

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the

order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The *first* lot went to Jehoiarib, the *second* to Jedaiah, the *third* to Harim, the *fourth* to Seorim, ... the *twenty-third* to Delaiah, and the *twenty-fourth* to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The *first* row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The *second* row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The *third* row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The *fourth* row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably be the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *another* to Jedaiah, *another* to Harim,... *another* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *the next* to Jedaiah, *the next* to Harim,... *the next* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
- **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *the first* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the second* river is Gihon. This one flows**

throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the third* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. *The fourth* river is the Euphrates.(Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)

- "A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *one* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the next* river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the next* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The *last* river is the Euphrates."

2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

- "They cast *twenty-four* lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Fractions*

Symbolic Action

This answers the question: What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. An action does not have to actually be performed; it may simply be referred to.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes.”

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and *knock*. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people want someone to welcome them into their home, they stand at the door and knock on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
 - "Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him."
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
 - "Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in."

2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
 - "Jairus showed Jesus great respect."
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
 - "Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in."

3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

- “Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.”

Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly *ravenous wolves*.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals*."
- **We have here only five *loaves of bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
 - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
 - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
 - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*

Verse Bridges

This answers the question: Why are some verse numbers combined, such as “3-5” or “17-18”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Structure of the Bible*

Sometimes in the ULB or UDB (an in other versions, too) two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. The numbers are written like this because the information in the verses was rearranged.

Description

In rare cases, you will see in the Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB) or the Unlocked Dynamic Bible (UDB) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. It shows where the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

²⁹ These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, ³⁰ Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 26:29-30 ULB)

²⁹⁻³⁰ The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishpan. (Genesis 26:29-30 UDB)

In the ULB text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UDB text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes the ULB has separate verses while the UDB has a verse bridge.

⁴ However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), ⁵ if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULB)

⁴⁻⁵ Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UDB)

There are also a few verse bridges in the ULB.

¹⁷⁻¹⁸ Ezra's sons were Jether, Mered, Epher, and Jalon. Mered's Egyptian wife bore Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah, who became the father of Eshtemoa. These were the sons of Bithiah, daughter of Pharaoh, whom Mered married. Mered's Jewish wife bore Jered, who became the father of Gedor; Heber, who became the father of Soco; and Jekuthiel, who became the father of Zanoah. (1 Chronicles 4:17-18 ULB)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers.

1. If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.
2. If the ULB has a verse bridge, but another Bible you refer to does not have one, you can choose the order that works best for your language.

See: [Marking Verses in the translationStudio APP](#)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

- ² you must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. ³ You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3)
 - ²⁻³ you must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UDB)

2. If the ULB has a verse bridge, but another Bible you refer to does not have one, you can choose the order that works best for your language.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Chapter and Verse Numbers](#)

Symbolic Prophecy

This answers the question: What is symbolic prophecy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Writing Styles*
- *prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess*
- *Symbolic Language*

Description

Symbolic prophecy is a type of message that God gave to a prophet so that the prophet would tell others. These messages use images and symbols to show what God will do in the future.

The main books that have these prophecies are Isaiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Zechariah, and Revelation. Shorter examples of symbolic prophecy are also found in other books, such as in Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21.

The Bible tells both how God gave each message and what the message was. When God gave the messages, he often did so in miraculous ways such as in dreams and visions. (See: [dream](#) and [vision](#).) When prophets saw these dreams and visions, they often saw images and symbols about God and heaven. Some of these images are a throne, golden lamp stands, a powerful man with white hair and white clothes, and eyes like fire and legs like bronze. Some of these images were seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies about the world also contain images and symbols. For example, in some of the prophecies strong animals represent kingdoms, horns represent kings or kingdoms, a dragon or serpent represents the devil, the sea represents the nations, and weeks represent longer periods of time. Some of these images were also seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies tell about the evil in this world, how God will judge the world and punish sin, and how God will establish his righteous kingdom in the new world he is creating. They also tell about things that will happen concerning heaven and hell.

Some of these writings are presented as poetry and some are presented as narrative. They usually use the past tense because the prophets tell about what they saw in their visions or dreams. But they are about things that would happen in the future. Some of these things happened after the prophets told about them, and some of them will happen at the end of this world.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some of the images are hard to understand because we have never seen things like them before.

Translation Principles

- Translate the images in the text. Do not try to interpret them and translate their meaning.
- When the same image appears in more than one place in the Bible, and it is described in the same way, try to translate it the same way in all those places.

- Sometimes it is difficult to understand what order the events described in the various prophecies happen. Simply write them as they appear in each prophecy.

Examples from the Bible

The following passages describe powerful beings that Ezekiel, Daniel, and John saw. Images that come up in these visions include hair that is white as wool, a voice like many waters, a golden belt, and legs or feet like polished bronze. Though the prophets saw various details, it would be good to translate the details that are the same in the same way.

In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, wearing a long robe that reached down to his feet, and a golden belt around his chest.

His head and hair were as white as wool—as white as snow, and his eyes were like a flame of fire. His feet were like burnished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace, and his voice was like the sound of many rushing waters. He had in his right hand seven stars, and coming out of his mouth was a sharp two-edged sword. His face was shining like the sun at its strongest shining. (Revelation 1:13-16)

As I looked,
thrones were set in place,
and the Ancient of Days took his seat.
His clothing was as white as snow,
and *the hair of his head was like pure wool.* (Daniel 7:9 ULB)

I looked up and saw a man dressed in linen, with a belt around his waist made of pure gold from Uphaz. His body was like topaz, his face was like lightning, his eyes were like flaming torches, his arms and his feet were like polished bronze, and the sound of his words was like the sound of a great crowd. (Daniel 10:5-6 ULB)

Behold! The glory of the God of Israel came from the east; his voice was like the sound of many waters, and the earth shone with his glory! (Ezekiel 43:2 ULB)

Proverbs

This answers the question: What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Metaphor*
- *Parallelism*
- *Writing Styles*

People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. When you follow your language's ways of saying proverbs, you will make your translation sparkle.

Description

Proverbs are a sentence or a few sentences that give wisdom or teach a truth. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism.

Hatred stirs up conflicts,
but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULB)

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise.
It has no commander, officer, or ruler,
yet it prepares its food in the summer,
and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue:

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in a way for people to recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

Examples from the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULB)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULB)

This means that if a person is lazy and does do what he was sent to do, he will be very annoying to those who send.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULB)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.
□

Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways. Here are some ideas for ways people might say a proverb in their language.

**A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold.** (Proverbs 22:1 ULB)

- “It is better to have a good name than to have great riches, and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.”
- “Wise people choose a good name over great riches and favor over silver and gold.”
- “Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.”
- “Will riches really help you? I would rather have a good reputation.”

2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

**Like *snow in summer* or *rain in harvest*,
so a fool does not deserve honor.** (Proverbs 26:1 ULB)

- “It is not natural for *a cold wind to blow in the hot season* or for it to rain in the harvest season; And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.”

3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow (Proverbs 27:1 ULB)

- “Do not count your chickens before they hatch.”

4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

**A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother,
that is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,
but they are not washed of their filth.** (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULB)

- “People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous, and they do not turn away from their sin.”

Symbolic Language

This answers the question: What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Writing Styles*

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things and events. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things and events. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future.

Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel.” (Ezekiel 3:1 ULB) This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll.

One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by calling it another. Another purpose of symbolism is to tell people about something that they would be able to understand while hiding the true meaning from others.

Reason this is a translation issue: People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principle: When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation. It is also important not to explain it more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples from the Bible

After this I saw in my dream at night *a fourth animal*, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had *large iron teeth*; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had *ten horns*. (Daniel 7:7 ULB)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be *a fourth kingdom* on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth,

and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom *ten kings* will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULB)

I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw *seven golden lampstands*. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, ... He had in his right hand *seven stars*, and coming out of his mouth was *a sharp two-edged sword*.... As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: *the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches*, and *the seven lampstands are the seven churches*. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULB)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

- **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.

2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

- **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB)

- "After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal,¹ terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth;² it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns."³ The footnotes would look like:

- ◇ ^[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.
- ◇ ^[2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.
- ◇ ^[3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.